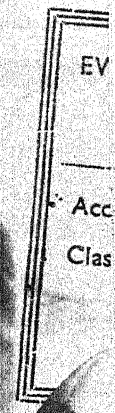
HINTS ON THE STUDY OF ENGLISH



MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
LONDON · BOMBAY · CALCUTTA · MADRAS
MELBOURNE

THE MACMILLAN COMPANY
NEW YORK · BOSTON · CHICAGO
DALLAS · SAN FRANCISCO

THE MACMILLAN CO. OF CANADA, LTD.
TORONTO

HINTS

ON

THE STUDY OF ENGLISH

BY

F. J. ROWE, M.A.

AND

W. T. WEBB, M.A.

FORMERLY PROFESSORS OF ENGLISH LITERATURE, PRESIDENCY COLLEGE, CALCUTTA
AND FELLOWS OF THE UNIVERSITY
AUTHORS OF 'AN ELEMENTARY ENGLISH GRAMMAR'
'AN INTRODUCTORY ENGLISH GRAMMAR,' ETC.

NEW EDITION

REVISED AND REMODELLED

LIBRARY OF
ALL INDIA
2.12.38
17740

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
ST. MARTIN'S STREET, LONDON

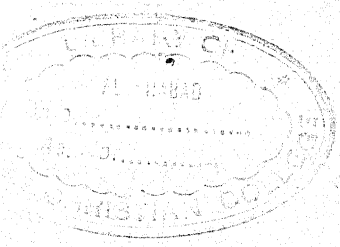
1926

COPYRIGHT.

First Published by Macmillan & Co., Limited, 1897.
Reprinted 1899, 1900, 1902, 1903, 1905.
New Edition, September 1909. Reprinted October 1909, 1910, 1911, 1912, 1913, (twice), 1914, 1915, 1916, 1917, 1918, 1920.

1923, 1924, 1926.

Printed from plates by L. M. Gupta, at the Hindusthan Press
10, Nanda Kumar Choudhury 2nd Lane, Calcutta



PREFACE.

THE New Regulations of the Government of India in relation to the University Matriculation (or Entrance) Examination in English declare that the Examination shall be "a test of the ability of candidates to write clear, simple, and correct English, and of their intelligent comprehension of modern English applied to familiar subjects."

In view of this preliminary statement and of the definite directions prescribed for the conduct of the Examination, this book has been remodelled. In addition to a complete revision of the text, and without losing sight of the aim of previous Editions, viz. to pay particular attention to subjects (such as the Articles, "Shall and Will," and the Prepositions) which present special difficulty to Indian students, much of the old subject-matter that appeared to be either unnecessary or of minor importance has been omitted, and much fresh matter, more germane to the new requirements, has been inserted, while at the same time the whole has been more conveniently arranged.

Thus Chapter I.[1] on "The Structure, Analysis, and Conversion of Sentences," which has been rewritten, takes the place of the old "Historical Sketch," now omitted. Sundry omissions and additions have been made in Chapters II. and III., part of the latter being formed into a separate Chapter (IV.), entitled

[1] This chapter has been placed first, because, in studying a language, the Sentence and its structure should be taken first. The latter half of the chapter (dealing with Analysis, etc.) may be reserved for the subsequent consideration of the student. *Hints* of course assumes that he has a knowledge of the Parts of Speech to start with.

"Tense-usage." Chapter V., on "Parsing," has been enlarged. So much new matter has been added on the subject of "Idiom," that the single chapter of previous Editions on this topic has been divided into three, comprising the general subject of "Idiom" (Chapter VI.), "Words followed by Prepositions" (Chapter VII.), and "Phrasal Uses of Words" (Chapter VIII.); and the old Appendix A (much enlarged), in consideration of the importance of its subject, has been given a place in the body of the book. In Chapter IX. various topics, with some new matter, have been grouped together for the convenience of the student. The Chapter (X.) on "Errors in Grammar, Syntax, and Idiom" has received large additions, as have also the subjects of "Style" and "Essay-writing," included in Chapters XI. and XII. The Appendix of Test Examination Questions[1] has been to a large extent rewritten, so as to coincide with the remodelling of the text of *Hints*.

It remains only to repeat the authors' acknowledgments for the kind advice and aid they have received from scholars and teachers, both Indian and English, in the preparation of this volume. Among these the Rev. A. H. Sayce, M.A., Professor of Assyriology in the University of Oxford, and the Rev. W. W. Skeat, Litt.D., Professor of Anglo-Saxon in the University of Cambridge, should be specially mentioned. Thanks are also due to Mr. James A. Aldis, M.A., formerly Principal of La Martinière, Calcutta, who kindly reviewed the whole of the proofs, and made useful comments and suggestions.

[1] These Questions with their Answers are included in the New Edition of "200 Test Examination Questions and Answers" (Macmillan and Co., 12*as.*).

CONTENTS

CHAPTER I.

THE STRUCTURE, ANALYSIS, AND CONVERSION OF SENTENCES.

	PAGE		PAGE
The Structure of Sentences	1	The Analysis of Sentences	8
The Simple Sentence	5	The Conversion of Sentences	10
The Complex Sentence	5		
The Compound Sentence	5		

CHAPTER II.

THE FORMATION AND SIGNIFICANCE OF WORDS.

The Formation of Words	15	Hybrids	37
Latin Prefixes	16	The Significance of Words	38
Greek Prefixes	17	Synonyms	38
Latin and Greek Suffixes	19	Homonyms	45
Teutonic Prefixes	23	Doublets	46
Teutonic Suffixes	24	Confused Words	48
Latin Derivatives	28	Degradation of Words	49
Greek Derivatives	30	Elevation of Words	52
Compound Words	31	Disguised Words	54

CHAPTER III.

ACCIDENCE AND SYNTAX.

Nouns	59	Adjectives	77
Gender	63	Numerals	80
Number	65	Articles	81
Case	71		

ACCIDENCE AND SYNTAX—*Continued.*

	PAGE		PAGE
Pronouns	89	Tense	112
Personal Pronouns	90	Defective and Anomalous Verbs	115
Reflexive Pronouns	91	Impersonal Verbs	118
Demonstrative Pronouns	92	Adverbs	118
Interrogative Pronouns	93	Special Adverbs	120
Relative Pronouns	94	Prepositions	123
Conjunctive Pronouns	97	Prepositional use of Participles	123
Indefinite Pronouns	97	Conjunctions	125
Distributive Pronouns	98	Co-ordinative Conjunctions	125
Verbs	99	Subordinative Conjunctions	126
Uses of Transitive Verbs	99	Interjections	127
Uses of Intransitive Verbs	101		
Verbs with two Objects	105		
Mood	106		

CHAPTER IV.

TENSE-USAGE.

The Sequence of Tenses	128	*Shall* and *Will*	135
Reported Speech	130	*Should* and *Would*	140
Intermediate Forms	134		

CHAPTER V.

PARSING.

Nouns and Pronouns	144	The Same Word used in Different Relations	150
Adjectives	145	Words of Number, Quantity, and Amount	151
Verbs	146	The words 'As,' 'That,' 'How,' 'Why,' 'So,' 'Such,' 'Else,' 'Since,' 'Next'	153
Adverbs	147	Examples of Parsing	155
Prepositions	147		
Conjunctions	147		
Parsing Scheme	148		

CHAPTER VI.

IDIOM.

Word-collocation	164	Adjectives used as Nouns	171
The Collocation of some Adjectives	168	Elliptical Sentences	174

CHAPTER VII.

WORDS FOLLOWED BY PREPOSITIONS.

	PAGE		PAGE
Infinitive wrongly introduced	177	Corresponding forms with different Prepositions	181
Prepositions confused	178	The same words with different Prepositions	182
Prepositions inserted or omitted	179	List of words with their appropriate Prepositions	184
Corresponding words with different Prepositions	181		

CHAPTER VIII.

PHRASAL USES OF WORDS.

Phrasal uses of Prepositions	197	The Pronoun *It*	240
Phrasal uses of Verbs	228	The Preposition *But*	242
Phrasal uses of Adjectives	236	The Adjective *All*	243
Phrasal uses of Nouns	238		

CHAPTER IX.

MINOR AIDS TO COMPOSITION.

The Alphabet	245	Spelling	253
Accent	245	Rules	253
Syllabication	247	Notes	254
Punctuation	247	Pronunciation	259
Capital Letters	251	Answers to Examination Questions	263
Underlining	252		

CHAPTER X.

ERRORS IN GRAMMAR, SYNTAX, AND IDIOM.

Nouns	266	Prepositions	292
Adjectives	269	Conjunctions	295
Articles	272	Expressions of Time	297
Pronouns	273	Order of Words	299
Verbs	278	Construction	302
Adverbs	287		

CHAPTER XI.

STYLE AND PARAPHRASING.

	PAGE		PAGE
Style	305	Paraphrasing	313
The Rule of Proximity	305	Figurative Language	313
The Rule of Perspicuity	306	Poetic Diction	314
The Rule of Precision	308	Turning Poetry into Prose	318
The Rule of Simplicity	309		
The Rule of Coherence	311		
The Rule of Unity	311		

CHAPTER XII.

ESSAY-WRITING AND LETTER-WRITING.

Outlines of Essays	322	Letter-writing	342
The Essay	328	Forms of Date and Address	342
Descriptive Essay	332	Forms of Subscription	344
Narrative Essay	335	Forms of Direction	345
Reflective or Expository Essay	338	Sample Letters	349

APPENDIX—Test Examination Questions 353

I. INDEX OF SUBJECTS 369

II. INDEX OF WORDS AND FORMS 374

CHAPTER I.

THE STRUCTURE, ANALYSIS, AND CONVERSION OF SENTENCES.

THE STRUCTURE OF SENTENCES.

1. **A Sentence** is a combination of words by which we say something about a person or thing :—

Fire burns. A good boy learns his lessons well.

Hence every sentence must contain two essential parts :—

(1) The word (or words) denoting the person or thing that we say something about, *viz., fire ; A good boy.*

(2) The word (or words) denoting what we say about the person or thing, *viz., burns ; learns his lessons well.*

Definition.—The word (or words) denoting the person or thing that we say something about is called the **Subject** of the sentence.

Definition.—The word (or words) denoting what we say about the Subject is called the **Predicate** of the sentence.

2. In order to say something about a person or thing we must use a name for that person or thing, and as all names are nouns (103), we must use a Noun ; so that—

The Subject of a Sentence is always a Noun, or some word or words equivalent to a Noun.

3. In order to say anything we must use a word that says or states, and as all words that state are verbs (201), we must use a Verb ; so that—

The Predicate of a sentence is always a Verb either alone or in combination with other words.

4. What we say of a person or thing may be—

(*a*) an Assertion: 'The sun shines'; 'How fast he runs!'
(*b*) a Question: 'Who goes there?'
(*c*) a Command: 'Stand (you) still.'
(*d*) a Supposition: 'Were he rich, he would pay.'
(*e*) a Wish: 'Long live the king.'

In sentences (*a*) and (*b*) the verbs *shines*, *runs* and *goes* are in the Indicative Mood; in (*c*) the verb *stand* is in the Imperative Mood; in (*d*) and (*e*) the verbs *were* and *live* are in the Subjunctive Mood (**217, 219**). All these verbs show their connexion with the subject of the sentence by agreeing with it in Number and Person: the verb of a Predicate is thus always *limited* to a particular Number and Person, so that it must be a *Finite* (=limited) Verb. The parts of a verb that are not so limited, and are therefore not finite, are the Infinitive mood, the Participles, and the Verbal Noun or Gerund.

5. **Phrase.**—In the sentences—

I saw a man *with a stick*
I saw a man *carrying a stick*

the words 'with a stick' and 'carrying a stick' contain no Finite Verb, and so do not form a sentence.

Definition.—A combination of words, used to represent a part of speech, and not containing a Finite verb, is called a *Phrase.*

6. A Phrase may represent—

(1) A Noun: *What to do* is the difficulty.
(2) An Adjective: The man *in the moon* is a fable.
(3) An Adverb: I will come *in a day or two.*
(4) A Preposition: *According to* you I am wrong.
(5) A Conjunction: I don't mind going, *so long as* you go too.
(6) An Interjection: *For shame!*

7. **Clause.**—In the sentence—

I saw a man *who carried a stick*

the words 'who carried a stick' contain a Finite verb, but *form part of* the complete sentence 'I saw a man who carried a stick.'

Definition.—A combination of words containing a Finite verb, but forming part of a sentence, is called a *Clause.*

8. **Subject and Object.**—The following sentences show the different kinds of Subjects and Objects [**128, (2)**]:—

(1) Noun: *Cats* like *milk.*
(2) Pronoun: *We* met *them.*
(3) Adjective (used as Noun): *The rich* helped *the poor.*

(4) Participle (used as Noun): *The wounded* exceeded *the dead.*
(5) Infinitive (used as Noun): *To persevere* means *to succeed.*
(6) Verbal Noun: *Working* induces *sleeping.*
(7) Noun phrase: *What to do* precedes *how to do it.*
(8) Noun clause: *That he returned* implies *that he went.*

9. Complement.—In the sentence, 'Birds fly,' the Predicate is the verb *fly*, which makes a complete sense. And in the sentence, 'Ram struck the dog,' the Predicate consists of the verb *struck* and its object *the dog*, which together make a complete sense.

But in the sentence, 'He took the man prisoner,' the Predicate consists not merely of the verb *took* and its object *the man*, but also of the word *prisoner*, which must be added to *fill up* the sense. Such a word is called the *Complement* of the verb, and the verb is called a Verb of Incomplete Predication.

When the verb that requires a complement is intransitive or passive, the complement must relate to the subject, and is called the *Subjective Complement*:—

His arm became *stiff*. He was elected *chairman*.

When the verb that requires a complement is transitive and active, the complement relates to the object, and is called the *Objective Complement*:—

Cold made his arm *stiff*. They elected him *chairman*.

NOTE.—For the comparatively few instances in which *intransitive* verbs have an *objective* complement, see **209.**

10. The Complement of the verb may be—

(1) Adjective: We are *ready* (*Subjective*) / Let me *alone* (*Objective*)
(2) Participle: The noise became *alarming* (*Subj.*) / I struck him *dead* (*Obj.*)
(3) Noun: Cæsar was made *commander* (*Subj.*) / He called me a *traitor* (*Obj.*)
(4) Possessive: The book is *Ram's*, not *mine* (*Subj.*) / He made my cause *his own* (*Obj.*)
(5) Infinitive: The water seems *to boil* (*Subj.*) / I heard him *say* it (*Obj.*)
(6) Adverb: He returned *home* (*Subj.*) / The coachman drove him *home* (*Obj.*)
(7) Preposition with object: The slaves were set *at liberty* (*Subj.*) / The general kept his troops *in reserve* (*Obj.*)
(8) Noun clause: The report is *that he has fled* (*Subj.*) / We make ourselves *what we are* (*Obj.*)
(9) Adverb clause: The pen is *where it was* (*Subj.*) / We found him *where we had left him* (*Obj.*)

NOTE.—Sometimes the term 'Completion of the Verb' is used to denote the Object or the Complement or both together. But the term is unnecessary.

11. Adjuncts of Subject and Object.—In the sentence—

Good men do kind actions

the Subject, or Nominative, *men* has the adjective *good* attached to it to add to its meaning; and similarly the Object *actions* has the adjective *kind* attached to it.

Definition.—Adjectives, and words, phrases, or clauses equivalent to adjectives, when attached to a Subject or an Object, are called its *Adjuncts.*

12. The following sentences show the different kinds of Adjuncts of the Subject:—

(1) Adjective: *Rainy* weather is expected.
(2) Noun (used as Adjective): The *garden* paths are damp.
(3) Participle: *Flying* clouds are seen.
(4) Noun in Apposition: Ghose, *the bookseller*, has come.
(5) Noun in Possessive case: *Horses'* ears are pointed.
(6) Possessive pronoun: *His* books are here.
(7) Demonstrative pronoun: *Those* pens seem new.
(8) Interrogative pronoun: *Which* desk is yours?
(9) Preposition with object (used as Adjective): A walk *in the evening* is pleasant.
(10) Gerundial Infinitive: A house *to let* stands there.
(11) Noun clause: The fact *that he came* is clear.
(12) Adjective clause: Students *who work hard* succeed.

The Object may have the same kinds of Adjuncts as the Subject.

13. Adjuncts of Verb.—In the sentence—

Tigers roar loudly

the verb *roar* has the adverb *loudly* attached to it to add to its meaning.

Definition.—Adverbs, and words, phrases, or clauses equivalent to adverbs, when attached to a Verb, are called its *Adjuncts.*

NOTE.—Sometimes the Adjunct belongs to the Complement of the Verb, as: 'He seems to walk lame,' where *lame* is Adjunct to the Complement *to walk.*

14. The following sentences show the different kinds of Adjuncts of the Verb:—

(1) Adverb: *When* did he come?
(2) Adjective (used as Adverb): He died *happy.*
(3) Noun (used as Adverb): He died *a martyr.*
(4) Participle (used as Adverb): He departed *weeping.*
(5) Preposition with object (used as Adverb): We arrived *in time.*
(6) Adverbial Objective: They walk *morning and evening.*
(7) Absolute phrase: *The general being wounded,* the army was routed.
(8) Gerundial Infinitive: I have come *to stay.*
(9) Adverb clause: He went away *when all was over.*

NOTE.—Sometimes the term *Enlargement* of the Subject or of the Object is used to denote their Adjuncts, and the term *Extension* of the Verb is used to denote its Adjuncts; but, since both these terms mean the same thing, it is better to use the one word *Adjunct*.

THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

15. *Definition.*—A sentence containing only one Finite verb is called a **Simple** sentence: —

The man *carrying* a stick *taught* the bear *to dance* by *tapping* its hind paws.

Here, though there are four verbs, there is only one Finite verb, *taught*, and the sentence is therefore Simple.

THE COMPLEX SENTENCE.

16. In the sentence—

He came when I called

we have two Finite verbs *came* and *called*. The sentence is not, therefore, a Simple sentence. It consists of two clauses, *he came* and *when I called*, of which the former is independent and is called the *Principal* clause, and the latter is dependent and is called a *Subordinate* clause.

Definition.—A sentence which, in addition to a Principal clause, contains one or more Subordinate clauses, is called a **Complex** sentence.

NOTE.—In such a sentence as 'The mistake was that they were admitted' the Subordinate clause 'that they were admitted' forms part of the Principal clause, which in this case is the whole sentence.

THE COMPOUND SENTENCE.

17. If the two independent sentences—

He came. I went.

are joined together by the Co-ordinative Conjunction *and*, we get one sentence—

He came and I went.

and the two original sentences have now become clauses, each forming a part of a complete sentence. Both clauses remain independent, neither being subordinate to the other.

Definition.—A sentence composed of two or more independent clauses, joined together by Co-ordinative conjunctions, is called a **Compound** Sentence, and the clauses are called *Co-ordinate* clauses.

18. Co-ordinate clauses in a Compound sentence may themselves be Complex:—

I know what you want, and I will get it if I can.

Here the two Co-ordinate clauses contain the Subordinate clauses *what you want* (Noun clause) and *if I can* (Adverb clause).

19. The different Co-ordinate clauses of a Compound sentence sometimes have parts in common. Such parts are often expressed in only one of the Co-ordinate clauses:—

They came and (they) saw him (*same Subject*). Ram was in England and his father (was) in India (*same Verb*). Exercise gives health and (exercise gives) strength (*same Subject and Verb*). He was nominated (chairman) and (was) elected chairman (*same Complement and Verb*). John gave his brother (a box of toys), and Charles (gave) his sister a box of toys (*same Object and Verb*).

SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.

20. There are three kinds of Subordinate clauses:—I. The Noun Clause; II. The Adjective Clause; III. The Adverb Clause.

I. The Noun Clause.

21. The Noun Clause is equivalent to a noun, and may therefore be—

(1) Subject to a verb: *That he said so* is certain.
(2) Object to a verb: He asked *if he might go.*
(3) Object to a preposition: There is no truth in *what he told you.*
(4) Complement to a verb: The fact is *that I am tired out.*
(5) In apposition to a noun: The thought *that he would come* cheered us.

NOTE.—Sentence (1) might be expressed 'It is certain that he said so,' where *it* is the provisional subject, introducing the real subject 'that he said so.' See **472**, (*a*). This *it* may be left out in analysis. Sometimes *that* is omitted:—'It is certain (that) he said so.'

II. The Adjective Clause.

22. The Adjective Clause is equivalent to an adjective, and always stands as attribute to some noun or pronoun in the sentence:—

The tale *that he told* is amusing.
This is the place *where the roses grow.*
His manners are not such (manners) *as I admire.*
There are some diseases *for which there is no remedy.*

23. Observe the difference between the two sentences—

(*a*) I gave the book to the boy who (=*that*) had lost it.
(*b*) I gave the book to the boy, who (=*and he* put it in his pocket.

In (*a*) 'who had lost it' is a Subordinate Adjective clause, qualifying *boy*, and the sentence is *Complex*; in (*b*) 'I gave the book to the boy' and 'who put it in his pocket' are Co-ordinate clauses, and the sentence is *Compound* (185).

24. Observe again the difference between the two sentences—

(*a*) I know the house where he lives.
(*b*) I know where he lives.

In (*a*) 'where he lives' is an *Adjective* clause, qualifying *house*; in (*b*) 'where he lives' is a *Noun* clause, object of *know*. See **252**.

III. The Adverb Clause.

25. The Adverb Clause is equivalent to an adverb, and may modify—(1) a verb, (2) an adjective, (3) an adverb, in the sentence:—

(1) He departed *when you arrived.*
(2) This is true *unless I am mistaken.*
(3) He worked *so* diligently *that he won the prize.*

26. The Adverb clause may express—

(*a*) Cause: I like him *because he is kind.*
(*b*) Manner: He behaved *as I expected.*
(*c*) Effect or purpose: He went there *that he might see you.*
(*d*) Condition: *If you did so,* you were wrong.
(*e*) Degree: He is richer *than I am.*
(*f*) Time: He started *before I did.*
(*g*) Place: You must go *where you are sent.*

27. It should be observed that we cannot determine the character of a clause merely by noticing what word introduces it. Thus, the word *when* may introduce a Noun clause, an Adjective clause, or an Adverb clause:—

I know *when he came* (Noun clause, object of verb *know*).
I know the hour *when he came* (Adject. clause, qualifying noun *hour*).
I departed *when he came* (Adverb clause, modifying verb *departed*).

28. Observe the difference between the two sentences—

(*a*) I admire a king who (=*that*) treats his subjects kindly.
(*b*) I admire this king, who (=*since he*) treats his subjects so kindly.

In (*a*) 'who treats his subjects kindly' is an *Adjective* clause, qualifying *king*; in (*b*) 'who treats his subjects so kindly' is an *Adverb* clause, modifying *admire* (185).

THE ANALYSIS OF SENTENCES.

29. *Definition.*—To analyse a sentence is to break it up into the parts of which it is composed, and to show the relation of these parts to one another.

30. **Rules.**—Thus, in analysing a sentence—

(1) Say whether the sentence is Simple, Complex, or Compound.

(2) Divide the sentence into two parts under the headings of Subject and Predicate.

(3) Under the heading of Subject set down the Nominative or its equivalent and its Adjunct.

(4) Under the heading of Predicate set down the Verb, its Object (adding whether it is Direct, Indirect, or Retained), and its Complement, together with the Adjuncts of the Verb (or the Complement) and of the Object.

(5) If the sentence is Complex, mark each Subordinate Clause (*a*), (*b*), (*c*), etc., and say what kind of Clause it is and its function; and analyse each Clause separately.

(6) If the sentence is Compound, separate the Co-ordinate Clauses from one another, marking them *A*, *B*, *C*, etc., and analyse each Clause as a separate sentence.

(7) Words that are understood or omitted must be supplied:—

(Rise you) Up, Guards, and (go you) at them!
The book (that) he wanted is here.
Either he (must go) or I must go.
He likes you better than (he likes) me.
Though (he is) poor, he is honest.
Whether (it is) fine or (it is) wet, I will come.

(8) Conjunctions, interjections, and nouns in the vocative case need not be entered in the analysis.

NOTE.—In analysing contracted Compound sentences there is occasionally some difficulty in supplying the part omitted. When the Co-ordinative conjunctions joining the clauses are *neither . . . nor*, they must be changed in the analysis to *not . . . not*. Thus the contracted Compound sentence 'This is neither too long nor too short' must be expanded in Analysis into the two sentences 'This is not too long'—'This is not too short,' which must be analysed separately. The sentence 'Whether we go or stay, it is all the same' is equivalent to 'It is all the same, whether we go'—'It is all the same, whether we stay.'

31. Examples of Analysis of Simple Sentences.

He must take strong medicine regularly.
The judge ordered the thief to be punished.

How did he lose the book?
Good children always give their parents little trouble.
Do not be idle all day.
He was granted help in his work.
Why do you make me laugh?

SUBJECT.		PREDICATE.				
Nominative or Equivalent.	Adjuncts of Nominative.	Verb.	Object.	Complement of Verb.	Adjuncts of Verb or Complement.	Adjuncts of Object.
He		must	medicine	take	regularly	strong
judge	The	ordered	thief	to be punished		the
he		did	book	lose	How	the
children	Good	give	(1) trouble (*Direct*) (2) parents (*Indirect*)		always	(1) little (2) their
(you)		Do		be idle	(1) not (2) all day	
He		was granted	help (*Retained*)			in his work
you		do	me	make laugh	Why	

32. Examples of Analysis of Complex Sentences. [See p. 13.]

How it was done was the thing that puzzled all present.

The hope that I shall see my father makes me glad, whatever happens.

Since we are so few, very much depends upon who is chosen as our leader.

The friend I met yesterday has gone home.

33. Examples of Analysis of mixed Compound and Complex Sentences. [See p. 14.]

As the day dawned, the Spaniards saw the fatal error which they had committed in leaving this bulwark so feebly defended, and from two villages which stood close to the dike the troops now rushed in considerable force to recover what they had lost.

The Governor pitied the young man's chagrin, seemed even to approve his enthusiasm, but reminded him that it was the business of an officer to fight, of a general to conquer.

THE CONVERSION OF SENTENCES.

34. We have seen that the difference between a Simple and a Complex sentence is that the former contains only one Finite verb, while the latter contains a Subordinate clause or clauses with Finite verbs of their own. In order to convert a Simple into a Complex sentence without materially altering the sense, it is necessary to turn some word or phrase in it into a Subordinate clause giving the same meaning as the word or phrase; while, in order to convert a Complex into a Simple sentence, the reverse process is necessary, and Subordinate clauses in the Complex sentence must be turned into words or phrases.

35. Many words or phrases can be turned into Subordinate clauses without involving any alteration in other parts of the sentence. Thus most adjectives can be readily replaced by Adjective clauses, without affecting the rest of the sentence. For instance, the Simple sentence, '*Diligent* students win prizes,' is converted at once into a Complex sentence by merely turning the adjective 'diligent' into the Adjective clause, 'who are diligent,' and we get the Complex sentence, 'Students *who are diligent* win prizes.'

36. But in many sentences the substitution of a clause for a word or phrase involves the alteration of the principal verb of

the sentence and sometimes necessitates the recasting of the whole sentence. The following sentences are examples of such alterations:—

Simple: Never tell an untruth.
Complex: Never say what is not true.

Simple: He was refused admittance.
Complex: He was told that he could not be admitted.

Simple: I will prevent his coming here.
Complex: I will see that he does not come here.

Simple: I took you for an Englishman.
Complex: I thought that you were an Englishman.

Simple: He seems to have been present.
Complex: It seems that he was present.

Simple: He soon forgot his loss.
Complex: He soon forgot the loss which he had sustained.

Simple: Diligence makes a man successful.
Complex: If a man is diligent, he will be successful.

Simple: It is too hot for us to go out.
Complex: It is so hot that we cannot go out.

Simple: He was kind enough to comply.
Complex: He was so kind that he complied.

Simple: Your savings should be in proportion to your earnings.
Complex: The more you earn, the more you should save.

37. Several separate Simple sentences may be combined into one Simple sentence without materially altering the sense, by retaining one of the original sentences unaltered and converting the others into words or phrases attached as Adjuncts to some part (Subject, Verb, or Object) of the sentence retained. The sentence retained should be the one which states the most important fact. Thus the separate Simple sentences—

I left the place. I took the boy with me. The reason of my going was the unhealthiness of the neighbourhood. I was glad to go. We left in the afternoon.

may be combined into one Simple sentence, thus:—

The neighbourhood being unhealthy, I gladly left the place in the afternoon, taking the boy with me.

38. Several separate Simple sentences may be combined into one Complex sentence, without materially altering the sense, by retaining one of the original sentences unaltered as a Principal clause and converting the others into Subordinate clauses attached

as Adjuncts to some part of the sentence retained. It is often sufficient if only one or two of the original sentences are turned into Subordinate clauses and the others into words or phrases. Thus the separate Simple sentences —

> The Examinations will commence next week. They will be held in the Senate House. That is the most convenient place. They have always been held there. No other building would contain all the candidates. They number several hundreds. Each requires a desk to himself.

may be combined into a single Complex sentence thus :—

> The Examinations will commence next week in the Senate House, the most convenient place, where they have always been held, no other building being able to contain all the candidates, who number several hundreds, each requiring a desk to himself.

Sentence or Clause.	Kind of Sentence or Clause.	Subject.		Predicate.				
		Nominative or Equivalent	Adjuncts of Nominative.	Verb.	Object.	Complement of Verb.	Adjuncts of Verb or Complement	Adjuncts of Object.
How it was ... all present	Principal	How it was done (*a*)		was		the thing that puzzled all present (*b*)		
(*a*) How it was done	Noun clause	it		was done			How	
(*b*) that puzzled all present	Adj. clause to 'thing'	that		puzzled	all			present
The hope ... happens	Principal	hope	(1) The (2) that I shall see my father (*a*)	makes	me	glad	whatever happens (*b*)	
(*a*) that I shall see my father	Noun clause	I		shall see	father			my
(*b*) whatever happens	Adverb clause	whatever		happens				
Since we ... leader	Principal	much	very	depends		upon ... leader (*b*)	since ... few (*a*)	
(*a*) Since we are so few	Adverb clause	we		are		so few		
(*b*) who is chosen ... leader	Noun clause, object to 'upon'	who		is chosen		as our leader		
The friend ... gone home	Principal	friend	(1) The (2) (that) I met yesterday (*a*)	has gone		home		
(*a*) (that) I met yesterday	Adj. clause to 'friend'	I		met	that		yesterday	

Sentence or Clause.	Kind of Sentence or Clause.	Subject.		Predicate.				
		Nominative or Equivalent	Adjuncts of Nom.	Verb.	Object.	Complement of Verb.	Adjuncts of Verb or Complement.	Adjuncts of Object.
A. As the day ... defended	Principal, co-ordinate with *B*	Spaniards	the	saw	error		As the day dawned (*a*)	(1) the (2) fatal (3) which they had ... defended (*b*)
(*a*) As the day dawned	Adverb clause, modifying 'saw'	day	the	dawned				
(*b*) which they had ... defended	Adj. clause to 'error'	they		had committed	which		in leaving ... defended	
B. and from two villages ... what they had lost	Principal, co-ordinate with *A*	troops	the	rushed			(1) from two villages ... dyke (*a*) (2) now (3) in considerable force (4) to recover what they had lost (*b*)	
(*a*) which stood close to the dyke	Adj. clause to 'villages'	which		stood			close to the dyke	
(*b*) what they had lost	Noun clause, object of 'recover'	they		had lost	what			
A. The Governor pitied ... chagrin	Principal, co-ord. with *B* and *C*	Governor	the	pitied	chagrin			the young man's
B. (the Governor) seemed even ... enthusiasm	Principal, co-ord. with *A* and *C*	(Governor)	(the)	seemed	enthusiasm	to approve	even	his
C. but (the Governor) reminded him that ... conquer	Principal, co-ord. with *A* and *B*	(Governor)	(the)	reminded	(1) that it was (*a*) ... to conquer (*b*) (*Direct*) (2) him (*Indirect*)			
(*a*) that it was ... fight	Noun clause	to fight		was		the business of an officer		
(*b*) (that it was) ... conquer	Noun clause	to conquer		(was)		(the business) of a general		

CHAPTER II.

THE FORMATION AND SIGNIFICANCE OF WORDS.

THE FORMATION OF WORDS.

39. **Two Classes.**—As regards their formation, words are divided into two classes:—

(1) *Simple* (or Primary) words, which are words that cannot be reduced to simpler elements:—*boy, good, he, sing, now, in, and.*

(2) *Derivative* (or Secondary) words, which are words that can be reduced to simpler elements. They are of three kinds:—

(*a*) *Primary* Derivatives, formed from simple words by some internal change, as *strive* from *strife*, *raise* from *rise*.

(*b*) *Secondary* Derivatives, formed by the addition of prefixes and suffixes, as *un-kind*, *kind-ness*, *un-kind-ly*.

(*c*) *Compounds*, formed by joining two or more words together, as *lamp-oil*, *mid-ship-man*.

40. **Roots and Stems.**—The *Root* is the rudimentary form of a word, and the *Stem* is the changed form assumed by the root when a suffix is added to it. Thus in the word *loved* the root is *lov*, the stem is *love*, and *-d* is the suffix of the past tense.

41. **Prefixes and Suffixes** come from three sources:—

(1) *Latin*, either directly or through the French or some other Romanic language.

(2) *Greek*, either directly or through the French and the Latin.

(3) *Teutonic* or Old English.

42. LATIN PREFIXES.

Ab-	*from*	ab-use
a-		a-vert
abs-		abs-tain
Ad-	*to, at*	ad-here
ac-		ac-cent
af-		af-fect
ag-		ag-gravate
al-		al-lege
am-		am-munition
an-		an-nul
ap-		ap-prove
ar-		ar-rogance
as-		as-sent
at-		at-tempt
a-		a-spect
Ambi-	*around*	ambi-dextrous
amb-		amb-ition
am-		am-putate
Ante-	*before*	ante-date
anti-		anti-cipate
ant-		ant-ique
an- (F.)[1]		an-cestor
Bene-	*well*	bene-diction
Bis- (F.)	*twice, two*	bis-cuit
bi-		bi-ped
bin-		bin-ocular
Circum-	*around*	circum-stance
circu-		circu-it
Con- (F.)	*with*	con-trive
col-		col-lege
com-		com-pact
cor-		cor-rode
co-		co-heir
coun-		coun-cil
Contra-	*against*	contra-dict
contro-		contro-vert
counter- (F.)		counter-poise
De-	*down*	de-throne
di-	*away*	di-still
Demi-	*half*	demi-god*[2]
Dis-	*apart, away*	dis-cord
dif-		dif-fer
di-		di-vorce
des- (F.)		des-sert
de- (F.)		de-fy
Equi-	*equally*	equi-valent
Ex-	*out of, out*	ex-pel
ef-		ef-fect
e-		e-normous
Extra-	*beyond*	extra-vagant
In-	*in, into, on, against*	in-vade
il-		il-lusion
im-		im-merse
ir-		ir-ruption
en- (F.)		en-title
em- (F.)		em-brace
In-	*not*	in-decent
il-		il-legal
im-		im-mense
ir-		ir-rational
i-		i-gnominy
Inter-	*between*	inter-course
intel-		intel-lect
enter- (F.)		enter-prise
Intra-	*within*	intra-mural
Intr-		intr-insic
Intro-	*into*	intro-duce
Juxta-	*close by*	juxta-position
Male-	*ill*	male-factor
mali-		mali-gnant
mal- (F.)		mal-content
Mis- (F.)	*ill*	mis-chief
Ne-	*not*	ne-farious
Neg-		neg-lect
Non-		non-sense
Ob-	*in front of, against*	ob-verse
oc-		oc-casion
of-		of-fend
op-		op-pose
os-		os-tentation
o-		o-mit
Omni-	*all*	omni-scient
Pen-	*almost*	pen-insula
Per-	*through, thoroughly*	per-fect
pel-		pel-lucid
par- (F.)		par-don

[1] Prefixes marked '(F.)' come from the Latin through the *French*.

[2] Throughout these tables, words that are Hybrids (84) have an asterisk (*) placed after them.

Post-	*after*	post-script
Pre-	*before*	pre-caution
Preter-	*past*	preter-natural
Pro-	*for, forward*	pro-mise
prod-		prod-igal
por-		por-tent
pol-		pol-lute
pur- (F.)		pur-pose
Quadru-	*fourfold, four*	quadru-ped
quadri-		quadri-lateral
quadr-		quadr-ennial
Re-	*back, again*	re-fund
red-		red-eem
Retro-	*backwards*	retro-grade
rear- (F.)		rear-guard
Se-	*apart*	se-cede
sed-		sed-ition
Semi-	*half*	semi-colon
Sine-	*without*	sine-cure
Sub-	*under, up from under*	sub-ject
suc-		suc-ceed
suf-		suf-fer
sug-		sug-gest
sup-		sup-port
sur-		sur-reptitious
sus-		sus-pend
su-		su-spect
Subter-	*beneath*	subter-fuge
Super-	*over*	super-ficial
sur- (F.)		sur-pass
Supra-	*above*	supra-mundane
Trans-	*across*	trans-it
tran-		tran-scend
tra-		tra-verse
tres- (F.)		tres-pass
Tri-	*three*	tri-angle
tre-		tre-ble
Ultra-	*beyond*	ultra-montane
Un-	*one*	un-animous
uni-		uni-form
Vice-	*instead of*	vice-roy
vis- (F.)		vis-count

43. GREEK PREFIXES.

A-	*without*	a-pathy
an-		an-archy
am-		am-brosial
Amphi-	*on both sides*	amphi-bious
Ana-	*up, again*	ana-tomy
an-		an-eurism
Anti-	*against*	anti-dote
ant-		ant-agonist
Apo-	*from, away*	apo-state
aph-		aph-orism
Arch-	*chief*	arch-bishop
archi-		archi-episcopal
arche-		arche-type
Auto-	*self*	auto-biography
auth-		auth-entic
Cata-	*down*	cata-strophe
cath-		cath-olic
cat-		cat-egorical
Deca-	*ten*	deca-logue
Di-	*double*	di-phthong
Dia-	*through*	dia-meter
di-		di-ocese
Dys-	*ill*	dys-entery
En-	*in, on*	en-ergy
em-		em-phasis
el-		el-lipse
Endo-	*within*	endo-genous
Epi-	*upon*	epi-taph
eph-		eph-emeral
ep-		ep-och
Eu-	*well*	eu-phony
Ex-	*out of*	ex-odus
ec-		ec-stasy
Exo-	*outside*	exo-tic
Hemi-	*half*	hemi-sphere
Hepta-	*seven*	hepta-gon
hept-		hept-archy
Hetero-	*different*	hetero-doxy
Hexa-	*six*	hexa-meter
Hiero-	*sacred*	hiero-glyph
hier-		hier-archy

Holo-	*whole*	holo-caust
Homo-	*together, similar*	homo-logous
hom-		hom onym
Hyper-	*over, beyond*	hyper bole
Hypo-	*under*	hypo-thesis
hyph-		hyph-en
hyp-		hyp-allage
Meta-	*after, change*	meta-phor
meth-		meth od
met-		met-onomy
Miso-	*hate*	miso-gynist
mis-		mis-anthropy
Mono-	*alone*	mono-tone
mon-		mon-arch
Octo-	*eight*	octo-pod
octa-		octa-gon
Ortho-	*right*	ortho-graphy
Pan-	*all*	pan oply.
panto-		panto-mime
Para-	*beside*	para-site
par-		par-ody
Penta-	*five*	penta meter
Peri-	*round*	peri-od
Philo-	*love*	philo-sophy
phil-		phil-anthropy
Poly-	*many*	poly-glot
Pro-	*before*	pro-phet
Pros-	*towards*	pros-elyte
Proto-	*first*	proto-martyr
Pseudo-	*false*	pseudo-critic
pseud-		pseud-onym
Syn-	*with*	syn-onym
syl-		syl-lable
sym-		sym-pathy
sy-		sy-stem
Tri-	*three*	tri-pod

44. Notes.

Arch- is mostly prefixed to words with a bad meaning:—*arch-hypocrite, arch-fiend,* arch-traitor,* arch-heretic.* In *arch-angel,* the word is taken *directly* from the Greek, and hence *arch* is pronounced *ark.* In other words it comes through the Latin.

Bi-: *Bi-ennial* properly means 'happening every two years,' 'two-yearly': then it has incorrectly come to mean 'happening twice a year,' 'half-yearly.' Similarly, *bi-weekly, bi-monthly,* in the sense of 'happening twice a week,' 'twice a month.'

De- has often the sense of 'astray,' as in *de-viate, de-lirious, de-bauch.* Compare *de-formed* and *un-formed. De-* is intensive[1] in *de-fault.*

Dis- implies an *emphatic* reversal of the action or state:—*dis-join, dis-temper* (a wrong tempering). Hence *dis-proved* is more than *un-proved, dis-armed* than *un-armed.** Compare *dis-belief** and *un-belief, dis-burdened** and *un-burdened, dis-courteous,* and *un-courteous,* dis-embodied** and *un-embodied, dis-abled* and *un-able, dis-cover* and *un-cover.** It is intensive in *dis-annul, dis-sever.*

Ex- is frequently used to express 'out of office':—*ex-king, ex-secretary, ex-official.*

In- (in) and F. *en-* are found in the same words:—*in-quire, en-quire; in-close, en-close* [512, (*a*)]. *In-* is intensive in *in-ebriate, in-durate, im-passioned. En-, em-* often convert an adjective or a noun into a transitive verb:—*en-dear,* en-slave,* em-bitter,* en-thral.**

In- (not) is sometimes found side by side with *un-* (not; 52):—*in-apt, un-apt;* in-frequent, un-frequent;* in-extinguishable, un-extinguishable;**

[1] That is, it adds force or emphasis. Thus *de-merit* (=absence of merit) once meant *great* merit.

*im-measurable, un-measurable.** We have *un-just, un-equal, un-grateful,* but *in-justice, in-equality, in-gratitude; un-decided,* but *in-decisive.*

Non- is a less forcible negative than *in-* or *un-*. Compare *non-effective* and *in-effective, non-professional* and *un-professional,** *non-Christian* and *un-Christian.**

Per-, like *for-* (52), often passes on from the notion of thoroughness to that of vicious excess, as in—*per-vert*, to turn in a *wrong* direction; *per-jure*, to swear *falsely* (cf. *for-swear*, 52); *per-fidy*, the going *away from* one's faith; *per-ish*, to go *to the bad.*

Sub- expresses subordination:—*sub-committee, sub-editor, sub-let*; and diminution:—*sub-acid, sub-tropical.*

LATIN AND GREEK SUFFIXES.[1]

I. NOUN SUFFIXES.

45. Suffixes denoting Persons.

-ate, -ee, -ey, -y (Latin past part. suffix *-atus*, French *-ée*):—*cur-ate, lay-ate, advoc-ate; examin-ee, nomin-ee, pay-ee, patent-ee, absent-ee; attorn-ey, deput-y, jur-y.*

-ar, -er, -eer, -ier, -or, -ary (L. *-arius*, F. *-ier, -er*):—*vic-ar, arch-er, falcon-er, mountain-eer, financ-ier, counsell-or, secret-ary.*

-ain, -an, -en, -on (L. *-anus*, F. *-ain, -en*):—*chieft-ain* and *capt-ain, vill-ain, pag-an, librari-an, de-an, artis-an, ward-en* (=guard-ian), *citiz-en, sext-on* (=sacrist-an), *surge-on.*

-ist, -ast (Greek *-istes, -astes*):—*soph-ist, evangel-ist, dent-ist,* *novel-ist,* *flor-ist,* *botan-ist, excursion-ist,* *enthusi-ast, iconocl-ast.*

NOTE.—Party or tribal names are expressed by this suffix:—*Calvin-ist, Jansen-ist, Compt-ist*; also by *-ite, -it*, and *-an, -ian*:—*Jacob-ite, Israel-ite, Jesu-it, Luther-an, Eton-ian.* The suffix is depreciative in *pap-ist, Roman-ist, religion-ist, opportun-ist.*[2]

-or, -our, -eur, -er (L. *-orem*, F. *-eur*):—*doct-or, auth-or, success-or, emper-or, savi-our, amat-eur, interpret-er.*

46. Suffixes forming Abstract Nouns.

-age (L. *-aticum*, F. *-age*), denoting—(1) a collection or quantity:—*assembl-age, bagg-age, plum-age, mile-age, foli-age, herb-age*; (2) a condition, place, occupation, or act:—*bond-age,* *person-age, vassal-age, parson-age, hermit-age, cott-age,* *pilot-age,* *till-age,* *outr-age* (98), *carn-age*; (3) cost or price of an action:—*broker-age,* *port-age, cart-age,* *porter-age, wharf-age*;* (4) the result of an action

[1] These suffixes are classed together, because the few Greek suffixes in use have passed into English through the Latin.

[2] Other depreciative suffixes are: *-ism* (46), *-ard* (53), *-ster* (53), *-aster* (53), *-ling* (55), *-ish* (56).

(added to verbs):—*break-age,** *leak-age,** *pill-age** (pill *or* peel), *coin-age.*

-ance, -ence (L. *-antia, -entia*; F. *-ance, -ence*):—*abund-ance, allegi-ance, brilli-ance, preval ence, prud-ence, excell-ence, innoc-ence, ch-ance* (= cad-ence), *obeis-ance* (= obedi-ence).

NOTE 1.—Later forms of these suffixes are *-anc-y, -enc-y*:—*brilli-anc-y, preval-enc-y, innoc-enc-y, hesit-anc-y, const-anc-y, dec-enc-y.* The form *excell-enc-y* is now used as a title.

-ate (L. *-atus*), denoting office, function:—*consul-ate, episcop-ate, elector-ate.*

-cy, -sy (L. *-tia* = *sia*):—*aristocra-cy, fan-cy* and *phanta-sy, infima-cy, bankrupt-cy, luna-cy.*

-ion, -on, -om (L. *-ionem*, F. *-on*):—*opin-ion, act-ion, tens-ion, lect-ion* and *less-on, expirat-ion, orat-ion* and *oris-on, rat-ion* and *reas-on, tradit-ion* and *treas-on, redempt-ion* and *rans-om, starv(at)-ion** (94). It forms also concrete nouns:—*pot-ion* and *pois-on, nat-ion, leg-ion, reg-ion.*

-ice, -ise, -ess (L. *-itia, -itium*, F. *-esse*):—*avar-ice, serv-ice, coward-ice, exerc-ise, prow-ess, larg-ess.*

-ism, -asm (Gk. *-ismos, -asmos*), denoting—(1) mode of feeling or belief:—*patriot-ism, fatal-ism,** *social-ism,** *commun-ism,** *de-ism,** *Tory-ism,** *ego(t)-ism* and *ego-ism, enthusi-asm*; (2) trick or fashion of speech or action:—*provincial-ism,** *vulgar-ism,** *solec-ism, Latin-ism,** *American-ism,** *Scotti(c)-ism, manner-ism,** *soph-ism, witti(c)-ism, sarc-asm, pleon-asm.*

NOTE 2.—*Barbar-ism* belongs to both lists. The suffix is depreciative in *tru-ism.**

-ment (L. *-mentum*), joined to verbs or verbal stems:—*enchant-ment, punish-ment, bereave-ment,** *atone-ment.** It forms also concrete nouns:—*gar-ment, frag-ment, orna-ment.*

-mony (L. *-monium, -monia*):—*matri-mony, acri-mony.*

-tude (L. *-tudinem*):—*forti-tude, longi-tude, magni-tude.*

-ty (L. *-tatem*, F. *-té*):—*cruel-ty, vani-ty, feal-ty* and *fideli-ty, pi-ty* and *pie-ty, proper-ty* and *proprie-ty, frail-ty, admiral-ty, commonal-ty, personal-ty.* It forms also concrete nouns:—*ci-ty, dei-ty, gratui-ty, universi-ty.*

-ure (L. *-ura*):—*cult-ure, cens-ure, stat-ure, verd-ure.* It forms also concrete nouns:—*creat-ure, apert-ure, furnit-ure.*

-y (L. *-ia*):—*miser-y, memor-y, env-y, glutton-y, beggar-y.**

47. Suffixes denoting the Place or Instrument of an action.

-ary, -ery, -ory, -ry (L. *-aria, -arium, -orium*) :—*dispens-ary, sal-ary, nunn-ery, dormit-ory, refect-ory, access-ory, vest-ry, pant-ry, dow-ry.*

NOTE.— *-ery, -ry* also form abstract nouns :—*slav-ery,* witch-ery,* cook-ery,* housewif-ery,* herald-ry, chival-ry.* They also denote a collection of :—*machin-ery,* tenant-ry, peasant-ry, caval-ry, camel-ry.* *Station-ary* (standing still) is an adjective ; *station-ery* (writing materials) is a noun.

-ter, -tre, -cre (L. *-trum, crum*) :—*cloi-ter, thea-tre, spec-tre, scep-tre, lu-cre, sepul-chre* (M. E. *sepul-cre*).

48. Suffixes forming Diminutives.

-cule, -ule, -cle, -cel, -sel, -el, -le, -il, -l (L. *-culus, -ulus*, F. *-cle*) :—*animal-cule, glob-ule, parti-cle, pinna-cle, corpus-cle, par-cel, dam-sel, chap-el, lib-el, circ-le* (cf. circ-*ul*-ar), *chronic-le, cast-le, codic-il, vea-l.*

-et, -ot, -l-et (double suffix) :—*owl-et, rivul-et, frontl-et, bill-et, turr-et, pock-et, lanc-et, trump-et, isl-et, bracel-et ; ankl-et, chari-ot* (car), *parr-ot* (F. *Pierre*, Peter), *ball-ot, arm-let, chap-let, ring-let, stream-let,* ham-let** (home), *cut-let.*

49. Other Suffixes.

-al, -el, -le (L. *-alis*) :—*can-al* and *chann-el, catt-le* and *chatt-el, fu-el, jew-el, tri-al, propos-al.*

NOTE.—The suffixes in *batt-le, marv-el, rasc-al, entr-ails, nupti-als, spous-als, victu-als*, represent the Latin plural form *-alia.*

-ade (L. *-ata*, F. *-ade*) :—*casc-ade, brig-ade, block-ade, barric-ade, char-ade, escap-ade.*

-el, -le (L. *-ellu*) :—*quarr-el, sequ-el, cand-le.*

-on (L. *-onem*) :—*apr-on, bac-on, fel-on, glutt-on, simple(t)-on, champi-on, compani-on, scorpi-on, pige-on, trunche-on.*

-oon, -one, -on (F. *-on*, It. *-one*), forming augmentatives :—*ball-oon, harp-oon, sal-oon, tromb-one* (trump), *milli-on, medalli-on, flag-on* (flask), *galle-on.*

-or, -our, -eur, (L. *-orem*, F. *-our, -eur*) :—*err-or, langu-or, liqu-or, hon-our, lab-our, rum-our, grand-eur, douc-eur, liqu-eur.*

-ule, -le, -el, -il (L. *-ulus, -ula, -ulum*, F. *-le*) :—*vestib-ule, ridic-ule, fab-le, stab-le, tab-le, peop-le, artic-le, mirac-le, obstac-le, appar-el, per-il.*

-y (L. *-ium*) :—*stud-y, remed-y, augur-y, obsequ-y.* The suffix is L. *-ies* in *progen-y,* and L. *-aeus* in *pygm-y.*

50. II. ADJECTIVE SUFFIXES.

-al (L. *-alis*, 50):—*leg-al* and *loy-al*, *reg-al* and *roy-al*, *gener-al*, *celesti-al*, *nation-al*, *whimsi(c)-al* (whimsy). Nouns:—*anim-al*, *miner-al*, *journ-al*, *capit-al*, *funer-al*, *arriv-al*, *deni-al*, *propos-al*, *refus-al*.

-an, -ane, -ain, -en (L. *-anus*, 45):—*hum-an* and *hum-ane*, *mund-ane*, *cert-ain*, *me-an* and *mizz-en*, *Mahomet-an*, *Elizabeth-an*.

-ar (L. *-aris*):—*famili-ar*, *regul-ar*, *singul-ar*.

-ary, -arious (L. *-arius*, 45):—*contr-ary*, *necess-ary*, *arbitr-ary*, *honor-ary*, *greg-arious*, *nef-arious*. Nouns:—*secret-ary*, *dignit-ary*, *incendi-ary* (and adj.).

-ant, -ent (L. *-antem*, *-entem*):—*err-ant*, *petul-ant*, *obedi-ent*, *innocent*. Nouns:—*gi-ant*, *ten-ant*, *merch-ant*, *ag-ent*, *stud-ent*, *coven-ant*, *sext-ant*.

-ate (46), **-ete, -ite, -ute, -t, -se** (L. p.p. endings *-atus*, *-etus*, *-itus*, *-utus*, *-sus*):—*priv-ate*, *temper-ate*, *compl-ete*, *exquis-ite*, *infin-ite*, *min-ute*, *absol-ute*, *abrup-t*, *extinc-t*, *diver-se*.

-bile, -ble, -i-ble, -a-ble (L. *-bilis*), joined to verbs and verbal roots—(1) with a passive meaning:—*mo-bile* and *mov-able*, *audi-ble*, *ed-ible* and *eat-able*,* *solu-ble* and *solv-able*, *accept-able*, *teach-able*,* *reli-able*, *laugh-able*,* *fee-ble*; (2) with an active meaning:—*terrible*, *agree-able*, *account-able*. Also added to nouns:—*peace-able*, *market-able*, *sale-able*,* *objection-able*, *comfort-able*.

-esque (L. *-iscus*, Gk. *-iskos*, It. *-esco*), 'like to':—*pictur-esque*, *grot-esque*, *statu-esque*.

-ic, -ique (L. *-icus*, Gk. *-ikos*):—*aquat-ic*, *rust-ic*, *domest-ic*, *publ-ic*, *civ-ic*, *ant-ic* and *ant-ique*, *un-ique*, *Ital-ic*, *Ind-ic*. Nouns:—*fanat-ic*, *heret-ic*, *cler-k* (=cler-ic), *log-ic*, *mus-ic*, *phys-ic* and *phys-ique*. Often combined with *-al*:—*mag-ic-al*,* *grammat-ic-al*,* *com-ic-al*.*

-id (L. *-idus*), 'having the nature of':—*pall-id*, *rig-id*, *viv-id*.

-ile, -il, -eel, -le, -el (L. *-ilis*, *-elis*):—*frag-ile* and *fra-il*; *gent-ile*, *gent-eel*, and *gent-le*; *subt-ile* and *subt-le*; *civ-il*, *ab-le*, *hum(b)-le*, *cru-el*.

-ine, -in (L. *-inus*):—*div-ine*, *femin-ine*, *fel-ine*, *aquil-ine*, *Alp-ine*, *Lat-in*.

-ive (L. *ivus*), 'inclined to, apt for':—*act-ive*, *attent-ive*, *rest-ive*, *plaint-ive*, *conclus-ive*, *nat-ive* and *na-ive*, *talk(at)-ive*. Nouns:—*mot-ive*, *prerogat-ive*.

-lent (L. *-lentus*), 'full of':—*corpu-lent*, *somno-lent*.

-ory (L. *-orius*):—*amat-ory*, *migrat-ory*, *illus-ory*.

-ose, -ous (L. *-osus*), 'full of':—*verb-ose, belli(c)-ose, joc-ose, grandi-ose, glori-ous, peril-ous, danger-ous, murder-ous.**

NOTE.—The suffix *-ous* represents the Latin *-us* in—*anxi-ous, assidu-ous, continu-ous, ingeni-ous, superflu-ous, omnivor-ous, ardu-ous, egregi-ous, veraci-ous, feroci-ous*, etc.

51. III. VERB SUFFIXES.

ate, -ite, -t, -se (L. p.p. endings *-atus, -itus, -sus*):—*vener-ate, substanti-ate, assassin-ate,** *accent(u)-ate, isol-ate* and *insul-ate, exped-ite, construc-t, incen-se.*

NOTE.—Many English verbs are formed from Latin infinitives:—*defend* (L. *defend-ere*), *incline* (L. *inclin-are*), *manumit* (L. *manumitt-ere*). Hence double derivatives are often found:—*deduce* and *deduct, conduce* and *conduct, construe* and *construct, revert* and *reverse*, formed from the infinitive and the past participle respectively.

-esce (L. *-esco*), frequentative:—*coal-esce, efferv-esce.*

-fy (L. *-ficare*, F. *-fier*), forming causative verbs:—*edi-fy, dei-fy, molli-fy, forti-fy, French(i)-fy.*

-ise, -ize (Gk. *-izo*, F. *-iser*)—(1) converts an adjective into a transitive verb:—*equal-ise,** *civil-ise,** *util-ise,** *fertil-ise,** *Christian-ize*; (2) converts a noun into a transitive verb:—*patron-ise,** *subsid-ise,** *monopol-ize, tantal-ize*; (3) converts a noun into an intransitive verb:—*sermon-ise,** *sympath-ize, philosoph-ize.*

-ish (F. *-iss*):—*ban-ish, establ-ish, flour-ish, fin-ish.*

52. TEUTONIC PREFIXES.

A- (1) stands for *on*, often with the sense of 'in' or 'with':—*a-sleep, a-bed, a-foot, a-field, a-loft, a-shore, a-breast, a-head, a-main, a-slant, a-blaze, a-flame, a-broach, a-gape, a-gog* (in eagerness), *a-stir, a-drift, a-float, a-squint, a-wry, a-skew, a-skance* (on the slope), *a-kimbo, a-jar, a-back, a-side, a-broad, a-sunder, a-miss* (in error), *a-loof, a-loud, a-right, a-piece, a-live, a-like, a-way, a-board, a-bout* (402), *a-bove* (404), *a-cross* (405), *a-gain, a-gainst* (407), *a-mong* (409), *a-mid, a-round* (410), *a-thwart, a-stray, a-stride.*

(2) has the sense of 'from, up, away':—*a-rise, a-rouse, a-wake, a-go.* Intensive in—*a-bide* (to wait for), *a-maze, a-ghast, a(f)-fright, a(c)-cursed* (100).

(3) stands for *of*, with the sense of 'off, from':—*a-down* (off the down or hill), *a-kin.* Intensive in—*a-shamed, a-weary, a-thirst, a-near, a-far, a-new, a-fresh.*

Be- (*by*) (1) is used as a preposition:—*be-fore* (413), *be-hind* (414), *be-low* (415), *be-neath* (416), *be-side* (417), *be-half*, *be-times*, *be-cause*,* *be-tween* (418), *be-yond* (419). Adverbial in—*be-siege*,* *be-set*.

(2) makes intransitive verbs transitive:—*be-speak*, *be-fall*, *be-think*, *be-stride*, *be-labour*,* *be-lie*, *be-moan*.

(3) converts a noun or an adjective into a transitive verb:—*be-friend*, *be-cloud*, *be-dew*, *be-night(ed)*, *be-wilder*, *be-calm*,* *be-numb*, *be-dim*, *be-grime* (to make *grim*).

(4) strengthens the meaning of transitive verbs:—*be-take*, *be-stow*, *be-dazzle*, *be-daub*, *be-sprinkle*, *be-deck*, *be-reave*, *be-queath*, *be-stir*, *be-have*, *be-hove*, *be-gin*, *be-tide*, *be-seech* (seek).

NOTE.—It has a privative meaning in *be-head* (cf. *de*-capitate).

For- (1) intensive:—*for-bear*, *for-give*, *for-sake*, *for-go*,[1] *for-fend*,*[1] *for-swear* (cf. *per*-jure), *for-gather*,[1] *fr-et* (*for-eat*), *for-lorn* (utterly lost), *for-spent*.[1] (2) strongly negative:—*for-bid*, *for-get*.

Gain- (*against*):—*gain-say* (cf. *contra*-dict).

Mis-, defect, error:—*mis-lead*, *mis-give*, *mis-call*, *mis-deed*, *mis-hap*, *mis-direct*,* *mis-conduct*,* *mis-trust* (and *dis*-trust*).

Un- (*and-*), 'against, back':—*un-do*, *un-wind*, *un-lock*, *un-bind*, *un-bosom*, *un-earth*, *un-horse*, *un-man*. Intensive in *un-loose*.

Un- (*un-*) 'not':—*un-true*, *un-ready*, *un-gracious*,* *un-feigned*,* *un-toll*,[2] *un-rest*, *un-wisdom*. The form without the prefix is obsolete or non-existent in *un-couth*, *un-gainly*, *un-ruly*.

With-, 'against, back' (cf. 'to fight *with*'):—*with-stand*, *with-draw*, *with-hold*.

TEUTONIC SUFFIXES.

I. NOUN SUFFIXES.

53. Suffixes denoting the Agent or the Instrument of an action.

-ard (*hard*), intensive, and hence often depreciative:—*drunk-ard*, *dull-ard*, *lagg-ard*, *slugg-ard*, *nigg-ard*, *dot-ard*, *dast-ard* (from *dazed*), *bast-ard*, *cow-ard*, *wiz-ard*, *poni-ard*, *stand-ard*.

-er, -ar, -or, -ier, -yer:—*speak-er*, *steam-er*, *shutt-er*, *biograph-er*,* *London-er*, *begg-ar*, *li-ar*, *sail-or*,[3] *glaz-ier*, *coll-ier* (from *coal*), *court-ier*,* *hos-ier*, *law-yer*, *saw-yer*.

[1] Wrongly spelt *forego*, *forefend*, *foregather*, *forespent*, from confusion with the prefix *fore-*, found in *fore-going*, *fore-gone*, as in 'a *foregone* conclusion,' a conclusion that *goes* or is arrived at *before* examination of the evidence.

[2] Passive Participles with prefix *un-* are often ambiguous: thus *un-bound* may mean either 'not bound' (adj., with prefix *un-*) or 'released' (p.p. of *un-bind*, with prefix *and-*); *un-said* may mean either 'not said' or 'retracted.'

[3] The form *sail-er* is applied to a ship, as 'She is a good *sailer*.'

-el, -le :—*shov-el, runn-el, cripp-le* (from *creep*), *bund-le* (from *bind*), *gird-le, brid-le* (from *braid*), *sti-le, steep-le, sett-le* (from *seat*), *thimb-le* (from *thumb*), *shutt-le* (from *shoot*).

-ster :—*spin-ster, huck-ster* (old masc., *hawk-er*), *song-ster, malt-ster, young-ster, team-ster, tap-ster, trick-ster.*

NOTE.—Depreciative in *rhyme-ster* (cf. rhym-*er*), *game-ster, pun-ster.* Compare the Romanic suffix *-aster*, as in *poet-aster, critic-aster.*

-ter, -ther, -der :—*daugh-ter, fa-ther, mo-ther, fea-ther, wea-ther, spi-der* (spin-der), *ru(d)-der* (from *row*).

-nd, old pres. part. ending :—*fie-nd, frie-nd, husba-nd, erra-nd, wi-nd.*

-monger, 'dealer,' lit. *mingler* :—*fish-monger, iron-monger, coster-monger, crotchet-monger, grievance-monger.*

-wright, 'maker, workman' :—*wheel-wright, play-wright.*

54. Suffixes denoting State or Condition.

-dom (doom) :—*free-dom, wis-dom, martyr-dom, king-dom, thral-dom, Christen-dom* * (Christian-dom), *heathen-dom.*

-hood, -head :—*man-hood, neighbour-hood, priest-hood,* * *god-head.*

-ing, forming verbal nouns :—*bless-ing, read-ing.*

-lock, -ledge :—*wed-lock, know-ledge.*

-ness :—*dark-ness, good-ness, useful-ness,* * *wit-ness, nothing-ness.*

-red :—*hat-red, kind-red.*

-ship, -scape (shape) :—*friend-ship, hard-ship, lord-ship, wor-ship* (worth-ship), *land-scape.*

-th, -t :—*dear-th* (dear), *wid-th* (wide), *heal-th* (hale) *slo-th* (slow), *dea-th* (die), *bir-th* (bear), *ru-th* (rue), *you-th* (young), *drough-t* (dry), *heigh-t* (high) and *high-th, drif-t* (drive), *draugh-t* (drag), *gif-t* (give), *migh-t* (may).

55. Suffixes forming Diminutives.

-el, -le :—*satch-el* (sack), *kern-el* (corn), *nav-el* (nave), *padd-le* (102), *thrott-le* (throat), *spark-le, speck-le.*

-er-el, -r-el (double suffixes) :—*cock-erel, pick-erel** (pike), *mong-rel** (ming-le).

-en :—*chick-en* (cock), *kitt-en* (cat).

-kin :—*lamb-kin, pip-kin* (pipe), *nap-kin.*

-l-ing (double suffix), **-ing**:—*duck-ling, dar-ling* (dear), *gos-ling* (goose), *bant-ling* (band), *strip ling, starve ling, fat-ling, weak-ling, first-ling, lord-ling, cage-ling,* nurse-ling, suckl-ing* (a little sucker), *seed-ling, sap-ling, farth-ing* (fourth). Depreciative in *wit-ling, hire-ling, world-ling, ground-ling, under-ling.*

-ock:—*hill-ock, bull-ock, humm-ock* (hump).

NOTE.—Softened into *-ie, -y*:—*bird-ie, lass-ie, bab-y, dadd-y.*

56. II. ADJECTIVE SUFFIXES.

-ed (p.p. suffix):—*ragg-ed, wretch-ed, feather-ed, left-hand-ed, seat-ed, money-ed.*

NOTE.—Adjectives in *-ed* must not be confused with participles in *-ed.* Thus in 'a *landed* (=possessing land) proprietor,' 'landed' is an adjective; in 'a *landed* (=disembarked) passenger,' *landed* is a participle.

-en, -n, 'belonging to,' 'made of':—*heath-en, wood-en, earth-en, silver-n.* Also a participle suffix:—*bound-en, molt-en, see-n.*

-fast, 'firm':—*stead-fast, shame-fast* (98).

-ful, 'full of':—*hope-ful, wil-ful, aw-ful, fret-ful.*

-ish, -sh, (*1*) 'with the quality of':—*fool-ish, wasp-ish, swin-ish, slav-ish,*[1] peev-ish, snapp-ish, thiev-ish.* (2) marks nationalities:—*Engl-ish, Wel-sh.* (3) 'somewhat':—*redd-ish, sweet-ish.*[2] (4) depreciative:—*book-ish, outland-ish, mann-ish* (cf. manly), *woman-ish* (cf. womanly), *child-ish*[1] (cf. child-like), *baby-ish,*[1] *monk-ish* (cf. monastic), *Rom-ish** (cf. Roman), *up(p)-ish.*

-less (*loose*), 'free from, without':—*fear-less, sense-less,* resist-less,* cease-less,* daunt-less.**

-ly (*like*):—*man-ly, slattern-ly, ghost-ly; good-ly, sick-ly, kind-ly, clean-ly, weak-ly.*

-some (*same*), 'with the quality of':—*win-some, noi-some** (annoy-some), *meddle-some, tire-some, glad-some, ful-some, whole-some, lis-som* (lithe-some), *buxom* (bow-some).

-ward, 'inclining to':—*west-ward, home-ward, for-ward* (fore), *way ward* (away), *fro-ward* (from), *awk-ward.*

-y, 'with the quality of':—*greed-y, clay(e)-y, health-y, blood-y, mood-y, gor-y, drear-y, sorr-y* (sore), *stick-y, sundr-y, wear-y.*

[1] Cf. 'serv-*ile*,' 'puer-*ile*,' 'infant-*ile*' (50).

[2] Cf. '*sub*-acid' (44).

57. III. VERB SUFFIXES.

-en, causative, forming transitive verbs:—*length-en*, *fright-en*, *hast-en*, *sweet-en*, *dead-en*, *fatt-en*, *sick-en*, *slack-en*, *embold-en*.*

-er, intensive or frequentative:—*hind-er* (behind), *ling-er* (long), *loit-er* (lout), *patt-er*, *wand-er* (wend), *hank-er* (hang), *blust-er* (blast), *tott-er* (tilt), *mutt-er* (mute), *spatt-er* (spot), *sputt-er* (spit), *stagg-er* (stake), *glimm-er* (gleam), *fritt-er* (fret), *flutt-er* (flit), *welt-er* (walk), *glitt-er* (glint).

-el, -le, -l, frequentative or diminutive:—

SIMPLE.	FREQUENTATIVE.	SIMPLE.	FREQUENTATIVE.
Cramp	crump-le	Scrape	scrabb-le
Curd	curd-le	Scribe	scribb-le*
Daze	dazz-le	Shove	shuff-le
Drag	dragg-le	Sniff	sniv-el
Draw	draw-l	Start	start-le
Drip	dribb-le	Stride	stradd-le
Fizz	fizz-le	Swathe	swadd-le
Game	gamb-le	Top	topp-le
Jog	jogg-le	Wade	wadd-le
Mist	mizz-le	Wag	wagg-le
Nest	nest-le	Wrest	wrest-le
Nip	nibb-le	Wring	wrang-le
Prate	pratt-le		

NOTE.—The imitative sounds *ba-ba*, *cack*, *gag*, *mum*, *tat*, give us *babb-le*, *cack-le* and *chuck-le*, *gigg-le*, *mumb-le*, *tatt-le* (cf. *tittle-tattle*).

58. OTHER VERBAL DERIVATIVES.

(*a*) Verbs are often formed from nouns by a modification of the vowel sound, or of the final consonant, or of both:—

NOUN.	VERB.	NOUN.	VERB.
Bath	bathe	Glass	glaze
Breath	breathe	Grass	graze
Sheath	sheathe	Calf	calve
Cloth	clothe	Half	halve
Thief	thieve	Shelf	shelve
Wreath	wreathe	Strife	strive
Mouth	mou*th*	Bond	bind
Price	prize	Drop	drip
Hous*e*	house (*h*o*u*ze)	Hook	hitch
Mouse	mouse (*mou*ze)	Song	sing
Grease	grea*s*e (*g*rea*z*e)	Brood	breed
Use	use (uze)	(W)hole	heal

(*b*) Transitive or Causative verbs are sometimes formed from other verbs by a modification of the root vowel:—*fell* from *fall*, *set* from *sit*, *raise* from *rise*, *lay* from *lie*, *drench* from *drink*, *quell* from *quail*, *wend* from *wind*.

59. Latin Derivatives.

[The student will know the meaning of most of the English words given in these lists. He should learn to trace the ordinary modern sense of these words back to the meaning of the Latin or the Greek words from which they are derived. It will be a good exercise for him to add to the groups of derivatives given below.]

Ag-o, act-um, *set in motion*;
ag-ent, *amb-ig*-uous, *act*-ive.
Am-o, amat-um, *love*;
am-ity, in-*im*-ical, *amat*-eur.
Annus, *year*;
annu-al, bi-*enn*-ial.
Aper-io, apert-um, *open*;
aper-ient, *Apr*-il, *apert*-ure.
Aud-io, audit-um, *hear*;
aud-ience, *audit*-or, in-*aud*-ible.

Cad-o, cas-um, *fall*;
cad-ence, ac-*cid*-ent oc-*cas*-ion.
Cæd-o, cæs-um, *cut*;
cæs-ura, con-*cise*, sui-*cide*.
Cand-eo, *glow* or *be bright*;
cand-le, *cand*-id, in-*cense*.
Can-o, cant-um, *sing*;
can-orous, *chant*, re-*cant*;
Cap-io, capt-um, *take*;
cap-able, *capt*-ive, ex-*cept*.
Caput, *head*;
capit-al, *capt*-ain, *corp*-oral (noun).
Ced-o, cess-um, *go, yield*;
ac-*cede*, ac-*cess*, de-*cease*.
Cern-o, cret-um, *sift, judge*;
dis-*cern*, dis-*creet*, de-*cree*.
Claud-o, claus-um, *shut*;
ex-*clude*, *clause*, *clos*-et.
Col-o, cult-um, *tend, till*;
col-ony, *cult*-ivate, *cult*-ure.
Cur-a, *care*;
ac-*cur*-ate, *cur*-ator, se-*cure*.
Curr-o, curs-um, *run*;
curr-ency, *curs*-ory, suc-*cour*.

Dic-o, dict-um, *say*;
dict-ate, *dict*-ion, inter-*dict*.
Dies, *day*; **diurn-us**, *daily*;
di-ary, *journ*-al, ad-*journ*.
D-o, dat-um, *give*;
ad-*d*, *dat*-ive, e-*dit*.
Duc-o, duct-um, *lead*;
ad-*duce*, re-*duct*-ion, con-*duit*.

Em-o, empt-um, *take, buy*;
red-*eem*, ex-*empt*, pr-*ompt*.

Ens, esse, *being, be*; **est**, *it is*;
abs-*ent*, *essent*-ial, inter-*est*.
E-o, it-um, *go*; **iens**, *going*;
amb-*it*-ion, amb-*ient*, per-*ish*.

Fac-io, fact-um, *make, do*;
face, bene-*fact*-or, of-*fice*.
Fer-o, lat-um, *bear, bring*;
con-*fer*, re-*late*, super-*lat*-ive.
Fid-es, *trust*;
in-*fid*-el, af-*fi*-ance, de-*fy*.
For, fat-um, *speak*;
ne-*far*-ious, *fat*-al, in-*fant*.
Frang-o, fract-um, *break*;
frag-ment, *fract*-ion, in-*fringe*.
Fund-o, fus-um, *pour*;
re-*fund*, pro-*fus*-ion, con-*found*.

Gen-us, *race, kind*;
gen-ial, *gen*-eration, indi-*gen*-ous.
Grad-us, gress-us, *step*;
grad-ual, pro-*gress*, de-*gree*.
Grat-us, *pleasing, thankful*;
grat-itude, *grace*, a-*gree*.
Grav-is, *heavy*;
grav-ity, ag-*grav*-ate, *grief*.
Grex (=**greg-s**), *flock*;
ag-*greg*-ate, e-*greg*-ious.

Hab-eo, habit-um, *have*;
hab-iliment, *habit*, ex-*hibit*.
Hosp-es, gen. **hospit-is**, *host*;
hospit-al, *hot*-el, *ost*-ler.

Jac-eo, *lie*;
ad-*jacent*, *gist*.
Jac-io, ject-um, *throw*;
e-*jac*-ulate, re-*ject*, ad-*ject*-ive.
Jung-o, junct-um, *join*;
ad-*join*, *junct*-ure, *joint*.

Leg-o, legat-um, *depute*;
leg-acy, de-*legate*, al-*lege*.
Leg-o, lect-um, *gather, read*;
leg-end, col-*lect*, di-*lig*-ent.
Lev-is, *light*;
lev-ity, al-*lev*-iate, re-*lief*.

Lig-o, **ligat**-um, *bind*;
lig-ament, ob-*ligat*-ion, *leag*-ue (alliance).
Loc-us, *place*;
loc-al, *loc*-ate, *loco*-motive.
Lu-o, **lut**-um, *wash*;
de-*lu*-ge, pol-*lute*, al-*lu*-vial.

Man-eo, **mans**-um, *stay*;
per-*man*-ent, *mans*-ion, re-*m*-nant.
Man-us, *hand*;
manu-facture, e-*man*-cipate, *main*-tain.
Merx (=**mercs**), *goods for sale*;
com-*merce*, *merch*-ant, *mark*-et.
Min-us, *less*;
min-or, *min*-ute, di-*min*-ish.
Mitt-o, **miss**-um, *send*;
ad-*mit*, *miss*-ionary, pro-*mise*.
Mod-us, *measure*;
mod-el, *mod*-ify, *mod*-est.
Mov-eo, **mot**-um, *move*;
re-*move*, com-*mot*-ion, re-*mote*.
Mun-us, gen. **muner**-is, *gift*;
com-*mune*, re-*muner*-ate, com-*mon*.

(G)Nasc-or, **(g)nat**-us, *to be born*;
nasc-ent, *nat*-ural, co-*gnate*.
Nav-is, *ship*;
nav-y, *nau*-tical, *nau*-tilus.
Noc-eo, *hurt*;
in-*noc*-ent, *nox*-ious, *nuis*-ance.
(G)Nosc-o, **(g)not**-um, *know*, *mark*;
co-*gnosc*-ence, de-*note*, *no*-ble.

Ol-eo, *smell*; **od**-or, *a smell*;
ol-factory, red-*ol*-ent, *od*-our.
Ol-esco, **olet**-um, **ult**-um, *grow*;
ab-*ol*-ish, obs-*olete*, ad-*ult*.
Or-ior, **ort**-um, *arise*;
or-iental, ab-*ort*-ive, *or*-igin.
Os, gen. **or**-is, *mouth*;
os-culate, *or*-al, *or*-ifice.

Pand-o, **pass**-um, *spread*;
ex-*pand*, com-*pass*, *pace*.
Par, *equal*;
pair, *peer*, um-*pire*.
Par-io, **part**-um, *bring forth*;
par-ent, *part*-urition, vi-*per*.
Par-o, **parat**-um, *get ready*;
par-ade, ap-*parat*-us, pre-*pare*.
Pars, gen. **part**-is, *part*, *share*;
part-ial, *parse*, pro-*port*-ion.
Pend-o (-eo), **pens**-um, *weigh*, *hang*;
ex-*pend*, dis-*pense*; de-*pend*, sus-*pense*.

Pes, gen. **ped**-is, *foot*;
bi-*ped*, centi-*pede*, ex-*ped*-ient.
Pet-o, **petit**-um, *aim at*, *ask for*;
im-*pet*-uous, *petit*-ion, com-*pete*.
Plic-o, **plicat**-um, } *fold*;
Plect-o, **plex**-um, }
ap-*plic*-ant, ap-*plicat*-ion, ex-*plic*-it; com-*plex*, sim-*ple*, im-*ply*.
Pon-o, **posit**-um, *place*;
op-*pon*-ent, de-*posit*, *post*.
Pos-sum, **pot**-ens, *to be able*;
pos-sible, *pot*-ential.
Pret-ium, *price*;
prec-ious, *prize* (verb).
Prehend-o, **pre(he)ns**-um, *take*;
com-*prehend*, ap-*prehens*-ive, *prison*, *prize* (noun).
Pung-o, **punct**-um, *prick*;
ex-*punge*, *punct*-uate, *point*.
Put-o, **putat**-um, *cut*, *think*;
am-*putate*; re-*pute*, co-*unt*.

Quær-o, **quæsit**-um, *seek*;
query, ex-*quisite*, in-*quest*.
Quatuor, **quadr**-a, *four*, *square*;
quart, *quadr*-ant, s-*quadr*-on.

Rap-io, **rapt** um, *snatch*;
rap-id, *rapt*-ure, sur-*rept*-itious.
Reg-o, **rect**-um, *rule*;
reg-al, cor-*rect*, *reig*-n.
Rog-o, **rogat**-um, *ask*;
pro-*rog*-ue, inter-*rogate*.
Rot-a, *wheel*;
rot-ate, *ro*-und, *rc*-ll.
Rump-o, **rupt**-um, *break*;
rupt-ure, *route*, *rout*, *rote*.

Sal-io, **salt**-um, *leap*;
sal-ient, as-*sault*, re-*sult*.
Scrib-o, **script**-um, *write*;
de-*scribe*, post-*script*, *scrib*-ble.
Sec-o, **sect**-um, *cut*;
seg-ment, *sect*-ion, *sick*-le.
Sed-eo, **sess**-um, *sit*;
sed-iment, *sess*-ion, re-*side*.
Sent-io, **sens**-um, *feel*;
con-*sent*, non-*sense*, s(c)*ent*.
Sequ-or, **secut**-um, *follow*;
con-*sequ*-ent, per-*secute*, *sect*.
Sign-um, *sign*;
de-*sign*, *sign*-ify, *sign*-al.
Solv-o, **Sölut**-um, *loosen*;
ab-*solve*, ab-*solute*, *solu*-ble.
Spec-io, **spect**-um, *see*;
spec-ies, re-*spect*, sus-*pic*-ion.

Spir-o, **spirit**-um, *breathe*;
con-*spire*, in-*spirit*, ex-(*s*)*pire*.
Spond-eo, **spons**-um, *promise*;
re-*spond*, re-*spons*-ible, *spouse*.
St-o, **stat**-um, *stand*;
con-*stant*, *state*, in-*stit*-ute.
String-o, **strict**-um, *bind*;
a-*string*-ent, re-*strict*, *strait*.
Stru-o, **struct**-um, *build*;
in-*stru*-ment, con-*struct*, de-*stroy*.
Surg-o, **surrect**-um, *rise*;
in-*surg*-ent, re-*surrect*-ion, *source*.

Tang-o, **tact**-um, *touch*;
tang-ible, con-*tact*, con-*tag*-ious.
Tend-o, **tens**-um, *stretch*;
at-*tend*, in-*tense*, por-*tent*.
Ten-eo, **tent**-um, *hold*;
ten-ant, re-*tent*-ive, con-*tain*.
Ter-o, **trit**-um, *rub*;
con-*trite*, de-*tri*-ment.
Test-or, **testat**-um, *witness*;
de-*test*, in-*test*-ate, *testa*-ment.

Torqu-eo, **tort**-um, *twist*;
dis-*tort*, *tort*-ure, *tor*-ment.
Trah-o, **tract**-um, *draw*;
con-*tract*, en-*treat*, por-*tray*, *trace*, *train*.

Val-eo, *to be well*;
val-id, pre-*vail*, *val*-ue.
Ven-io, **vent**-um, *come*;
a-*ven*-ue, ad-*vent*, super-*vene*.
Vert-o, **vers**-um, *turn*;
con-*vert*, di *verse*, di-*vorce*.
Via, *way*;
de-*vi*-ate, pre-*vi*-ous, en-*voy*.
Vid-eo, **vis**-um, *see*;
e-*vid*-ence, *vis*-ion, en-*vy*, sur-*vey*.
Voc-o, **vocat**-um, *call*;
voc-al, ad-*vocate*, pro-*voke*.
Volv-o, **volut**-um, *roll*;
re-*volve*, re-*volut*-ion, *vol*-ume.
Vov-eo, **vot**-um, *vow*;
a-*vow*, de-*vote*, de-*vout*.

60. GREEK DERIVATIVES.

Anthropo-s, *man*;
anthropo-logy, mis-*anthrope*.
Arch-o, *to be before*;
mon-*arch*, *arch*-aism, *arch*-ives.
Aster, *star*;
aster-isk, *astro*-nomy, dis-*aster*.

Ball-o, *throw*;
sym-*bol*, pro-*blem*, para-*ble*.
Bio-s, *life*;
bio graphy, amphi-*bi*-ous.

Ceno-s, *empty*;
ceno-taph.
Chron-os, *time*;
chrono-logy, *chron*-icle.
Cosm-os, *order*, *world*;
cosm-etic, *cosmo*-polite.
Crat-os, *power*;
demo-*crat*, aristo-*crac*-y.
Cris is, *judgment*, **crit**-es, *a judge*;
crisis, *crit*-ic, hypo-*crite*.
Crypt-os, *concealed*;
crypt, apo-*cryph*-a.
Cycl-os, *round*;
cycle, en-*cyclo*-pædia.

Dem-os, *people*;
demo-crat, epi-*dem*-ic.
Dox-a (=**dogs**-a), *opinion*;
ortho-*dox*, *dog*-matic.
Dynam-is, *force*;
dynam-ics, *dynas*-ty.

Erg-on, *work*;
en-*erg*-y, lit-*urg*-y, s-*urg*-eon.

Ge, *the earth*;
ge-ology, *ge*-ometry, apo-*gee*.
Gon-ia, *angle*;
dia-*gon*-al, hexa-*gon*.
Graph-o, ge-**gramm**-enos, *write*;
bio-*graph*-y, epi-*gram*, *gram*-mar.

Hedr-on, *seat*;
poly-*hedron*, cath-(*h*)*edr*-al.
Hod-os, *way*;
meth-(*h*)*od*, peri-*od*, epi-*ode*.[1]
Hydor, *water*;
hydro-statics, *hydr*-ant.

Idio-s, *peculiar*;
idio-t, *idio*-m, *idio*-syncrasy.

[1] This *-ode* must be distinguished from the *-ode* of *cp-ode* below.

Leg-o, *speak*, **log**-os, *word*;
dia-*lect*, *log*-ic, ana-*log*-y.
Lith-os, *stone*;
litho-graph, mono *lith*.
Lysis, *a loosening*;
ana *lysis*, para-*lyse*, pa-*lsy*.

Mechan-é, *a contrivance*;
machine, *mechan*-ic.
Metr-on, *measure*;
metre, geo-*metr*-y, baro-*meter*.

Neo-s, *new*;
neo-logy, *neo*-phyte.
Nom-os, *law*;
astro-*nom*-y, eco-*nom*-y.

Od-é, *song*;
ep-*ode*, par-*od*-y, pros-*od*-y.
Oik-os, *house*;
eco-nomy, *di-oc*-ese.
Onom-a, *name*;
an *onym*-ous, syn-*onym*.
Opsis, *sight*;
syn-*opsis*, *opt*-ical.

Pais, gen. **paid**-os, *boy*;
ped agogue, *pæd*-o-baptist.
Path-os, *suffering*;
sym-*path*-y, *path*-etic.
Phain-o, *appear*;
phan-tasy, *phen*-omenon, *phase*.
Phem-i, *say*;
blas-*pheme*, eu-*phem*-ism.
Pher o, *carry*;
meta-*phor*, phos-*phor*-us.
Phil-eo, *love*;
phil anthropy, *philo* logy.
Phys-is, *nature*;
phys-ical, neo-*phyte*.
Phon-é, *sound*;
sym-*phon*-y, *phon*-etic.
Poi-eo, *make*;
po-et, *po*-esy, onomato *poei*-a.

Polis, *city*;
polic-e, cosmo-*poli*-te.
Pous, gen. **pod**-os, *foot*;
anti-*pod*-es, tri-*pod*, poly-*pus*.
Por os, *passage*;
por-ous, em-*por*-ium.
Prot-os, *first*;
proto-plasm, *proto*-type.
Psych-é, *soul*;
psycho-logy, metem *psych*-osis.

Rhe-o, **rheu**-somai, *flow*;
rheu-matics, dia-r-*rhœa*.

Skop-eo, *watch*;
tele-*scope*, epi-*scop*-al, bi-*shop*.
Soph-os, *wise*;
soph ism, philo-*soph*-er.
Stell-o, *send*;
apo-*stle*, epi-*stle*.
Stich-os, *verse*;
di *stich*, aero-*stic*.
Stroph é, *a turning*;
apo-*strophe*, cata-*strophe*.

Techn-é, *art*;
techn-ical, pyro-*techn*-ics.
Ti-them-i, **thes**-is, *put, placing*;
theme, hypo-*thesis*.
Theo-s, *god*;
theo-logy, *the*-ist, apo-*the*-osis.
Tom-é, *a cutting*;
ana-*tom* y, a-*tom*, *tome*.
Ton-os, *a stretching, a note*;
ton-ic, mono *ton*-ous.
Top-os, *place*;
top-o graphy, *top*-ic.
Trop é, *a turning*;
trop ic, helio-*trope*.
Typ os, *pattern*;
typ-ical, stereo-*type*.

Zoo n, *animal*;
zoo-logy, *zoo*-phyte, zo diac.

Compound Words.

61. Two classes.

A. **Syntactical** compounds; in which the parts are connected according to some rule of syntax. Thus in the compound *free-man*, the adjective *free* goes with the noun *man* to qualify it; and in *hair's-breadth*, the possessive case *hair's* regularly precedes the noun *breadth*, which it defines.

B. Juxtapositional compounds; in which the parts are formed into one word by juxtaposition. Thus, in the compound *post-man*, the two nouns *post* and *man* are made into one word by being placed side by side; and in *hair-breadth*, the two nouns *hair* and *breadth* are placed together, and so form one word without any possessive inflexion to connect them.

A. SYNTACTICAL COMPOUNDS.

62. I. A Verb followed by its Object:—*tell-tale, scare-crow, pick-pocket, cut-throat, ward-robe, break-fast, break-water, dare-devil, stop-gap, pass-port, turn-key, spend-thrift, make-shift.*

NOTE.—The above are all nouns; but *lack-lustre*, as in 'a *lack-lustre* eye,' is an adjective, and so generally are *catch-penny* and *do-little*. Other nouns are *scape-grace*, one who has *escaped grace*, a wild graceless fellow; *skin-flint*, a man niggardly enough to try to *skin* a *flint*-stone; *turn-coat*, one who *turns* or changes his *coat*, *i.e.*, who lightly abandons his principles or his party; *turn-screw* (cf. *screw-driver*, 69). *Vouchsafe*, 'to *vouch* or warrant as *safe*, to guarantee, to grant,' is a Verb followed by an Adjective.

63. II. (*a*) An Adjective followed by a Noun which it qualifies:—*black-bird, broad-sword, broad-side, free-thinker, free-trade, long-run, vain-glory, short-hand, plain-dealing, double-dealing, dead-letter, hoar-frost, hard-ware, quick-sand, lay-man, ill-luck, mad-man, safe-conduct.*

NOTE.—The above are nouns; *common-place* and *every-day* are adjectives. *Live-stock* is short for *alive-stock*, the animals on a farm. *Wild-goose* occurs in the phrase 'a *wild-goose* chase,' *i.e.*, a vain pursuit. *Free-hold* (cf. *strong-hold*) is property *held free* of duty or rent. A *brown-study* is a fit of absent-mindedness. A *deaf-mute* is one who is both *deaf* and *mute* or dumb. To eat *humble-pie* is to submit to humiliation.

(*b*) A Present Participle followed by a Noun which it qualifies:—*humming-bird, flying-fish, fighting-man, loving-kindness, sliding-scale, finishing-stroke, rising-ground.* These compounds must be carefully distinguished from those in 73.

NOTE.—In some instances the participial ending is omitted for the sake of brevity:—*spring-tide* (for *springing-tide*), *leap-year, force-pump* (also *forcing-pump*), *slip-knot, screech-owl, fly-leaf, fly-wheel, jog-trot, leap-frog, draw-bridge, catch-word, turn-pike, turn-stile, scatter-brain.*

(*c*) A Past Participle followed by a Noun which it qualifies. Here, in all instances, the participial ending is omitted:—*drift-wood* (for *drifted-wood*), *lock-jaw, char-coal* (charred-coal), *clasp-knife, rack-rent, mince-meat, crack-brain* (adj.), *skim-milk, pull-bread.*

NOTE.—*Foster-child* (*fostered-child*) is a child that is *fostered* or nursed by one who is not its parent. *Hang-dog* (*hanged-dog*) is an adjective, as in 'a *hang-dog* look.' *Hear-say* (what is *heard said*) is a noun derived from the verb 'to hear-say' (cf. *make-believe*, verb and noun).

64. **III.** A Noun in the possessive case followed by another Noun which it defines (the apostrophe of the possessive being sometimes omitted and sometimes retained):—*lands-man, herds-man, sports-man, crafts-man, gowns-man, guards-man, kins-man, helms-man, oars-man, hunts-man, states-man, brakes-man, swords-man, clans-man, cox-comb* (cock's-comb), *dooms-day, fools-cap, harts-horn, fuller's-earth, stone's-throw, king's evil, heart's-ease, hair's-breadth, king's-bench.*

NOTE.—A *marks-man* is a *man* who can hit the *mark*, a good shot. A *draughts-man* is a *man* who makes a *draught* or drawing of places and designs. *Steers-man* is the *man* of the *steer* or rudder. A *heads-man* is an executioner. A *death's-head* is a skull. A *fool's-errand* is an *errand* on which one would send a *fool*, a foolish errand. A *cat's-paw* is one who is the dupe or tool of another. A '*bird's-eye* view' is a general, expansive view. *Child's-play* is easy work or a trifling matter.

65. **IV.** An Adverb (or an Adjective used adverbially) followed by a Participle or an Adjective, which it modifies:—*far-seeing, far-fetched, wide-spread, long-suffering, ill-looking, full-blown, base-born, in-born, thorough-bred, strait-laced,*[1] *so-called, high-fed, all-wise, bitter-sweet, dead-ripe, luke-warm, red-hot, half-blind, fool-hardy* (*foolish-hardy*, rash).

66. **V.** (*a*) A Verb or a Noun followed by an Adverb which modifies it:—*run-away, stow-away, cast-away* (cf. out-cast, 75), *gad-about, stand-still, look-out* (cf. out-look), *go-between, break-down, break-up, breaking-up, turn-out* (cf. out-turn), *set-off* (cf. off-set) *lock-up, draw-back, hold-fast, stay-at-home, fare-well, passer-by, hanger-on, looker-on* (cf. on-looker, 74).

NOTE.—The above are nouns; *tumble-down* (as in 'a *tumble-down* cottage', and *knock-down* (as in 'a *knock-down* blow') are adjectives. *Keep-sake* means something that is given one to *keep* for the *sake* of the giver. A *stand-by* is a person or thing that *stands by* one; a ready, timely resource.

(*b*) A Noun followed by an Adjective which qualifies it:—*hand-ful, spoon-ful, help-meet, knight-errant, court-martial.*

67. **VI.** A Preposition followed by its Object:—*over-land* (adj. and adv.), *over-board* (adv.), *behind-hand* (adv.), *out-law* (noun), *out-door* (adj.), *out-of-doors* (adv.), *after-noon* (noun), *under-graduate* (noun).

NOTE.—We say 'a walk *up-hill*' (adv.); but 'an *up-hill* (adj. = difficult) task.'

[1] Such compounds must be carefully distinguished from those in 77. Thus in *well-armed*, 'armed' is a p.p.; but in *long-armed*, 'armed' is an adjective. Cf. 56, *note*.

B. JUXTAPOSITIONAL COMPOUNDS.

I. Nouns.

68. A Noun preceded by another Noun which defines it:—*lamp-oil*, oil for a lamp; *oil-lamp*, a lamp for oil; *sun-stroke*, *sea-man* (cf. *lands-man*, **64**), *place-man*, *man-servant*, *crown-prince*, *field-piece*, *pay-master*, *elbow-room*, *horse-power*, *foot-fall*, *mother-wit*, *key-note*, *whole-sale*, *arm-pit*, *bag-pipe*, *guide-post*, *winter-quarters*, *needle-gun*, *skeleton-key*, *hero-worship*, *home-thrust*, *master-piece*, *smart-money*, *safety-valve*, *table-talk*, *land-shark*, *jail-bird*, *steeple-chase*, *touch-stone*, *fire-escape*, *milk-sop*, *moon-shine*, *work-house*.

NOTE.—*Green-house* is a *house* for *greens* or plants; *poor-house* is a *house* for the *poor*; *sick-nurse* is a *nurse* for the *sick*. *Name-sake* (cf. *keep-sake*, **66**, *note*) means one whose *name* has been given him for the *sake* of another, and then one bearing the same name as another. *Wood-cut* is a *cut* or engraving on *wood*. *Pit-fall* is a *fall* by means of a *pit*, and so a pit dug for animals to fall into. *Wind-fall* is a *fall* (of fruit from a tree) caused by the *wind*, and so the fallen fruit itself; then used of property gained unexpectedly. *God-send* is something *sent* by *God*, an unexpected piece of good fortune.

69. A Noun followed by another Noun which governs it:—*snake-charmer*, *shoe-maker*, *bread-winner*, *ring-leader*, *house-holder*, *star-gazer*, *rate-payer*, *stock-broker*, *care-taker*, *sooth-sayer*, *time-server*, *way-farer*, *church-goer*, *globe-trotter*, *land-grabber*, *slave-driver*, *grass-hopper*, *body-guard*, *pain-killer*, *screw-driver*, *life-preserver*, *pen-wiper*.

NOTE.—*Shoe-black* is one who *blacks* or polishes *shoes*. *Shop-lifter* is one who *lifts* or steals from a *shop* (cf. *cattle-lifter*). *Rough-rider* is a *rider* of *rough* or untrained horses.

70. A Noun followed by a Verbal Noun which governs it:—*snake-charming*, *sooth-saying*, *star-gazing*, *bull-baiting*, *deer-stalking*, *wool-gathering*.

NOTE.—*Blood-shed* (blood-shedding) and *man-slaughter* come under this head.

71. A Noun followed by a present Participle or by an Adjective which governs it:—*rate-paying*, *time-serving*, *care-charming*, *heart-rending*, *self-sacrificing*, *ear-piercing*, *note-worthy*, *lamb-like*.

72. A Noun preceded by a Pronoun which defines it:—*he-goat*, *she-devil*, *self-will*.

73. A Noun preceded by a Verbal Noun which defines it:—*washing-stand* (a *stand* for *washing*), *laughing-stock*, *dressing-case*, *skipping-rope*, *whipping-post*, *spelling book*, *battering-ram*, *stepping-stone*, *playing-card*, *working-day* (and work-day), *walking-stick*, *drawing-room* (**101**), *landing-place*, *leading-strings*, *stumbling-block*, *stalking-*

horse, praying-wheel. These compounds must be carefully distinguished from those in 63, (*b*).

NOTE.—In some instances *-ing* is omitted for the sake of brevity:—*grind-stone* for *grinding-stone*, *tread-mill* for *treading-mill* (a *mill* worked by the *treading* of prisoners' feet); *wash-house, bake-house, store-house, blow-pipe, hush-money* (*money* given for the *hushing* up or concealment of anything), *pitch-fork, ram-rod, spy-glass, stand-point* (cf. *starting-point, turning-point*, point where a decided change begins), *peep-show, row-boat, guess-work, go-cart.*

74. A Noun preceded by an Adverb which modifies it:—*under-wood, under-lip, under-tone, after-piece, after-thought, counter-charm, fore-finger, fore-sight, in-sight, over-load, by-path, by-stander, on-looker* [cf. looker-on, 66, (*a*)], *out-patient, down-fall.*

75. A Verb (with the force of a noun) preceded by an Adverb which modifies it:—*out-put, out-let, out-fit, out-cry, out-cast, out-lay, out-turn* [cf. turn-out, 66, (*a*)], *out-look* (cf. look-out), *off-set* (cf. set-off), *up-start. Well-being* and *short-coming* are similar compounds.

II. Adjectives.

76. An Adjective (or a Participle) preceded by a Noun. In these the first part is adverbial to the second, and may represent—

(1) Cause, agency:—*thunder-struck*, struck by thunder; *sea-sick*, sick because of the sea's motion; *home-sick*, sick through thoughts of home; *wind-bound, purse-proud, moth-eaten, frost-bitten, woe-begone, priest-ridden, hen-pecked* (with verb *hen-peck*), *land-locked, weather-beaten.*

(2) Measure:—*knee-deep*, as deep as to reach the knee; *ankle-deep, world-wide, year-old, breast-high.*

(3) Manner:—*blood-red*, red like blood; *pitch-dark, clay-cold, stone-blind, sky-blue, milk-white, nut-brown, sea-green, jet-black, dog-weary.*

(4) Locality or point of Reference:—*heart-sick*, sick at heart; *top-heavy, tongue-tied, crest-fallen, thread-bare, foot-sore, head-strong, weather-wise, fire-proof, water-tight, sea-worthy, time-honoured, home-keeping, blood-thirsty, colour-blind, post-free, peace-ful.*

77. A Noun preceded by an Adjective or by a Noun used adjectivally:—*bare-foot, blind-fold, two-fold, two-penny, two-horse.*[1] In modern English these compounds usually take the ending *-ed*:—*bare-footed, narrow-minded, public-spirited, hook-nosed, eagle-eyed,*

[1] These earlier compounds are, in their formation, syntactical; they are placed here on account of their parallelism with the later and more numerous compounds of a like nature.

beetle-browed, *hump-backed* (with noun *hump-back*), *cross-grained*, *one-sided*, *ivy-mantled*. These compounds must be carefully distinguished from those in 65.

NOTE.—We say *four-footed* when speaking of animals; but 'a *four-foot* rule,' 'a *three-foot* stool.' *Long-lived* is formed from *long* and *life*, and not from the verb *live*, just as *ill-wived* is formed from *ill* and *wife* (cf. *live-long* for *life-long*, *live-ly* for *life-ly*). *Bare-faced* (shameless), *double-faced* (deceitful), *stiff-necked* (obstinate), *close-fisted* (miserly), *foul-mouthed* (addicted to bad language) are almost always used figuratively; similarly *light-fingered* often means 'thievish.' *Cold-blooded* has two meanings, as in 'a cold-blooded animal' and 'a cold-blooded murder.' *Knock-kneed* is for *knocking-kneed*, having knees that knock together. *New-fangled* is a corruption of *new-fangle*, fond of what is new. A *half-blood* is a *half-blooded* person, one of mixed race. *Hair-brained* is a misspelling for *hare-brained*.

III. Verbs.

78. A Verb preceded by an Adverb:—*cross-question* (or *cross-examine*), to *question* a person *across* or on all sides of a subject; *over-come*, *over-hear*, *fore-tell*, *fore-warn*, *back-slide*, *under-go*, *under-write*, *in-fold*, *in-trench*, *out-vote*, *out-bid*, *half-drown*.

79. A Verb preceded by an Adjective, which points to the result of the verbal action:—*white-wash*, to *wash* so as to make *white*; *rough-hew*, to *hew* (wood) so that it remains *rough*; *clear-starch*, *ful-fil*, *safe-guard*, *rough-shoe*.

80. A Verb preceded by a Noun: *back-bite*, *brow-beat*, *hood-wink*, *way-lay*, *slave-drive*, *star-gaze*.

NOTE.—*Back-bite* is to *bite* a person at the *back*, *i.e.*, to speak evil of him in his absence; *brow-beat* is to *beat* a person with one's *brow*, *i.e.*, to frown him down; *hood-wink* is to make a person *wink* or close his eyes by covering him with a *hood*, hence, to deceive him; *way-lay* is to *lie* in the *way* for, to lie in ambush for.

81. **Phrase Compounds** are phrases the words of which are connected by hyphens:—*so-and-so* (noun), *good-for-nothing* (adj.), *well-to-do* (adj.), *forget-me-not* (noun), *would-be* (adj.), *penny-a-liner* (noun). Most of these are made up of a Noun followed by a Preposition with its Noun, which together describe the first noun:—*man-of-war*, *coat-of-arms*, *jack-o'-lantern*, *cat-o'-nine-tails*, *will-o'-the-wisp*, *light-o'-love*, *ticket-of-leave*, *mother-of-pearl*, *note-of-hand*, *bill-of-exchange*, *line-of-battle* (adj.), *letter-of-marque*, *maid-of-all-work*, *Jack-of-all-trades*, *out-of-the-way* (adj.); *son-in-law*, *commander-in-chief*, *physician-in-ordinary*, *four-in-hand*, *baby-in-arms*, *love-in-idleness*; *man-at-arms*, *barrister-at-law*, *peace-at-any-price* (adj.).

NOTE.—'A *bread-and-butter* miss' is a young and inexperienced girl; 'a *cat-and-dog* life' is a life full of quarrels; 'a *cock-and-bull* story' is a fictitious story; 'a *good-all-round* man' is a man who is clever at everything; 'a *ne'er-do-well*' is a worthless person.

82. Form of Compounds.—Compound words, as regards their form, may be divided into three classes:—

(1) Compounds in which the component parts are connected by a hyphen:—*bull-dog, heart-broken.*

NOTE.—In some compounds the parts are so loosely connected that they are often written separately without a hyphen between them, as *mother tongue, cannon ball, steam mill, bringing up, well known.* In many instances, however, a difference of meaning is caused by the insertion or the omission of the hyphen. Thus a *long boat* is a boat that is long, a *long-boat* is a special kind of boat; *red tape* means tape that is red; *red-tape* means official pedantry; a *man of war* is a soldier, a *man-of-war* is a line-of-battle ship. Similarly, a *red-coat* is a soldier; a *blue-jacket* is a sailor on a man-of-war; a *grey-beard* is an old man; a *blue-stocking* is a learned woman; a *slow-coach* is a slow person; a *bald-head* is a bald-headed person; a *short-horn* is a short-horned ox.

(2) Compounds in which the parts have become so closely connected by usage that they dispense with the hyphen:—*vineyard, passport, butterfly, sunstroke, midnight.*[1]

(3) Compounds in which the parts have become so closely connected that not only do they dispense with the hyphen, but a modification of one or both of the parts takes place:—*primrose* (prime rose), *pastime* (pass time), *bulrush* (bull rush), *holiday* (holy day), *handful* (hand full), *awful* (awe full), *purblind* (pure blind), *partake* (part take), *handsel* (hand sale).

83. Use of the Hyphen.—In Verbs compounded with prefixes the hyphen is sometimes retained (as in the Nouns *to-day, mid-day*[1]) in order to help the pronunciation:—(1) *react, reappear, reinvest, reinstate, reinvigorate, reiterate, reunion*; but *re-echo, re-open, re-enact, re-enforce* (but *reinforce*), *re-enter*, etc. (2) *coalesce, coerce, coeval, coincide*; but *co-heir, co-ally, co-ordinate, co-partner, co-operate.* (3) *preoccupy, preordain*; but *pre-eminent, pre-existent, pre-emption*; also *trans-ship.*

NOTE.—Observe the difference in meaning between *recollect* (remember) and *re-collect* (collect again); *recreation* (amusement) and *re-creation* (new creation); *recover* and *re-cover*; *recount* and *re-count*; *reform* and *re-form.*

HYBRIDS.

84. A Hybrid is a Secondary Derivative or a Compound word whose parts are derived from different languages. Thus:—

(*a*) in the Derivatives—

re-mind,	the stem is	Teutonic, the prefix is	Romanic.
un-seal,	,,	Romanic, ,,	Teutonic.
bond-age	,,	Teutonic, the suffix is	Romanic.
false-hood	,,	Romanic, ,,	Teutonic.

[1] The hyphen in *mid-day* and *to-day* shows that the parts are to be pronounced separately. We have both *tomorrow* and *to-morrow.* Numbers like *twenty-three, twenty-third,* take the hyphen.

(*b*) in the Compounds—

hand-kerchief,	the first part is	Teutonic,	the second part is	Romanic.	
heir-loom,	,, ,,	Romanic,	,, ,,	Teutonic.	
ic-icle,	,, ,,	Teutonic,	,, ,,	Keltic.	
cable-gram,	,, ,,	Romanic,	,, ,,	Greek.	

THE SIGNIFICANCE OF WORDS.

SYNONYMS.

85. Synonyms are words of the same grammatical class that have a similar, but not an identical, meaning.

Thus the group, *pride*, *vanity*, *conceit*, *arrogance*, *assurance*, *presumption*, *haughtiness*, *insolence*, are synonyms. They contain one general notion, but differ in the way in which they express it. This may be shown by the following sentences illustrating each :—

(*a*) He took a *pride* in his high birth and family connexions.

(*b*) He suspected that they were ridiculing him, and his *vanity* was wounded.

(*c*) He is very ignorant, but full of *conceit*, thinking that he knows a great deal.

(*d*) He treated the woman with great *arrogance*, asking her how such a poor creature as she was, dared contradict a man of wealth and position like himself.

(*e*) How can you have the *assurance*, after insulting me, to ask a favour at my hands?

(*f*) I had the *presumption* to dedicate to you a very unfinished work.

(*g*) He entered pompously, strutting and staring round upon those present with the utmost *haughtiness*.

(*h*) On my complaining to the man that he had beaten my dog without the slightest provocation, he replied, with great *insolence*, that he only wished it had been the cur's master instead.

From the above sentences we see that the *proud* man rates highly what he really possesses; the *vain* man is eager for the applause of others often on account of qualities he does not possess; the *conceited* man has an overweening opinion of his own abilities; the *arrogant* man has a supreme contempt for all who differ from him in any way; the man of *assurance* boldly puts forward his claim to what he has no right to expect; the *presuming* man will venture on doing things that others would shrink from doing; the *haughty* man betrays in his manners and deportment the pride that he feels; while the *insolent* man displays it by inflicting insult upon other people.

A group of synonyms may often be illustrated by single phrases, as *harmless, innocuous, innocent*:—

(*a*) a *harmless* lunatic.
(*b*) an *innocuous* drug.
(*c*) an *innocent* victim.

86. **Sketches of Synonyms.**—The difference of meaning in some of the more common synonyms is briefly sketched below. The student should illustrate these by forming sentences on the plan given above, or by bringing them into short pieces of written composition.

1. **Notorious, famous, illustrious, notable, renowned, noted.**—*Notorious* is always used in a bad sense; *noted* in either a good or a bad sense; the rest in a good sense. A man is *famous* or *renowned* for his achievements; *illustrious* from his high rank; *notable* for some special act; *notorious* for his crimes; and *noted* for his peculiarities.

2. **Observe, remark, notice.**—To *observe* is a general or continuous act, to *remark* is a special or single act. We *observe* a person's demeanour; we *remark* its peculiarities. To *notice* is to observe in a cursory way.

3. **Enormous, vast, huge, big, immense.**—*Enormous* means *out of rule*, and so is used of size or extent that is awkward or unpleasing; *vast* (from the same root as 'waste') refers to space; *huge* and *big* to bulk, *huge* being the stronger word; *immense* is that which cannot be measured.

4. **Import, sense, meaning.**—*Import* is the actual signification of words as they stand in a sentence. *Sense* is the possible signification which they might bear. *Meaning* is the signification intended by the writer. Hence, an author may declare his *meaning* to be so and so; his words may bear that *sense*; but such may not be their obvious *import*.

5. **Amusement, diversion, recreation.**—*Amusement* is that which occupies the vacant mind; *diversion* is that which *turns* the thoughts *aside* into a new direction; *recreation* is that which refreshes the mind after work. Thus, football supplies the players with *recreation*; the spectators with *amusement* in watching the game, and with *diversion* in seeing the ludicrous falls of some of the players.

6. **Timid, timorous, cowardly, dastardly.**—*Timid* applies to a person's state of mind or to his disposition; *timorous* only to his disposition; *cowardly* and *dastardly* are used alike of

character or conduct, *dastardly* implying also meanness. A *timid* man may, on certain occasions, be brave; a *cowardly* man never.

7. General, **universal.**—*General* means 'relating to a genus or whole class,' and is opposed to *special*, 'relating to a species.' A man wins *general* approbation when the community as a whole approves of his conduct, any particular individuals that may disapprove of it being left out of consideration. So that *general* may be said to include the greater part or number of anything; while *universal* includes every particular part. Pope is *generally*, Homer is *universally*, admired.

8. **Lie, falsehood, untruth, deception, fiction.**—These words are arranged in order according to the diminishing amount of censure they imply. *Lie* is an intentional violation of truth, and is a more offensive word than *falsehood*, which again may be softened down into *untruth*; a *deception* is often accidental, while a *fiction* is merely something invented or imagined.

9. **Discover, invent.**—We *discover* something that existed before, but was unknown; we *invent* new combinations. Columbus *discovered* America; Jansen *invented* the telescope.

10. **Dismay, daunt, appal.**—*Dismay* denotes a state of gloomy apprehension. A man is *daunted* by a sudden obstacle, he is *appalled* by what raises a sense of overwhelming terror.

11. **Glad, delighted, gratified, merry.**—*Delighted* expresses a stronger sense of pleasure than *glad*; while *gratified* implies that we owe our gladness to another; we show by our actions or bearing when we are *merry*.

12. **Give, confer, grant.**—*Give* is the general term; *confer* implies superior authority in the giver; we *grant* an answer to a petition.

13. **Habit, custom.**—*Habit* is the internal principle that prompts us to external action or *custom*. A *habit* of devotion leads to the *custom* of praying. But we say, 'He had a *habit* of doing so,' not *custom*; 'There was a *custom* among the Jews,' not *habit*.

14. **Transient, transitory, fleeting.**—*Transient* is short, even at the best; *transitory* is having the nature of *transient*; *fleeting* is actually passing away: as, 'To consider the *fleeting* hours of this *transitory* life made but a *transient* impression on his stubborn soul.'

15. **Liberty, freedom.**—*Liberty* implies previous constraint; *freedom*, absence of constraint at the present moment. A slave is set at *liberty*; his master has always possessed *freedom*.

16. **Liberal, generous, charitable.**—*Liberal* implies an absence of servile niggardliness; *generous*, nobleness of feeling, placing others before oneself; *charitable* points to the spirit of love or kindness in which an action is done.

17. **Sensuous, sensual, sensitive, sensible, sentient, sentimental.**—*Sensuous*, addressing the senses, is often used as a less objectionable form of *sensual*, which generally means voluptuous, lewd; *sensitive* is quick to take impressions; *sensible* is capable of taking them; *sentient* is having the faculty of feeling; *sentimental* is having an excess of feeling.

18. **Grave, sober, serious, solemn.**—*Grave*, because of weighty or important considerations; opposed to levity; *sober*, because of the absence of what exhilarates; opposed to flightiness; *serious*, because of reflection; opposed to sportiveness; *solemn*, because of something peculiar and rare, often with the idea of religious awe, as 'a *solemn* promise,' 'a *solemn* silence'; opposed to gaiety.

19. **Sympathy, compassion, pity, fellow-feeling.**—*Sympathy* is generally felt for our equals when in distress; *compassion* for our inferiors, with an effort to relieve them; *pity* does not imply any sense of connexion with the object pitied; we pity a condemned criminal; *fellow-feeling* implies this sense of connexion, and may refer to joyful as well as to sad circumstances.

20. **Leave, quit, forsake, desert, relinquish, renounce, abandon.**—To *leave* is the general term; we *leave* persons or things with the intention of returning; we *quit* or *abandon* things, and *forsake* or *desert* persons,—whereto we return no more; to *forsake* and to *desert* generally imply fault in the person who does so; to *relinquish* implies regret; to *renounce* is to leave in a formal or public manner; to *abandon* is to leave hopelessly and entirely.

21. **Trifling, trivial.**—A *trifling* matter is one merely of small importance; a *trivial* matter is a small matter made too much of. *Trivial* implies contempt; *trifling* does not.

22. **Idle, lazy, negligent, indolent.**—*Idle* is opposed to busy; *lazy*, to alert; *negligent*, to diligent; *indolent*, to active. An *idle* man dislikes doing work; a *lazy* man dislikes taking trouble; a *negligent* man dislikes taking care; and an *indolent* man dislikes being roused or disquieted.

23. **Temporal, temporary.**—*Temporal* means relating to time, as opposed to eternity; *temporary* means lasting only for a time. The affairs of this world are *temporal*; our pleasure in looking at an eclipse of the moon is *temporary*.

24. **Silly, foolish, stupid, simple.**—*Silly* often denotes deficiency of intellect; *foolish*, an abuse of intellect. *Foolish* implies blame; *silly*, contempt; *stupid* expresses a cloudy perception of everything; *simple* implies a want of that quick-sightedness which comes from experience of the ways of the world or from natural shrewdness.

25. **Continuous, continual, perpetual, eternal.**—A *continuous* action is one that is uninterrupted as long as it lasts; *continual* is that which is constantly renewed and recurring, though interrupted. A storm of rain is *continuous*; a succession of showers is *continual*. *Perpetual* is that which is both continuous and lasting; as 'perpetual motion'; *eternal* is lasting through all the past as well as the future.

26. **Religious, pious, godly, devout, righteous.**—*Religious*, means scrupulous in one's conduct towards God; *pious* implies a reverence for what is good and a desire to do good; *godly* means endeavouring to be like God; *devout*, devoted to the worship and service of God; while *righteous* means upright and honest in one's dealings.

27. **Strict, severe.**—*Strict* is used of one who likes to keep closely to rules and regulations; *severe*, of one who keeps so close to them as to punish the slighest infringement.

28 **Permit, allow, suffer.**—To *permit* is to give a decided acquiescence; to *allow* is to abstain from refusal; to *suffer* is not to oppose a thing, though our feelings are against it. A schoolmaster may *suffer* a fault to pass unnoticed; may *allow* his scholars occasionally to talk in the class room; and *permit* their going out of the room.

29. **Command, injunction, order.**—*Command* is the loftier term, as in 'By command of the Queen'; an *injunction* comes from some superior authority, often as to general conduct; an *order* from some arranging or directing authority, as to particular acts. A servant receives *orders* to do something for his master, but *injunctions* to be careful and painstaking.

30. **Delightful, delicious.**—*Delightful* is applied both to the pleasures of the mind and to those of the senses, except taste;

delicious only to those of the senses. An excursion is *delightful*, a fruit is *delicious*.

31. **Character, reputation.**—*Character* is the sum of a man's qualities which *mark* him as good or bad; *reputation* is what people *think* of those qualities, as far as they know them. A dishonest man has a bad *character*; but if he manages to conceal his dishonesty, he may have a good *reputation*.

32. **Part, portion.**—*Part* is the general term; a *portion* is a part set aside for a special purpose. A friend may go *part* of the way home with you; a daughter receives a marriage *portion*.

33. **Sociable, social.**—*Sociable* means fitted for society; *social*, related to society: a *sociable* man; *social* science.

34. **Efficacious, efficient, effective, effectual.**—These all mean 'producing the desired result,' but differ slightly in their use. A patient, having received an *efficacious* remedy, which is found to be very *effective* in its working, from an *efficient* physician, is *effectually* cured.

35. **Confess, admit.**—*Confess* is a stronger expression than *admit*. We *confess* that we are wrong; we *admit* that we are mistaken.

36. **Stop, stay.**—To *stop* is to arrest motion; to *stay* is to remain when motion is arrested. A man may *stop* in the street to greet a friend; he may go and *stay* at his friend's house.

37. **Crime, vice, sin.**—*Crime* is a violation of the law of a country; *vice* is a violation of a moral law; *sin* is a violation of a religious law. Smuggling is a *crime*; idleness is a *vice*; unbelief is a *sin*.

38. **Passive, impassive, patient.**—*Passive* means doing nothing, because one has a capacity for endurance; *impassive* means doing nothing, because one's feelings are blunted. *Patient* refers to the mental condition. A man is *patient*, when he submits to a wrong without anger or repining; *passive*, when he submits to a wrong without resisting; *impassive*, when he submits to a wrong because he does not feel it.

39. **Simulate, dissimulate.**—To *simulate* is to pretend to be what you are not; to *dissimulate* (or *dissemble*) is to hide what you really are. A thief dressed up as a policeman practises *simulation*; a detective in plain clothes practises *dissimulation*.

40. **Visitor, visitant.**—*Visitor* is the common term; but we should speak of an angel as a celestial *visitant*, not *visitor*.

87. Groups of Synonyms without meanings attached are given below. It will be a useful exercise for the student to distinguish their meanings and illustrate them in short pieces of written composition.

1. Power, strength, force, authority.
2. Anger, vexation, annoyance, wrath, resentment.
3. Wisdom, learning, acquaintance, knowledge.
4. Unnatural, non-natural, preternatural, supernatural.
5. Jocose, funny, ludicrous, ridiculous, absurd.
6. Build, erect, construct.
7. Bravery, courage, gallantry, fortitude.
8. Deference, respect, reverence, veneration.
9. Frank, candid, ingenuous.
10. Timidity, shyness, bashfulness, diffidence.
11. Treachery, treason.
12. Useful, advantageous, expedient.
13. Hasty, premature, precipitate.
14. Pain, grief, sorrow, agony, anguish.
15. Authentic, genuine.
16. Comprehend, understand, apprehend.
17. Gentle, tender, kind, mild.
18. See, look, behold, discern, perceive.
19. Return, restore, surrender.
20. Dangerous, perilous, hazardous.
21. Compulsion, restraint, constraint.
22. Figure, emblem, symbol, type.
23. Occurrence, event, circumstance.
24. Superfluous, needless, unnecessary.
25. Obvious, clear, evident.
26. Tell, say, relate, recount, describe.
27. Customary, fashionable, conventional.
28. Accomplish, effect, execute, achieve.
29. Adversity, calamity, misery, tribulation.
30. Imagination, fancy.
31. Teach, instruct, inform, educate.
32. Civil, courteous, affable, polite.
33. Linger, loiter, stay.
34. Implacable, unrelenting, inexorable.
35. Secret, hidden, covert, tacit.
36. Sly, cunning, crafty, deceitful.
37. Avaricious, miserly, stingy, penurious.
38. Pardon, forgive, excuse.
39. Faith, belief, credulity.
40. Privacy, retirement, solitude, loneliness, desolation.
41. Envy, jealousy.
42. Autocrat, despot, tyrant, monarch.
43. Wit, humour.
44. Error, mistake, blunder.
45. Dexterity, address, skill, cleverness.
46. Bias, prepossession, prejudice.
47. Aversion, antipathy, dislike, hatred, repugnance.
48. Enemy, antagonist, adversary, opponent.
49. Reproof, reprimand, censure, remonstrance, reproach.

50. Distinguish, discriminate.
51. Person, individual, creature, being.
52. Savage, barbarian.
53. Size, bulk, volume.
54. Couple, pair.
55. Remember, recollect.
56. Truth, truism.
57. Truth, veracity.
58. Revenge, vengeance.
59. Exceptional, exceptionable.
60. Fatalism, fatality.
61. Vulgarism, vulgarity.
62. Communism, community.
63. Opportunity, occasion, juncture.
64. Ostensibly, apparently.
65. Deceptive, deceitful.
66. Disposal, disposition.
67. Degeneration, degeneracy.
68. Exposure, exposition.
69. Competitor, rival.
70. Posture, position.
71. Procedure, proceeding.
72. Ceremonious, ceremonial.
73. Sanatory, sanitary.

HOMONYMS.

88. **Homonyms** are words, in the same language, which, though distinct in origin and meaning, have the same form and sound. Thus *date*, a point of time, is derived from the Latin *datum*, given; whereas *date*, the fruit, comes from the Greek *daktulos*, a finger. Similarly, there are three *barks*, all of different meaning and derivation: thus, *bark*, a ship, is from Low Latin *barca*, a sort of ship; the *bark* of a tree is from the Swedish *bark*, rind; and to *bark*, of a dog, is from the Old English *beorcan*, a variant of *brecan*, to break. This sameness of form in words is caused by the gradual dropping away of letters and endings by which they were once distinguished from one another.

The principal words of this kind are:—

air	burden	desert	grate	lap
arch	calf	die	grave	lay
arm	cape	dock	graze	league
ball	case	down	gum	leave
base	cleave	ear	gust	lie
bat	cock	earnest	hail	light
bay	corn	elder	halt	lime
bear	corporal	fair	hamper	list
blow	count	fawn	hawk	lock
bound	cow	fell	hind	low
bowl	cricket	fit	hold	mail
broil	cuff	foil	host	march
brook	defile	gore	jar	mass

match	pawn	quiver	row	story
meal	peer	race	rush	swallow
mean	pile	rail	sash	tap
meet	pine	rally	scale	tart
mint	pitch	rank	seal	temple
mole	plot	rear	shed	till
mood	pole	refrain	shoal	toil
moor	pore	rent	soil	tow
mould	pound	rest	sole	van
net	prune	rifle	sound	vice
own	pulse	ring	spell	wax
page	quarry	rock	spit	well
pale	quire	roe	stern	yard

89. Apparent Homonyms.—There are not a few words of the same form and pronunciation, which look like Homonyms, but which may be traced back to the same root. Thus *score*, to mark, and *score*, the number twenty, both come from the Old English *scor*, a notch, a common method of reckoning; and *suit*, an action at law, and *suit*, a set, as in 'a *suit* of clothes,' can both be traced to the French *suivre* (p.p. *suit*) to follow, in the two senses of to *pursue* and to form a *series*.

The principal words of this kind are:—

angle	deal	lac	pen	stem
band	defer	lean	pet	taper
bank	fast	like	poach	top
beam	fine	limp	port	trace
bit	fleet	long	porter	tract
brief	gull	mall	prank	trick
capital	hack	muscle	prime	vault
club	hide	palm	pupil	ware
court	kind	peck	share	wise

DOUBLETS.

90. Doublets are words which, though differing in form and meaning, have the same derivation. Thus *custom* and *costume* are both derived from the Latin *consuetudinem*, custom; *beaker* and *pitcher* can both be traced back to the Greek *bikos*, an earthen wine-vessel; and *tulip* (French *tulipan*) and *turban* (French *tolopan*) both come from the same Turkish word *tulbend* or *dulbend*, a turban, which the flower was supposed to resemble.

The difference in form frequently arises from the fact that a word of Latin or Greek origin comes to us first through one of the Romanic languages, especially the French, and then is introduced afresh directly from the Latin or the Greek. Thus the verb *abridge* comes from the Old French *abridgier*, which is derived from the Latin *abbreviare*, to shorten; while its doublet, *abbreviate* comes directly from the Latin word.

In some instances contraction or corruption has given rise to the two forms. Thus *valet* is only a shortened form of *varlet*; and *ant* is a contracted form of *emmet*, the Old English *œmette*, which was successively shortened into *amette*, *amet*, *amt*, *ant*. *Hatchment* is a corruption of *atch'ment*, short for *atchievement*, the old form of *achievement*; and *diamond* is a corruption of *adamant*.

Doublets sometimes differ but slightly in form and meaning, as *amend* and *emend*; *amend* (with noun *amendment*) is the general term, as in 'to *amend* one's life,' *emend* (with noun *emendation*) is the particular term, as in 'to *emend* an author's text.' *Depositary* is the person with whom you deposit a thing, *depository* is the place where you deposit it. *Essay* is the general term, *assay* is generally used of the testing of metals. *Endue* is merely an older spelling of *endow*. Similarly we have to *squall* and to *squeal*, to *thrash* and to *thresh*, *gentle* and *genteel*, *complacent* (gratified) and *complaisant* (civil). Sometimes the difference is merely one of grammatical class: thus *envel'ope*, *practise*, *prophesy*, *coquet* are verbs; *en'velope*, *practice*, *prophecy*, *coquette* are nouns. *Stayed* is the participial, *staid* is the adjectival form. *Accessory* is generally used as a noun, *accessary* as an adjective.

The principal words of this kind are:—

Aggrieve, aggravate	Conception, conceit	Guile, wile
Aptitude, attitude	Confuse, confound	Hale, whole
Arc, arch	Courtesy, curtsey	Hospital, hostel, hotel
Attack, attach	Coy, quiet	Inch, ounce
Beak, peak	Crook, cross	Isolate, insulate
Bench, bank	Dell, dale	Jealous, zealous
Benediction, benison	Descry, describe	Listen, lurk
Cadence, chance	Desire, desiderate	Locust, lobster
Caitiff, captive	Dish, disc, desk, dais	Loyal, legal
Calumny, challenge	Due, debit	Malediction, malison
Cancer, canker	Employ, implicate	Manœuvre, manure
Card, chart	Envious, invidious	Metal, mettle
Castigate, chastise	Enwrap, envelop	Mobile, moveable
Catch, chase	Evil, ill	Moment, movement
Cattle, chattle, capital	Extraneous, strange	Monster, muster
Cavalry, chivalry	Fact, feat	Musket, mosquito
Cave, cage	Faculty, facility	Naive, native
Cell, hall	Fashion, faction	Naked, nude
Chaise, chair	Fidelity, fealty	Obedience, obeisance
Channel, canal, kennel	Fife, pipe	Pair, peer, par
Chant, cant	Finite, fine	Parson, person
Chariot, cart	Flower, flour	Pauper, poor
Chieftain, captain	Font, fount	Penance, penitence
Chord, cord	Fragile, frail	Persecute, pursue
Cipher, zero	Granary, garner	Piety, pity
Collect, cull	Guarantee, warranty	Plan, plain, plane
Comprehend, comprise	Guard, ward	Poignant, pungent
Compute, count	Guest, host	Poison, potion

Porch, portico	Saliva, slime	Supplicant, suppliant
Praise, price	Scandal, slander	Tamper, temper
Predicate, preach	Scatter, shatter	Task, tax
Probe, prove	Scratch, grate	Taunt, tempt
Provide, purvey	Screech, shriek	Tight, taut
Provident, prudent	Secure, sure	Tone, tune
Purpose, propose	Senior, sir	Tradition, treason
Ransom, redemption	Servant, sergeant, serjeant	Treachery, trickery
Regal, royal	Skiff, snip	Vast, waste
Regulate, rule	Skirmish, scrimmage	Verb, word
Renew, renovate	Sop, soup	Vocal, vowel
Respect, respite	Stint, stunt	Vote, vow
Rover, robber		Wain, wagon

Confused Words.

91. The following words are liable to be confused with each other :—

(1) Words of a Like Derivation.

Affect, to act upon	*Effect*, to accomplish
Allusion, reference	*Illusion*, deception
Barbarism, uncivilized condition	*Barbarity*, savageness, cruelty
Beneficial, advantageous	*Beneficent*, kind
Brooch, an ornament	*Broach*, to open, introduce
Compliment, expression of regard	*Complement*, full amount
Cord, rope	*Chord*, in music
Corporal, bodily	*Corporeal*, material
Council, an assembly	*Counsel*, advice
Dependence, reliance	*Dependency*, a colony
Destiny, fate	*Destination*, goal
Elusive, shunning notice	*Illusive*, deceptive
Emigrant, one who removes from his own country	*Immigrant*, one who settles in a foreign country
Eminent, illustrious	*Imminent*, threatening
Imaginary, fanciful	*Imaginative*, full of imagination
Imperious, haughty	*Imperial*, relating to empire
Imposture, deceitful conduct	*Imposition*, deceitful act
Industrious, diligent	*Industrial*, relating to industry
Informer, accuser	*Informant*, reporter
Ingenious, skilful	*Ingenuous*, candid
Judicial, legal	*Judicious*, discreet
Junction, act of joining	*Juncture*, a critical time
Luxurious, given to luxury	*Luxuriant*, rich in growth
Momentary, lasting a moment	*Momentous*, important
Observance, keeping (of a rule, etc.)	*Observation*, notice, scrutiny
Official, pertaining to an office	*Officious*, meddling
Ordinance, a rule	*Ordnance*, cannon
Physic, medicine	*Physique*, bodily constitution
Polite, prudent	*Political*, pertaining to the State
Popular, approved	*Populous*, crowded
Principal, chief, a chief person	*Principle*, a primary truth
Proceed, to advance	*Precede*, to go before
Reverent, devout	*Reverend*, venerable

Signification, meaning	*Significance*, expressive meaning
Spiritual, divine	*Spirituous*, alcoholic
Tenor, purport	*Tenure*, holding (of land, etc.)
Verbal, relating to words	*Verbose*, wordy
Virtuous, good	*Virtual*, actual

(2) Words of a Different Derivation.

Breach, breakage	*Breech*, hinder part
Collision, conflict	*Collusion*, concerted fraud
Current, stream	*Currant*, the fruit
Elicit, to draw out	*Illicit*, unlawful
Gamble, to play for money	*Gambol*, to frisk
Goal, end	*Gaol*, jail
Grisly, hideous	*Grizzly*, grey
Lose, to part with	*Loose*, to release
Pallet, a bed	*Palate*, the roof of the mouth
Pier, a jetty	*Peer*, an equal
Rapt, excited	*Wrapt*, enfolded
Skull, a death's-head	*Scull*, an oar
Venal, mercenary	*Venial*, excusable
Wave, to brandish	*Waive*, to relinquish
Wreck, to shatter	*Reck*, to care
Wring, to twist	*Ring*, to sound

Degradation of Words.

92. There is a class of words, used at first with a good or a neutral meaning, which have since gradually deteriorated, until they have at length acquired a bad meaning, or at least have lost the dignified position which they once held. This has often arisen from the lowering in worth of the person or the thing whereto the word was originally applied; or from the general experience that failure and misfortune are more common than success and prosperity. Sometimes inferior persons or things have taken to themselves superior designations to hide their deficiencies, and so have dragged the words down to their own level; while, occasionally, the confusion of one word with another (cf. *bondage*, 95) has caused the degradation in meaning of one of them.

93. **Examples.**—Thus, *cunning* and *crafty* meant, at first, 'knowing' and 'skilful'; it was soon found, however, that men often used their knowledge and skill to deceive their fellows, and thus the words themselves were brought into bad odour, and came to mean 'wily' and 'deceitful.' The same thing happened to *artful* and *artifice*, which now generally imply a dishonest skill. The word *tinsel* (French *étincelle*, a spark) once signified anything that sparkled or glistened; but, owing to men's experience in the vanity of outward show, it has gained

its present meaning of fair to the eye but really worthless. So the word *villain* meant originally a labourer on the farm or *villa*; then, a serf; and lastly a man with the qualities of a serf, a scoundrel. *Boor* (Dutch *boer*, a peasant), *churl*, *knave*, *menial*, *varlet* (for *vassalet*, dim. of *vassal*), *caitiff* (the same word as *captive*) have acquired bad or inferior meanings in the same way. *Fellow*, originally meaning 'partner,' is now often used contemptuously for 'person.'[1] The word *slave* meant, in Slavonic, 'glorious'; but large numbers of the Slavonians or Slaves were, in early times, captured and held in bondage by the Germans, and hence the word itself became degraded. Similarly, the Old English *sælig*, 'blessed,' from being applied to half-witted persons, appears in later English as *silly*, 'foolish.' *Simple* (Latin *simplex*, one-fold), meaning originally 'plain, artless,' has also gained the sense of 'foolish' by a similar process. *Indifferent* properly means neither good nor bad; when used by itself, it is now applied to what is rather bad than good. With the decline of chivalry, its terms lost their lofty meaning; and words like *redoubtable*, *dub*, *doughty* are now used only in humorous satire.

94. Literary Degradation (and Elevation) of Words.—Besides the *moral*, we have also the *literary* degradation (and elevation) of words. Thus *blubbered*, *jolly*, *naughty*, *fussy*, *squeak*, *smug*, *cocksure*, *bone* (to steal), *crack* (excellent), *gills* (mouth), *treat* (entertainment) were once dignified words, conveying no slang or ludicrous notion. On the other hand, *clever* and *fun* in Johnson's time were regarded as low words.[2] *Snub* was once merely a provincial word. *Hoax*, *mob*, and *sham* were slang terms. *Selfish* and *talented* were once barbarisms. *Kidnap* is compounded of the slang words *kid*, a child, and *nab*, to steal. The hybrid *starvation*, when it was first introduced in A.D. 1775, was looked upon as a cant or ludicrous term. *Bumptious* is creeping into literature.

95. Table of Degraded Words.—The following table comprises the principal words of this class:—

WORD	EARLIER USE	DEGRADED USE
Adventurer	an enterprising person	a gambler, fortune-seeker
Affront	confront	insult
Animosity	courage	hatred
Antic	antique, old	odd, ridiculous
Apprehensive	quick to understand	fearful

[1] But by no means universally: thus, we say 'My dear *fellow*,' and English schoolboys speak of themselves as 'Our *fellows*.'

[2] Cf. Miss Edgeworth's *Belinda*, Chap. IV.: 'And this too I suppose she calls a frolic, or, *in her own vulgar language*, "fun."'

WORD	EARLIER USE	DEGRADED USE
Artificial	artistic	not genuine
Artisan	an artist	a mechanic
Aspersion	a sprinkling	a calumny
Audacious	confident	presumptuous
Base	humble	wicked
Boisterous	strong	turbulent
Bondage[1]	an inferior land tenure	servitude
Broil	a battle	a noisy quarrel
Carp	to talk	to find fault
Catastrophe	a conclusion	a disastrous conclusion
Censure	to judge	to blame
Cheat	to escheat, confiscate	to defraud
Civil	civic, refined	polite
Clumsy	numb	awkward
Coalition	alliance	conspiracy
Conceit	a notion	an extravagant notion
Counterfeit	a copy, imitation	a spurious imitation
Decent	comely	tolerable
Demagogue	a popular leader	a base popular leader
Demure	modest	affectedly modest
Dissolute	weak	licentious
Dole	a portion	a scanty portion, alms
Doom	judgment	condemnation
Enormity	excessiveness	an excessive crime
Equivocate	to speak ambiguously	to speak deceitfully
Faction	a party	a cabal
Fain	inclined	compelled by need
Forge	to fabricate	to counterfeit
Fulsome	surfeiting	disgusting
Gossip	a sponsor in Baptism	a chatterbox
Gross	large	coarse
Grotesque	pantomimic	ludicrous
Heathen	a heath-dweller	a pagan[2]
Homely	familiar	plain, rude
Idiot	an uneducated person	a crazy person
Imbecile	feeble-bodied	feeble-minded
Imp	a scion, offspring	a little devil
Impertinent	not pertinent	impudent
Imputation	a charge	a reproachful charge
Indolence	insensibility	idleness
Insolent	unusual	contemptuous
Legend	a chronicle	a fabulous story
Lewd	unlearned	vicious, licentious
Libel	a writing	a defamatory writing
Libertine	a freethinker	a rake
Maudlin	penitential	sickly-sentimental
Mean	common	base
Meddling	taking part	meddlesome
Minion	a darling	an unworthy favourite

[1] In *bondage*, *bond* is the Old English *bonda*, a householder (seen in '*hus-band*'), and is quite distinct from *bond*, that which binds.

[2] *Pagan* is itself from L. *paganus*, a villager.

WORD	EARLIER USE	DEGRADED USE
Miscreant	an unbeliever	a villain
Obsequious	obedient	servile
Officious	kind, serviceable	meddlesome
Peculiar	particular	eccentric
Pedant	a schoolmaster	one vain of his learning
Peevish	childish	fretful
Pert	smart	saucy
Pittance	a monk's portion	a scanty portion
Plausible	praiseworthy	seemingly praiseworthy
Pompous	magnificent	ostentatious
Prejudice	judging beforehand	unfavourable judging
Presently	without delay	with a short delay
Pretence	a purpose, pretext	a false pretext
Quaint	neat	odd
Quarrel	a complaint	a dispute
Rascal	a common fellow	a wicked fellow
Resentment	feeling	angry feeling
Retaliation	requital	revenge
Retribution	requital	punishment
Rogue	a wandering beggar	a scamp
Sad	serious	sorrowful
Sanctimonious	devout	hypocritical
Sensual	sensuous	voluptuous
Sententious	pithy	grandiloquent
Servility	slavery	slavishness
Specious	fair-looking	superficially fair-looking
Subservience	submission	base submission
Tawdry	showy	vulgarly showy
Tempt	to test	to entice
Traduce	to convict	to defame
Trivial	common	trifling
Uncouth	unknown	awkward
Usury	interest	exorbitant interest
Vile	cheap	worthless
Vilify	to hold cheap	to abuse
Voluble	fluent	loquacious
Wiseacre	a wise person	a simpleton
Wizard	a sage	a sorcerer

Elevation of Words.

96. Words that have improved in their meaning are few in comparison with words that have deteriorated. *Fond* in Shakspere's time meant 'foolish'; it then came to mean 'foolishly affectionate' or 'over-sanguine,' a meaning which it still retains; but it now usually means 'very affectionate.'[1] Similarly, to *dote* originally meant to be foolish[2]; now, in 'to *dote* upon a thing,' it means to show excessive liking for it. *Nice* (Latin *nescium*, ignorant), down to about A.D. 1580, also meant 'foolish'; then

[1] Cf. the verb *fondle*, to caress.

[2] Cf. *dotage*, *dotard*.

it gained the sense of 'fastidious'; and lastly that of 'delicious' or 'pleasing.' *Imaginative*, in Chaucer's time, meant 'suspicious.' Bacon uses *busy* in the sense of 'restless,' a meaning still retained in '*busy*-body.' *Hazard* and *jeopardy* (Old French *jeu parti*, a divided game, in which the chances are even) were originally mere gaming terms. We find *shrewd* in Chaucer with the sense of wicked[1]; it now means sharp, clever. Words like *generous*, *gentle*, *ingenuous* (all from root *gan*, to beget), originally implied only noble birth, but now they imply noble character. *Soldier*, literally 'one who receives *soulde* or pay' (Low Latin *solidus*, a piece of money), has gained a higher meaning than that of a mere mercenary. Party-names often belong to this class: thus *Whig* and *Tory* were once terms of contempt; and *Radical* has almost lost its reproachful application. The term *Christian* was once a mere nickname, as were also *Quaker*, *Methodist*, and *Teetotaler*.

97. Table of Elevated Words.—The following table comprises the principal words of this class:—

WORD	EARLIER USE	ELEVATED USE
Admire[2]	to wonder at	to regard with approval
Annoy	to injure	to vex
Arch	cowardly, knavish	waggish
Brave	fine	courageous
Companion	fellow, rogue	comrade
Considerate	thoughtful	kind
Coy	disdainful	bashful
Dandle	to cajole	to toss in the arms
Delicate	voluptuous	tender, refined
Diffidence	distrust, suspicion	self-distrust, modesty
Emulation	envy	competition
Feminine	effeminate	womanly
Glorious	boastful	famous
Knight	a youth, servant	a title of honour
Lay	plebeian	secular
Liberal	lavish	generous
Loiter	to prowl, be a tramp	to delay
Luxury	sensuality, lust	pleasurable indulgence
Marshal	a groom	a title of honour
Mechanic	a drudge, a low fellow	a workman
Mountaineer	a freebooter	a mountain-dweller
Palliate	to cloak (a fault)	to extenuate (a fault)
Penury	penuriousness	poverty
Prestige	imposture	credit, renown

[1] The word still retains this meaning in 'to do one a *shrewd* turn' (373). *Shrew*, the noun, once meant a knave, male or female; it now means a scolding woman.

[2] The older meaning is retained in 'a note of *admiration*' (!).

WORD	EARLIER USE	ELEVATED USE
Politician[1]	a trickster	a statesman
Purchase	to seize	to buy
Religious	monastic	pious
Secure	free from anxiety, easy	safe
Sturdy	reckless	resolute
Unhappy	wicked	miserable
Versatile	fickle	many-sided
Worship[2]	to honour	to adore
Wretched[3]	wicked	miserable

Disguised Words.

98. Disguised words are words whose origin and derivation have become obscured by reason of some irregularity or other peculiarity in the form in which they have reached us through successive generations of speakers. The following are examples of this disguise :—

WORD	UNDISGUISED FORM	EXPLANATION
Admiral	*amiral*	*Amir-al*-bahr, Ameer of the sea
Alligator	*alagarto*	Sp. *el-lagarto*, the lizard (L. *lacerta*)
Ambergrease[4]	ambergris	*gris amber*, grey amber
Argosy[5]	Ragusy	vessel of Ragusa
Battledoor	Sp. *batador*	a (washing) beetle or beater
Beaver (of helmet)	bever	F. *bavière*, a bib
Bedlam	Bethlehem	name of a hospital for lunatics
Blunderbuss	thunder-box	Du. *donderbus*
Bran-new	brand-new	fire-new (*Shaks.*)
Bridegroom	bride-gome	O.E. *bryd-guma*, bride-man
Burden (refrain)	F. *bourdon*	a humming, a drone-bass
Caterpillar	O.F. *catte-pelaeure*	*cat* that rolls itself up like a *pill*
Causeway	causey	F. *chaussée*; Low L. *calceata* (via), a path *shod* with stone
Charles's wain	O.E. *carles wœn*	the churl's (=peasant's) wagon
Coverlet	coverlit	F. *couvre-lit*, bed-cover
Crayfish, crawfish	M.E. *crevis*	F. *écrevisse*; G. *krebs*, a crab
Cutlass	cutlas	F. *coutelas*, a short sword
Cutlet	F. *cotelette*	a little rib
Dropsy	O.E. *ydropsie*	Late Gk. *hydropisis* (from *hydor*, water)
Foreign	M.E. *foreine*	Low L. *foraneus* (L. *foras*, out of doors)
Frontispiece	frontispice	Low L. *fronti-spicium*, lit. front view (confused with *piece*)

[1] This word, in America, seems to be reverting to its earlier use.

[2] *Worship, worshipful*, applied to mayors, etc., still mean 'honour,' 'honourable.'

[3] A *wretch* may still mean a 'villain.'

[4] Verdigrease (=*vert-de-gris*) is similarly corrupted.

[5] Confused with the classic ship Argo.

WORD	UNDISGUISED FORM	EXPLANATION
Ghost	M.E. *gost*	O.E. *gast*, a spirit
Gooseberry	grose-berry	O.F. *groselle*, a gooseberry
Gossip	M.E. *god-sib*	*related in God*, sponsor; an idle talker
Greyhound	Icel. *grey-hundr*	dog-hound
Gridiron	M.E. *gredire, gredil*	a griddle
Handcuffs	M.E. *hand-cops*	a hand-fetter
Harrier	harier	a *hare*-hound
Height	highth	M.E. *highte*
Humble-bee	hummel-bee	humming bee
Hurricane	Span. *huracan*	a Caribbean word
Icicle	O.E. *isgicel*	*is*, ice, and *gicel*, bit of ice
Jolly-boat	Dan. *jolle*, boat	a *yawl*, skiff
Liquorice	licorice	Gk. *glycy-rrhiza*, sweet-root
Loadstar	lodestar	*way-star*, guiding-star
Neighbour	nigh-boor	near-husbandman, near-dweller
Nostril	nose-thrill	nose-hole
Orchard	wort-yard	herb-garden
Outrage	O.F. *oultr-age*	excess (L. *ultra*, beyond)
Penthouse	M.E. *pentice*	for *apentice* (L. *appendicium*, an appendage)
Pickaxe	M.E. *pikois*	O.F. *picois*, a pick
Primrose	M.E. *primerole*	L. *primerula*, *primula*, the *first* or early flower
Reindeer, raindeer	Icel. *rhein*, deer	Lapp. *reins*, pasturage
Salt-cellar	salt-seller	*seller* = F. *salière*, a salt-box
Sand-blind	sam-blind	semi-blind
Shamefaced	shamefast	*shame* and *fast*, as in 'sted-*fast*'
Sheet-anchor	shoot-anchor	an anchor to be *shot* out or lowered in case of danger
Sovereign	sovran	Low L. *superanum*, chief
Stepchild	O.E. *stéop-cild*	orphaned child
Stirrup	sty-rope	climbing-rope
Threshold	M.E. *thresh-wold*	*thrashed-wood*, wood beaten or trodden
Touchwood	M.E. *tache*, wood	Low G. *takke*, a twig (= stick-wood)
Touchy	tetchy	full of *tetches* or freaks
Uproar	uprore	Du. *oproer*, a stirring-up, tumult
Upshot	upshut	*shutting-up*, conclusion
Upside-down	up-so-down	up as it were down
Wall-eyed	Icel. *vagl-eygr*	*beam-eyed*, with diseased eyes
Weather-beaten	weather-bitten	Swed. *väder-biten*
Wormwood	O.E. *wer-mód*	*ware-mood*, mind-preserver
Yellow-hammer	yellow-ammer	'yellow' and O.E. *amore*, chirper

This obscurity or disguise has arisen from various causes, the principal of which are the four following :—

99. I. Ignorant or popular corruptions, resulting from false ideas about the derivation of the words or from a desire to make them *look* English. People transformed a word that they could not understand (often, for instance, a word of foreign origin) into

something which, to them, gave some sort of sense or which at any rate had a more familiar sound.

Thus the garden vegetable *asparagus*, a word of Greek origin, was turned in vulgar speech into *sparrow-grass;* the French expression *quelque chose* (something), meaning a trifle, a small delicacy, was anglicised into *kickshaws* and regarded as a plural form. Similarly *battlement* has, in its derivation, nothing to do with *battle*, but is a corruption of the old French word *bastilement*, a fortification, from the old French *bastir*, to build. The verb *embattle*, to furnish with battlements, is a similar malformation. Obsolete words or parts of words were specially liable to this corruption: thus *fairy* has no connexion with *fair*, but should be spelt *faery*, from Middle English *faerie*, enchantment[1]; and to *blindfold* is a corruption of an older form *blindfelden*, to strike blind. In this latter instance we see that the corruption has caused a change in the meaning as well as in the form of the word; the same thing has happened with *parboil*, which properly means to boil *thoroughly* (Latin *perbullire*), but now means to boil *in part*, from a notion that the word is made up of *part* and *boil*.

100. II. False Analogy, or the confusion of one word with another. Thus an *l* has been inserted in *could* (M.E. *coude*) to make it like *should* and *would*, in which the *l* is part of the root. An *s* has been inserted in *island* (M.E. *iland*) to make it like *isle* (L. *insula*); and *rhyme* (M.E. *rime*) is so spelt from confusion with *rhythm* (Greek *rhythmos*). *Colleague* ought to be written *collegue* (L. *collega*, one sent on a mission with another), but is spelt as if it meant 'one *leagued* with another.' *Afford, affright, accursed* are so spelt from a supposed analogy with words that begin with *aff-, acc-* in Latin; they should properly be spelt *aford, afright, acursed*. This confusion often gives rise to homonyms: thus, *feud* (M.E. *fede*), hatred, came to be so spelt through its being mistaken with *feud* (Low L. *feudum*), a fief, from which comes the adjective *feudal*.

101. III. Contraction or curtailment, arising from laziness or rapidity of pronunciation. Thus *barn* is a contracted form of O.E. *ber-ern*, barley-house; *daisy* is M.E. *dayesye*, day's eye; and *proxy* is merely a vulgar contraction of *procuracy*. Similarly *palsy* is a shortened form of M.E. *palesy* (F. *paralysie*, Gk. *paralysis*). *Alms* has been reduced from six syllables to one, thus:

[1] Hence *fairy* is properly an abstract noun, the concrete noun being *fay*, an elf. Compare the use of *paynim* (=paganism) for *payan*.

alms = M.E. *almés* = O.E. *ælmœssé* = Gk. *eleëmosyné*. *Mole* (the animal) is merely a curtailed form of the older *mold-warp*, mould-thrower; just as *canter* is an abbreviation of *Canterbury* gallop, the easy pace at which pilgrims rode to Canterbury. Similarly *mob* is short for L. *mobile vulgus*, the fickle multitude; *fac-simile* for L. *factum simile*, a thing made in imitation of another. *Wig* is a curtailed form of *periwig*, itself a disguised word[1]; as *van* is of *caravan*, *cab* of *cabriolet*, *bus* of *omnibus*, *quad* of *quadrangle*, *hack* of *hackney*, *chap* of *chapman*, *plot* of *complot*, *fence* of *defence*, *story* of *history*, *sport* of *disport*, *spend* of *dispend*, *stress* of *distress*, *fray* of *affray*, *down* of *adown*, *spite* of *despite*, *peal* of *appeal*, *drawing-room* of *withdrawing-room*.

102. IV. The addition or the removal of a letter at the beginning or the end of words. Thus the letter *h* has dropt off before *able*, which should be written *hable* (L. *habilis*, fit); *arbour* is probably a corruption of *harbour* (M.E. *herberwe*, shelter, lodging); *it*, *ostler* (cf. *host*, *hostel*), *ortolan*, the bird haunting *gardens* (L. *hortus*), should be *hit*, *hostler*, *hortolan*. An *h* has been wrongly prefixed to *h-atchment* (90), to *h-azard* (Sp. *azar*, a die), which has also *d* appended, to *h-ermit* (= eremite), and to *h-ostage* (L. *obsidem*).

The letter *d* has been appended, for the sake of emphasis, to *hol-d* (of a ship), which should be *hole* (Du. *hol*), *boun-d* (ready to go), *gizzar-d*, *vizar-d*, *hin-d* (peasant; M.E. *hine*, a servant), *len-d*, *moul-d* (pattern), *ribban-d*,[2] *soun-d*, *stran-d* (of a rope), *expoun-d*, *compoun-d*.

The letter *t* has been appended, for the same reason, to *ancien-t*, *behes-t*, *braggar-t*, *cormoran-t*, *earnes-t* (a pledge), *hoist* (for *hoise*[3]), *pagean-t*, *parchmen-t*, *peasan-t*, *pheasan-t*, *rampar-t*, *tyran-t*. The *t* has dropt off from *scrip*, which should be *script* (L. *scriptum*, a writing).

Sham, *squire*, for *shame*, *esquire*, have lost an *e*; *paddle* for *spaddle* (little spade), has lost an *s*; and *chime* should be *chimb*.

There is a curious group of words whose disguise has been caused by the coalescing of the article with its substantive in popular pronunciation; and then when the two were written down and had to be separated, by the separation being made at the wrong place. Thus *adder* is O.E. *nædre*, and ought to be spelt *nadder*; but 'a nadder' being pronounced 'anadder,' the *n* came to be regarded as belonging to the article, and the

[1] *Periwig* = *perwigge* = *perwicke* = *peruke*.

[2] Or, through confusion with *band*. *Ribbon* does not take the *d*.

[3] Cf. 'They *hoised* up the mainsail.'—*Bible*.

words were written down as 'an adder.' The same thing happened with *apron* (O.F. *naperon*, a napkin), with *auger* (M.E. *navegor*, nave-piercer), with *orange* (Persian *nāranj*), with *ouch* (M.E. *nouche*), and with *umpire* (M.E. *nompere* = *non-peer*, odd man). Conversely, the *n* of the article has adhered to the substantive in *newt* (M.E. *ewte*), in *nickname* (O.E. *eke-name*, an additional name), in *nugget* (= *niggot* = *ningot* = *ingot*). Similarly *nonce*, in 'for *the nonce*' (O.E. for *then ones*), is the same word as *once*, and the phrase means 'for the occasion'; as we still say 'for this *once*.'

CHAPTER III.

ACCIDENCE AND SYNTAX.

NOUNS.

103. *Definition.*—**A Noun** (Latin *nomen*, name) is a word used as the *name* of something: as, 'The *man* beat the *dog*.' There are **five** kinds of nouns:—

104. (1) **Class** Nouns; *i.e.* nouns that express a class of individual objects, as distinguished from another class of objects, as *ship*. *Ship* is an *Individual* Class Noun.

105. (2) **Collective** Nouns; *i.e.* nouns that express a number of objects of the same class collected together, as *fleet*. Thus *fleet* denotes a collection of ships, and *fleets* denotes several collections of ships. *Fleet* is a *Collective* Class Noun. Others are—the *Government*, the *Court*, the *nobility*, the *gentry*, the *peasantry*, the *navy*, the *shipping*, the *public*, the *clergy*, the *laity*, an *audience*, an *Association*, a *Company*, a *Board*.

A collective noun in the singular number takes a plural verb when the writer has in view the units that make up the whole; it takes a singular verb when the writer has in view the collection as a whole:—

The *army was* ordered to advance to the attack.
When day broke, the *enemy were* seen fleeing in all directions.
The *meeting is* unanimous on this question.
The lowing *herd wind* slowly o'er the lea.—*Gray*.
A large *number* of crows *were* hopping about.

NOTE.—Care should be taken not to mix the two constructions, as in 'The Committee *is* of opinion that *their* decision is not required on this point.'

106. (3) **Material** Nouns; *i.e.* nouns that express an indefinite mass of matter, as *glass*, *stone*, *rice*. When a material noun is used to express a definite object, it is no longer a material noun,

but a class noun. Accordingly it may then take the article and the plural number[1]:—

Give me *a glass* (=a receptacle made of glass) of water.
Do not throw *stones* (=pieces of stone).
There are many *rices* (=kinds of rice) in India. This is *a* good *rice*.

Hence, as with *glass* and *stone* above, many material nouns acquire a new meaning when used as class nouns:—

MATERIAL NOUNS.	CLASS NOUNS.
Land, *earth*	a land (*or* lands), *a country*
Sand, *particles of stone*	sands, *sea-beach*
Marble, *a kind of stone*	a marble (*or* marbles), *a sculpture, the game*
Water, *the liquid*	waters, *springs*
Salt, *the seasoning substance*	salts, *smelling salts*, etc.
Iron, *the metal*	an iron (*or* irons), *a fire-iron, a smoothing-iron, fetters*
Wood, *timber*	a wood (*or* woods), *a forest*
Copper, *the metal*	a copper (*or* coppers), *for boiling, pence*
Bronze, *the metal*	a bronze (*or* bronzes), *a work of art in bronze*

107. The nouns in (1), (2), and (3) are *Common* Nouns, *i.e.* names that are common to or shared by an indefinite number of objects or the parts of an indefinite mass of matter. They are thus distinguished from—

108. (4) **Proper** Nouns, *i.e.* names that are confined to separate persons or things, or groups of persons or things, as *Homer, Boston, Gladstone, The United States*. The word 'proper' here means 'own': hence a *proper* name is a person's or a thing's *own* name. Proper names, when they are applied to more than one person or thing, can take the article and the plural number: 'There are two *Bostons, a Boston* in England and *a Boston* in America'; 'the *Gladstones*.'

When a proper noun is used in a descriptive sense, to denote an object or objects of a similar character to itself, it is no longer a proper noun but a common noun:—

He is the *Homer* (=the great poet) of his age.
That wrestler seems to be a *Hercules* (=a very strong man).
There are few *Gladstones* (=men like Gladstone) now-a-days.
Lyons is the *Manchester* (=chief manufacturing town) of France.

NOTE.—Similarly, *a Turner* is often used for 'a picture painted by Turner'; a *Guido* for 'a picture painted by Guido,' and so on.

[1] The plural of material nouns is sometimes found in poetry:—'Where are the last year's *snows*?'—*Ballad*. Material nouns like *dirt, refuse, rubbish, trash, cash* have no plural form.

109. The nouns in (1), (2), (3), and (4) are *Concrete* Nouns, *i.e.* nouns that express substances. They are thus distinguished from—

110. (5) **Abstract** Nouns, *i.e.* nouns that express attributes and phenomena, as *goodness, speech.*

An abstract noun may express—

(*a*) a quality: *honesty, convenience.*
(*b*) a state: *death, sleep.*
(*c*) a feeling or an action: *pleasure, walking.*
(*d*) a process of thought: *logic, astronomy.*

Abstract nouns cannot take the articles or the plural number; we cannot say 'a goodness,' 'strengths.' When abstract nouns are found with the articles or in the plural, they signify not the abstract notion, but concrete instances of the notion (**160**):—

This is a *carelessness* that I should not have expected (=*a piece of carelessness*).
What *a pity* (=what *a pitiful circumstance*)!
We ought to speak *the truth* (=*the thing that is true*).
This book is full of *impertinences* (=*instances of impertinence*).

NOTE.—Abstract nouns are sometimes used to express a general concrete object, as the *nobility* for the whole body of persons of noble birth, the *community* for the whole body of people, the *youth* for the whole class of young people, the *priesthood* for priests generally. We may even use the abstract term to express the individual concrete object, as a *youth* for a young man, a *personage* for a person, an *audience* for auditors, a *royalty* for a person of royal birth, a *witness* for one who witnesses, a *character* for a person possessing character, a *vision* for a thing seen, a *conquest* for a thing conquered, a *study* for a room to study in, a *painting* for a picture; cf. 'To return to one's first *love*' (=one's first *loved object*); 'A statue as large as *life*' (=as large as the *living object* which it represents); 'I have a *mind* (or a great *mind*) to accept his offer.'

111. Formation of Abstract Nouns.—Abstract nouns are formed —(1) from Adjectives, (2) from Concrete nouns, (3) from Verbs.

(1) from Adjectives.

ADJ.	ABSTRACT NOUN	ADJ.	ABSTRACT NOUN
Long	length	Grand	grandeur
Strong	strength	Short	shortness
Broad	breadth	Dark	darkness
Wide	width	Good	goodness
High	height / highth	Cold	coldness
		Bitter	bitterness
Young	youth	Holy	holiness
True	truth	Feeble	feebleness
Hale	health	Humble	humbleness / humility
Slow	sloth		
Dry	drought	Worthy	worthiness
Wise	wisdom	Poor	poorness / poverty
Free	freedom		

ADJ.	ABSTRACT NOUN
False	falseness, falsity, falsehood
Worth	worship
Hard	hardship
Sole	solitude
Proud	pride
Hot	heat
Social	socialism
Merry	merriment
Just	justice
Prudent	prudence
Decent	decency
Vacant	vacancy

ADJ.	ABSTRACT NOUN
Prevalent	prevalence, prevalency
Brilliant	brilliance, brilliancy
Brave	bravery
Timid	timidity
Vain	vanity
Cruel	cruelty
Frail	frailty
Honest	honesty
Barbarous	barbarity, barbarism, barbarousness

(2) from Concrete Nouns.

CONCRETE NOUN	ABSTRACT NOUN
Man	manhood
Woman	womanhood
Boy	boyhood
Child	childhood
Mother	motherhood
Father	fatherhood
Priest	priesthood
Hero	heroism
Patriot	patriotism
Agent	agency
Infant	infancy
Regent	regency
Captain	captaincy
Pirate	piracy
Bankrupt	bankruptcy

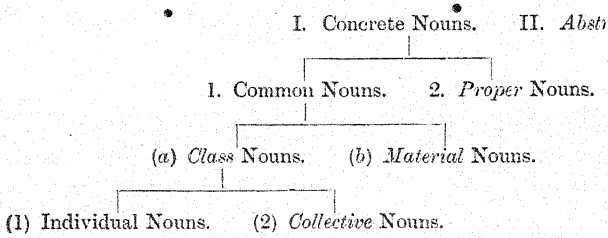
CONCRETE NOUN	ABSTRACT NOUN
Witch	witchery
Slave	slavery
Poet	poetry
Glutton	gluttony
Beggar	beggary
Rogue	roguery
Friend	friendship
King	kingship
Seaman	seamanship
Owner	ownership
Author	authorship
Rascal	rascality
Coward	cowardice
Thief	theft
Pilgrim	pilgrimage

(3) from Verbs.

VERB	ABSTRACT NOUN
Abound	abundance
Obey	obedience
Excel	excellence
Act	action
Protect	protection
Redeem	redemption
Expire	expiration, expiry
Flatter	flattery
Starve	starvation
Move	motion, movement
Punish	punishment
Judge	judgment
Conceal	concealment
Serve	service
Advise	advice
Defend	defence

VERB	ABSTRACT NOUN
Believe	belief
Relieve	relief
Pursue	pursuit
Perceive	perception
Please	pleasure
Seize	seizure
Depart	departure
Learn	learning
Laugh	laughter
Know	knowledge
Hate	hatred
See	sight
Think	thought
Die	death
Bear	birth
Live	life
Choose	choice
Marry	marriage

112. Thus we have the following Table of Nouns:—



GENDER.

113. In Nature, things are divided into three classes, according as they are things of the male sex (*king, bull*), things of the female sex (*queen, cow*), and things of neither sex (*stone, house*).

In Grammar, these three classes are called *genders*, and are named **Masculine Gender, Feminine Gender**, and **Neuter** (Latin *neuter*, neither of two) **Gender.**

114. Common Gender.—Some names of animals and persons do not indicate their sex:—*sheep, pig, swine, hog, bird, fowl, hound, foal, deer, bear, mouse, hedgehog, jackdaw, swan, hawk, dove, etc.; parent, child, spouse, cousin, servant, dancer, friend, sovereign, etc.* Such nouns are said to be of *Common Gender.* Some masculine nouns (*horse, dog*), and some feminine nouns (*duck, goose, bee*) are often so used.

NOTE.—Some feminine nouns have no corresponding masculine:—*amazon, blonde, brunette, coquette, dowager, flirt, jilt, minx, prude, shrew, siren, termagant, virago, ewe-lamb, jenny-wren. Lover*, in the sense of wooer, is now only masculine, except in the plural, when it may include both sexes, as in 'a pair of *lovers*.'

115. Gender of Inanimate Objects.—Things without life are often, especially in poetry, personified, and so have sex attributed to them:—

> The *day* in *his* hotness,
> The *night* in *her* silence.—*M. Arnold.*

(1) *Masculines* are—the Sun, Summer, Autumn, Winter, Time, Death, the Grave, Thunder; rivers, winds, mountains, the ocean; violent passions (Love, Fear, Anger, Despair, etc.); violent actions (Murder, War, etc.).

(2) *Feminines* are—the Moon, Spring, the Earth, the Soul, the Church, a ship,[1] a balloon, a cannon[1]; countries,[2] cities; the Arts and Sciences, Nature, Liberty, Victory, Religion, Fame, Fortune, etc.; the gentler feelings (Charity, Hope, Mercy, Pity, Peace, etc.).

116 Modes of denoting Gender.—Gender is denoted in **three** ways:—

(1) Different words are used:—

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
Bachelor	spinster / maid	Horse	mare
Boar	sow	Monk, friar	nun
Buck	doe	Nephew	niece
Bullock, steer	heifer	Ram, wether	ewe
Colt	filly	Sir, sire	madam
Drake	duck	Sire	dam[3]
Drone	bee	Sloven	slut
Earl	countess	Stag	hind
Gander	goose	Uncle	aunt
Hart	roe	Wizard	witch

(2) A difference of termination is used:—

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
Abbot	abbess (=abbotess)	Master (Mr.)	Mistress (Mrs.)
Actor	actress	Mayor	mayoress
Author	authoress	Murderer	murderess
Beau	belle	Negro	negress
Bridegroom	bride	Patron	patroness
Czar	czarina[4]	Poet	poetess
Duke	duchess	Priest	priestess
Emperor	empress	Prince	princess
Fox	vixen[5]	Prior	prioress
Giant	giantess	Prophet	prophetess
God	goddess	Shepherd	shepherdess
Governor	governess[6]	Seamster (rare)	seamstress
Heir	heiress	Songster	songstress
Hero	heroine	Sultan	sultana
Host	hostess	Testator	testatrix
Hunter	huntress	Tiger	tigress
Lad	lass (=laddess)	Votary	votaress
Lion	lioness	Widower	widow
Marquis	marchioness		

[1] Cf. the expressions 'a *sister* ship,' 'a *sister* gun.'

[2] Note that we say '*father*-land,' but '*mother*-country' and '*mother*-tongue.'

[3] *Sire—dam* are used of animals only.

[4] More correctly, *tsar, tsaritsa.*

[5] Now used in the sense of a spiteful woman. Sportsmen use—masc. *dog-fox*, fem. *bitch-fox.*

[6] *Governor* means a ruler in general; cf. 'Victoria, our . . . Queen and *Governor*' (*Prayer-book*); *governess* means an *instructress.*

(3) Masculine or feminine nouns or pronouns are prefixed or affixed to nouns of common gender:—

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
Beggar-man	beggar-woman	Jack-ass	jenny-ass, she-ass.
Boar-pig	sow-pig	Man-child	woman-child
Buck-rabbit	doe-rabbit	Man-servant	woman-servant, maid-servant
Bull-calf	cow-calf	Pea-cock	pea-hen
Cock-sparrow	hen-sparrow	Servant-man	servant-maid
He-devil	she-devil	Washer-man	washer-woman
He-goat	she-goat		
Billy-goat	nanny-goat		

NOTE.—Similarly we have *lady doctor*, *boy messenger*.

NUMBER.

117. *Definition.*—**Number** denotes quantity. The Singular Number indicates that we are speaking of *one* thing; the Plural Number indicates that we are speaking of *more than one* thing.

118. **Modes of forming the Plural.**—The Plural is formed in **four** ways:—

(1) The syllable *-es*, shortened to *-s* whenever pronunciation allows, is added to the singular:—*box, boxes; dress, dresses; horse, horses; book, books; lady, ladies*[1]; *valley, valleys; solitoquy, soliloquies; alkali, alkalies.*[2]

(2) The syllable *-en* is added to the singular:—*ox, oxen; cow, kine; brother, brethren; child, children.*

(3) The vowel sound is changed:—*foot, feet; tooth, teeth; mouse, mice; louse, lice; goose, geese; man, men.*

(4) The singular is left unchanged:—*deer, sheep, swine, grouse, salmon, cod, trout, hose, heathen.*

NOTE.—Proper Nouns follow rule (1) above:—'the *Coxes*,' 'the *Dutts*,' 'the *Joneses*,' 'the eight *Henries*,' 'the two *Sicilies*.' But less known Proper Nouns ending in *y* simply add *s*:—'the *Gadsbys*.' Compare 'We called on the *Jameses* (objective plural),' and 'We called at the *Jameses*' (possessive plural).'

119. **Plural of Nouns in '-o.'**—(1) Earlier-introduced and more common nouns ending in *-o* form the plural by adding *es*:—*bilboes* (fetters), *buffaloes, calicoes* (and *calicos*), *cargoes, dominoes, echoes, embargoes, flamingoes, heroes, innuendoes, magnificoes, manifestoes, mosquitoes* (and *mosquitos*), *mottoes, mulattoes* (and *mulattos*), *negroes, noes, potatoes, tomatoes, tornadoes, volcanoes.*

[1] See **501**. *Fly*, a cab, makes the plur. *flys*. [2] But *rabbi, rabbis*.

(2) Later-introduced and rarer words ending in *-o* add *-s*:—*bravos, cantos, casinos, centos, duodecimos, embryos, grottos, halos, inamoratos, juntos, mangos* (and *mangoes*), *medicos, mementos, octavos, porticos* (and *porticoes*), *pianos, provisos, quartos, rondos, salvos, solos, sopranos, stilettos, tiros, violoncellos, virtuosos* (and *virtuosi*).

(3) Nouns ending in *-eo, -io,* and *-oo* add *-s*:—*cameos; folios, intaglios, nuncios, oratorios, portfolios, seraglios, studios, trios; bamboos, cuckoos, Hindoos.*

120. Plural of Nouns in 'f.'—(1) Teutonic nouns ending in *-f, -fe* form the plural by changing *f* to *v* except when *f, r,* or *oo* precede the final *f*:—*calf, calves; knife, knives; leaf, leaves; loaf, loaves; shelf, shelves; thief, thieves; wife, wives; wolf, wolves.* But—*cliff, cliffs; dwarf, dwarfs; roof, roofs.* Exceptions are—*fife, fifes; strife, strifes; reef, reefs.*

(2) Romanic nouns retain the *f* unchanged:—*brief, briefs; chief, chiefs; grief, griefs.*

NOTE.—Tennyson has *hooves* for *hoofs*; and *scarves, turves, wharves,* for *scarfs, turfs, wharfs,* are also found.

121. Foreign Plurals.—Many foreign nouns still retain the plural form of the language from which they were taken:—

(1) Latin:—*erratum, errata; effluvium, effluvia; genus, genera; nebula, nebulæ; radius, radii; appendix, appendices; apparatus, apparatus; series, series.*

(2) Greek:—*axis, axes; basis, bases; crisis, crises; hypothesis, hypotheses; parenthesis, parentheses; phenomenon, phenomena.*

(3) French:—*beau, beaux* (and *beaus*); *corps, corps; monsieur* (and E. *Mr.*), *messieurs; madame* (and E. *madam*), *mesdames.*

(4) Italian:—*bandit, banditti* (and *bandits*); *dilettante, dilettanti; virtuoso, virtuosi.*

(5) Hebrew:—*cherub, cherubim* (and *cherubs*); *seraph, seraphim* (and *seraphs*).

The tendency of language is to reject these foreign plurals as the foreign words become naturalised. Hence we always write *crocuses, censuses, similes, stamens,*[1] *triumvirs; dogmas, miasmas, encomiums, millenniums, cyclopses,* rather than Latin *croci, census, similia, stamina, triumviri,* and Greek *dogmata, miasmata, encomia, millennia, cyclopes*; and we often find *formulas, terminuses, focuses, memorandums, animalcules; criterions, automatons, anacoluthons,*

[1] The plur. *stamina* means 'vigour.'

instead of Latin *formulæ, termini, foci, memoranda, animalcula;* and Greek *criteria, automata, anacolutha.*

NOTE.—The plural of the Greek noun *rhinoceros* is not *rhinoceri*, but *rhinocerotes*; it is better to write *rhinoceroses. Aborigines, antipodes, fæces, literati, minutiæ, prolegomena, addenda, agenda, arcana, data, ephemera* are used only in the plural.

122. **True Plurals.**—*Amends, auspices, bellows, chaps* (the jaws), *billiards, clothes,*[1] *draughts* (the game), *dumps, entrails,*[2] *environs, gallows, innings, mathematics, etc.* (531, *note*), *means, measles, mews* (stables), *news, nuptials,*[2] *oats, obsequies, odds, premises* (buildings, etc.), *proceeds, remains, scissors, shambles, shears, small-pox,*[3] *spectacles* (eye-glasses), *thanks, thews, tidings, victuals,*[2] *wages*[2] are true plurals, but have now no singular form in use. Of these, *news, innings, means,*[4] *gallows, small-pox, mathematics,*[4] are now treated as singulars:—

Ill *news runs* apace.
This is a means to an end.
Small-pox is contagious.
One innings only *was* played.
A gallows was built.
Mathematics is taught in this school.

NOTE.—The plural *friends*, from its frequent use in such sentences as 'We are *friends*,' has come to be used in relation to a singular subject, so that we can say '*I* am *friends* with him,' where *friends* = on friendly terms. So the colloquial '*He* was too *many* for me' means 'He gained the advantage over me.'

123. **Apparent Plurals.**—*Alms, riches, eaves, kickshaws* are true singulars, but are now used as plurals: 'Riches *are* transitory.' *Summons* is a true singular, and makes the plural *summonses.* Both *folk* and *folks* occur as the plural of *folk.*

124. **The Plurals of other Parts of Speech** used as nouns generally follow the ordinary rules: '*ayes* and *noes*,' '*pros* and *cons*,' '*ifs* and *buts*.' But such plurals do not alter the spelling of the original word: 'there are too many *apparentlys* and *perhapses* and *probablys* in his speech.' Letters of the alphabet generally form their plural by *-'s*: *s's, p's*, etc.; we also find *esses, zeds* for the plural of *s* and *z.*

NOTE.—Plural of Abbreviations.—Single letters are doubled:—*pp.* for 'pages,' *ll.* for 'lines,' *MSS.* for 'Manuscripts.' Curt forms take *s*:—*caps.* for 'chapters,' *secs.* for 'sections,' *Co.s* for 'companies.' So *M.D.s* for 'Doctors of Medicine.'

[1] Originally the plural of *cloth*, which now has a regular plural, *cloths.*

[2] See 49, *note.* The sing. *victual* and *wage* are occasionally used.

[3] The *-pox* of *small-pox* stands for *pocks*; cf. '*pock*-mark.'

[4] Occasionally also used as a plural.

125. Plural with Numerals.—In nouns expressing a quantity or a number, the sign of the plural is often dispensed with, especially when they are preceded by a numeral:—'five *pound*,' 'two *dozen*,' 'a fleet of ten *sail*,' 'two *brace* of birds,' 'four *pair* of shoes,' 'forty *head* of cattle,' 'five *yoke* of oxen,' 'thirty *fathom* deep,' 'an engine of fifty *horse* power,' 'I weigh nine *stone*,' 'four *score* years,' 'thirty *cannon*,' '1,000 *stand* of arms.'

NOTE.—Compare 'a twelve-*month*,' 'a fort*night*,' 'a five *mile* walk,' 'a three-*foot* rule,' 'an eight-*day* clock,' 'a six-*penny* book,' 'a three-*year* old' (of an animal), 'a three-*man* beetle' (Shaks.).

126. Plural of Compounds.—The plural of compound nouns depends upon the nature of the compound, and the relation of its two parts to each other.

(1) In compounds made up of a noun preceded by an adjective (or a noun with adjectival force), or followed by an adjectival phrase or an adverb, the noun takes the plural inflexion:—

SING.	PLUR.
lieutenant-governor	lieutenant-governors
maid-servant	maid-servants
slave-driver	slave-drivers
son-in-law	sons-in-law
commander-in-chief	commanders-in-chief
passer-by	passers-by

So also in *master bakers, brother squires* (but *the brothers Smith* or *the Smith brothers*), *the three doctor Faustuses, the Miss Browns, the Mr. Smiths* (also the more formal *the Misses Brown, the Messrs. Smith*). But *handfuls, basketfuls*, etc.

(2) In compounds made up of a noun followed by an adjective, the two parts have come to cohere so closely that the plural inflexion is now added at the end:—

knight-errant	knight-errants[1]
poet-laureate	poet-laureates
surgeon-major	surgeon-majors
major-general	major-generals
governor-general	governor-generals
court-martial	court-martials[1]
price-current	price-currents
sign-manual	sign-manuals

(3) In compounds of which the first part is a verb, the plural inflexion is naturally placed at the end:—

run-away	run-aways
spend-thrift	spend-thrifts
forget-me-not	forget-me-nots

[1] *Knights-errant, poets-laureate, courts-martial* are also found.

(4) In the rare compounds consisting of two titles of equal application, both parts take the plural inflexion:—

knight-templar	knights-templars
lord-lieutenant	lords-lieutenants
lord-justice	lords-justices

So also in *men-servants*, *women-servants*.[1]

127. Plural and Singular Meanings.

(1) Some nouns have *two forms* of the plural with separate meanings:—

SING.	PLUR.
Beef	{ beefs (*kinds of beef*) beeves (*oxen*)
Brother	{ brothers (*by blood*) brethren (*of a community*)
Cloth	{ cloths (*kinds of cloth*) clothes (*garments*)
Die	{ dies (*stamps for coining*) dice (*for gaming*)
Fish	{ fish (*collective*) fishes (*regarded separately*)
Genius	{ geniuses, (*men of talents*) genii (*spirits*)
Index	{ indexes (*to a book*) indices (*signs in algebra*)
Pea	{ peas (*the seed*) pease (*the species*)
Penny	{ pennies (*separate coins*) pence (*a collective sum*)[2]
Shot	{ shot (*balls*) shots (*discharges*)
Staff	{ staves (*walking sticks, and in music*) staffs (*in a military sense*)

(2) Some nouns have *two* meanings in the singular, and *one* in the plural:—

SING.	PLUR.
Abuse, (1) *wrong use* (2) *reproach*	abuses, *wrong uses*
Foot, (1) *part of body* (2) *infantry*	feet, *parts of body*
Force, (1) *strength* (2) *troop*	forces, *troops*
Gain, (1) *acquisition* (2) *profit*	gains, *profit*
Horse, (1) *the animal* (2) *cavalry*	horses, *the animals*
Issue, (1) *result* (2) *offspring*	issues, *results*

[1] Also *man-servants*, *woman-servants*. [2] Thus we can say '*a sixpence*.'

SING.	PLUR.
Light, (1) *of a lamp* (2) *a lamp*	lights, *lamps*
People, (1) *nation* (2) *persons*	peoples, *nations*
Powder, (1) *a dose* (2) *for guns*	powders, *doses*
Practice, (1) *a habit* (2) *exercise of a profession*	practices, *habits*

NOTE.—The nouns *compass* and *content* have *two* meanings in the singular, and a *third* in the plural:—compass, (1) *circuit*, (2) *mariner's compass*; compasses, (3) *instrument for measuring*; content, (1) *capacity*, (2) *contentment*; contents, (3) *things contained*.

(3) Some nouns have *two* meanings in the plural, and *one* in the singular:—

SING.	PLUR.
Appointment, *situation*	appointments, (1) *situations* (2) *equipments*
Circumstance, *fact*	circumstances, (1) *facts* (2) *condition*
Colour, *hue*	colours, (1) *hues* (2) *a flag*
Custom, *habit*	customs, (1) *habits* (2) *revenue duties*
Effect, *result*	effects, (1) *results* (2) *property*
Element, *simple substance*	elements, (1) *simple substances* (2) *rudiments*
Manner, *method*	manners, (1) *methods* (2) *behaviour*
Moral, *a moral lesson*	morals, (1) *moral lessons* (2) *conduct*
Number, *quantity*	numbers, (1) *quantities* (2) *verses*
Pain, *suffering*	pains, (1) *sufferings* (2) *exertion*
Part, *division*	parts, (1) *divisions* (2) *abilities*
Premise, *proposition*	premises, (1) *propositions* (2) *buildings*
Provision, *condition*	provisions, (1) *conditions* (2) *food*
Quarter, *fourth part*	quarters, (1) *fourth parts* (2) *lodgings*
Spectacle, *sight*	spectacles, (1) *sights* (2) *eye-glasses*

NOTE.—*Letter* has *two* meanings in the singular, and *three* in the plural: singular, (1) *of alphabet*, (2) *epistle*; plural, (1) *of alphabet*, (2) *epistles*, (3) *literature*. *Ground* means in the singular, (1) *earth*, (2) *reason*; in the plural, (1) *garden*, (2) *reasons*, (3) *dregs*. Cf. the singular and plural of *stock*, *respect*, *draught*, *list*, *shroud*.

(4) Some nouns have acquired a *different meaning* in the plural:—

SING.	PLUR.
Advice, *counsel*	advices, *information*
Air, *atmosphere*	airs, *affectation*
Domino, *a cloak used as a disguise*	dominoes, *the game*
Good, *benefit*	goods, *property*
Minute, *of time*	minutes, *of a meeting*
Physic, *medicine*	physics, *natural science*
Return, *coming back*	returns, *statistics*
Vapour, *steam*	vapours, *ill-humour*
Vesper, *evening*	vespers, *evening service*

NOTE.—*Hangings* means things hung, curtains; *leavings*, things left; *belongings*, things that belong; so with *sweepings*, *takings* (money taken), *savings*, *winnings*, *earnings*, *surroundings*. The singulars have different meanings, as in 'He deserves *hanging*.'

CASE.

128. *Definition.*—**Case** indicates the relation in which a noun (or a pronoun) stands to some other word in a sentence. Thus—

(1) The Nominative Case is the case of the *subject* of a verb: as, 'The *boy* runs.'

(2) The Objective Case is the case of the *object* of a verb or a preposition: as, 'He struck the *boy*.' 'The dog was struck by the *boy*.'

(3) The Possessive Case indicates that something belongs to the person or thing named by the noun: as, 'The *boy's* book.' The Possessive may be used in a *subjective* or in an *objective* sense: thus 'God's love' may mean love felt by God (the *subject* of it), or the love felt for God (the *object* of it).

(4) The Vocative Case (or Nominative of Address) indicates that the person named is addressed: as, '*Boy!* Where is your book?'

NOTE.—For the Indirect Objective Case, the Dative of Interest, and the Reflexive Dative, see **212** and *notes*. For the Cognate Objective, see **210**.

The Nominative Case.

129. The Nominative Case or Subject is placed, as a rule, before the verb. But it comes or may come after the verb (or, where an auxiliary verb is used, after the auxiliary)—

(1) In interrogations:—

How many books *have you?* What *do you* say?

(2) Sometimes in exclamations:—

What a son *has he* lost! How great *is* thy *goodness!*—*Bible.*

NOTE.—But ordinarily an exclamation is distinguished from an interrogation by its keeping the normal order, and we say—'How *he ran!*' but 'How *did he* run?'—'What success *he had!*' but 'What success *had he?*'

(3) With the imperative mood:—

Go ye and tell that fox.—*Bible.* *Do you* stand here.

NOTE.—In modern English the subject is generally omitted with the imperative mood.

(4) With the subjunctive mood used to express a *wish* or a *purpose*:—

Long *live* the *king!* *May I* be there to see! *Suffice it* to say.

(5) In conditional clauses without *if*, *whether*, or *though* :—

Were I (=if I were) a rich man, I would help you.
Be it (=whether it be) cheap or dear, I will take it.
He will not succeed, *try he* (=though he try) never so hard.

(6) When a word or a phrase is transferred to the beginning of the sentence (*a*) for the sake of emphasis, or (*b*) in order to keep relative clauses next their antecedents [717, (3)] :—

(*a*) Great *was* the *uproar*. Gone *are* my *hopes*. Up *flew* the *signal*.
No sooner *had we* reached home, than the storm burst.
Not only *was* the *mouse* caught, but it was killed.
Scarcely *had* the *man* arrived, when he was arrested.
Such *was* his *diligence*, that he passed the examination.

(*b*) In the centre *rode Duke William*, who bore a mace of iron, and who etc.
And now *began* in wind and rain the great *battle*, upon which so much depended, and which etc.

When the verb is in the present or the past imperfect momentary tenses, the auxiliary form of the verb is often preferred :—

Thus *do men* heap up riches (*for* thus men heap up riches).
So furiously *does* the *wind* blow that the sail is splitting (*for* the wind blows so furiously that etc.).
Never *did Englishmen* show greater courage (*for* Englishmen never showed etc.).
Not only *did it* rain but it hailed also (*for* it not only rained but etc.).

(7) Often after the adverbs *so*, *as*, *the more*, etc., in the second clause of a sentence, and always after *nor* :—

As you behave to me, so *shall I* behave to you.
Since you are satisfied, so *am I* (satisfied).
The officers shouted ; so (*or* as) *did* the *men* (shout).
The more I saw of him, the less *was I* pleased with him.
The more I listened, the more *did I* laugh.[1]
He was not present, nor *was I* (present).

(8) In poetry (see **732**) :—

Reel'd soul and *sense*, *reel'd brain* and *eye*.—*Scott.*

(9) In introducing speech reported directly :—

"What is it"? *enquired the widow.* "I'll astonish you," *said Tom.*

NOTE.—*Quoth* (=says, said) is *always* followed by its subject :—"*Quoth* the *raven*, 'Nevermore.'"

[1] But 'The more I listened, the more *I laughed*' is also correct.

130. Two Nominatives.—(1) Two or more Singular nouns or pronouns joined by *and* require a Plural verb :—

The boy and the girl *are* (=they are) gone.
You and I *are* (=we are) old friends.

But the verb is Singular when the two nouns—

(*a*) refer to the same person or thing :—

The Magistrate and Collector *is* in Court.

(*b*) denote a single object :—

The horse and cart *is* at the door.

(*c*) are qualified by *each* or *every* :—

Every leaf and every flower *declares* the glory of the Creator.

(2) Two Singular nouns joined by *or* or *nor*, when they are strongly alternative [278, (1)], require a Singular verb :—

Neither his father nor his mother *is* alive.

(3) When two or more Subjects of different Persons are joined by *or* or *nor*, the verb agrees with the Subject nearest to it :—

Either Ram or I *am* wrong.
Neither Ram nor you *have* gone.

It is better, however, to repeat the verb :—

Either Ram *is* wrong or I *am*.
Neither *has* Ram gone nor *have* you.

The Possessive Case.

131. The Possessive Ending.—In Old English the possessive ending was *-es*, now *-'s* (the apostrophe before the *s* denoting that the vowel of the suffix has been dropped), as 'the *boy's* book.'[1] The possessive plural is formed by adding the apostrophe only, as 'the *boys'* books'; except when the plural noun does not end in *s*, as 'the *men's* books.'

If the possessive is antecedent to a relative sentence, the form in *of* is now always employed, in order to bring the antecedent and the relative close together, and so prevent ambiguity. Thus we do not say, 'the *man's* hat that was drowned'; but, 'the hat *of the man* that was drowned.'

[1] Note that the article belongs to the possessive [unless it is adjectival, as in 'the *mother's* (=motherly) nature of Althæa']: 'the boy's book'=a (or the) *book of the boy*.

132. Omission of '-s.'—In Singular nouns the *s* of the possessive ending is omitted, in prose—(*a*) when the last syllable begins and ends with *s*: '*Moses*' law'; (*b*) before the word *sake* in 'for *conscience*' sake,' 'for *goodness*' sake,' etc. (but 'for *truth's* sake'); in poetry frequently:—

Hard *unkindness*' altered eye.—*Gray.*

The innocent blood
Shed for her fair *face*' sake.[1]—*Swinburne.*

As thick as *Ajax*' seven-fold shield.—*Butler.*

Worth a *Jewess*' eye.—*Shakspere.*

But ordinarily *s* should be retained:—'His *Holiness's* toe,' '*Pepys's* Diary,' '*Davis's* Strait,' '*Letts's* Calendars,' '*Epps's* cocoa,' '*Fortunatus's* cap,' '*Columbus's* discovery,' '*Euripides's* dramas,' '*Chambers's* Journal, 'St. *James's* Square,' 'for *James's* sake.'

133. Possessive of Proper Nouns in -s.—The following table is added to explain a subject which is often confused:—

SING.	PLUR.
Nom. James	*Nom.* Jameses
Poss. James's	*Poss.* Jameses'

134. Possessive of Compounds.—In compounds, or when a noun is followed by a descriptive phrase, or in complex names, the 's is affixed to the last word: as, 'the *heir-at-law's* will,' 'the *Queen of England's* reign,' '*Smith the baker's* son,' 'Messrs. *Thacker, Spink and Co.'s* shop,' '*Julius Cæsar's* death,' '*Ram Gopal Singh's* book.' We also say '*some one else's* book.' For the sake of brevity, the same rule is followed even when one thing is possessed by several persons, if they are closely connected by *and*: as, '*John, William, and Mary's* uncle'; but we write 'the *pope's* and the *king's* pleasure,' because the two pleasures are quite distinct.

135. The Possessive inflexion is limited chiefly to persons and animals. We say 'the *king's* crown,' 'the *lion's* mane'; but not 'the *tree's* top,' 'the *sofa's* cushion,' 'the *verandah's* punkah.'[2] We may, however, use the first noun adjectively and say 'the *tree* top,' 'the *sofa* cushion,' 'the *verandah* punkah' (535).

[1] Milton has 'for *intermission* sake,' without the apostrophe, and similarly we sometimes find 'for *conscience* sake.'

[2] Poetry has more licence:—'in *danger's* hour' (*Doyle*), for 'in the hour of danger'; 'on a lofty *vase's* side' (*Gray*), for 'on the side of a lofty vase.'

136. The inflexion is used, however, in—

(1) Nouns denoting (*a*) personified or (*b*) quasi-personified things:—

(*a*) *Fortune's* smile.
Nature's works.
Freedom's martyrs.
Heaven's decree.
Poverty's tears.
India's sons.

(*b*) The *mountain's* brow.
The *sun's* rays.
The *ocean's* roar.
The *earth's* orbit.
The *moon's* phases.
The *soul's* welfare.
The *law's* delays.
The *court's* decision.
The *country's* good.
At *duty's* call.
At *death's* door.

(2) Nouns denoting (*a*) time, (*b*) space, (*c*) weight:—

(*a*) A *minute's* interval.
A *day's* leave.
A *night's* rest.
A *month's* holiday.
A *week's* visit.
In a *year's* time.
A *quarter's* rent.
A few *hours'* intercourse.
The Thirty *Years'* War.
The Three *Days'* Revolution.
A nine *days'* wonder.
Three *days'* grace.
A bill at six *months'* sight.
At ten *years'* purchase.

(*b*) A *hand's* breadth.
A *hair's* breadth.
A *boat's* length.
A *stone's* throw.

(*c*) Twenty *pounds'* weight.
A ship of 500 *tons'* burden.

(3) A few common phrases, for the sake of brevity:—

He is at his *wit's* end.
He came to his *journey's* end.
A *rope's* end.
Land's end.
He has it at his *fingers'* ends.
He did it to his *heart's* content.
I kept him at *arm's* length.
The *water's* edge.
A *pin's* head.
In my *mind's* eye.
A *ship's* company.
A *ship's* mast.
A *boat's* crew.
For *pity's* sake.
For *mercy's* sake.
For *goodness'* sake.
I gave him his *money's* worth.

NOTE.—We say an *anna's* worth, a *rupee's* worth, a *farthing's* worth, a *shilling's* worth, a *crown's* worth, a *pound's* worth; but a *pice* worth, a *penny* worth.

137. '**This book of mine**,' etc.—We can say 'my *good* book,' but not 'my *this* book'; similarly we can say 'a *good* book,' but not 'a *Ram's* book.' Hence, as a way out of the difficulty, instead of '*my* this book'[1] we say 'this book *of mine*,' and instead of 'a *Ram's* book' we say 'a book *of Ram's*'[2]; so that *of mine* is simply equivalent to *my*, and *of Ram's* to *Ram's*. Hence 'this father *of*

[1] But 'this *my* son,' 'which *my* covenant,' occur in the Bible.

[2] 'This book *of me*' and 'a book *of Ram*' were avoided as awkward and often ambiguous expressions.

mine' does not and cannot mean 'this father *of my fathers*,' but is merely a substitute[1] for the impossible collocations 'my this father' or 'this my father.'[1]

NOTE.—We can say '*my other* book' (also *my many, my few*), but not '*my another* book'; say '*another* book *of mine*.' *Many another* (and *many such*) is correct. We find both *another such* and *such another*; *who both* and *both of whom*. Observe that 'a portrait of the queen' means *a representation of the queen*; 'a portrait of the queen's' means *a portrait belonging to the queen*. Similarly, 'this news of Ram' means *this news about Ram*; but 'this news of Ram's' means *this news that Ram brings*.

138. The Case Absolute.

A Noun and a Participle in agreement with it may form together an adverbial phrase grammatically *independent* of the rest of the sentence: as '*The Gauls having departed*, the citizens returned to Rome.' Such a phrase is called an *absolute* phrase because it stands alone, and the noun is said to be in the Nominative Case Absolute:—

I shall not lag behind nor err (=miss)
The way, *thou leading*.—*Milton*.

I lay
In silence musing by my comrade's side,
He also (being) *silent*.—*Wordsworth*.

The river (having been) *crossed*, the army resumed its march.

NOTE.—Sometimes a noun with a gerundial infinitive forms an Absolute phrase: 'The business was turned into a Company, *the owners to receive* (=the owners receiving) half the shares [222, (4)].'

139. The Adverbial Objective.

A noun in the objective case is used adverbially to denote—

(*a*) Extent and Direction in Space:—

He lives a long *way* from Calcutta. Go the nearest *way*.
They met half *way*. What *distance* can you throw?
My house is a *mile* from the town. He ran a *mile*.
When attacked, he stood his *ground*. I will not retreat an *inch*.
The army was three *marches* in the rear of the enemy.
I turned and saw her distant a few *steps*.—*Wordsworth*.

(*b*) Duration of Time and Point of Time:—

He stayed there ten *years*. This happens *night* after night.
We waited an *hour*. Come the *day* after to-morrow.
He arrived last *night*. He goes to Simla every *summer*.
I met him a *month* ago. I shall meet him a *month* hence.
I have been here a *week* (duration of time) *to-day* (point of time).

[1] See footnote 1, p. 75.

Stay a *while*. Wait a *little* [344, (*d*)]. He is at work all *day* long.
I bathe all the *year* round. I have told you *times* without number.

NOTE.—'I shall expect you *to day week*' = 'I shall expect you at the interval of a week from the point of time to-day,' and *week* (=in a week) is adjectival to *day*, which is an adverbial objective.

(*c*) Cost or Value:—

This book cost five *rupees*. Rice is four *annas* a pound.
It is not worth *while* (=the time spent) arguing about it.
He was worthy a better *fate*. He is worth *you* and *me* put together.

(*d*) Amount or Degree:—

I do not care a *straw*—a *fig*—a *pin*—a *bit*—for him.
He was fined ten *rupees*. This is *something* like that.
The patient is a *trifle* better to-day.
It is five *degrees* hotter than it was yesterday.
This sum is ten *times* harder than that one.
The wall is four *feet* high. Beauty is only *skin* deep.
He is a *year* older than I am.
He is every *inch* (of him) a soldier. He weighs ten *stone*.
He advanced with an army ten thousand (*men*) strong.
Gladstone stands *head* and *shoulders* above his contemporaries.

NOTE.—Compare 'this is *a pound* too light' with 'this is too light *by a pound* [420, (4)].'

(*e*) Manner or Attendant Circumstance:—

The man was bound *hand* and *foot*. They were sitting *side* by side.
Let us walk *arm* in arm. I met him *face* to face.
Walk *step* by step. He approached me *sword* in hand.
We must ride *post-haste*. The boat turned *bottom* upwards.
The king banished Wolsey the *court*.

NOTE.—Expressions like *sword in hand* are by some regarded as instances of the case absolute with the participle omitted: thus *sword in hand*=*sword being in hand*. But in Old English, *face to face* was *of face to face*; see 420, (4), *note*.

ADJECTIVES.

140. *Definition.*—**An Adjective** (Latin *adjectivus*, what is added) is a word used to qualify a Noun or a Pronoun. It can be used (1) *attributively*, as 'a *tall* man'; or (2) *predicatively*, as 'the man is *tall*.'

141. Adverb of same form as Adjective.—There are many common phrases in which the Adverb has the same form as the corresponding Adjective: as, 'to work *hard* (not *hardly*),' 'to die *hard*,' 'to stick *fast*,' 'to drink *deep*,' 'to walk *straight*,' 'to stop *short*,' 'to speak *loud*,' 'to talk *low*,' 'to talk *big*,' 'to play *fair*,' 'to bid (=promise) *fair*,' 'to play *high*,' 'to aim *high*,'

'prices run *high*,' 'it makes the blood run *cold*,' 'if I remember *right*,' 'to approach *near*,' 'to sell (or buy) *cheap* or *dear*,' 'to see *double*,' 'to serve one *right*,' 'to cost one *dear*,' 'to look one *straight* (or *full*) in the face'; '*pretty* good,' '*dark* red,' '*right* reverend,' '*wide* open,' '*wide* awake,' 'far and *wide*,' '*sound* asleep,' '*fast* asleep,' '*clean* gone,' '*stark* naked (or mad),' '*sore* afraid,' '*passing* strange,' '*full*[1] oft' (cf. **651**).

NOTE.—*Doubtless* is always an adverb, though *doubtlessly* also occurs.

142. Comparison of Adjectives.—There are three Degrees of Comparison: the Positive *high*; the Comparative, *high-er*; the Superlative, *high-est*. When an Adjective has more than two syllables, the comparison is usually expressed by *more* and *most*, as *eloquent, more eloquent, most eloquent.*

NOTE.—Some adjectives cannot, in the nature of things, be compared:—*one, two, first, second, single, double, all, several*, etc.; *round, square, weekly, monthly, French, German, solar, lunar, longish, reddish, eternal, perfect*, etc. *Northern*, etc. make the superlative *northernmost*, etc.

143. 'Than,' 'as,' in comparative sentences, are *Conjunctions*, and should have the same case after them as before them:—

He is richer than *I* (am rich).
He likes you better than (he likes) *me*.
I am not so tall as *he* (is tall).

We sometimes, however, find *than, as* incorrectly used as prepositions:—

A man no mightier than thyself or *me*.—*Shak's.*
Is she as tall as *me*?—*Ib.*
The nations not so blest as *thee*.—*Thomson.*

But *than*, in sentences in which it cannot have a verb understood after it and so cannot be a conjunction, must be parsed as a *Preposition*:—

I will not take less *than* five rupees.
The next king was Solomon, *than* whom there was none wiser.
He got more *than* (what) he gave.
I will starve rather *than* (that) she should want.
I did no more *than* make a beginning.

144. Irregular Comparisons.

(1) **Far, farther, farthest.**—*Farther* and *farthest* are for *far-er* and *far-est*, the *th* have crept in from false analogy with *further, furthest*; see *fore* below. *Farther* means 'more distant'; *further*, 'additional,' as 'a *further* instance.'

[1] *Full* here means *very*, as in '*full* many,' '*full* well.'

(2) **Good, better, best.**—This is also the comparison of *well.*

(3) **Bad, worse, worst.**—*Worse* is short for *wors-er; wors-t* is a contraction of *wors-est.* This is also the comparison of *ill.*

(4) **Much, more, most.**—*More* and *most* are also the comparative and superlative of *many. Much* denotes quantity, *many* denotes number.

(5) **Near, nearer, nearest** and **next.**—*Near* was originally the comparative of *nigh*, making the superlative *nighest*, contracted into *next. Near* afterwards came to be used as a positive, from which the new comparative and superlative *nearer, nearest* were formed. *Nearest* denotes distance: 'My house is the *nearest* to us'; *next* denotes position: 'My house is *next* to yours.'

(6) **Old,** { **older, oldest** / **elder, eldest** }.—*Elder* and *eldest* are now used to denote the precedence that accompanies greater age: as 'the *eldest* son,' 'my *elder* brother.' *Elder* and *eldest* are applied to persons only, *older* and *oldest* to both things and persons: 'My *eldest* daughter'; 'I have an *older* son'; 'This is the *oldest* house in the town.'

(7) **Little, less** and **lesser, least.**—*Less* and *least* are used both as adjectives and adverbs. *Lesser* is a double comparative, and is now used only as an adjective: 'This is the *lesser* evil of the two.'

(8) **Late,** { **later, latest** / **latter, last** }.—*Last* is a contraction of *latest. Late* is an adverb in 'to arrive *late*,' *i.e.* at a late hour; *lately* means 'recently.' *Late*, as an adjective, has two meanings:—(1) *behindhand*: 'he was *late* for dinner'; (2) *just past; just deceased*: 'during the *late* summer,' 'my *late* wife.' *Last* has three meanings:—(1) *endmost*: 'he is *last* in his class'; (2) *ultimate*: 'he came *last* year'; (3) *utmost*: 'this is of the *last* importance.'

Later and *latest* refer to *time*: 'this is a *later* edition,' 'the *latest* discovery in science.'

Latter and *last* refer to *order*: 'the *latter* alternative,' 'the *last* of the Romans.'

(9) **Fore,** { **former, first, foremost.** / **further, furthest, furthermost.** }

First (a contraction of *fore-st*) is of general application; *foremost* means 'most conspicuous.' Adam was the *first* man; Napoleon was the *foremost* man of his time.

(10) **Hind**, **hinder, hindmost** and **hindermost.**

(11) **In** (adv.), **inner, inmost** and **innermost.**

(12) **Out** (adv.), { **outer, outmost** and **outermost.** / **utter, utmost** and **uttermost.**

Outer means 'outside': as, 'an *outer* garment'; *utter* means 'extreme, complete' (in a bad sense): as, 'an *utter* failure.'

(13) **Up** (adv.), **upper, upmost** and **uppermost.**

(14) **(Be)neath** (adv.), **nether. nethermost.**

145. Latin Comparatives.—A few adjectives, originally Latin comparatives, have the Latin comparative suffix *-ior*:—*interior, exterior, superior, inferior, anterior, posterior, prior, ulterior, senior, junior, major, minor.* These are followed by *to* (as 'he is *superior to* me'), except *interior, ulterior, major, minor*, which have lost their comparative force and are used as Positive adjectives: as, 'A matter of *minor* (secondary) importance.' A few comparatives of English origin also cannot be followed by *than* (nor by *to*):—*former, latter, elder, hinder, upper, nether, inner, outer, utter.*

NUMERALS.

146. Cardinal Numerals are those which show *how many* objects are specified: '*two* bats,' '*three* balls.'

The Cardinal Numerals from *one* to *ninety-nine* are adjectives, but they are occasionally used as nouns: *by ones, by twos; on all fours* (= on hands and feet); *at sixes and sevens* (= in confusion). *One* is sometimes used for *the same*:—

That's all *one* to me = that is quite *the same* to me.

The Cardinal Adverbs are—*once, twice, thrice* or *three times, four times*, etc.

147. Ordinal Numerals show *in what order* things are arranged, as 'the *first* prize,' 'the *third* day.'

The Ordinal Adverbs are—*first* (not *firstly*[1]), *secondly*, etc.

NOTE.—Ordinal numerals should precede cardinal:—'The *first three* names on the list,' not 'the *three first*.'

148. Multiplicatives show how often a thing is repeated, and are expressed by the suffixes—

(*a*) *-fold*: *two-fold, three-fold*, etc.

(*b*) *-ple* or *-ble*: *sin-gle, dou-ble, tre-ble* (or *tri-ple*), *quadru-ple*, etc.

[1] A common blunder: we might as well say *nextly*.

149. **Distributives** (how many at a time) are expressed by employing—

(*a*) The preposition *by: by ones, by twos*, etc.; *one by one, two by two*, etc. Cf. *step by step, little by little* [420, (4), *note*].

(*b*) *And:* in the single instance *two and two*. Cf. *hot and hot* (=successively hot), *watch and watch* (=in alternate watches).

ARTICLES.

150. The Articles are not a separate part of speech: they are Demonstrative Adjectives.

The *Definite* Article, *the*, is a weakened form of *that*, and is called Definite because its function is to *define* or particularise. The *Indefinite* Article, *an, a*, is a weakened form of *one*, and is called Indefinite because its function is *not to define* but to generalise.

Thus in the sentence '*the man* that I saw yesterday,' *the man* refers to *a particular man*; in '*a man* that I saw yesterday,' *a man* refers to *any one among a number of men*.

NOTE.—The form *an* is used before a vowel or a silent *h*: *an apple, an hour*. *An* becomes *a* before a consonant, an aspirated *h*, or a syllable with the sound of *yu*: *a man, a horse, a usage, a eulogy* (but *an uncle*). But *an* is generally used before an aspirated *h* when the accent is not on the first syllable: *an historical event, an hotel*.

USES OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

151. (1) **Defining 'the.'**—*The* is prefixed to a noun when the noun is separately defined by a qualifying word or expression, either expressed or understood. Thus '*the red* ball' implies that there is only one ball that is red; '*a red* ball' implies that there are several red balls, one of which is mentioned: and, therefore, in this latter instance, the noun *ball* is not *separately defined* by the qualifying word *red*. So with—

The Great Fire. *The* book *that I gave you*. *The* way *to be happy*. He had *the* effrontery *to deny it*. I wonder you have *the* patience *to listen to him*. *The* bells *of London*. *The* clock *on the stairs*. I saw a man there, and I went up to *the* man (*that I saw*). Where is the cobra?—I have killed *the* creature (*that you mention*).

Hence, *the* must be used with Superlatives and words used in a Superlative sense, since the very notion of the Superlative is that of separately defining or singling out an object:—

The longest day in the year.
The head boy in the class is Ram.
The chief magistrate of Calcutta.[1]

[1] The Superlative is sometimes employed predicatively without any article:—'She is *fairest* of the fair'; 'This plan is *best* of all'; 'I am *head* boy in the class.'

Hence also, *the* must be employed when one of two known alternatives is singled out:—

He gained *the* advantage (the two alternatives being success and failure).
Choose *the narrow* way, not *the broad* way.

'He gained *an* advantage' would imply that the alternative of failure was not contemplated, but merely the different kinds of success that might be attained, and '*an* advantage' means '*some* advantage.' So—

This is *the finer* horse of the two.

'This is *a finer* horse than that' is right, because the question is not now between two known objects; there may be several horses finer than the one referred to. So we say '*a similar* thing,' because there may be several; but '*the same* thing,' because there is only one.

Hence, further, *the* is used when special emphasis is intended:—

He is *the* poet of his age (=the greatest poet).
This is *the* way, walk ye in it (=the only right way).—*Bible.*
Exact to *the* letter (=each separate letter).
Portrayed to *the* life (=the original living person).
Cheered to *the* echo (as contrasted with the original sound).
You are *the* man to do it (=the proper man).
This is just *the* thing (=the right thing).

152. (2) **Familiar 'the.'**—*The* is prefixed to a noun when the notion conveyed by the noun is so familiar or unique that no descriptive word or expression is needed:—

Come into *the* garden (=the garden that belongs to our house).
Shut *the* door (=the door of the room where we are).
He was brought before *the* magistrate (=the magistrate who, as every one knows, tries such cases).
He came to *the* rescue (=the rescue required in the case).
To give *the* alarm. To sound *the* retreat. He got *the* start.
I passed beside the reverend walls
In which of old I wore *the* gown (=the usual college gown).—*Tennyson.*
To go to *the* play (or theatre). Cultivators of *the* soil.

Hence *the* is used with nouns that represent well-known single objects or single wholes:—

The sun, *the* moon, *the* world, *the* universe, *the* earth, *the* ocean, *the* sky, *the* heavens, *the* sea, *the* equator, *the* times (but *Heaven, Hell, Purgatory, Paradise*, as names of places, without any article); *the* Bible, *the* Gospel, *the* Scripture; *the* Queen, *the* Pope; *the* Douglas, *the* Bruce; *the* north, *the* south, *the* east, *the* west; *the* Army, *the* Navy, *the* Bar, *the* nobility, *the* gentry, *the* public, etc.

Similarly *the* is used in such phrases as—

Quite *the* contrary (of what has been said). Nothing of *the* kind (that you mention). To beg *the* question (under debate). Foreign to *the* subject (that is being considered). To see *the* light (of day, *i.e.* to be published). To sell by *the* pound (the well-known weight).

153. (3) **'The' for Possessive Pronoun.**—Since the possessive pronoun is a defining word, *the* often takes its place, when it is clear, from the context, to whom the thing mentioned belongs:—

I struck him on *the* head. Certain death stared him in *the* face. He was cut to *the* heart. To take the bull by *the* horns. To take time by *the* forelock.

They shoot out *the* lip, they shake *the* head.—*Bible.*

Oh 'tis hard to give *the* (=one's) hand
Where *the* (=one's) heart can never be.—*Song.*

NOTE.—But we say—'He took it into *his* (not *the*) head'; 'He wrung *his* hands, gnashed *his* teeth, tore *his* hair'; 'She cried *her* eyes out'; 'He let it slip through *his* fingers'; 'He is on *his* last legs.'

154. (4) **Generalising 'the' with Adjectives.**—*The* is prefixed—

(*a*) To an adjective with a plural notion, to indicate a class of persons. Thus, *the rich* = all those who are rich, rich men generally. We can say—

The rich are not always happy,
or
Rich men are not always happy,

but we can never *combine both forms* and say—

The rich men are not always happy.

(*b*) To an adjective with a singular notion to express the corresponding abstract idea. Thus *the true* = all that which is true = *truth*:—

All the motions of Goldsmith's nature moved in the direction of *the true, the natural, the sweet, the gentle.*—*De Quincey.*

The future (=futurity) is unknown to us.

He would oft leave *the right* to pursue *the expedient.*—*Goldsmith.*

155. (5) **Generalising 'the' with Nouns.**—*The* is similarly prefixed to a singular noun—

(*a*) To indicate a specimen as representative of a class: as, *the eagle*, to represent the whole species of eagles, *the wise man, the hero, the brute*, to represent wise men, heroes, and brutes generally:—

The eagle is the king of birds.
The wise man knows when to be silent.
Discern how *the hero* differs from *the brute.*—*Addison.*

(*b*) To express the cognate abstract notion: as, *the patriot* for 'patriotism,' *the beast* for 'man's animal nature,' *the ape* for 'sensuality,' *the tiger* for 'cruelty,' *the father* for 'fatherly feelings':—

He has something of *the patriot* in his composition.

Move upward, working out *the beast*,
And let *the ape* and (*the*) *tiger* die.—*Tennyson.*

All *the father* rises in my heart.—*Addison.*

156. (6) **'The' with Proper Nouns.**[1] (*a*) The following generally take the Definite Article, because they are regarded mainly as epithets:—

Peoples, parties, sects: *the English, the Whigs, the Pharisees.*

Rivers, seas, oceans: *the Ganges, the Mediterranean, the Atlantic, the Bosphorus.*

Mountain-ranges: *the Alps*; but not the names of single mountains: *Snowdon, Olympus, Vesuvius.*

(*b*) The following generally take no Article, because they are regarded as single wholes:—

Continents, countries, islands, provinces, towns: *Europe, India, Ceylon, Bengal, Calcutta*; except the names of some districts: *the Deccan, the Carnatic, the Crimea, the Tyrol, the Punjab*, and of plural terms for countries and groups of islands: *the West Indies, the Netherlands, the Azores, the Orkneys.*

Times of the year: *May, Sunday, Christmas, Lent.*

Languages and branches of knowledge: *English, Algebra, Astronomy.*

NOTE.—The names of literary works come under no fixed rule. We say *The Deserted Village, The Faery Queen, The Tempest*, (omitting *the*, however, after the author's name, as *Shakspere's* '*Tempest*,' but '*The Tempest*' *of Shakspere*), *Old Kensington, Vanity Fair, In Memoriam, Paradise Lost*, according as *the* is or is not part of the title. But *the* (or *a*), though in the title, is sometimes omitted for the sake of brevity, as (The) *Winter's Tale*, (A) *Midsummer Night's Dream*; and is sometimes inserted where it is not part of the title, as *the Areopagitica, the In Memoriam, the Paradise Lost.* Generally, however, where the title is the name of a person, no article is inserted, as *Hamlet, Romeo and Juliet, David Copperfield, Robinson Crusoe, Marmion*; but it may sometimes be introduced, as *the Comus, the Lycidas, the Endymion.*

Names of diseases usually do not take *the* before them:—*fever, headache, diphtheria*; sometimes, however, *the* may be used:—*the gout, the measles, the mumps, the ague, the cholera.*

USES OF THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

157. (1) **Individualising 'a.'**—The Indefinite Article individualises without defining. Thus, in 'There was once *a man* who' etc., '*a* man' = *a certain* man; in 'I have *a great respect* for

[1] For *the* and *a* with Proper Nouns used in a descriptive sense, see **108.**

you,' '*a* great respect' = *some* great respect[1]; in 'Not *a drum* was heard,' '*a* drum' = *one* drum. So, *a* = (*a*) *one*, or (*b*) *the same* in—

(*a*) They were killed to *a* man.
I will come in *a* minute or two.
One at *a* time. Seven at *a* blow. *A* rupee a yard.
In *a* day or two. I see that at *a* glance.
He has not *a* leg to stand upon. We are both of *a* mind.

(*b*) Birds of *a* feather. Two of *a* trade can never agree.
They are much of *an* age—of *a* size.
This is all of *a* sort—of *a* piece.

158. (2) **Generalising 'a.'**—The Indefinite Article generalises. Thus, in 'Give me *a book*,' '*a* book' = *any* book; in '*A son* should obey his father,' '*a* son' = *any* son, all sons. Compare:—

A horse is a useful animal.
The horse is a useful animal.
Horses are useful animals.

These sentences are all equivalent in meaning, because *a horse* = *any horse* = *horses generally*; while *the horse* [**155**, (*a*)] stands for the whole species of horses, and so is also equivalent to *horses generally*.

NOTE.—The Indefinite Article = *some* in '*a* few,' '*a* little.' Thus 'he had *a few* supporters' draws attention to the fact that he had at least *some* supporters, and *a few* is contrasted with *none*; 'he had *few* supporters' draws attention to their fewness only, and *few* is contrasted with *many*.

OMISSION OF THE ARTICLES.

159. Since both the Articles individualise the noun to which they are added, the general rule is that, where a noun has no article, it is to be taken in a general and indefinite sense and not in a particular and limited sense. Thus, *a man* and *the man* both mean 'some one man'; but *man* (as in '*Man* proposes, but God disposes') means 'man in general' and includes all men.

160. (1) **With Abstract, Material, and Collective Nouns.**—(*a*) The Articles must never be joined to Abstract nouns:—

Love shall still be lord of all. *Trade* is flourishing. *Happiness* is transient. *Order* was evolved out of *chaos*. *Error* is the enemy of *Knowledge*. *History* is *philosophy* teaching by *experience*.

In 'I feel *a* great *love* for you,' 'He is at the head of *the trade*,' '*a great love*' means a great *amount* of love, and *the trade* means some special trade, and so the notion set forth by the

[1] Other instances of *a* = *some* are:—'in *a* great degree'; 'on *an* average'; '*a* great deal'; 'to be at *a* loss'; 'I am, in *a* manner, compelled to,' etc.; 'I am amazed to *a* degree' (= to some great degree).

noun is no longer abstract but concrete, and the articles are rightly used (110).

(*b*) The Articles are not joined to Material nouns, when the thing in general is denoted :—

Midas longed for *gold*.

But in 'this is *a* pure *gold*,' *a gold* means *a kind of gold* (106).

(*c*) A few Collective nouns, used in a general sense, dispense with the Definite Article, as *mankind, society, company, posterity, people, cattle, committee, parliament, government* :—

Society (=gentlefolk generally) refused to receive him.
The Houses of *Parliament*.
The question was discussed in *committee*.
He held an appointment under *Government*.[1]

Compare the following :—

(*a*) To be a member of *society*=to belong to a civilised community.
(*b*) To be a member of *a society*=to belong to an association of persons.
(*a*) He has *company* (=guests) to dinner.
(*b*) He is chairman of a *company* (=a body of shareholders).
(*a*) *The people*=the popular classes.
(*b*) *A people*=a nation.
(*c*) *People*=persons generally.

161. (2) **With Class Nouns.**—The Articles may be omitted before a singular concrete noun, where it represents a general notion—especially in comparative, negative, and interrogative sentences, and after *never*, *ever*, and *such*. Thus in—

More tuneable than *lark* to *shepherd's* ear,

the whole species of larks, and the whole class of shepherds are meant, and not any particular lark or shepherd. Examples :—

Eye hath not seen nor *ear* heard the things etc.—*Bible*.
As fair as *day*.—*Shaks*. Braver *man* never drew *sword*.
Never *man* spake like this man.—*Bible*.
Never *master* had a page so kind.—*Shaks*.
When did *knight* of Provence avoid his foe?—*Bulwer*.
He shall receive such weekly *sum* as the court may see fit.
I whirl like leaves in roaring *wind*.—*Tennyson*.
He was all that *servant* ought to be.

NOTE.—*Never man* spake like this man=at no time did a man speak like this man. *Never a man* spake like this man=not one man spake like this man. Cf. 'Where woman has *never a soul* to save' (*Hood*), *i.e.* has *no soul at all* to save.

[1] *The Government* would also be correct. *Ministers* (of the Cabinet), without *the*, is admissible; but we must say *the Ministry*.

162. (3) **With Descriptive Nouns.**—The Articles may be omitted before a noun indicating rank, occupation, station, etc., when the noun is used in a descriptive sense (almost like an adjective) after verbs of incomplete predication. Thus, 'to be *king*' means merely to hold the position of king; 'to be a *king*' means to act like a king, to exercise the royal prerogatives:—

Thy father was *duke* of Milan (*Shaks.*); Becket was *Archbishop* of Canterbury; He is *heir* to the estate; Galileo was *prisoner* to the Inquisition; Ram was *apprentice* to a carpenter; Each to each is dearest *brother* (*Tennyson*); *Father* of twenty children was he (*Longfellow*); She is *sister* to my uncle; He was *devil* for aught they knew (*Tennyson*); He turned *shoemaker*; He was created *Emperor*; I dub thee *knight* (*Scott*); He was elected *President*; Make thyself *prince* over us (*Bible*); Who calls me *villain?* (*Shaks.*); He is *hypocrite* enough for anything.

163. (4) **With Descriptive Nouns in Apposition.**—The Definite Article is omitted before these descriptive nouns (162), when they are used appositionally either (*a*) before or (*b*) after Proper Names:—

(*a*) *King* Henry; *Lord* Tennyson; *Bishop* Ridley; *Cardinal* Newman; *Pope* Alexander; *Father* Dominic; *General* Wolseley; *Captain* Foley; *Doctor* Robinson; *Lawyer* Clippurse; *Astronomer* Bailey; *Farmer* Williams; *Neighbour* Flamborough; *Dame* Margaret; *Sister* Anne; *Saint* John.

(*b*) Henry, *King* of England; Richard, *Duke* of Gloucester; John, *nephew* to Robert; Elizabeth, *daughter* of Henry; Moloch, sceptered *king*; Night, *eldest* of things; John Jones, *undertaker*; Brown and Co., *booksellers* and *stationers*.

But this usage is not universal, and does not justify us in saying *poet Homer* instead of *the poet Homer*.

NOTE.—(*a*) *The* is similarly omitted before *mount*, *lake*, *cape*: *Mount Pelion*, *Lake Huron*, *Cape Wrath*. (*b*) Similar is the omission of *the* before adjectives: *Great Juno*, *young Ferdinand*, *impious Pharaoh*, *God-like Turenne*, *jesting Pilate* (but *Charles the Great*, *James the Second*, *Araby the Blest*). (*c*) Similar also is the omission of *the* in exclamatory appositional phrases: 'He gained his suit, *happy man!*'; '*Poor soul!* his eyes are red as fire with weeping' (*Shaks.*).

164. (5) **In Enumeration and Opposition.**—(*a*) When different objects are enumerated, or (*b*) when the same objects are placed in correlation to each other, *a* or *the* (or the possessive pronoun) is often omitted, partly for the sake of brevity, partly to give greater point and emphasis to the enumeration or the correlation:—

(*a*) *Altar*, *sword* and *pen*,
Fireside, the heroic wealth of *hall* and *bower*.—*Wordsworth*.
In *robe* and *crown* the king stept down.—*Tennyson*.

Draw to one point and to one centre bring
Beast, *man*, or *angel*, *servant*, *lord*, or *king*.—*Pope*.

Aged or *young*, the living or the dead,
No mercy find.—*Byron*.

The house was on fire: *door* and *window*, *roof* and *chimney*, were in a blaze.
He was attired in *hat* and *wig* (But 'he was attired in *hat*' would be inadmissible).

Observe the similar omission of the Indefinite Article with *more—than*, *half—half*, *either—or*, *neither—nor*, *or*, *both—and*, *in one*, *in turn*:—

He is more *knave* than *fool*. (But,—He is more of *a knave* than *a fool*.)
He is half *knave*, half *fool*.
He is either *knave* or *fool*.
He is neither *knave* nor *fool*.
Is he *knave* or *fool*?
He is both *knave* and *fool*.
He is *knave* and *fool* in one.
He is *knave* and *fool* in turn.

But this usage does not justify us in saying 'This man is *knave*,' instead of 'This man is *a knave* (or *knavish*).'

(*b*) *Fire* answers *fire*, *steed* threatens *steed*.—*Shaks*.

So from the first eternal order ran,
And *creature* linked to *creature*, *man* to *man*.—*Pope*.

They stood *face* to *face*. Similarly with *foot* to *foot*, *hand* to *hand*, *shoulder* to *shoulder*, *side* by *side*, *arm* in *arm*, *time* after *time*, etc.

165. (6) **In Phrases.**—The Articles (and sometimes the possessive pronoun) are omitted for the sake of conciseness in many (*a*) Verbal phrases, (*b*) Prepositional phrases:—

(*a*) To give *ear*; to make *head* against; to set *eyes* on; to set *foot* on; to shake *hands*; to clap *hands*; to turn *tail*; to leave *town*, *school*, *college*; to attend *court*; to keep *house*; to break *prison*, *bounds*; to take *ship*, *horse*; to set, make, shorten, hoist, strike *sail*; to cast, drop, weigh *anchor*; to take, strike *root*; to bring, send *word*; to lose *heart*; to take *heart*, *oath*, *hold*, *effect*, *leave*, *fire*, *breath*; to give *battle*, *answer*; to do *penance*; to make *choice*, *boast*, *shipwreck*; to lay *hold*, *wait*, *siege*; to bear *interest*; to pass *muster*; to follow *suit*; to make *signal*; to call to *mind*.

(*b*) On *earth*; on *land*; by *land*; under *ground*; on *shore*; in *shore*; off *shore*; at *sea*; to *town*; in *town*; to *court*; at *court*; at *school*; at *college*; at *church*; to *prison*; in *jail*; fast in *dungeon* shut (*Butler*); in *bed*; out of *doors*; at *table*; at *arm's* length; the smallest mouse that creeps on *floor* (*Shaks.*); out of *place*; on board *ship*; at *anchor*; on *deck*; in *jest*; in *time*; in *turn*; in *view*; on *foot*; in *question*; in *point* (but, 'to *the point*'); in *point* of *fact*; by *rule* of *thumb*; under *sentence*; at *last* (and 'at *the last*'); at *full* (and 'at *the full*'); to make one's hair stand on *end*; to set one's teeth on *edge*; to take a thing to *heart*; to go to *sea*, to *bed*,

to *school*, to *church*, to *dinner*, to *market*, to *law*; to come to *light*; to come (or call a dog) to *heel*; to call to *mind*; helmet on *head*; sword in *hand*; from *top* to *bottom*; from *head* to *foot*; to live from *hand* to *mouth*; whatever comes to *hand*; to have in *hand*; to have at *hand*; to be to *hand*; to be of *age*; to hold at *arm's* length; at *peep* of *day*; to make to *order*; to put to *vote* (or 'to *the vote*"); valiant only in *name*; to take to *task*; to bring to *book*; payable at *sight*; the fleet is not in *sight*; swift of *foot*; tall of *size*; genteel in *figure*; short in *stature*; high in *rank*; sick at *heart*; out at *elbows*; by *word* of *mouth*; on *purpose*; in *high feather*; a prisoner for *life*; an action at *law*.

But observe that we say—in *the dark*; in *the lump*; in *the wrong*; to put to *the blush*—to *the rack*—to *the test*.

NOTE.—The article is often omitted, when an adjective precedes the noun:—in fair *field*; swords of foreign *make*; with naked *foot*; with drawn *sword*; a cliff of immense *height*; love at first *sight*; the debate of last *night*; on most *occasions*; fit to bear the weight of mightiest *monarchies* (*Milton*).

PRONOUNS.

166. *Definition.*—**A Pronoun** (Latin *pro*, instead of) is a word used either instead of a noun or in relation to a noun: as, 'Ram told *me* (=the speaker) that *he* (=Ram) struck the dog *that* (relates to 'dog') bit *him* (=Ram)'; '*Neither* (=neither book) of these books is *mine* (=my book)'.

167. Pronouns may be classified as follows:—

	SUBS.	ADJ.
I. Personal	*I, thou, he, she, it, they*	*mine, my; thine, thy; his; her, hers; its; our, ours; your, yours; their, theirs*
II. Reflexive	my*self*, our*selves*, etc.	...
	him*self*, them*selves*, etc.	...
III. Demonstrative	...	*this, that; these, those; so, such, the same, yon*
IV. Interrogative	*who, what?*	*what, which?*
V. Relative	*who, what, which, that, as*	*what, which*
VI. Conjunctive	*who, what*	*what, which*
VII. Indefinite	*one, none, other, aught, naught, enough, much*	*one, any, few, some, other, many*
VIII. Distributive	*each, either, neither*	*each, every, either, neither*

I. Personal Pronouns.

168. There are three persons: the person who speaks, called the *First* Person; the person spoken to, called the *Second* Person; and the person spoken of, called the *Third* Person.

(*a*) Personal Pronoun of the First Person :—

	SING.	PLUR.
Nom.	I	we
Poss.	mine, my	our, ours
Obj.	me	us

(*b*) Personal Pronoun of the Second Person :—

	SING.	PLUR.
Nom.	thou	ye, you
Poss.	thine, thy	your, yours
Obj.	thee	you

(*c*) Personal Pronoun of the Third Person :—

	SING.			PLUR.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	he	she	it	they		
Poss.	his	her, hers	its	their, theirs		
Obj.	him	her	it	them		

169. Thou, Ye, We, He.—*Thou* and *thee* are now limited to poetry, to the language of the *Society of Friends*, and to addresses to the Deity; their place is taken by *you*. *Ye* is now confined to poetry. *We* is used in place of *I* by royal personages, and *ourself* in place of *ourselves*. A Newspaper Editor also writes of himself as *we* (but *ourselves*).

The third Personal pronoun was originally and is still sometimes a Demonstrative pronoun :—

> So reads *he* nature whom the lamp of truth
> Illuminates (*Cowper*),

where *he* (= that man) only points to the following description, 'whom the lamp' etc. So in—

> I should
> Desire *his* jewels and this other's house (*Shaks.*).

his = 'this one's,' and is strictly demonstrative.

170. Two Forms of Possessive.—The simple Possessive forms, *my, thy, her, our, your, their*, are used when the Possessive is placed before its noun :—

> This is *my* book. *Your* knife is blunt.

The double Possessive forms, *mine, thine, hers, ours, yours, theirs,* are used when the noun that they qualify is not expressed after them :—

This book is *mine.* My knife and *yours* are both blunt.

NOTE.—*Its* is written without the apostrophe marking elision, because there was never any vowel to be elided, for *its* is not a contraction of *ites,* as *man's* is of *manes* (131). *Hers, ours, yours, theirs* are also written without the apostrophe. The forms *mine, thine* are still retained attributively in poetry—

(*a*) When the former pronoun follows the noun in the vocative case :—
'Brother *mine!*'

(*b*) Before a word beginning with a vowel, or mute *h* :—

Give every man *thine* ear, but few thy voice.—*Shaks.*

171. **Emphatic Possessives.**—The simple possessive pronouns are made emphatic by adding *own* :—

This is *my own* book. This book is *my own.*

172. **Substantive Use.**—Traces of the substantive force of the possessive cases still exist in their use as antecedents to relatives :—

The prize shall be *his,* who is highest in the examination (=shall be given to *him* who etc.). Cf. 560.
The scholarship is *yours,* who have worked so hard for it (=belongs to *you* who etc.).

But they may now be classed as adjectives.

II. REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

173. These are formed by subjoining the word *self* to the Personal pronouns. *Self* (=same) was originally an adjective agreeing with the pronoun after which it was placed, but at a very early period *self* came to be regarded as a substantive, and was preceded by the pronoun in the possessive case; so that, instead of *me-self, us-selves, thee-self* or *you-self, you-selves,* we get *my-self, our-selves, thy-self, your-selves.* But as regards *he, she, it, they* this change was not carried out; and we have *him-self, it-self, them-selves,* and not *his-self, its-self, their-selves.*[1]

To express an adjectival reflexive, the word *own* is appended to the possessive pronoun :—

Virtue is *its own* reward.

[1] *Self* as an adjective occurs in *self-same,* and as a noun in 'one's better *self,* 'one's other *self.*'

174. *Self* is also used with the Personal pronouns and with nouns to make them emphatic :—

I did it *myself*. I saw the man *himself*.

Personal Pronouns can be made doubly emphatic by adding *own* :—

I did it *my own self*. Who *his own self* bare our sins. – *Bible*.

III. Demonstrative Pronouns.

175. This, that, these, those are used as substitutes for nouns in the following instances :—

(*a*) When two things already mentioned are referred to, *this* (pl. *these*) refers to what was mentioned last, *that* (pl. *those*) to what was mentioned first :—

Virtue and vice have different results : *this* (=the latter) leads to misery, *that* (=the former) leads to happiness.

(*b*) *That* (with its plural *those*) is used as a substitute for a preceding noun, to avoid repeating it :—

A courage beyond *that* (=the courage) of woman. – *Prescott*.
The valleys of the Danube, as well as *those* (=the valleys) of its tributary streams.

176. This, that are used as substitutes for sentences in the following instances :—

(*a*) *This* or *that* may take the place of the substance of a sentence previously mentioned (cf. **472**, *note*) :—

You have apologised ; *this* (=your apologising) shows that you are sorry.
I saw him there ; and *that* (=my seeing him there) reminded me of his loss.

(*b*) When we wish to introduce an expression emphatically, *that* is often used instead of a repetition of the previous sentence :—

I must see him, and *that* quickly (=I must see him, and *I must see him* quickly).

(*c*) Similarly, *that* may refer to the general idea contained in the preceding sentence :—

Learn your lesson, *that's* a good boy (where *that*=one who learns his lesson).

177. So, such, the same, yon.—*So* is still used as a pronoun :—

I told you *so* (=that).
I will accompany you for a mile or *so* (=about that distance).
We should make people our friends, and keep them *so* (=such).

Such and *so* are sometimes used as indefinite demonstratives:—

If you repay me not on *such* a day (=some given day), in *such* a place, *such* sum or sums etc.—*Shaks.*

She had only to say that she wanted *such* and *such* a thing (=any given thing) to be so and so.—*Dickens.*

I was talking to *so* and *so* (=some given person), when the bell rang.

Such can represent a preceding noun singular or plural, or an adjective:—

He is chairman of the meeting, and as *such* (=chairman) gives the casting vote.

Thieves often become *such* (=thieves) by their surroundings.

He was witty, and as *such* (=witty) was admired by many.

The same is a demonstrative in—

I will do *the same* as you (=I will do *that* which you do).

With reference to the property in this schedule, I have entered into possession of *the same* (=it).

Yon, *yonder* are now mostly confined to poetry. *Yonder* is properly an adverb, but is sometimes used as a demonstrative adjective:—

In *yonder* grave a Druid lies.—*Collins.*

IV. Interrogative Pronouns.

178. Who? what? are thus declined:—

SING. AND PLUR.

	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*
Nom.	who	what
Poss.	whose	
Obj.	whom	what

179. Who is used only of persons. *What* can be used of persons as well as of things—as '*What* is *he?*' '*What man* is that?'—but with a different meaning from that of *who*. Thus—

'*Who* is he?' '*Who* is that?' are enquiries about a person's name or designation.

'*What* is he?' '*What man* is that?' are enquiries about a person's occupation, character, or social status.

180. What is often used in exclamations in the sense of 'how great,' as '*What* folly!' '*What* a traveller you are!' Compare the two sentences—

(1) *What was* my delight at the news! (=how great was my delight etc.).

(2) *What was not* my delight at the news! (=no delight was greater than mine etc.).

181. **What not** is placed after an enumeration, almost in the sense of 'etc.':—

He took with him books, paper, scissors, paste, string, and *what not* (=what else did he not take?).

182. **Which?** can be used of persons, as '*Which* is the head *boy* in this class?' '*Which boy* do you mean?' with the difference that *which* asks for one out of a definite number, while *who* and *what* ask indefinitely:—

Which of you three boys spoke?
Who among you all spoke?

Which pen is the better?
What pen can be better than this?

183. *Who* and *what* are used as indefinite substantive pronouns in the expression 'As *who* should say' (*i.e.* as a man who should say, as if *some one* should say), and in—

I tell thee *what* (=something), Antonio.—*Shaks.*

I saw some*what* (=something) at the bottom of the water which had the appearance of a flower.—*Cowper.*

Similarly we have the colloquialisms 'To know what's *what*,' *i.e.* to know what a *thing* is, to be a knowing person; and 'Tell me who's *who*,' *i.e.* tell me who *anyone* is. *Somewhat* is now used only adverbially.

V. Relative Pronouns.

184. **Who, which,** are thus declined:—

	SING. AND PLUR.	
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*
Nom.	who	which
Poss.	whose	of which
Obj.	whom	which

185. **Who** (and *which*) has three uses:—

(*a*) It connects two clauses, the one introduced by it being adjectival to some word in the other:—

I know the man *who* (=that) spoke to us yesterday.

(*b*) It connects two clauses, the one introduced by it being adverbial to the other:—

I admire this king, *who* (=since he) treats his subjects so kindly (28).

(*c*) It connects two co-ordinate clauses :—

I met a man in the village, *who* (=and he) told me the road to take (**23**).

NOTE.—In (*a*) the relative clause *restricts* or limits the sense of the noun, and is said to be *restrictive* ; in (*b*) and (*c*) the relative clauses *continue* or add to what has been said in the preceding clauses, and are said to be *continuative*.

186. Whose, as the possessive case of *which*, is used in poetry and sometimes in prose : —

The roof, *whose* thickness (=the thickness *of which*) was not vengeance-proof.—*Byron*.

187. Which relates only to animals or things. It can take a preposition both before and after it :—

I have a garden *in which* I walk. I have a garden *which* I walk *in*.

NOTE.—Observe that in such sentences the infinitive can be substituted :—'I have a garden in which *to walk*' ; 'I have a garden *to walk* in.'

188. What.—The antecedent to *what* is generally suppressed :—

What (=that which) is done cannot be undone.
He lost his money, and *what* (=a thing which) was worse, his life.

The antecedent is sometimes expressed after it for emphasis :—

What I say, *that* I do.

189. What (with)—**what** (with) are sometimes used (like *both —and*) to connect two clauses, describing different, but co-operating, causes :—

What with the loss of his fortune, and *what* with the pressure of his creditors, he was in great difficulty.

190. That has the following uses :—

(*a*) It may refer to either persons (or animals) or things :—

The man *that* I saw. The book *that* I bought.

(*b*) It is adverbial, equivalent to *in which* (time) or *when* :—

Now *that* you are young you should work hard.
The moment *that* you stir I shall shoot.

(*c*) Sometimes its antecedent is supplied from the previous sentence :—

Did you see Ram?—Not (a seeing) *that* I recollect.

191. As is used as a relative pronoun, especially after *the same* and *such* :—

This is the same story *as* (=that) you have just told me.
Your conduct is not such *as* (=which) I can approve.
As many candidates *as* came were chosen.
This is not true, *as* (=a thing which) I said before.
The results are *as* (=what) follow.

CORRELATIVES.

192. Correlatives[1] are words that have a reciprocal relation to each other in a sentence :—

(1) **Such—as :**

There are no *such* writers *as* you mention.
The blow was *such as* to cause a wound.

(2) **Such—that :**

Such (=so great) was his diligence *that* he passed the examination.

(3) **That—that :**

He was of *that* (=such) tenderness *that* he would not brush away a mosquito.

(4) **The same—as :**

This is *the same* book *as* that.

NOTE.—*Same* may also be followed by *that* (not by *who* or *which*), as 'This is the *same* man *that* I saw yesterday.' It is sometimes followed by *with*, as 'Loveit slept in the *same* room *with* Hardy.'—*Edgsworth.*

(5) **So, as—as :**

I am not *so* (or *as*) tall *as* you are.
I am *as* (not *so*) tall *as* you are.
As (or *so*) soon *as* he entered, I saw him.
Come *as* (not *so*) soon *as* possible.
He is *so* (not *as*) ill *as* not to be able to go out.

(6) **As—so, so—as :**

As the hart panteth after the water brooks, *so* longeth my soul after thee, O God !—*Bible.*
So fight I, not *as* one that beateth the air.—*Ib.*

(7) **So—that :**

He is *so* ill *that* he cannot go out.

NOTE.—*So that* expresses consequence or result, as 'I am ill, *so that* I cannot go out.' Sometimes *so* is omitted in questions, as 'Are you mad, (so) *that* you act thus?' *So that* expresses condition in 'You can stay as long as you like, *so that* (=provided that) you catch the train.'

(8) **No sooner—than :**

No sooner had he gone *than* I arrived.

(9) **Scarcely** (*or* **hardly**)**—when :**

Scarcely had he left the house *when* I arrived.

(10) **Other—than :**

I have *other* books *than* these.

NOTE.—Here *other than* means 'different from.' But when no comparison is intended, *other* is followed by *besides* (or *beside*), *as well as*, etc., as 'I have *other* books *besides* these,' where *other besides* means 'other in addition to.' *Else* is followed by *but* (not by *than*).

[1] These are inserted here for the sake of convenience, but they are not, of course, all pronouns.

(11) **Not only—but** (sometimes with *also*):
He *not only* went away *but* never came back.
He was *not only* foolish *but also* dishonest.

NOTE.—For *both—and*, *either* (or *or*)—*or*, *neither* (or *nor*)—*nor*, *whether—or*, see **276**. *Though* (or *although*) is followed by *yet*; *notwithstanding* by *nevertheless*; *because* by *therefore*; *if* by *then*.

VI. CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS.

193. The interrogative pronouns are also used as Conjunctive Pronouns. Thus *who* and *what* are conjunctive substantive pronouns in 'I know *who* you are,' 'I know *what* you mean,' the clauses 'who you are,' and 'what you mean' being noun clauses, objects to the verb 'know.' Similarly *what* and *which* are conjunctive adjective pronouns in 'I wonder *what* book he is reading,' 'I wonder *which* prize he will choose,' the clauses 'what book he is reading' and 'which prize he will choose' being noun clauses, objects to the verb 'wonder.'

VII. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

194. One—As an adjective, *one* is used in the sense of 'some particular':—

One day, as I was going home, I found a rupee.

As a substantive—

(*a*) *One* is used as a substitute for a preceding or a succeeding noun:—

Here are three flags: a red *one* (=flag) and two white *ones* (=flags).
Give me *one* (=a pen) of your pens.

NOTE.—This *one* should not be introduced unnecessarily, as 'The examination was an easy *one*.' Say, 'The examination was easy.'

(*b*) *One* is used as an indefinite demonstrative:—

He lodgeth with *one* Simon (=a person, *viz.* Simon), a tanner.—*Bible.*
The tares are the children of the wicked *one* (=person).—*Bible.*
He left his wife and little *ones* (=persons) at home.
One (=any or every person) ought to take care of *one's* books.

NOTE.—It is incorrect to use *his* for *one's*, as '*One* ought to take care of *his* books.' *You* and *they* have the same indefinite use: '*You* (=anyone) cannot make a silk purse out of a sow's ear;' '*They* (=people in general) say he is bankrupt.'

195. Enough is sometimes equivalent to *very*:—

I was glad *enough* (=as glad as any one could wish, *very* glad) to see you come.
Sure *enough*, he was there (=it turned out *quite* true that he was there).

196. Some, other.—*Some* is used before numerals in the sense of *about*, as 'he gained *some* fifty rupees.' *Other* makes the plural *others*. 'The *other* day,' as in 'I saw him the other day,' expresses an indefinite past time, and is equivalent to 'lately.'

Another has two meanings:—

(1) Give me *another* (=a different) pen; this one is bad.

(2) He will pass, if you give him *another* (=an additional) mark.

NOTE.—*A certain* (with plur. *certain*) is used like an indefinite pronoun:—'A lady of *a certain* (=some particular) age'; 'There came a *certain* poor widow'; 'This rule applies only to *certain* members of the club.'

197. Many was originally an adjective:—

Many men were killed.

It then came to be used with *a*:—

Many a man was killed.

Next, like *few*, it was used as a substantive pronoun, and *many* = 'many persons':—

Many are called, but few are chosen.—*Bible.*

Finally, it came to be regarded as having the force of a collective noun, and took the article before it:—

A great *many* (of) men were killed.
They have not shed *a many* (of) tears,
Dear eyes, since first I knew them well.—*Tennyson.*
The many fail, the one succeeds.—*Ib.*

VIII. DISTRIBUTIVE PRONOUNS.

198. Each, every show that objects are taken singly or in separate groups. *Every* is the more emphatic form, equivalent to 'each without exception.' *Each* refers to two or more objects; *every* to more than two:—

The two boys received *each* (boy) a prize.

The two boys received prizes, one *each* (=one prize to each boy).

The twenty boys received { *each* (boy) / *every* one } a prize.

{ *Every* one / *Each* (boy) } of the twenty boys received a prize.[1]

[1] Instead of '*Each* (or *every*) boy received his prize,' we can say 'The boys received their *respective* prizes.'

Each and *every* are always singular; but *every* stands with a plural in such phrases as 'every three years,' because the three years are regarded as a single whole:—

The medicine is to be taken *every four hours* (*i.e.* at the end of every period of four hours).

Every other (= every second) often means 'each alternate':—

He came *every other* day (*i.e.* he missed coming one day and came the next day, and so on).

199. Either has two meanings—(1) *one of two*, (2) *each of two*:—

(1) We can take *either* road (= one or the other road).
(2) There were trees on *either* side of the river (= on both sides).

200. Each other, one another.—In the sentences—

(1) The two sisters loved *each other*
(2) They all hated *one another*

each and *one* are the subjects of the verb, *other* and *another* are the objects of the verb, and the full construction is—

(1) The two sisters loved, *each* loved *other*.
(2) They all hated, *one* hated *another*.

Each other is used when two are referred to, *one another* when more than two are referred to, as is shown in the examples given. *Each other*, *one another* may be called *Reciprocal* Pronouns.

VERBS.

201. *Definition.*—**A Verb** (Latin *verbum*, *the* word) is a word that states something about a person or thing, as 'the child *talks*.'

202. Two Classes.—Principal (as distinguished from Auxiliary) Verbs are divided into two main classes:—

I. *Transitive* Verbs, in which the action or feeling denoted by the verb *passes over to*, or is directed towards, some object, as 'Ram *loves* his mother.'

II. *Intransitive* Verbs, in which the action or feeling affects the subject only, and is not directed towards some object, as 'Ram *laughs*.'

USES OF TRANSITIVE VERBS.

203. Without an Object.—Transitive verbs are sometimes used without an object, when the object can be understood from the context, as in 'Blind men *saw*,' where *saw* means 'saw things in

general,' *i.e.* 'received the power of sight.' Similarly with 'I *hear*,' meaning 'I hear what you say'; 'The clock *is striking*' (the hour); 'They sat down to *eat* and *drink*'; etc.

204. Reflexive Use.—A Transitive verb is used reflexively when the action denoted by it is done by the doer to himself, as '*He* threw *himself* upon the ground,' '*He* interested *himself* in the matter.' But the reflexive pronoun is often omitted, so that the verb stands by itself with an intransitive force:—

He *keeps* (himself) away from college. He *got* (himself) injured in the accident. The waves *break* (themselves) on the rocks. The sun *sets* (itself). The earth *moves* (itself). The clouds *spread* (themselves) over the sky.[1] He *turned* (himself) towards me.[1] The ships *drew* (themselves) clear of one another. They *rested* (themselves) on the grass.[1] They *enlisted* (themselves) in the army.[1] She could not *refrain* (herself) from tears.[1] His children *gathered* (themselves) round him.[1] He *fed* (himself) on rice. The snow *melted* (itself). The fog *lifted* (itself). He *dashed* (himself) out of the room. The men *dashed* (themselves) forward. He *has qualified* (himself) as surgeon. The army *drew* (itself) off in good order. The travellers *pushed* (themselves) on to the North. The regiment *formed* (itself) up in line. He *stole* (himself) into the jungle. He *stopped* (himself) short. He *proved* (himself) faithful.[1] He soon *sobered* (himself) down. The days *are lengthening* (themselves). They *made* (themselves) merry. The gorge gradually *widened* (itself). (Cf. 563.)

Note the difference between the following pairs of sentences:—

He *possessed* large property (=owned).
He *possessed himself of* my property (=took possession of).

He *joined* our party (unemphatic form).
He *joined himself to* our party (emphatic form).

He *turned* editor of a newspaper (=became).
Satan *turned himself into* a serpent (=changed into).

He *set* to work at once (=began).
He *set himself* to carry the business through (=determined).

He *settled* in Bengal (of habitation).
He *settled himself* in an armchair (of bodily position).

NOTE.—Some verbs, generally or in a particular use, are always followed by a reflexive pronoun:—'to avail *oneself* of,' 'to betake *oneself* to,' 'to addict *oneself* to,' 'to plume (or pride) *oneself* on,' 'to reconcile *oneself* to one's lot,' 'to resign *oneself* to an event,' 'to distinguish *oneself*,' 'to acquit *oneself* bravely,' 'to absent *oneself*,' 'to commit *oneself*,' 'to enjoy *oneself*,' 'to exert *oneself*,' 'to revenge *oneself*,' 'to forget or recollect *oneself*,' 'to bethink *oneself*,' 'to demean *oneself*,' 'to ingratiate *oneself* with a person,' 'to overeat *oneself*,' 'to oversleep *oneself*,' 'vaulting ambition which o'erleaps *itself*' (*Shaks.*).

[1] In these examples the insertion of the pronoun is unusual but not incorrect, as it is in the rest.

205. Quasi-Passive Use.—A few Transitive verbs sometimes have a sort of passive sense with an active form :—

The cakes *eat* short and crisp (*i.e.* are short and crisp when they are eaten).
The book will not *sell* (*i.e.* lend itself to be sold). This house *lets* well.
The bed *feels* hard (*i.e.* is hard when it is felt).
The wine *tastes* sour. The rose *smells* sweet. The meat *cuts* tough.
This speech *reads* well. The cloth *is wearing* thin.
These objections *count* for nothing.

In these instances, the verbal action is attributed to the subject of the sentence, because the action denoted by the verb is so habitual to, or inherent in, the object, that the object is regarded as itself contributing to produce it. Thus in 'This speech *reads* well,' the action of reading attributed to the speech implies that the quality of readableness is found to be inherent in the speech itself and does not depend upon the reader. (Cf. 228.)

Uses of Intransitive Verbs.

206. Transitive Use.—Some Intransitive verbs are also used transitively :—

To *speak* English, to *talk* nonsense, to *blow* the fire, to *stay* one's leisure, to *survive* a person or a thing.

Many verbs, usually intransitive, are also employed with a transitive meaning, and are then called *Causative* verbs :—

The horse *walks*. The groom *walks the horse*.—Birds *fly*. Boys *fly kites*.—Flowers *grow*. We *grow flowers* in our garden.—I *rejoice*. Your success *rejoices me*.—She *stood*. She *stood the candle* on the floor (*Dickens*).

207. With a Preposition.—Some Intransitive (and Transitive) verbs are habitually followed by a preposition (or adverb) which coheres so closely with the verb that the two may be regarded as forming one expression,[1] equivalent to a transitive verb, as 'to *look at*,' 'to *think of*.' Such a combination may be called a *group-verb*, and is logically equivalent to a transitive verb, since *think of* = *consider*. These group-verbs may even be used in the passive voice :—

The man *laughs at* the boy.
The boy *is laughed at* by the man.

Note.—In 'the boy is laughed at,' *at* must be parsed as an adverb, and not as a preposition, since it has no object. It is the same with *on* in such a sentence as 'I have no chair to sit *on*.' Compare the sentences : 'The garden was *run over* by hens'—'The garden was *overrun* by hens.'

[1] Cf. 'Though you *bind-in* (=inclose under your sway) every shore.'—*Shirley* ('Golden Treasury' reading).

208. Group-verbs.—The following is a list of the commoner *group-verbs* with their equivalents.

Ask for	request
Bear out	corroborate
with	tolerate
Beg of	entreat
Blow up	explode
Break down	fail (in exam., etc.)
up	disperse
Bring about	cause
forth	produce
to	resuscitate
on	cause
up	educate
out	publish
Call for	demand; require
forth	evoke
up	recollect
upon	visit
Carry out	accomplish
Cast off	discard
out	eject
Catch up	overtake
Clear up	explain
Come about	occur
after	succeed
at	attain
by	acquire
down	descend
in	enter
off	emerge
on	advance
round, to	recover
to	approach
upon	encounter
up with	overtake
Cry down	depreciate
up	extol
out	exclaim
Cut down	diminish; curtail
Dash off	despatch
Deal out	distribute
Do away with	abolish
up	repair; fatigue
Draw back	recede
in	retract
near, on	approach
out	extract; prolong
up	arrange; indite
Drive out	expel
Dwell in	inhabit
Egg on	instigate
Eke out	supplement
Fall away	revolt
back	retreat
off	decline
out	quarrel; result
upon	assail
Fill up	complete
Find out	discover
Gain over	persuade
Get at	attain
down	descend
off, away	escape
up	study
Give in	submit
over, up	abandon
Go after	pursue
away	depart
back	return
between	intervene
beyond	exceed
on	proceed
with	accompany
Hand down	transmit
over	deliver
Hold in	restrain
on	continue
out	endure
up	elevate
Keep back	reserve
from	refrain
off *or* out	repel
up	maintain
Knock up	fatigue; awake
Laugh at	deride
Lay down	resign
out	expend
up	deposit
Leave off	desist
out	omit
Let down	lower
off	release; discharge
out	divulge
Lie down	recline
Lift up	exalt
Light up	illuminate
upon	discover
Look at	observe
down on	despise
for	expect
forward to	anticipate
into	inspect

Look over	examine (papers)	Set off	embellish
up to	respect	on	incite
Make away with	destroy	up	erect
for	approach	upon	assail
out	discover	Show up	expose
over	transfer	Shut out	exclude
up	compensate	up	confine
Meet with	encounter	Stand by	support
Melt away	dissolve	out	resist
Ooze out	transpire	Stir up	excite
Pass away	expire	Strike in	interpose
over	forgive	Take after	resemble
Pick out	select	away	remove
up	gather	in	deceive
Put forth	exert	off	ridicule
off	postpone	over	receive
out	extinguish ; dis-concert	up	occupy ; arrest
up with	tolerate	Talk over	discuss ; persuade
Run down	depreciate	Think over	consider
out	expire	of	recollect ; intend
See about *or* to	investigate	Throw out	offer ; derange
Send away	dismiss	up	resign
off	despatch	Turn out	expel ; result
Set about	commence	Wait on	attend
apart	reserve	Ward off	defend
aside	disregard	Watch over	protect
down	record	Wear out	exhaust
off *or* out	depart	Wish for	desire
		Work out	elaborate

NOTE.—Group verbs and their equivalents do not, of course, comprehend all the meanings of either. Thus in the sentence 'He knocked at the door and *asked for* the owner of the house,' we cannot substitute *requested* for *asked for*.

209. **With a Complement.**—Some Intransitive verbs may take a Complement (9) after them, the verb and its complement together forming a verbal phrase with a transitive force :—

He *laughed* me *to scorn*. He *coughed* himself *into a fit*.
He *looked* me *in the face*. The nurse *sang* the child *to sleep*.
She *cried* her eyes *out*. I *talked* him *over*.
The assassin *ran* him *through*. I *spoke* him *fair*.
There some female atheist *talks* you *dead*.—*Pope*.
You have *played* me *false*. He *drank* himself *drunk*.

210. **With Cognate Object.**—Some Intransitive verbs may take a noun of cognate or kindred meaning for their object, called the *Cognate Object*, as 'to *sleep* a *sleep*.' This may be done in three ways :—

(*a*) The noun may be strictly cognate to the verb in both form and meaning :—

I have *fought* a good *fight*.—*Bible*.
He *sighed* a *sigh* and *prayed* a *prayer*.—*Scott*.

(*b*) The noun may be strictly cognate to the verb in meaning, but not in form:—

To *fight* a *battle*. It *blows* a heavy *gale*. The bells *rang* a merry *peal*. *Act* well your *part*. My *career* is nearly *run*. He *nodded assent*.

Death
Grinned horrible a ghastly *smile*.—*Milton*.

(*c*) The verb and the noun may be only partially cognate or co-extensive in meaning. In these instances either the verb or the noun contains a descriptive sense of its own in addition to its cognate meaning. Thus in 'he *looked* a *look*,' the verb is strictly cognate to the noun; but in 'he *stole* a *look*,' which means 'he *stealthily looked* a *look*,' the verb contains a superadded notion. Similarly, 'he *shouted* a *shout*' is regular; but in 'he *shouted applause*,' *i.e.* 'he shouted *an applauding shout*,' the noun contains the superadded notion:—

To *fight* (or *grope*) one's *way* (=to make one's way by fighting, etc.). To *go* one's *rounds*. The wind was *blowing* great *guns*. It *rained fire* and *brimstone*. He *looked daggers* at me. I *danced attendance* upon him daily.

No stationary steeds
Cough their own *knell*.—*Cowper*.

The placid marble Muses, *looking peace*.—*Tennyson*.

NOTE 1.—A *Transitive* verb can sometimes take a cognate object:—'to *strike* a *stroke* or a *blow*,' 'to *make* (or *push* or *feel*) one's *way*,' 'to *serve* an *apprenticeship*,' 'to *scrape acquaintance*,' 'to *drink* one's *fill*,' 'to *write* a good *hand*.'

Fear not their *fear*.—*Bible* (Revised Version).

What *choice* to *choose*.—*Milton*.

Satan . . . towards the gates of hell
Explores his solitary *flight*.—*Milton*.

NOTE 2.—Sometimes there is an ellipse of the noun of the cognate object:—'he *did* his best (*doing*),' 'you may *do* your worst,' 'he *tried* his hardest (*trying*),' 'he *breathed* his last (*breath*),' 'You must *behave* your best (*behaviour*).' For cognate *it* see 473, (*b*).

211. **Summary of Uses.**—The Intransitive verb *run* will illustrate all four uses given above:—

1. He *ran* a thorn into his finger (transitive use).
2. He *ran up* the ladder (with a preposition).
3. He *ran* me *hard* for the prize (with a complement).
4. (*a*) He *ran* seven *runs* (at cricket) for one hit (formally cognate).
 (*b*) The disease must *run* its *course* (informally cognate).
 (*c*) He *ran* a great *risk* (partially cognate).

NOTE.—For the use of Transitive and Intransitive verbs as Verbs of Incomplete Predication, see 9 and *note*.

VERBS WITH TWO OBJECTS.

212. In the Active Voice.—Many verbs, such as *give, bring, tell, teach, forgive*, etc., may take two objects. One of these is directly affected by the action of the verb and is called the *Direct Object*; the other is indirectly affected, and is called the *Indirect Object*. Thus in 'Give *me* the *book*,' *book* is the direct object, and *me* the indirect object of the verb *give*. Examples:—

He asked the *boy* his *name*. He heard *me* my *lesson*. Forgive *me* my *fault*. The Magistrate ordered the *prisoner* a *whipping*. This mistake will lose *you* many *marks*. He allowed his *son* fifty *rupees* a month. He played *me* a sad *trick*. Mind you write your *father word* of what happens. The doctor forbade his *patient rice*. I gave *him to understand that I should come*.[1] The medicine did *Ram good*. Will you do *me* a *favour*? It caused *her* many a *tear*. I bore *him* great *affection*. I envy *you* your good *health*. I can refuse *him nothing*. He charged *me* five *rupees* for the ticket. You do *yourself* an *injustice*.

NOTE 1.—An Indirect Object (*Dative of Interest*) is sometimes inserted after verbs which usually take either no object or only a direct object, in order to express the *interest* of some person in the action of the verb:—

Words failed *him* to express his gratitude.
Convey *me* Salisbury into his tent.—*Shaks.*

NOTE 2.—The Indirect Objective case (*Reflexive Dative*) of the personal pronoun of the same person as the subject of the sentence is found after many intransitive verbs:—'I went *me* to reste' (*Piers Ploughman*); 'Stand *thee* close'; 'Sit *thee* down'; 'Hark *thee*, a word' (*Shaks.*); 'Avoid *thee*, fiend'; 'They knelt *them* down' (*Scott*); 'Rest *thee* sure' (*Tennyson*); 'Fare *thee* well'; 'He hied *him* home'; 'Where the Norman encamped *him* of old' (*Campbell*).

213. In the Passive Voice.—When an Active Verb, taking two objects, is changed into the Passive Voice, either of the two objects may become the subject of the passive verb, while the other is retained as object. Hence, this object is called the *Retained Object*. Thus 'I forgave *him* his *fault*' may be turned into the passive form in two ways:—

(1) His *fault* was forgiven *him* by me.
(2) *He* was forgiven his *fault* by me.

In (1), the original direct object, *fault*, is taken as the subject of the passive verb, and the indirect object, *him*, is retained as the indirect object of the verb; in (2), the original indirect object, *him*, is taken as the subject of the passive verb, and the direct object, *fault*, is retained as the direct object of the verb.

[1] Here the whole expression 'to understand' etc. is the direct object [8, (5)].

Mood.

214. *Definition.*—**Mood** (=mode) represents the *manner* in which the action or state denoted by the verb is viewed by the speaker. There are **four** Moods:—

(1) *The Indicative Mood*, which is used in stating an action, or asking a question about an action, viewed as a *fact*:—

He *loves* his mother. *Have* you my pen?

(2) *The Imperative Mood*, which is used in commanding or requesting:—

Bring me the book.

(3) *The Subjunctive Mood*, which is used in stating an action viewed as a *thought*:—

If I *were* you, I should accept his offer.

(4) *The Infinitive Mood*,[1] which is the substantival form of the verb, and speaks of an action without reference to person, number, or time:—

I wish *to help* you.

Uses of the Imperative.

215. **First and Third Persons.**—To express the first or the third person of the imperative, we generally use the verb *let*, as 'let us go,' 'let him go.' In such sentences *let* is the second person of the imperative with its subject omitted.

216. **Suppositional Use.**—The Imperative Mood is sometimes used to express a supposition, where we might substitute for it *if* or *though* with the Subjunctive:—

Give me good fortune (=if good fortune is given me), I will strike him dead.—*Tennyson.*

Remove (=though you remove) a devil where you will, he is still in hell.

Nothing *venture*, nothing have (=if you venture nothing, you will have nothing).

Scratch a Russian, you will find a Tartar.

Note.—The use in 'He is sure to contribute a large sum, *say* a thousand rupees, to this object' is similar. Another way of expressing an hypothesis is by a question:—'*Is any afflicted?* (=if any one is afflicted) let him pray.'—*Bible.*

[1] Though usually classed as a Mood, the Infinitive has nothing in common with the Moods, except only in such a sentence as 'He saw his son *drown*,' where 'drowning' is predicated of 'son.'

USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

217. Conditional Use.—The Subjunctive Mood is used to express a supposition that is treated as a mere conception of the mind, whereas the Indicative is used to express a supposition that is treated as an actual fact:—

If it *were* so (which may be imagined, but must not be assumed as a fact), it was a grievous fault. (Subjunctive.)

If he *was* guilty (which is assumed as a fact), he ought to have been punished. (Indicative.)

The Subjunctive mood in conditional sentences is not necessarily preceded by *if*, *unless*, *though*, etc.:—

Were he here, I should tell him this (*i.e.* if he were here).

Please God, I shall arrive home to-morrow (*i.e.* if it please God).

'*Come* weal, *come* woe, by Bruce's side,'
Replied the chief, 'will Ronald bide.'—*Scott.*
(*i.e.* whether weal or woe come.)

Be that as it may, you must say nothing (*i.e.* let that be as it may be, *or* however that may be).

Happen what may, I shall go (*i.e.* let what may happen, happen, *or* whatever may happen).

This is so, *deny* it who can (*i.e.* let who can deny it, deny it, *or* whoever may deny it).

218. After 'that,' 'lest,' etc.—The Subjunctive Mood is used after the conjunctions *that*, *lest*, *till*, *if*, *whether*, *after*, *before*, in dependent clauses denoting that something is *thought of* as a possible or probable contingency:—

The sentence is that the prisoner *be* hanged.
I wish that it *were* possible.[1]
Beware lest sin *surprise* thee.
Blow till thou *burst* thy wind.—*Shaks.*
Do you hear whether Antonio *have* had any loss at sea or no?—*Ib.*
When I ask her if she *love* me.—*Tennyson.*

NOTE.—In modern English the tenses of the Subjunctive are often replaced by phrases compounded of the auxiliaries *may*, *might*, and *should* or *were to*. Thus, for 'Give him bread, that he *eat*,' we now say 'that he *may eat*'; for 'Though he *slay* me, yet will I trust in him,' we say 'though he *should* (or *were to*) *slay* me.' For the use of *should* and *would* in subordinate clauses and conditional sentences, see **310**.

219. Optative Use.—The Subjunctive Mood is used to express a wish [**730**, (*g*)]:—

Mine *be* a cot beside the hill.—*Rogers.*
Long *live* the king! God *save* the queen!
Forbid it shame, *forbid* it decent awe.—*Crabbe.*

[1] Here the construction shows that the event desired is impossible; it is only *thought of* as possible.

A wish can be expressed in four ways:—

(1) Mine be a cot!
(2) May a cot be mine!
(3) Oh (*or* would) that a cot may (*or* might) be mine!
(4) If only a cot could (*or* might) be mine!

NOTE.—In (3) 'Would that' is for 'I would that'; and in (4) there is an ellipse of a clause like 'I should be happy.'

USES OF THE INFINITIVE.

220. The Infinitive is used as—

(1) The *Simple* or Noun Infinitive: 'I like *to write*' (= writing).

(2) The *Gerundial* or Dative Infinitive: 'I came *to write*' (= for writing).

221. The Simple Infinitive is used—

(1) As the subject or the object of a verb:—

To err is human. I want *to go*.
He is a queer man, that is *to say*, he does odd things.
They prize hard knocks and *to be won* by force.—*Tennyson.*

(2) As a Complement to a verb (or verbal noun) of incomplete predication (9), and a conjunctive adverb[1]:—

I will *come*. You need not *go*.
I like a boy *to be* truthful. I saw him (to) *fall*.
I will go *seek* him. He was taught *to swim*.
He was pleased at my wishing *to help* him.
I told him how *to parse* the word.

(3) After *but*, *except*, *about*, and *than*:—

There is nothing left but *to submit*. I was about *to remark*.
He resigned rather than *be transferred*.

(4) Absolutely in interrogation and exclamation:—

And now what *to do?* where *to go?*
To think that it should come to this![2]
Thou *wear* a lion's hide! Doff it for shame.—*Shaks.*

222. The Gerundial Infinitive is used to express the purpose, the cause, the condition, or the result of an action. It may be attached—

(1) Adverbially to a verb:—

I have come *to see* you (purpose: 'for seeing').
He came only *to find* that he was too late (result: 'so as to find').
How did this come *to pass?* (result: 'come so as to pass,' 'happen').
She wept *to hear* this news (cause: 'at hearing').
The last man is *to receive* the prize (result: 'will receive').

[1] See 252. Also after *whether*:—'I am doubtful whether *to go* or *stay*.'

[2] In such sentences, the infinitive is sometimes omitted:—'That it should come to this!'

(2) Adverbially to an adjective :—

I am sorry *to hear* this news (cause : 'at hearing').
He is slow *to forgive* (condition : 'about forgiving').
Matters too numerous *to mention* (purpose : 'for mentioning').
It is never too late *to mend* (purpose : 'for mending').

(3) Adjectivally to a noun or a pronoun (attributively or predicatively, 140) :—

Give me water *to drink* (purpose : 'for drinking').
I beg (leave) *to send* you a ticket (purpose : 'for sending').
I have enough and (enough) *to spare* (condition : 'for sparing').
This house is *to let* (purpose : 'for letting').
Your mistake is *to be deplored* (condition : 'deplorable').
You are *to blame* (condition : 'blameable').
Rabbi, which is *to say*, Master (condition : 'for saying,' 'the same as saying').—*Bible.*

(4) Parenthetically to a sentence :—

He was intoxicated, so *to speak*, with joy at the news (condition : 'if I may speak so').

To tell the truth, I was half asleep (purpose : 'in order to tell the truth, I tell you that I was etc.').

To be brief, I lost the train (purpose : 'in order to be brief, I say that I lost etc.').

To hear you talk, one would think you knew everything (condition : 'on hearing you talk').

He has sixty cows, *to say* nothing of the calves (condition : 'without saying anything').

This is a 'tortoise' race, the last man *to receive* the prize (result : 'receiving,' 138, *note*).

Careless fellow ! *to lose* his umbrella ! (cause : 'careless for losing').

NOTE.—Cf. 'We differ on many questions, (to) *let* alone Home Rule.' *To be sure, to wit* are similar parenthetical infinitives, and are equivalent to 'that you may be sure,' 'that you may wit (=know).' In 'To be sure, he is not clever, but he is honest,' *to be sure* means 'I admit'; in 'Will you come?—To be sure I will,' *to be sure* means 'certainly.'

223. The Infinitive without 'to' is used—

(1) After the auxiliary verbs—*do, may, shall, will*; and after the common verbs—*bid, can, dare* (intrans.),[1] *let, make, must, need, please* :—

I *do* not *like* this. He *will go*. I *bid* him *learn* his lesson. How *dare* you *act* so? He *let slip* the opportunity. To *make* both ends *meet*. He *need*[2] not *stay* any longer. *Please be* quiet.

[1] In affirmative sentences *to* is often inserted, as 'He *dares to* deny it,' 'I *dared to* interrupt him.'

[2] *Need*, with infinitive without 'to', has for its 3rd pers. sing. *need* instead of *needs*; cf. 240, *note*. In 'He *needs* must stay,' *needs* is an adverb (253).

NOTE.—*To* is not inserted after *have* in such sentences as 'I must *have* you *attend*,' 'You will *have* your father *blame* you'; nor by some speakers after *go* and *help*, as 'I must *go see* what is the matter,' '*I helped* him *dress* his wound.' *Bid*, *make*, *need*, *please*, and *dare* (which in the sense of 'challenge' always takes *to*) are occasionally followed by *to*; as are also the verbs under (2) below.

(2) After various verbs denoting *perception*:—*hear*, *feel*, *see*, *view*, *behold*, *mark*, *watch*, *observe*, *perceive*, *survey*.

I did not *hear* you *call*. He *felt* a hand *touch* him. I *saw* him *die*. I *watched* him *take* the rupee. You will *perceive* the fish *rise* out of the water.

Ye statesmen who *survey*
The rich man's joys *increase*, the poor's *decay*.—*Goldsmith*.

NOTE.—But *to* is inserted after the passive forms of these verbs: as, 'He *was seen to take* the rupee'; also after the passive of *bid*, *dare*, *make*, *need*, *please*, in (1). We say 'I know him *to be* a miser'; but, 'I have known him *tell* tales by the hour together.'

(3) After *had better*, *had rather*, *had sooner*, *had as soon* (265):—

You *had better go* home. I *had rather* not *accept* your offer. Will you ride?—I *had sooner walk*. I *had as soon go* as *stay*.

(4) After *but*, *except*, *than*, *as*:—

He did nothing *but laugh*. I cannot *but accept* his offer.
He did everything *except give* a straight answer.
Sooner *than resist*, I am ready to die.
They are taught to read rather *than* (they are taught to) *write*.
He is more likely to sink *than* (he is likely to) *swim*.
I did no more *than make* a beginning.
He did not so much *as say* he was sorry.

(5) Absolutely:—

What *do* then?—*Keats*.
Why *cross* the gloomy firth to-day?—*Scott*.

224. **The Imperfect** (or **Active**) **Participle and the Verbal Noun** (or **Gerund**), which were once distinct in form, have now only one form, *writing*, to express both uses:—

(1) He is *writing* (Imperfect Participle)
(2) *Writing* is useful (Verbal Noun).

225. **The Imperfect Participle.**—As a consequence of this assimilation in form, a confusion arose between the Imperfect Participle and the Verbal Noun, and hence our modern apparent participle often is really a Verbal Noun with an omitted preposition:—

I shall go *fishing* (=a fishing, on fishing, 52 (1)).

The illustrations *preparing* for the third volume (=a-preparing, in preparation).

While these preliminary steps were *taking* (=in taking).

226. Similarly we find that what is really a Verbal Noun qualified by a possessive is, by the omission of the possessive inflexion, made to appear like an Imperfect Participle qualifying a noun or a pronoun :—

Incorrect: He died in consequence of the *doctor not coming*.
Correct: He died in consequence of the *doctor's not coming*.

Incorrect: I insist on *you doing* this.
Correct: I insist on *your doing* this.

NOTE.—The possessive inflexion is, however, omitted when the noun is followed by a descriptive phrase : as, 'He died in consequence of the *doctor*, who was out of town, not coming.' And, as possession is naturally associated with a person (135), there is a tendency to adopt the incorrect form when we are speaking of things, not persons :—'I insist on the *letter* going at once (instead of *letter's*).'

227. **The Verbal Noun** (or **Gerund**).—As a result of the same confusion, the Verbal Noun is sometimes found with the functions of the Participle, since—

(1) It can be modified by an adverb or by a complement :—

He gained a prize for *reading correctly*.
They ceased *firing upon the ship*.

(2) It is allowed to govern a case :—

Flying kites is a pleasant game (old form : *The flying of* kites).

On *opening* the *envelope*, I found nothing inside (old form : On *the opening of* the envelope).

It was Tom who first put *the poisoning the dog* into my head.—*Miss Edgeworth* (old form : *The poisoning of* the dog).

There is no *bearing* your *impertinence* (*i.e. the bearing of* your impertinence does not exist as a possible thing).

228. **The Perfect Participle** of a few intransitive verbs may be used when an agent is spoken of as being so affected by his own act that it has produced in him a character, habit, or state. Thus, 'a *learned* man' is a man who has attained the character caused by learning; 'a *plain-spoken* man' is a man in whom plain speaking has produced the habit of speaking plainly; 'a *retired* tradesman' is one who is in the state of having retired from business. Similarly with 'an *outspoken* man,' 'you are very *outspoken*,' 'a *pretended* friend,' 'a *well-read* man,' 'a *travelled* man,' 'a *well-behaved* man,' 'an *expired* ticket' (=a ticket that has ceased to be available), 'the *undersigned* (persons),' 'they were *perished* with cold' (cf. 205).

TENSE.

229. *Tenses* are varieties of form in verbs, which show—

(*a*) The *time* of the action, as *Present*, *Past*, or *Future*.

(*b*) The *state* of the action at the time, as completed (*Perfect*) or incomplete (*Imperfect*).

(*c*) The *nature* of the action, as *Momentary*[1] or *Continuous*.[2]

Thus in a complete mood there are twelve tenses :—

		PRESENT.	PAST.	FUTURE.
Imperfect	*Momentary*	I write	I wrote	I shall write
	Continuous	I am writing	I was writing	I shall be writing
Perfect	*Momentary*	I have written	I had written	I shall have written
	Continuous	I have been writing	I had been writing	I shall have been writing

230. The Present Imperfect Momentary ('I write') denotes—

(1) What is (*a*) always, or (*b*) habitually true :—

(*a*) The earth *goes* round the sun.

(*b*) I *take* a walk every day.

(2) What is (*a*) present, (*b*) past, or (*c*) future, according as indicated by the context :—

(*a*) I *stand* here for liberty of conscience.

(*b*) Napoleon's army now *advances* (=then advanced) and the great battle *begins* (=began).

(*c*) I *go* (=shall go) to Agra to-morrow.

NOTE.—The tense in (*b*) is called the Historic Present.

231. The Present Imperfect Continuous ('I am writing') expresses the continuance of the action over some time. It is, therefore, applied to actions that contain the idea of continuance, as occupations :—

He *is pursuing* his studies. The boys *are playing ;*

—and not to actions that are immediate :—

Please lend me your knife ; I *want* it (not, I *am wanting*).

I *offer* you ten rupees ; will you take them ? (not, I *am offering*).

Now observe : I *take* up this coin, and I *place* it on the edge of the table (not, I *am taking*—I *am placing*). See 581.

232. The Present Perfect Momentary ('I have written') is applied to actions that have been finished at the present time,

[1] Sometimes called *Indefinite*. [2] Sometimes called *Definite*.

but whose results still remain; whereas the **Past Imperfect Momentary** ('I wrote') is applied to actions that were finished at some past time (it is the *historic* tense). Thus, 'Ram *has lived* in Calcutta for five years' implies that Ram is still living there; but 'Ram *lived* in Calcutta for five years' implies that he lives there no longer. Compare:—

(1) I *have known* him from his boyhood, and often meet him.
(2) I *knew* him in his boyhood, but have not met him since.

(1) I *have seen* the Viceroy once (*i.e.* on a single occasion).
(2) I once (*i.e.* on some previous occasion) *saw* the Viceroy.

(1) I will pay you when you *have done* the work.
(2) I paid you when you *did* the work.

(1) A year *has passed* since I saw him last.
(2) A year *passed* before I saw him again.

233. The Present Perfect Continuous ('I have been writing') is applied to actions begun in past time and continuing up to the present:—

I have been suffering (not, *I am suffering*) from fever all the week.
It has been raining (not, *it is raining*) since five o'clock.

234. 'Has gone,' 'is gone.'—Some intransitive verbs of *going* or *becoming* take two forms of the Present Perfect Momentary, '*has* gone,' '*is* gone,'—'*has* arrived,' '*is* arrived.' Similarly with—*come, depart, retire, return, rise, fall, ascend, descend, begin, end, cease, vanish, fly, decay, degenerate*:—

The harvest is past, the summer *is ended*.—*Bible.*
The rest *were* all *retired*.—*Milton.*
Two hundred years *are flown*.—*M. Arnold.*

NOTE.—We say '*be*gone,' imperative, not '*have* gone' (cf. '*Have done* with this nonsense!'). Sometimes there is a difference of usage: thus we say, 'He *is descended* from noble ancestors,' but, 'He *has descended* from the tree.'

235. Strong and Weak Verbs.—Verbs are classified, according to the mode of forming the Past Imperfect Momentary tense, into—

(*a*) *Strong* verbs: in which the Past Imperfect Momentary (or Preterite) tense is formed by a change of vowel only, nothing is added to the root: *blow, blew; drink, drank.*

(*b*) *Weak* verbs: in which the Past Imperfect Momentary tense is formed by adding *-d* or *-t* to the verbal root (the *e* before *d* unites the suffix to the root): *jump, jumped; burn, burnt.*

236. Special Verbs.—The conjugation is here given of a few verbs in which mistakes are often made.

PRESENT	PRETERITE	PERFECT PARTICIPLE
Abide[1]	abode	abode
Awake	awoke, awaked	awoke, awaked
Bear	bore	borne (carried, given birth to) born (given birth to)[2]
Begin	began	begun
Bid (to command)	bade, bid	bidden, bid
Cleave (to split)	clove, cleft	cloven, cleft
Cleave (to adhere)	cleaved	cleaved
Eat	ate, eat[3]	eaten
Fall	fell	fallen
Fell	felled	felled
Flee[4]	fled	fled
Flow	flowed	flowed
Fly[4]	flew	flown
Hang[5]	hung, hanged	hung, hanged
Lade	laded	laden, laded
Load	loaded	loaded, laden
Lay	laid	laid
Lie (to recline)	lay	lain
Lie (to speak falsely)	lied	lied
Light[6]	lit, lighted	lit, lighted
Loose	loosed	loosed
Lose	lost	lost
Make	made[7]	made
Pen (to enclose)	pent	pent
Pen (to write)	penned	penned
Rid	rid	rid
Ride	rode	ridden
Saw	sawed	sawn, sawed
See	saw	seen
Set	set	set
Sew	sewed	sewed, sewn
Sow	sowed	sowed, sown
Shear	shore, sheared	shorn, sheared

[1] The simple verb *bide* has pret. and p.p. *bided*, as in 'He *bided* his time.'

[2] *Born* is used only after the verb *to be*, as 'He was *born* blind'; but 'She has *borne* (not *born*) ten children.'

[3] Pronounced *ett*; used by Shakspere and Milton.

[4] A man *flees*, an arrow *flies*.

[5] Originally there were *two* verbs, *viz.*, *hang*, *hung*, intransitive; and *hang*, *hanged*, transitive. We now speak of a picture, etc., as being *hung*, and of a man as being *hanged*.

[6] *Light*, *lighted* (to alight) was confounded with *light*, *lit* (to illuminate), and hence *lit* and *lighted* are now used indifferently in both senses, as 'He *lighted* the lamp'—'The bird *lit* on the ground.'

[7] *Made* is a contraction of *maked*. 'A *made* man' means 'a man whose fortune is made.' Cf. *accomplished*, *finished*, used in a similar way.

PRESENT	PRETERITE	PERFECT PARTICIPLE
Sing	sang	sung
Sit	*sate*, sat	sat
Spit (to eject saliva)	spat, spit	spat, spit
Spit (to put on a spit)	spitted	spitted
Swell	swelled	swelled, swollen
Swim	swam, swum	swum
Wind (to twist)	wound	wound
Wind (to fill with wind, *or*, to scent on the wind).	winded[1]	winded

NOTE.—For special uses of Perfect Participles, see 381-383.

DEFECTIVE AND ANOMALOUS VERBS.

237. Be.

	SING.			PLUR.		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
Pres. Ind.	am	art	is	are		
,, *Subj.*	be	be	be	be		
Past Ind.	was	wast	was	were		
,, *Subj.*	were	wert	were	were		

Infin.	*Imperat.*	*Imperf. Part.*	*Perf. Part.*
be	be	being	been

238. Have.

	SING.			PLUR.		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
Pres. Ind.	have	hast	has	have		
,, *Subj.*	have	have	have	have		
Past Ind. & Subj.	had	hadst	had	had		

Infin.	*Imperat.*	*Imperf. Part.*	*Perf. Part.*
have	have	having	had

239. Can.

	SING.			PLUR.		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
Pres. Ind.[2]	can	canst	can	can		
Past Ind.	could	couldst	could	could		

[1] Cf. Sir J. E. Tennent: 'They (the elephants) *winded* the scent of the herd.' Scott (*L. of L.*, I. 17) has 'his horn he *wound*,' where *wound* is a mistake for *winded*, *i.e.* 'sounded with the breath.' Conversely, he has *winded* for *wound* (*L. of L.*, V. 2).

[2] Here, and in other instances, Subjunctive forms are not given, because the Old English Subjunctive forms became obsolete, and the Indicative forms took their place.

240. Dare.

	SING. 1	2	3	PLUR. 1 2 3
Pres. Ind.	dare	darest	dare / dares	dare
„ *Subj.*	dare	dare	dare	dare
Past. Ind. & Subj.	durst	durst	durst	durst

Infin.	*Imperat.*	*Imperf. Part.*	*Perf. Part.*
dare	dare	daring	dared

NOTE.—Since *dare* (like *shall, may, must, can*) is an old preterite, its third person is correctly *he dare*, like *he can, he shall*, etc.; but *he dares* is often, though wrongly, used. *Dare* makes a new preterite and perfect participle *dared*, when it is used transitively in the sense of 'to challenge':—'He *dared* me to do it.' *Dared* is also in use for *durst*. In 'I *dare* say' *dare* is quite unemphatic, and the expression means 'probably.'

241. Shall.

	SING. 1	2	3	PLUR. 1 2 3
Pres. Ind.	shall	shalt	shall	shall
Past Ind.	should	shouldst	should	should

242. Will.

	SING. 1	2	3	PLUR. 1 2 3
Pres. Ind.	will	wilt	will	will
Past Ind.	would	wouldst	would	would

243. May.

	SING. 1	2	3	PLUR. 1 2 3
Pres. Ind. & Subj.	may	mayest / mayst	may	may
Past Ind. & Subj.	might	mightest / mightst	might	might

May expresses—

(*a*) *Permission:*

You *may* leave the room.

(*b*) *Possibility:*

He *may* come yet, but I hardly think he will.
(So in the phrase '*may*-be' for 'perhaps.')

(*c*) *A wish:*

May you be happy!

244. Ought.

SING.			PLUR.		
1	2	3	1	2	3
ought	oughtest	ought		ought	

NOTE.—*Ought* is the past tense of the verb *to owe*[1]; hence, what a man *ought* to do = that which is *owed* or due from him. *Ought* is now used as a present, and reference to past time is indicated by using a perfect infinitive after it, as 'He ought *to have done* it.' The preterite of *owe*, in its modern sense, is *owed*.

245. Do.

	SING.			PLUR.		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
Pres. Ind.	do	doest[2] / dost	doeth[2] / doth / does	do		
Past. Subj.	do	do	do	do		
Past Ind. & Subj.	did	didst	did	did		

Infin.	*Imperat.*	*Imperf. Part.*	*Perf. Part.*
do[2]	do	doing[2]	done[2]

246. Do has two functions: it is (1) A *Principal* verb; (2) An *Auxiliary* verb.

(1) As a *Principal* verb it is used—

(*a*) As a Transitive verb:—

You must *do* (=perform) your duty.

(*b*) As an Intransitive verb:—

You must not *do* (=act) so.

(*c*) As a pro-verb, or substitute for a preceding verb, to avoid repeating it:—

He runs faster than I *do* (=than I run).

Here they lived, as all their forefathers had *done* (=had lived).—*Wordsworth.*

(2) As an *Auxiliary* verb it is used—

(*a*) Immediately before the infinitive, to make a sentence emphatic:—

How you *do* talk! *Do* be quiet!

[1] Cf. 'You *ought* him a thousand pounds.'—*Sheaks.* *To owe* originally meant *to possess*, as is seen in the adjective *own* (=possessed).

[2] These forms do not belong to the verb when it is used as an Auxiliary.

(*b*) With *not*:—

I *do* not love you (instead of 'I love you not').
Do not talk (instead of 'Talk not').

(*c*) In asking and in replying to a question:—

Do you love me? (instead of 'Love you me?')—Yes, I *do*.[1]

NOTE.—To '*Do you* love me?' the answer may be 'yes' or 'no'; '*Do you not* love me?' expects the answer 'yes.'

247. **Must** is now used only in the present indicative, and expresses—

(*a*) *Compulsion:*
He *must* obey his master.

(*b*) *Determination:*
He *must* always have his own way.

(*c*) *Certainty:*
He *must* have arrived by this time.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

248. These are *methinks* (=it seems to me), *meseems* (=it seems to me), *melists* (=it pleases me). *Please* is impersonal in 'please God' (=if it please God), 'so please you' (=if it so please you). Some other verbs are used impersonally, taking *it* for their Subject and a Personal pronoun as their indirect Object:—

It repents *me* of my conduct=I repent of my conduct.
It behoves *you* to go=you ought to go.
It became *him* to yield=he was right to yield.
It shames *me* to tell it=I am ashamed to tell it.
It irks *me* to do this=I dislike doing this.

ADVERBS.

249. *Definition.*—An **Adverb** (Latin *adverbium*, joined to verb) is a word used to modify any part of speech except a noun and a pronoun.

250. **Two classes.**—Adverbs are divided into two classes:—

I. *Independent* Adverbs, which merely modify words:—'*Where* do you live?' 'I do it *thus*.'

II. *Dependent* Adverbs, which not only modify words, but also connect the clause in which they occur with the rest of

[1] Here 'love you' is understood after *do*. This use must not be confused with (1), (*c*), above.

the sentence:—'This is the place *where* I live,' 'I wonder *how* you do it.'

251. I. Independent Adverbs modify—(*a*) verbs: 'Ram runs *fast*'; '*Where* are you going?' (*b*) adjectives: 'The bench is *too* long'; '*How* many books have you?' (*c*) adverbs: 'He writes *very* badly'; (*d*) prepositions: 'I went *all* over the house'; (*e*) conjunctions: 'You laugh *just* because I do.'

NOTE.—Some independent adverbs, *certainly*, *undoubtedly*, *probably*, *possibly*, and the like, may also modify sentences:—'I *certainly* think so,' '*Evidently* you are wrong,' which are equivalent to 'It is certain that I think so,' 'It is evident that you are wrong.'

252. II. Dependent Adverbs are subdivided, according to their uses, into (1) *Relative* adverbs; (2) *Conjunctive* adverbs. Thus *why* is a Relative adverb in 'I know the reason *why* you did it,' the clause 'why you did it' being an adjective clause, adjunct to the antecedent 'reason.' But *why* is a Conjunctive adverb in 'I know *why* you did it,' the clause 'why you did it' being a noun clause, object to the verb 'know.'

The following are used as Dependent Adverbs:—*when*, *whenever*, *where*, *wherever*, *whither*, *whence*, *how*, *why*, *wherefore*, *whereby*, *wherein*, *whereat*, *whereon*, *while*, *as*.

NOTE.—The antecedent to a Relative adverb is often understood: as, 'Stay (there) *where* you are'; 'Come (then) *when* you are ready.' *When* = 'and then' in 'We got on fairly well for a time, *when* the foremost camel lay down'; cf. **185**, (*c*). *As* is a Conjunctive adverb in—'Pronounce the word *as* I do' (*manner*); 'He took the bundle, just *as* it was, to the police-station' (*condition*); 'You are not so tall *as* your brother' (*degree*); 'He arrived *as* we were starting' (*time*).

253. Genitival Adverbs.—A few instances remain of adverbs which are the old genitive cases of nouns:—*Needs* (= of need, of necessity), *sometimes*, *unawares*, *afterwards*, *always*, *sideways*, *lengthways*,[1] *noways*. Similarly we say *of a truth*, *of course*, *of necessity*, *of right*, *of yore*, *of old* (time), *of late* (time), *of a day*, *of a morning*, etc.

254. Prepositional Adverbs.—A large class of adverbs consist of a noun (or an adjective used substantivally) with a preposition prefixed (**52**): *a-way* (on way), *a-sleep*, *a-foot*, *a-drift*, *a-broad*, *a-wry*; *a-new* (of new), *a-far*, *a-fresh*; *be-tween* (by twain), *be-times*, *be-sides*, *be-yond*; *for-sooth*, *forth-with*, *to-day*, *to-morrow*, *in-deed*, *over-board*, *with-al*.

[1] We have also *lengthwise*, *endwise*, *coastwise*, *nowise*, due to confusion with adverbs formed with *wise* (guise, manner), as *likewise*, *otherwise*.

255. Compound Adverbs.—These consist of nouns (in the objective case, 139) qualified by an adjective: *mean-time, mean-while, mid-way, yester-day, some-what.*

256. Pronominal Adverbs.—There is a class of adverbs which are derived from the pronouns *the* (= that), *he, who.*

PRONOUN.	PLACE.	MOTION TO.	MOTION FROM.	TIME.	MANNER.	CAUSE, DEGREE.
The	there	thither	thence	then	thus	the (258)
He	here	hither	hence	—	—	—
Who	where	whither	whence	when	how	why

There are also numerous compound forms: *whereby, wherein, whereat, whereto; thereby, therein, thereat, thereto; hereby, herein; hitherto.*

NOTE.—*Why* is colloquially used to denote slight impatience or surprise, as in 'What is your income?—*Why*, sir, I can hardly tell at present.'

SPECIAL ADVERBS.

257. Ay, nay.—*Ay* (yes) is the same word as *aye* (ever). *Nay* sometimes rejects a previous expression in order to introduce a stronger one, so that *nay* = 'nay more,' 'and what is more':—

'His trade was injured, *nay* ruined by the disaster.'

NOTE.—*Or rather* is similarly used:—'It is probable, *or rather* almost certain, that he will come.'

258. Instrumental 'the.'—*The* before comparative adjectives and adverbs is not the Definite Article, but represents the old Instrumental case of *the* used as a Demonstrative, and should be parsed as an Adverb:—

The sooner, *the* better = *By how much* the sooner, *by so much* the better.

The more, *the* merrier = *In what degree* they are more numerous, *in that degree* they are merrier [367, (1)].

The nearer the bone, *the* sweeter the meat.

He will be all (adv. = wholly, by the whole difference) *the* better for a little rest.

259. Again has the meanings—(1) a second time, (2) back, (3) in return, (4) into a former position, (5) furthermore, (6) in repeated or energetic response, (7) on the other hand:—

(1) You must promise not to do it *again.*

(2) Bring us word *again.*—*Bible.*

(3) Lend, hoping for nothing *again.*—*Bible.*
"It grieves me much," replied the peer *again.*—*Pope.*
To love and to be loved *again.*

(4) Keep tight hold of this, so as not to drop it *again*.
A torment which Sycorax could not *again* undo.—*Shaks.*

(5) First there was a platform; next came a gallery; and this *again* was surmounted by another gallery.
And *again*, sir, shall we sow the headland with wheat?—*Shaks.*

(6) "Nothing, ma'am, upon my honour," said Mr. Pickwick, nodding his head so energetically that the tassel of his nightcap danced *again*.—*Dickens.*
Prick me Bullcalf till he roar *again*.—*Shaks.*

(7) Beauty cannot last; but yet certainly *again* it maketh virtue shine, and vices blush.—*Bacon.*
The one is my sovereign, the other *again* is my kinsman.—*Shaks.*

NOTE.—*Again* in 'This is as long *again* as that,' 'As much *again*,' etc., indicates that the measure or quantity is *repeated*; hence 'as long *again*' = 'twice as long.'

260. Very means 'true, actual,' as an adjective:—

There is a *very* life in our despair.—*Byron.*

Hence it came to mean 'itself, themselves,' etc.:—

At that *very* instant he arrived. Your *very* looks betray you.

But *very* is much more common as an adverb, meaning 'truly,' and so, 'exceedingly':—

'I am *very* glad to see you.'

Very merely emphasises 'best' and 'same' in such sentences as—

'My *very* best coat.' 'The *very* same reason.'

NOTE.—As an adjective, *very* has degrees of comparison:—*very*, *verier*, *veriest*:—'And ne'er was earth with *verier* tyrant curst.'—*Southey*; 'Thou hast the *veriest* shrew of all.'—*Shaks.*

261. Never so ever so.—The old idiom was *never so*:—

(1) That (the adder) refuseth to hear the voice of the charmer, charm he *never so* wisely (*Bible*), *i.e.* 'though he charm so wisely as (he or any one charmed) never before.'

This *never so* has, in modern English, been turned into *ever so*, and we say—

(2) That refuseth to hear the voice of the charmer, charm he *ever so* wisely, *i.e.* 'however wisely he may charm.'

NOTE.—The use of *ever so*, *ever such* = 'to any extent, exceedingly,' as in '*Ever so* many people came,' 'It is *ever such* a long way off,' is colloquial.

262. Adverbs as Adjectives.—Adverbs are sometimes apparently used as adjectives:—

Our *sometime* sister, now our queen.—*Shaks.*
My *evermore* delight.—*Tennyson.*

In such instances a participle or an adjective is understood with the adverb. Thus:—

The *then* king = the *then reigning* king.
A *down* (or *up*) train = a *down* (or *up*) *going* train.
A *through* ticket = a ticket *available through* (the journey).
In *after* years = in years *coming after*.
An *outside* passenger = a passenger *travelling outside*.
A *homeward* voyage = a voyage *made homeward*.
The *above* description = the description *given above*.
An *out and out* hypocrite = a hypocrite *deceiving out and out*.

NOTE.—These forms strongly resemble those in **74**, and *down train*, *through ticket* might almost be treated as compound words. Cf. 'the man *here*' (= the man who is here), 'the world *above*' (= the upper world), 'on the way *back*,' 'a journey *inland*.'

263. Adverbs as Nouns.—Some adverbs are used as nouns, with a preposition before them:—

I shall have finished by *then* (= that time).
Such things have been done before *now* (= the present time).
He lives two miles from *here* (= this place).
It is a long way from *here* to *there* (= that place).

NOTE.—Cf. 'at *once*,' 'at *unawares*,' 'by *far*,' 'for *ever*.' Adverbial phrases are used in the same way:—'Wait till *after the holidays*'; 'I bought this book for *under two rupees*'; 'I have solved the mystery of *where he is gone*.'

264. Comparison of Adverbs.—Adverbs that are the same in form as the corresponding adjectives (**141**) form their comparison in the same way: *hard*, *harder*, *hardest* (adv. and adj.); *fast*, *faster*, *fastest* (adv. and adj.). We have also *easier*, *earlier* and *earliest*, *seldomer*, *oftener* and *oftenest*, as adverbs: '*Easier* said than done.' Adverbs in *-ly* express the comparative and the superlative by prefixing *more* and *most*: *more wisely*, *most wisely*.

265. Rather (comparative of the obsolete *rathe*) means (1) 'sooner,' and so (2) 'somewhat':—

(1) I will go to meet him *rather* than wait for him.
(2) I am *rather* doubtful about this.

In *had rather*, *had sooner*, *had better*, *had as soon*, 'had' is subjunctive, meaning 'should or would have':—

I *had rather* go = I *should have* it *rather* to go (*i.e.* I prefer to go).

I *had sooner* walk than ride = I *should have* it *sooner* to walk than to ride (*i.e.* I prefer walking to riding).

You *had better* stay = you *would have* (= find) it *better* to stay (*i.e.* it will be better for you to stay).

I *had as soon* walk as ride = I *should have* it *as soon* to walk as to ride (*i.e.* I should like equally to walk or to ride).

NOTE.—Similarly 'I *had like* to have been drowned' = I *had* it *likely* (*i.e.* I was likely) to have been drowned.

PREPOSITIONS.

266. *Definition.*—**A Preposition** (Latin *præpositio*, placing before) is a word used to point out the relation in which one thing stands to some other thing: as, 'Ram's book is *on* the table.' In this sentence, the preposition *on* points out the relation (here, of *place*) in which Ram's book stands to the table.

267. Compound Prepositions.—A large class of prepositions are formed by prefixing a preposition to a noun, or to an adjective used substantively. Thus, *amid* means *in the middle*, and *beside* means *by the side*. Hence, just as we can say 'He stood *beside* me,' without inserting the preposition *of* after *beside*, so we can say 'Fields of rice lie *on either side* the river,' where *on-either-side* has the force of preposition.[1] The chief prepositions of this class are:—*about*, *above*, *across*, *against*, *along*, *around*, *among*, *behind*, *below*, *beneath*, *between*, *beyond*, *within*, *without* (see Chap. VIII.).

268. A year, a day, etc.—The *a* in such expressions as—

Passing rich on forty pounds *a year* (=yearly).—*Goldsmith.*
Rice is three rupees *a maund*.[2]
He hired the coolies at two annas *a man*.

—is not the Indefinite Article used distributively, but a weakened form of the preposition *on*. Thus in Old English we find—

An halfpenny *on day* = a halfpenny *a day*.

PREPOSITIONAL USE OF PARTICIPLES.

269. Barring, bating, concerning, considering, excepting, regarding, respecting, saving, touching, owing (to), according (to) are participles which, from the frequency of their use in certain connexions, have come to be employed without any noun or pronoun for them to qualify. Thus—

What is your opinion *concerning* these matters?

would be the regular construction, the noun 'opinion' being qualified by the participle 'concerning'; but in

I should like to talk with you *concerning* these matters,

'concerning' has no noun or pronoun for it to qualify, and is used by itself with the force of a preposition (=about).

[1] We can, further, dispense with *on* and say 'I live *this side* the river,' where *this side* is an adverbial objective with prepositional force; see **139**, (*a*).

[2] This preposition *a*, however, soon came to be regarded as the Indefinite Article, and hence we find *the* taking its place:—'Rice is three rupees *the* maund.'

Similarly,

Considering his youth, I shall treat him with lenity

is regular, since 'considering' qualifies the pronoun 'I'; but in

Considering his youth, his conduct is excusable,

'considering' (since it cannot qualify 'conduct') stands alone with a prepositional force [367, (13)].

270. Examples:—

Barring (=apart from) accidents, the vessel will sail to-morrow.
His conduct, *bating* (=except for) a few slight errors, was admirable.
Saving (=except) one picture, there was nothing worth looking at.
Touching (=in regard to) this matter, I am much puzzled.
The money was lost, *owing* to (=in consequence of) his failure (390, 6).

NOTE.—*Speaking, talking, judging, seeing, granting* (or *admitting*), *assuming, supposing, allowing,* are sometimes similarly used (cf. 281):—

Speaking generally, this will be found to be true.
Talking of guns, a sad accident happened yesterday.
Judging from his conduct, he is hardly to be trusted.
Seeing that the train is gone, it is useless to wait.
Granting that this is true, what follows?
Assuming that you had some excuse, still your conduct was harsh.
Supposing that I am right, the money is lost.
Allowing for absentees, the roll of members is correct.

271. During, notwithstanding, pending, except, save are, in their origin, instances of the Absolute construction (138):—

During this anxious night, Charles slept only two hours—*i.e. this anxious night during* (=lasting), or 'while this anxious night lasted.'

All were drowned *except one man*=all were drowned, *one man being excepted.*

Forty stripes *save one*=forty stripes, *one being saved* or *reserved.*

But they may now be regarded as prepositions, taking the objective case after them.

NOTE.—*Notwithstanding* is still placed, as an Absolute participle, after the noun it qualifies:—'He would go, all my *orders notwithstanding.*' Similarly we have '*Provided* (=so long as, if) you go, I will stay' (*i.e. it being provided that* you go).

272. Preposition detached.—In relative clauses, and with interrogative pronouns and adverbs, whether independent or conjunctive, the preposition is often placed last:—

Which, traitor, thou would'st have me answer *to.—Shaks.*
Whom do you take me *for?*
Then thou knowest *what* colour jet is *of.—Shaks.*
Where are you going *to* (=whither)? Tell me *where* you are going *to.*

When the relative is omitted, or when the relative *that* is used, the preposition *must* come last :—

Here is the book (which) I spoke *of*.
This is the house *that* I once lived *in*.

A preposition used in this way is called a *Detached* preposition.

CONJUNCTIONS.

273. *Definition.*—**A Conjunction** (Latin *conjunctio*, joining together) is a word used to join together sentences and single words, as 'He said *that* he was a banker'; 'He *and* I went together.'

274. **Two Classes.**—Conjunctions are divided into two classes :—

(1) *Co-ordinative* Conjunctions; which (besides joining together words) unite co-ordinate clauses or sentences :—

She maketh fine linen *and* selleth it.—*Bible.*
So runs my dream: *but* what am I?—*Tennyson.*

(2) *Subordinative* Conjunctions; which unite a subordinate clause to a principal clause :—

He sold the horse *because* it went lame.
If it be so, it was a grievous fault.—*Shaks.*

CO-ORDINATIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

275. **If** is generally used to introduce a condition or a supposition :—

(1) *If* (=on the supposition that) you go, I will stay.

But it is also used to introduce a reported interrogation (294) :—

(2) I asked him *if* (=whether) he would go,

and a concession :—

(3) *If* (=admitting that) I have failed, I have at any rate done my best.

276. **Both—and** should, strictly, couple only two notions :—

Both wind *and* tide were contrary.

But they are sometimes used to join more than two :—

The God that made *both* sky *and* earth *and* heaven.—*Milton.*

NOTE.—(*a*) The same thing is true of *either—or*, *neither—nor*, since *either* and *neither* are both compounded of *whether*='which of *two*.' But

they have, for a long period, been used in relation to more than two objects. (*b*) *Whether—or* are sometimes used elliptically with the meaning of *both—and*: 'All his property, *whether* (it be) houses *or* lands, is lost.'

277. **Either** is sometimes appended adverbially to a word or to a sentence to emphasise them :—

I do not believe John would act so, or Charles *either*.
If you do not stay, I will not stay *either*.

278. **Or** has four uses :—

(1) It is strongly alternative :

You must apologise *or* resign.

(2) It has little or no alternative force :

Their strength *or* speed *or* vigilance were given
In aid of our defects.—*Cowper*.

(3) It introduces an alternative name or synonym :

Christ *or* the Messiah (=that is, in other words).
Brakespeare, *or* The Fortunes of a Free Lance (*Title of a Novel*).

(4) It is used for 'otherwise' :

You must obey my orders, *or* I shall be angry.

NOTE.—Only (1) and (4) admit of the emphatic *either—or*. When *nor* is used without a negative preceding, it is equivalent to 'and not' :—'I stood still, *nor* did he move.'

279. **But, though.**—Note the difference in meaning between—

(1) He is poor, *but* honest=his poverty has not made him dishonest.
(2) He is poor, *though* honest=his honesty has not made him rich.

NOTE.—Hence, 'he is poor, but honest' and 'he is honest, though poor' have the same meaning.

SUBORDINATIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

280. **That** is used to introduce a noun clause which is—(*a*) complement to a verb, (*b*) object to a verb, (*c*) object to a preposition, or (*d*) in apposition to a noun :—

(*a*) My proposal is *that* you should be our leader.
(*b*) He said *that* I must go.
(*c*) In *that* he liveth, he liveth unto God.—*Bible*.
(*d*) The notion *that* he is a popular man is incorrect.

281. Omission of 'that.'—The words *after, before, ere, since, until, for, but* were originally prepositions followed by *that*, but by the omission of *that*, became conjunctions :—

(1) Tell me *before* (prep.) that I go.
(2) Tell me *before* (conj.) I go.

Just as *that* is now omitted after *because* (= by cause), so it is often similarly omitted after *on condition, in case, for fear*, and after *directly, provided* (= if), *supposing* (= if), *granting* (= if), *assuming* (= though), *seeing* (= since).

NOTE —*Now* is a conjunction in the colloquial 'Now (that) you have finished your work, you may go'; cf. 'The moment (that) you have finished, you may go.'

282. While was once 'the while that,' and is really an Objective of Duration of Time [139, (*b*)]. Thus '*While* the ploughman whistles' = '(During) *the while* (= time) *that* the ploughman whistles.' *While* has three different senses :—

(1) Do you play *while* (= at the same time that) I sing.
(2) *While* (= as long as) the Coliseum stands, Rome shall stand.
(3) Some people are punctual, *while* (= whereas) others are never in time.

INTERJECTIONS.

283. *Definition.*—**An Interjection** (Latin *interjectio*, throwing between) is an exclamatory word or sound thrown into a sentence to express an emotion of the mind, and is not, properly, a part of speech, since it does not enter into the construction of sentences :—*Oh! Ah! Alas!* (grief); *Hurrah! Ha! ha!* (joy); *Fie!* (reproof); *Pshaw! Tut! tut! Pooh! Pish! Faugh!* (disgust); *Hark! Hush! Hist!* (attention); *Heigh-ho!* (weariness); *Bravo! Hear! hear!* (approval); *Ho! Holloa!* (a call); *Humph! Hem! Hoity-toity!* (surprise).

284. Interjectional Phrases.—Many phrases and elliptical expressions are used interjectionally :—*O dear me!* (= O dear for me), *Ah me!* (= ah for me), *Woe is me!* (= woe is to me), *Fie for shame! For shame! Alackaday!* (= ah, lack, *or* loss, on the day), *Hail!* (= be hale *or* healthy), *Welladay!* (for *welaway* = O.E. *wá lá wá*, woe! lo! woe!) *good bye* (= good b' w' ye, = God be with you), *good Heavens!*

CHAPTER IV.

TENSE-USAGE.

SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

285. General Rule.—The tense of the verb in the dependent clause must correspond to the tense of the verb in the principal clause :—

If I *ask* you to do me a favour, what *will you say?*
If I *asked* (or *should ask*) you to do me a favour, what *would you say?*
If I *had asked* you to do me a favour, what *would you have said?*

(1) A Present or a Future tense in the principal clause may be followed by a Present, a Past, or a Future tense in the dependent clause, according to the sense required :—

He *has told* me { how he *does* it. / how he *did* it. / how he *will do* it.

He *will tell* me { how he *does* it. / how he *did* it. / how he *will do* it.

I *drink* { because I *am* thirsty. / because I *was* thirsty just now. / because I *shall be* thirsty soon.

I *shall drink* soon { because I *am* thirsty. / because I *was* thirsty just now. / because I *shall be* thirsty soon.

NOTE.—We say 'I *hope* he *will* be successful,' but 'I *wish* he *may* be successful'; 'I will receive him when he *comes*' (not 'shall come'); 'Tell me when the train *starts*' (not 'will start').

(2) A Past tense in the principal clause must be followed by a Past tense in the dependent clause :—

He *told* me { how he *did* it. / how he *had done* it. / how he *should do* it. / how he *should have done* it.

I *drank*, because I *was* thirsty.
He *worked* hard, that he *might win* the prize.
He *said* that he *should go*.

286. Exceptions to (2).—(*a*) If the dependent clause states an action that is *universally* or *habitually* true, the present tense should be used in the dependent clause :—

He *seemed* hardly to know that the earth *goes* round the sun.
He *asked* me why I *take* a walk for two hours every day.

(*b*) After *than* the present or the future tense may be used in the dependent clause :—

He *loved* me more than he *loves* you.
He *loved* me more than he *will love* you.

287. The present imperfect momentary tense of the infinitive mood may be used with any tense of the principal verb :—

I *hope*
I *shall hope*
I *hoped* } *to see* you.
I *had hoped*

288. But the present perfect momentary tense of the infinitive mood must be used when the act expressed by the infinitive is regarded as completed before the time denoted by the principal verb :—

He *appears to have been* mistaken (on some previous occasion).

289. After the past tenses of verbs expressing *wish*, *hope*, *intention*, *duty*, etc., the present perfect tense of the infinitive implies that the *wish*, etc., was not realised :—

I *meant to have seen* him (but I was not able to do so).
I *hoped to have obtained* a prize (but I did not obtain one).
They *ought to have come* in time (but they neglected to do so).

NOTE.—Hence 'I intended *to have won* the prize, and I succeeded,' is wrong ; say, 'I intended *to win*.' *I should like*, though expressing conditionally present desire, is past in form. Compare the following :—

If I *have* time, I *should like* (=shall like) *to go*.
If I *had* (or *should have*) time, I *should like to go*.
If I *had had* time { I *should like to have gone*. / I *should have liked to go*.

But 'I *should have liked to have gone*' is inadmissible.

290. I am to (go), **I have to** (go), require special notice (588) :—

I am to go =it is settled or arranged that I shall go.
I was to go =it was settled or arranged that I should go.
I have to go=I am under obligation to go.
I had to go =I was under obligation to go.

NOTE.—Since 'He is to be'='it is settled or established that he shall be,' a sentence like 'He is to be trusted with the business' may have two meanings—(1) 'It is intended to trust him with the business,' (2) 'He is worthy of being trusted with the business.' Observe that 'If I *were to* (go)' is often used merely for 'If I *should* (go).'

The present perfect tense of the infinitive may be used after *I was*, but not after *I am, I have, I had*:—

I was to have gone=it was settled or arranged that I should go (but I did not go).

REPORTED SPEECH.

291. In reporting speech one of two general methods may be followed:—(*a*) we may give the actual words used by the speaker: this is called *Direct Report*[1]; (*b*) we may give in the form of a narrative the substance or meaning of the words used by the speaker, without quoting his actual words: this is called *Indirect Report*.[1]

292. In Direct Report the actual words used by the speaker must be introduced by some verb expressing simple assertion (as *say, remark*, etc.) and must be marked off by inverted commas ("———"), the signs of quotation, which are placed at the beginning and at the end of the speech reported:—

Ram said, "It is twelve o'clock."

293. In Indirect Report—

(1) The conjunction *that* is inserted before the reported speech, except in the case of Reported Interrogations (294), and some Reported Exclamations (296):—

Direct: Ram says, "The man is dead."
Indirect: Ram says that the man is dead.

NOTE.—*That* is often omitted in spoken, less often in written, English:—'Ram says the man is dead.'

(2) If the verb used by the reporter to introduce the reported speech is in the present or the future tense, the tense of the verb in the reported speech remains unchanged:—

Direct: Ram says (*or* will say), "*I am* wrong."
Indirect: Ram says (*or* will say) *that he is* wrong.

Direct: Ram says (*or* will say), "*I was* wrong."
Indirect: Ram says (*or* will say) *that he was* wrong.

[1] Also called Direct and Indirect *Speech* or *Narration*.

(3) If the verb used by the reporter to introduce the reported speech is in the past tense, the tense of the verb in the reported speech must correspond to it:—

Direct: Ram said, "*I am* wrong."
Indirect: Ram said *that he was* wrong.

Direct: Ram said, "*He has* gone."
Indirect: Ram said *that he had* gone.

Direct: Ram said, "*I will* walk."
Indirect: Ram said *that he would* walk.

NOTE.—For the change of *shall* to *will* in the reported speech, see **306.**

(4) But if the reported speech states an action as universally or habitually true [**286**, (*a*)], the tense of the verb in the reported speech remains unchanged:—

Direct: Ram said, "*The earth is* round."
Indirect: Ram said *that the earth is* round.

(5) The person of the pronouns and of the verbs in the reported speech must correspond to the person of the individual or the object with reference to whom the original speech is made:—

Direct: Ram said, "*I am* wrong."
Indirect: Ram said *that he* (Ram) *was* wrong.

Direct: Ram said to him (Sham), "*You are* wrong."
Indirect: Ram told him *that he* (Sham) *was* wrong.

Direct: Ram said to me, "*You are* wrong."
Indirect: Ram told me *that I was* wrong.

Direct: Ram said, "*My* father is at home."
Indirect: Ram said that *his* father was at home.

But no change of person is necessary when the speech is reported to the person to whom it was originally addressed:—

Direct: Ram said to you, "*You are* wrong."
Indirect: Ram told you *that you were* wrong.

NOTE.—We see that in such sentences as 'Ram told him that he was wrong,' there may be some confusion as to whether the pronoun *he* refers to the speaker, Ram, or to the person spoken to. This can be obviated only by inserting after *he* the name or designation of the person referred to, as 'he (Ram),' or 'he (the speaker),' or 'he (Sham).'

(6) Certain words expressing *nearness* in place, time, or manner—*this, these, here, hither, hence, now, to-day, to-morrow, yesterday, last night, ago, thus, hereby* used by the original speaker, must often be changed into words expressing *remoteness—that,*

those, there, thither, thence, then, the next day, the day before, the night before, before, so, thereby, in the indirect report of the speech :—

Direct: Ram said, "I do not know *this* man."
Indirect: Ram said that he did not know *that* man.

Direct: Ram said, "The matter shall be decided *here* and *now*."
Indirect: Ram said that the matter should be decided *there* and *then*.

Direct: Ram says, "I shall go *to-morrow*."
Indirect: Ram says that he shall go *the next day*.

Direct: Ram said, "I left home long *ago*."
Indirect: Ram said that he had left home long *before*.

Direct: My letter says, "I *hereby* grant you the appointment."
Indirect: My letter says that he *thereby* grants me the appointment.

But if *this, here*, etc., refer to objects present at the time of the report of the speech, or to the place in which reporter is at the time of the report, they are not changed to *that, there*, etc., in the reported speech :—

Direct: Ram said, "*This* is my book."
Indirect: Ram said that *this* (*i.e.* the book before us) was his book.

Direct: Ram said, "The custom is *now* (*i.e.* in modern times) obsolete."
Indirect: Ram said that the custom was *now* obsolete.

Direct: Ram said, "Men cannot expect happiness *here* (*i.e.* in this world)."

Indirect: Ram said that men could not expect happiness *here*.

294. Reported Interrogations.—In reporting interrogations some verb expressing interrogation (instead of a verb expressing simple assertion) must be used by the reporter to introduce the reported speech, followed, if necessary, by *whether* or *if*, and the Interrogative order of words [129, (1)] must be changed to the Affirmative order :—

Direct: Ram *said* to you, "Are the mangoes ripe?"
Indirect: Ram *asked* you *whether* (or *if*) the mangoes were ripe.

Direct: Ram *said* to me, "Why do you not go home?"
Indirect: Ram *asked* me why I did not go home.

Direct: Ram *said* to him, "How do you do?"
Indirect: Ram *asked* him how he did.

Direct: Ram *said* to them, "What do you mean by such conduct?"
Indirect: Ram *demanded* of them what they meant by such conduct.

Direct: Ram *said* to the man, "Where are you going?"
Indirect: Ram *enquired* of the man where he was going.

Direct: I *said*, "Who says to me 'You are a thief'?"
Indirect: I *asked* who called me a thief.

295. **Reported Commands or Requests.**—In reporting *Commands* or *Requests* originally expressed by the imperative mood, some verb expressing command or request, with an object of the person, must be used by the reporter to introduce the reported speech (without *that*, 678), and the imperative mood must be replaced by the infinitive:—

Direct: Ram *said to him*, "*Do not talk* nonsense."
Indirect: Ram *told him not to talk* nonsense.

Direct: Ram *said to me*, "*Lend me* your pen, *please*."
Indirect: Ram *requested me kindly to lend* him my pen.

Direct: Ram *said to them*, "*Please be* quiet."
Indirect: Ram *begged them to be* quiet.

Direct: Ram *said to me*, "Welcome home."
Indirect: Ram *bid me* welcome home.

296. **Reported Exclamations and Wishes.**—In reporting exclamations and wishes, some verb expressing exclamation or wish (followed, where necessary, by *that*) is often used by the reporter to introduce the reported speech, such verb representing the force of ejaculations used by the original speaker, which could not be otherwise expressed in the indirect report; or the force of such ejaculations may be represented by some additional word or phrase. The Optative [129, (4)] and the Exclamatory [129, (2)] order of words must be changed to the Affirmative order. Verbs omitted in the original exclamation must be supplied in the reported exclamation:—

Direct: Ram said, "*How* happy *I am*" (or "*am I*")!
Indirect: Ram said *that he was very* happy.

Direct: Ram *said*, "*Good heavens!* What a disaster (*it is*)!"
Indirect: Ram *cried out* what a disaster *it was*.
With a cry of horror, Ram *exclaimed that it was a great* disaster.

Direct: The spectators cried out, "*Bravo!* (*It is*) A capital hit!"
Indirect: The spectators cried out *with applause that it was* a capital hit.

Direct: Ram *said*, "*Alas! I am* ruined."
Indirect: Ram *exclaimed with a sigh that he was* ruined.

Direct: Ram *said*, "*O* (I wish) *that I* could see them!"
Indirect: Ram *exclaimed* that he *wished he* could see them.

Direct: Ram *said*, "Could *I* but see them!"
Indirect: Ram *expressed a wish that he* could but see them.

Direct: The captive *said*, "*May* Heaven *hear my* cry!"
Indirect: The captive *prayed* Heaven *to hear his* cry.
The captive *prayed* that Heaven *might hear his* cry.

297. Special Examples :—

Direct: Ram said, "Depend upon it, I shall succeed."
Indirect: Ram said that he was quite sure that he should succeed (*or* to succeed).

Direct: Ram said, "Heaven knows that I am innocent."
Indirect: Ram called Heaven to witness that he was innocent.

Direct: Ram said, "Good-bye, my friends!"
Indirect: { Ram said good-bye to his friends.
{ Ram bade his friends good-bye.

Direct: Cortes said, "We are few against many, brave comrades!"
Indirect: Cortes, calling them his brave comrades, told them they were few against many.

Direct: Ram said to him, "For shame, you coward!"
Indirect: Ram cried shame on him for a coward.

Direct: The prisoner said, "My lord, so help me God, I am not guilty."
Indirect: The prisoner declared to the judge that, so help him God, he was not guilty.

Direct: Ram said, "To think that I should be mistaken!"
Indirect: Ram expressed great surprise at finding himself mistaken.

Intermediate Forms of Reported Speech.

In addition to the two distinct forms of reported speech, the Direct and the Indirect, there are other forms *intermediate* between them.

298. First Intermediate Form.

Direct: John Wilkes declared, "In the height of my success I have never myself been a Wilkite."
Indirect: John Wilkes declared that in the height of his success he had never himself been a Wilkite.
Intermediate: John Wilkes declared that "in the height of his success he had never himself been a Wilkite."

Here the Intermediate form is distinguished from the Indirect form merely by the insertion of quotation marks. The narrator wishes to draw attention to the fact that he gives not only the substance of what John Wilkes said but his *actual words*, with no change but the necessary ones in verbs and pronoun.

299. Second Intermediate Form.

Direct: I say, "Why do we not help them?"
Indirect: I ask why we do not help them.
Intermediate: I ask, Why do we not help them?

This form is the converse of the First Intermediate Form. It is often used when a person is reporting his own words. He

quotes the actual words which he originally used, but without the quotation marks, since he does not wish to draw attention to the fact that he is so quoting.

NOTE.—We occasionally find a mixture of the First and the Second Intermediate forms:—*Direct*: "Has Ram taken my book?" he asked. *Indirect*: He asked if Ram had taken his book. *Intermediate*: Had Ram taken his book? he asked.

300. Third Intermediate Form.

Direct: The Greeks deliberated over the affair and said, "Our homes in the Peloponnesus are comparatively secure. Is it not better for us to fall back and defend the Isthmus of Corinth? Do not, O Leonidas, be foolhardy."

Indirect: The Greeks deliberated over the affair and said that their homes in the Peloponnesus were comparatively secure; they asked if it was not better for them to fall back and defend the Isthmus of Corinth, and begged Leonidas not to be foolhardy.

Intermediate: The Greeks deliberated over the affair. Their homes in the Peloponnesus were comparatively secure; was it not better for them to fall back and defend the Isthmus of Corinth? Let not Leonidas be foolhardy.

Here the Intermediate form differs from the Indirect form in omitting the verbs *said, asked, begged*, used in the Indirect form to introduce the clauses of the reported speech. The reader is left to infer from the context that the author is reporting what the Greeks said or thought, the question and the request being indicated (as in the Direct form) by the construction of the sentences.

SHALL AND *WILL*.

301. The primary sense of 'shall' is 'owe, ought,' implying the notion of *obligation*, or duty imposed by some external power.

The primary sense of 'will' is 'wish,' implying the notion of *volition*, or desire felt by the person himself.

302. *I shall go*, meaning originally *I owe* or *ought to go*, implies that my going is due not to my own wish but to some external compulsion or influence. But as it was considered polite, in speaking in the first person of one's own future action, to represent the action as influenced by external circumstances rather than by one's own wish, *I shall* came to be used as the general term to express future action on the part of the person speaking. Hence the original notion of *compulsion* in the word *shall* is lost when *shall* is used in the first person, and *I shall go* is a mere prediction.

On the other hand, it was considered more polite, in speaking in the second or the third person of another's future action, to represent the action not as influenced by external circumstances, but as dependent on the will or wish of the person spoken to or spoken of. Accordingly, *you will, he will* came to be used as the general terms to express future action on the part of the person spoken to or spoken of. Hence the original notion of *desire* in the word *will* is lost sight of when *will* is used in the second or the third person, and *you will go, he will go* are mere predictions.

Hence when *mere futurity* is to be expressed, we must use—

I shall	we shall
thou wilt	you will
he will	they will

303. The original notion of *desire* (easily passing into the notion of *determination* or *intention*) in the word *will* is preserved, when *will* is used in the first person. *I will go*, literally *I desire to go*, hence *I am determined to go* or *I intend to go*, is therefore used in promises or threats.

Similarly the original notion of *obligation* in the word *shall* is preserved, when *shall* is used in the second or the third person. *You shall go, he shall go* (*i.e. something will oblige you* or *him to go*), are therefore used to express promises, threats, or commands; that is, in all cases where the action is not dependent on the wish of the person spoken to or spoken of, but is due to some external influence exercised by the person speaking.

Hence when *promises, threats*, or *commands* are to be expressed, we must use—

I will	we will
thou shalt	you shall
he shall	they shall

304. Examples.—The ordinary uses of *shall* and *will* in the first, second, and third persons, are illustrated in the following sentences:—

(1) I *shall* be punished = punishment *is to be inflicted* on me.
I *will* be punished = I *desire* or *am determined* to be punished.

(2) To-morrow *will* be a holiday = to-morrow *is to be* a holiday. (This might be said by a schoolboy.)
To-morrow *shall* be a holiday = to-morrow *is to be* a holiday *by the permission or order of the speaker.* (This therefore might be said by a headmaster, but not by a schoolboy.)

(3) Whoever finds the missing papers *will* be rewarded = a reward *is to be* given to the finder.
Whoever finds the missing papers *shall be* rewarded = I *promise* a reward to the finder.

(4) Thou *shalt* not steal—is a *command.*
Thou *wilt* not steal—is a *prediction.*

(5) Come, we *will* slay him and *will* have his horse
And armour, and his damsel *shall* be ours.—*Tennyson.* (Here *will* and *shall* express the *intention* or *determination* of the bandits.)

(6) Why if thou *wilt*, so let it be—thou *shalt* (*Tennyson*) = if thou *wishest* (to be free), *I will allow* thee to be so.

Shall is the only form admissible in expressions like—

I shall be much obliged, I shall be at a loss, I shall be able, I shall be very glad, I shall have much pleasure, etc.,

which are mere predictions of what will happen, and into which the idea of *will* does not enter. *I will be very glad* would express a *promise* to feel glad, which is absurd.

305. Special uses of *shall* and *will*:—

(1) On receipt of this letter you *will* at once return home.

Here the future tense gives an order under the guise of a prediction. This form is often used when the person to whom the order is given is addressed in the third, and not, as usual, in the second person: as, 'The Head Constable *will* investigate this case himself.'

(2) You *will* always come when you are least expected.

Here *will* is emphasised, and implies that your *desire* or *determination* to come is so fixed as to have produced a *habit* of coming. Similarly in 'Accidents *will* happen,' the *will* is emphasised, and the *desire* to happen, leading to a habit of happening, in spite of all efforts to prevent them, is humorously attributed to accidents. Compare 'Valour *will* come and go' (*Sheridan*).

Hence *will*, not emphasised, has come to be used to express mere *habit* or *tendency*, the idea of *desire* being lost sight of: as, 'He *will* spend hours together in studying the heavens,' *i.e.* he *is in the habit* of spending, etc.

(3) This picture *will* be meant to represent the Duke of Wellington.

Here *will* merely predicts the result of further investigation; and '*will* be meant' = '*will turn out on enquiry* to be meant,' implying present uncertainty. It is thus a form of enquiry, and is often followed by a note of interrogation.

(4) He that *will* not when he may,
He *shall* not when he *will* (*Old Proverb*).

These are good examples of the use of *will* and *shall* in their literal senses. 'He that *will* not' = he that *is unwilling*; 'he

shall not' = the influence of external circumstances will prevent him; 'when he *will*' = when he *is willing*.

(5) Read the book and you *shall* not find a single mistake.

Here *shall* indicates that the belief of the speaker in the truth of his own prediction is so strong that he will give a guarantee for it. 'You *shall* not find' = 'I *promise* that you will not find,' though the influence of the speaker has really nothing to do with bringing about the result predicted. This *shall* then is used to express *confident prediction*, amounting to a *certainty*. Other examples are—

An election for a disputed borough *shall* (=is sure to) cost the parties £20,000 or £30,000.—*Paley*.

An English woman *shall* be a sort of she-bagman, and she *shall* yet show you this gentle, womanly consciousness.—*Addison*.

The cock's shrill clarion and the echoing horn
No more *shall* rouse them from their lowly bed.—*Gray*.

306. Shall and Will in Indirect Report.—Since there can be no question of politeness when a person says anything about himself, *shall* is not altered to *will* nor *will* to *shall* with the alteration of persons which takes place when a speech is reported indirectly, but they remain what they were in the mouth of the original speaker:—

Direct: You say, "*I shall* be punished."
Indirect: You say that *you shall* be punished.

Direct: You say, "*I will* accept the offer."
Indirect: You say that *you will* accept the offer.

Direct: He says, "*I shall* be punished."
Indirect: He says that *he shall* be punished.

Direct: He says, "*I will* accept the offer."
Indirect: He says that *he will* accept the offer.

But, in the second person, when the speaker and the subject of the reported speech is the same person, *shall* is often replaced by *will*:—

Direct: You say, "*I shall* be punished."
Indirect: You say that *you will* be punished.

Hence, 'you will be punished,' in the latter sentence, may express either a prediction or a determination, according as the 'will' is unaccented or accented.

The same rule holds good in case of subordinate clauses, since

the hypothetical element neutralises the notion of compulsion. Thus we say—

He fears that he *shall* die. He will come when he *shall* receive orders.
The sea will ebb and flow as long as earth *shall* last.
You are uncertain whether you *will* accept the offer.

—where *shall* in the third person denotes mere futurity, and *will* in the second person denotes determination or intention.

307. Shall and Will in Interrogations.—When *shall* is used interrogatively, the external influence exercised by the *person speaking*, implied in *shall* when used in assertions, becomes influence exercised by the *person spoken to* in interrogations; so that there is no need to shun the use of *shall* in the second person, out of a polite desire to avoid the suggestion of compulsion. Hence *Shall you?* is used as a simple enquiry as to future action. *Will you?* is an enquiry as to the wishes or intention of the person spoken to, and thus is used in requests. *Shall he?* is an enquiry as to whether external influence, exercised by the person spoken to, will be applied to the person spoken of as *he*. *Will he?* is the interrogative form of *he will*, and is therefore used as a simple enquiry as to his future action. *I will* is an assertion of my own wishes or intention, about which it would be absurd of me to ask for information from any one else; hence *Will I?* is inadmissible, and *Shall I?* is used both for simple enquiry into future events and in requests for permission which depends on the wish of the person spoken to. Thus—

Shall I?
Shall you?
Will he?
} are enquiries as to future events (or actions) in relation to the *person represented by the pronoun*.

Shall I?
Will you?
Shall he?
} are enquiries as to the wish or intention of the *person spoken to*.

Compare the following sentences:—

(1) *Shall you go* to the meeting to-day?
(2) *Will you come* to the meeting to-day? (**613**, *note*).

NOTE.—*Will I?* is permissible when it is a partial repetition of some other person's previous utterance: as, 'You will be sure to get the worst of the encounter.' 'O I will, *will I?*'; or 'Will you do this for me?' '*Will I?* You know I will.' *Will I?* may also occur in a rhetorical question: as, '*Will I* eat the flesh of bulls?' (*Bible*), *i.e.* 'I do not wish to eat,' etc. *Will we?*, though rarely found, is an admissible form, since the speaker may reasonably feel doubt concerning the wishes or intention of others included with himself in the word *we*: as, '*Will we* not be content with such things as we have?'

308. Examples.—The ordinary uses of *shall* and *will* in interrogations may be seen in the following sentences:—

(1) *Shall I* show you my pictures?=Is it your *wish* that I should show you my pictures? (enquiry as to *wish*).

Shall I die, if I drink this?=Is my death *certain to take place*, if I drink this? (enquiry as to future event).

(2) *Shall he* be punished?=Is it your *wish* or *intention* that he shall be punished?

Will he be punished?=Is he *going to be* punished?

(3) Where *shall we* dine to-day?=Where *do you wish* us to dine to-day?

Where *shall we* be this time next year?=Where *are we destined* to be this time next year?

(4) *Shall you* be at home this evening?=*Are you sure* to be at home this evening?

Will you be at home this evening?=*Do you promise* to be at home this evening?

(5) What *shall you* do in case of failure?=What *are you sure* to do in case of failure?

What *will you* do in case of failure?=What is it *your intention* to do in case of failure?

(6) Who *shall* say me nay?—is a challenge.

Who *will* say me nay?—is an appeal.

SHOULD AND *WOULD*.

309. The original force of *obligation* or *duty* in *should*, and of *volition* or desire—hence *intention*, *determination*—in *would* is retained in all three persons when *should* and *would* are used in sentences expressing a simple, unconditional assertion:—

I (you, he) *should* work hard in lesson time=I (you, he) *ought to* work hard in lesson time.

I (you, he) *would* work hard in spite of the heat=I (you, he) *was* (were) *determined to* work hard in spite of the heat.

310. In (1) sentences containing subordinate clauses and (2) conditional sentences, where *shall* and *will* are used after a present or a future tense, *should* and *would* are used after a past tense:—

(1) I *know* that I *shall* die.	I *know* that you (*or* he) *will* die.
I *knew* that I *should* die.	I *knew* that you (*or* he) *would* die.
Do you think that you *shall* go?	*Do* you think that he *will* die?
Did you think that you *should* go?	*Did* you think that he *would* die?

I *will inform* you when the next meeting *will* take place.
I *informed* you when the next meeting *would* take place.

There *will be* an order in the Gazette that no new works *shall* be begun.

There *was* an order in the Gazette that no new works *should* be begun.

(2) If he *comes*, I *shall* go If he *came*, I *should* go	simple statement of future action.
If he *comes*, I *will* go If he *came*, I *would* go	statement of intention.
If he *comes*, you (*or* he) *will* go If he *came*, you (*or* he) *would* go	statement of future action.
If he *comes*, you (*or* he) *shall* go If he *came*, you (*or* he) *should* go	statement of obligation.

311. In interrogative conditional sentences, *should* and *would* are used in the different persons according to the rules given for *shall* and *will* used interrogatively :—

If he *comes*, *shall* I go? If he *came*, *should* I go?	enquiry as to future action *or* enquiry as to the wishes of the person addressed.
If he *comes*, *shall* you go? If he *came*, *should* you go?	enquiry as to future action.
If he *comes*, *will* you go? If he *came*, *would* you go?	enquiry as to intention.
If he *comes*, *will* he go? If he *came*, *would* he go?	enquiry as to future action.
If he *comes*, *shall* he go? If he *came*, *should* he go?	enquiry as to the wishes of the person addressed.

312. Special uses of *should* and *would* :—

(1) The old man *would* often recount his adventures.

Here '*would* recount' = (originally) *wished* (or *was determined*) to recount, and hence *was in the habit* of recounting. Cf. **305**, (2).

(2) A simple child—
What *should* it know of death?—*Wordsworth.*

Here 'What *should* it know?' = What *ought* it to know? and hence, What *could* it *be expected* to know?

(3) He did not know that he *should* die.

Here '*should* die' = *was certain to* die.

(4) *Should I* give you } a little more?
Would you give me }

These forms, with a suppressed condition ('if you wished,' 'if I were to ask you'), are less direct and therefore more courteous than '*Shall I* give you a little more?' or '*Will you* give me a little more?'

(5) *Would you* like me to go with you?

This form, with a suppressed condition ('if I should be willing'), is ordinarily used in colloquial language, though '*Should you* like?' (which is also conditional) is the more correct form; since *Would you?*, which, strictly speaking, is an enquiry as to *wish*, ought not to be used with *like*, which also denotes *wish*.

(6) 'Those who saw the Winter Exhibition of the Royal Academy *would* notice a portrait of Dr. Adam.'

Here *would notice* = *most probably noticed*; it expresses less absolute certainty than *noticed*.

GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION OF *SHALL, WILL, SHOULD, WOULD.*

It should be observed that when *shall, will, should, would* express mere futurity, they are Auxiliary verbs; but that when they express promises, threats, or commands, they are not Auxiliary verbs but Principal or Notional verbs. Thus in 'He *will* go' (with *will* unemphasised) *will* expresses futurity and is an Auxiliary verb; but in 'He *shall* go' *shall* expresses compulsion and is a Principal verb (Present tense) with the infinitive *go* for its object or complement. Similarly with *should* in 'You *should* (= ought to) not make personal remarks.' The test in each instance is whether *shall, will*, etc., have a meaning of their own. Thus in 'I *shall* go' *shall* has no meaning; it merely marks the future tense: whereas in 'You *shall* go' *shall* has the meaning of compulsion.

CHAPTER V.

PARSING.

313. Every part of speech in a sentence bears a grammatical relation to some other part of speech in the sentence. The nature of this relation is a guide to discovering what part of speech a word in a sentence is, and determines its form (if it is capable of inflexion).

314. Parsing is a grammatical description of a word (or group of words) in a sentence, showing—

(*a*) What part of speech it is and of what kind.
(*b*) The name of its form (if it is capable of inflexion).
(*c*) Its relation to some other part of speech in the sentence.

Thus, in parsing the word *man* in the sentence '*Man* is the lord of Creation,' we state—

(*a*) that it is a *noun*, of the kind *common*, *class* (**104**, **107**);
(*b*) that it is of the *masculine* gender, *singular* number, *nominative* case;
(*c*) that it is *subject* of the verb 'is.'

It is clear that the most important of these points is (*c*), the relation that *man* bears to *is*; for the knowledge that *man* is subject to the verb *is* enables us to state (*a*) that *man* is a noun, and (*b*) that it is of the *singular* number, *nominative* case.

Hence in parsing we must enquire first what (*c*) relation the word to be parsed bears to some other member (or members) of the sentence. That being discovered, the other points, (*a*) what part of speech it is, and (*b*) its form, may be readily determined.

Below is given a list of the various relations in which the parts of speech stand in a sentence and the forms they assume, when inflected, to denote these relations.

NOUNS AND PRONOUNS.

315. The Nominative Case is used—

(1) As Subject of a verb :—
The *shepherd* feeds his flock. *He* is gone.

(2) In Apposition to the subject of the verb :—
Wellington, the *hero* of Waterloo, died in 1852.

(3) As Subjective Complement of a verb [10, (3)] :—
He was elected *chairman*.

(4) In the Absolute construction (138) :—
The *rebels* being routed, peace was restored.

(5) Before the infinitive in Exclamations [221, (4)] :—
He to desert me !

316. The (Direct) Objective Case is used—

(1) As Direct Object of a verb :—
The wolf killed the *lamb*. What ails *him*?

(2) In Apposition to another object :—
He praised Ram, the head *boy* of the class.

(3) As Object of an intransitive verb and its complement (209) :—
He stared *me* in the face.

(4) As Objective Complement of a verb [10, (3)] :—
The army made him its *leader*.

(5) As Cognate Object (210) :—
He dreamt a *dream*.

(6) As Retained Direct Object of a transitive verb in the passive voice (213) :—
He was taught *Sanskrit* by a Pundit.

(7) As Object of a preposition or a prepositional phrase (267) :—
This is the land of my *birth*. He went aboard the *ship*.

(8) As Adverbial Objective (139) :—
The house stands twenty *feet* back from the road.
When you come our *way*, call and see us.

(9) In Exclamations :—
Unhappy *me* ! Oh dear *me* !
Poor *fellow* ! what a fate was his !

317. **The Indirect Objective Case** is used—

(1) As Indirect Object (212) of a verb :—

I granted the *man* leave. His courage failed *him*.

(2) As Retained Indirect Object (213) of a verb in the passive voice :—

Leave was granted the *man* by me.

(3) As Dative of Interest (212, *note* 1) :—

Saddle *me* the ass.—*Bible.*

(4) As Reflexive Dative (212, *note* 2) :—

They sat *them* down upon the yellow sands.—*Tennyson.*

(5) With certain impersonal verbs (248) :—

*Me*thinks it is an easy leap. So please your *Majesty*.

(6) In certain interjectional phrases (284) :—

Ah *me* ! Woe is *me* ! Alas the *day* !

(7) After *like, unlike, nigh, near, next*, whether used as adjectives or adverbs :—

The child is like (adj.) his *father*.
No man like (adv.) *him* the horn could sound.—*Wordsworth.*
He is next *me* in the class.

318. **The Possessive Case** is used—

(1) Adjectivally :—

This is *John's* book. I object to *Ram's* going on leave.

(2) As Complement of a verb :—

This book is *John's*.

319. **The Vocative Case** is used as the Case of Address :—

Soldiers! follow your commander.
Where is your father, my *boy*?

ADJECTIVES.

320. **Adjectives** may be used—

(1) To qualify a noun or a pronoun, attributively or predicatively (140) :—

The *good* shepherd. The shepherd is *good*.
O *miserable* me ! I am *miserable*.

(2) As Subjective or Objective Complement of a verb [10, (1)] :—

I feel very *cold*.
He struck the man *dead*.

VERBS.

321. The Infinitive Mood may be used as (*a*) the Simple Infinitive (221), (*b*) the Gerundial Infinitive (222).

(*a*) The *Simple Infinitive* may be used—

(1) As a noun; it is then the subject of a verb, or the object of a verb or of a preposition :—

To live here is pleasant.
I like *to go* to school. He was taught *to swim*.
He did nothing but *laugh*. Sooner than *submit*, he resigned.

(2) As Complement of a verb or a verbal noun of incomplete predication [**10**, (5)], or of a conjunctive adverb :—

He tried *to deceive* me. I punished him for trying *to deceive* me.
I do not know when *to start* or where *to go*.

(3) Absolutely :—

Thus *to rob* me of my child !—*Goldsmith*.

(*b*) The *Gerundial Infinitive* may be used—

(1) As an adverb :—

I went there *to see* him. This is hard *to bear*.

(2) As an adjective :—

He has books *to sell*.

(3) Absolutely :—

The property was divided between them, Ram *to have* one-third.

(4) Parenthetically :—

To speak plainly, he is a rogue.

322. Participles may be used—

(1) Attributively with a noun or a pronoun :—

The wind scattered the *gathering* clouds.
Have you any pens?—Only some *broken* ones.

(2) As Complement of a verb [**10**, (2)] :—

The sky looks *threatening*.
The walk made him *tired*.

(3) Absolutely (**138**) :—

Let us start, you *going* first.
There were 300 souls on board, all (*being*) *told*.

(4) Impersonally (**270**, *note*) :—

Talking of heat, was it not hot yesterday?

(5) As nouns [**127**, (4); *note*] :—

Our *surroundings* are pleasant.

323. **The Indicative, Imperative, and Subjunctive Moods** are the moods of the Finite verb (4). In giving the *relation* of a verb in one of these moods, it is sufficient to state what it has for its Subject.

ADVERBS.

324. **Adverbs** (249) may be used to modify—

(1) A verb or a verbal noun :—

He ran *quickly*.
Running *quickly* is hard work.

(2) An adjective :—

You are *very* kind.

(3) An adverb :—

Walk *quite* slowly.

(4) A preposition :—

The train is *nearly* through the tunnel.

(5) A conjunction :—

He went away *long* before I came.

(6) A sentence :—

Clearly this is true.

NOTE.—Adverbs are sometimes apparently used as adjectives (262).

Adverbs may also be used—

(7) As Complement of a verb [10, (6)] :—

Do you feel *better* to-day? This is *so*.

PREPOSITIONS.

325. **Prepositions** are used—

(1) To govern nouns or pronouns :—

The teacher *of* the class gave a prize *to* each *of* the boys.

(2) To form group-verbs (207) :—

He is not to be trifled *with*.

CONJUNCTIONS.

326. **Conjunctions** are used to couple words, phrases, or sentences :—

The Ganges *and* the Jumna unite at Allahabad.
That was the gift of a poor *but* honest man.
I will go, *if* you will stay.

327. Having first discovered in which of the above relations the word to be parsed stands in the sentence, we must next proceed to determine what part of speech it is; and since many parts of speech are sub-divided into classes, what particular class it belongs to. Lastly, unless the word be a preposition or a conjunction, which are not capable of inflexion, we must ascertain the particulars of its form.

The following Parsing Scheme includes all the requisite particulars to be stated as to *class* and *form* for the different parts of speech; the *relation*, though it should be ascertained first, is generally stated last.

PARSING SCHEME.

328. Noun.

(*a*) WHAT PART OF SPEECH:
Class: Common (Class, Collective, Material), Proper, or Abstract.

(*b*) FORM:
Gender, *Number*, *Case*.

(*c*) RELATION (315-319).

329. Adjective.

(*a*) WHAT PART OF SPEECH.

(*b*) FORM (if capable of inflexion):
Degree: Positive, Comparative, or Superlative.

(*c*) RELATION (320).

330. Pronoun.

(*a*) WHAT PART OF SPEECH:
Class: Substantive or Adjective; and whether Personal, Reflexive, Demonstrative, Interrogative, Relative, Conjunctive, Indefinite, or Distributive (167).

If Substantive:—

(*b*) FORM:
Person, *Gender*, *Number*, *Case*.

(*c*) RELATION (315-319).

NOTE.—In parsing a Relative Pronoun state also what is its antecedent.

If Adjective:—

(*b*) FORM:
Person, *Gender*, *Number*.

(*c*) RELATION (320).

331. Verb.

I.—Infinitive.

(*a*) WHAT PART OF SPEECH:

Class: { (1) Transitive, Intransitive, or Auxiliary.
(2) Simple or Gerundial.

(*b*) FORM:

Voice, Tense.

(*c*) RELATION (321).

II.—Participle.

(*a*) WHAT PART OF SPEECH:

Class: Transitive, Intransitive, or Auxiliary.

(*b*) FORM:

Voice, Tense.

(*c*) RELATION (322).

III.—Indicative, Imperative, or Subjunctive.

(*a*) WHAT PART OF SPEECH:

Class: Transitive, Intransitive, or Auxiliary.

(*b*) FORM:

Voice, Mood, Tense, Number, Person.

(*c*) RELATION (323):

Having for Subject what noun or pronoun.

332. Verbal Noun.

(*a*) WHAT PART OF SPEECH:

Class: Transitive or Intransitive.

(*b*) FORM:

Voice, Number, Case.

(*c*) RELATION (315-319):

Having for Object [227, (2)] what noun or pronoun.

333. Adverb.

(*a*) WHAT PART OF SPEECH:

Class: Independent, Relative, or Conjunctive.

(*b*) FORM (if capable of inflexion):

Degree: Positive, Comparative, or Superlative.

(*c*) RELATION (324).

334. Preposition.

(*a*) WHAT PART OF SPEECH.

(*b*) RELATION (325):

Having for Object what noun or pronoun.

335. Conjunction.

(*a*) WHAT PART OF SPEECH:

Class: Co-ordinative or Subordinative.

(*b*) RELATION (326):

Joining together what words, phrases, or sentences.

THE SAME WORD USED IN DIFFERENT RELATIONS.

336. Form and Relation.—A word may have various senses or uses, so that it is sometimes difficult to determine its relation.

(*a*) The same word may be a noun in one sentence and an adjective or a verb in another. Thus the word *light* is a noun in 'The *light* of the moon is clear'; an adjective in 'This room is very *light*'; and a verb in '*Light* the lamp.'

(*b*) A word that by origin is one part of speech may be used as another part of speech. Thus a noun may be used as an adjective or a verb. *Iron*, by origin a noun, is used as an adjective in 'Break it with an *iron* hammer'; and it is used as a verb in 'He told the washerwoman to *iron* the cloth.'

In all cases where a word shows by its *form* that it is one part of speech while in *use* or relation it is a different part of speech, it should be parsed according to its *use*, the particulars of its *form* being also stated. Thus in 'He plunged into the *thickest* of the fight'—

Thickest is in *form* an adjective of the superlative degree, and in *use* is a noun, common, neuter gender, singular number, objective case, being object of the preposition *into*.

337. Nouns used as Adjectives.—Thus *garden* is—

(*a*) a Noun: 'Come into the *garden*.'
(*b*) a Noun used as an Adjective: 'Sit on this *garden* seat.'

So with 'A *gold* ring,' 'the *summer* holidays,' 'on *Monday* morning,' '*drinking* water,' etc. (135).

338. Prepositions used as Adverbs.—Thus *above* is—

(*a*) a Preposition: 'Ram was *above* Sham in the class.'
(*b*) a Preposition used as an Adverb: 'Look *above* for consolation.'

So with *abroad, about, across, along, around, behind, below, beneath, between, beyond, down, in, off, on, over, round, to, under, underneath, within, without, up.*

339. Prepositions used as Conjunctions.—Thus *for* (see 281) is—

(*a*) a Preposition: 'I will do it *for* him.'
(*b*) a Preposition used as a Conjunction: 'I will do it, *for* I like him.'

340. Prepositions used as both Adverbs and Conjunctions.—Thus *before* is—

(*a*) a Preposition: 'The prisoner was brought *before* the judge.'
(*b*) a Preposition used as an Adverb: 'Look *before* and behind.'
(*c*) a Preposition used as a Conjunction: 'See me *before* you go.'

So with *after* and *since*.

341. Adverbs used as Conjunctions.—Thus *however* is—

(*a*) an Adverb: '*However* quick you are, you will not be in time.'
(*b*) an Adverb used as a Conjunction: 'You are quick; *however*, you will not be in time.'

So with *still* and *nevertheless*.

Words of Number, Quantity, and Amount.

342. Any is used as—

(*a*) an Adjective: 'Have you *any* rice?' '*Any* pen will do.'
(*b*) an Independent Adverb: 'Are you *any* better to-day?'
(*c*) a Substantive Pronoun: '*Any* of these pens will do.'

343. Enough is used as—

(*a*) an Adjective: 'This paper is not *enough* for the whole class.'
(*b*) an Independent Adverb: 'The rice is not boiled *enough*.' 'He was kind *enough* to invite me.'
(*c*) a Substantive Pronoun: '*Enough* has been done.' 'I have had *enough* of this folly.'

344. Little is used as—

(*a*) an Adjective: 'A *little* child came with her.'
(*b*) an Independent Adverb: 'He was *little* hurt.'
(*c*) a Substantive Pronoun: 'It is but *little* that I ask.'
(*d*) a Noun: 'Give me a *little* of your valuable assistance.' 'I should like a *little* (of) sugar.' 'Wait a *little*' (of time).

345. Few is used as—

(*a*) an Adjective: 'There were *few* boys in the class.'
(*b*) a Substantive Pronoun: '*Few* shall part where many meet.'
(*c*) a Noun: 'There were a *few* (of) boys in the class.'

346. Many is used as—

(*a*) an Adjective: '*Many* soldiers were killed.' 'I confess the *many* faults that I have committed.' '*Many* a time have I seen him.'
(*b*) a Substantive Pronoun: 'Few shall part where *many* meet.'
(*c*) a Noun: 'A great *many* (of) mistakes were made.'

347. Much is used as—

(*a*) an Adjective: 'It gives me *much* pleasure.'
(*b*) an Independent Adverb: 'I am so (=very) *much* better to-day.'
(*c*) a Substantive Pronoun: 'I do not ask *much* of you.'
(*d*) a Noun: 'I can tell you only this *much*.'

348. More is used as—

(*a*) an Independent Adverb: 'Ram is *more* careful than his brother.' 'I saw him no *more*.'
(*b*) an Adjective: '*More* soldiers than officers were killed.'
(*c*) a Substantive Pronoun: 'Give me health; I ask no *more*.'

349. Some is used as—

(*a*) an Adjective: '*Some* people are always complaining.'
(*b*) an Independent Adverb: '*Some* twenty boys were absent' (196).
(*c*) a Substantive Pronoun: '*Some* said one thing, *some* another.' 'Give me *some* of your pens.'

350. One is used as—

(*a*) an Adjective: 'Only *one* class was dismissed.' '*One* day I went out for a walk.'
(*b*) a Substantive Pronoun: 'Give me *one* of your pens.' 'He likes an old book—I like a new *one* (or, new *ones*). '*One* trusts *one's* friends.' '*One* in a certain place testifieth' (*Bible*). 'There I met *one* Mr. Robinson' (194).

351. Once is used as—

(*a*) an Independent Adverb: 'We can die only *once*.' 'I was *once* a boy like you.' 'Disease attacked his *once* hardy constitution.'
(*b*) a Subordinative Conjunction: 'A great future awaits America, *once* (=as soon as) it is free from corruption.'
(*c*) a Noun: 'I will allow it for this *once*' (=one time). 'Go at *once*.'

352. Half is used as—

(*a*) an Adjective: 'To-day is a *half* holiday.'
(*b*) an Independent Adverb: 'He was *half* drowned.'
(*c*) a Noun: 'The *half* of my goods I give to the poor' (*Bible*). 'He walked *half* (of) a mile.'

NOTE.—*Dozen, score, hundred,* etc. are similarly used: 'a dozen (of) men,' 'a score (of) sheep,' 'a hundred (of) years.'

353. None is used as—

(*a*) a Substantive Pronoun: 'There are *none* so blind as those who will not see.' 'Give me some sugar.—There is *none*.' 'Give me some books.—There are *none*.'
(*b*) an Independent Adverb: 'He is *none* the happier for all his wealth.'

NOTE.—*None* (=no one) is properly only singular: '*None* but the brave *deserves* the fair'; but it is now usually plural, with *no one* for its singular: 'All were saved; there *are none* missing.'—'All were saved; there *is no one* missing.'

354. No is used as—

(*a*) an Adjective: '*No* soldier should be a coward.' 'I am *no* orator.'
(*b*) an Independent Adverb: 'I saw him *no* more.' 'The patient is *no* better to-day.'

355. Only is used as—

(*a*) an Independent Adverb: 'He *only* laughed at my complaints.'
(*b*) an Adjective: 'He is an *only* son.'
(*c*) a Co-ordinative Conjunction: 'I would pardon him, *only* (=but) it is against the law.'

356. Both is used as —

(*a*) an Adjective: 'He examined *both* classes.'
(*b*) a Substantive pronoun: 'He examined *both* (of) the classes. "I asked one, but *both* came.'
(*c*) a Co-ordinative Conjunction: 'You cannot *both* eat and have your cake.'

THE WORDS 'AS,' 'THAT,' 'WHAT,' 'HOW,' 'WHY,' 'SO,' 'SUCH,' 'ELSE,' 'SINCE,' 'NEXT.'

357. As is used as—

(*a*) a Subordinative Conjunction: '*As* (=since) it is fine, I shall go out.' 'Fine *as* (=though) it is, I shall not go out.'
(*b*) a Conjunctive Adverb: 'This is not so big *as* that (is).' '*As* to that (=as far as relates to that), I cannot decide at present.' 'What are your intentions *as* (it) regards me?'
(*c*) a Relative Pronoun: 'You are wrong, *as* (=which) was to be expected.' 'This is the same horse *as* I rode yesterday.' 'The noise was such *as* I never heard before.'
(*d*) an Independent Adverb: 'I will go *as* (=so) soon as possible.'

358. That is used as—

(*a*) a Demonstrative Adjective Pronoun: 'Who is *that* man?'
(*b*) a Demonstrative Substantive Pronoun: 'Who told you *that*?'
(*c*) a Relative Pronoun: 'He is the man *that* I saw.'
(*d*) a Subordinative Conjunction: 'Tell them *that* I will come.' 'Not *that* (=because) I loved Cæsar less.' 'I speak loud *that* (=in order that) you may hear.'

359. What is used as—

(*a*) an Interrogative Adjective Pronoun: '*What* time is it?'
(*b*) an Interrogative Substantive Pronoun: '*What* did you say?'
(*c*) a Relative Substantive Pronoun: '*What* I have written I have written.'
(*d*) a Relative Adjective Pronoun: 'Tell me *what* books you want.
(*e*) an Indefinite Substantive Pronoun: 'I tell you *what* (=something, 183): I will accept your offer on one condition.'
(*f*) an Adverb: '*What* (=partly, 189) with one thing and *what* with another.
(*g*) a Subordinative Conjunction: 'I do not doubt but *what* [=that, p. 242, *foot-note*] you are right.'
(*h*) an Interjection: '*What!* have you no better reason than this?'

360. How is used as—

(*a*) an Independent Interrogative Adverb: '*How* do you do?'
(*b*) a Dependent Conjunctive Adverb: 'Tell me *how* it is made.'
(*c*) a Noun: 'Some*how* or other (*how*) he escaped.'

NOTE.—*Somehow* (and *somewhere*) may be regarded as one word and parsed as an adverb.

361. Why is used as—

(*a*) an Independent Interrogative Adverb: '*Why* did you do it?'
(*b*) a Dependent Relative Adverb: 'Tell me the reason *why* you do it.'
(*c*) a Dependent Conjunctive Adverb: 'Tell me *why* you did it.'
(*d*) a Noun: 'Tell me the *why* and the wherefore.'
(*e*) an Interjection: '*Why*, how now, Claudio?' (*Shaks.*).

362. So is used as—

(*a*) an Independent Adverb: 'As you treat me, *so* I treat you.'
(*b*) a Co-ordinative Conjunction: 'He is gone, *so* I shall go too.'
(*c*) a Demonstrative Adjective Pronoun: 'That you are tall is certain; that you are strong is no less *so*' (=certain).
(*d*) a Demonstrative Substantive Pronoun: 'You are my friend, and will, I hope, always be *so*' (=my friend).

363. Such is used as—

(*a*) an Adjective: '*Such* birds are rare.' '*Such* a bird is rare.' '*Such* is life.'
(*b*) a Demonstrative Adjective Pronoun: 'He is guilty and must be punished as *such*' (=guilty).
(*c*) a Demonstrative Substantive Pronoun: 'I bring you peace and happiness; for *such* (=peace and happiness) he sent.'

364. Else is used as—

(*a*) an Independent Adverb: 'You cannot buy this anywhere *else*' (=besides).
(*b*) a Subordinative Conjunction: 'I killed the snake, *else* (=otherwise) it would have bitten me.'
(*c*) an Adjective: 'I have nothing *else* (=no other thing) to say.'

365. Since is used as—

(*a*) a Preposition: 'I have not seen him *since* last year.'
(*b*) an Independent Adverb: 'We parted at the station, and I have not seen him *since*.'
(*c*) a Subordinative Conjunction: '*Since* you say so, it must be true.'

366. Next is used as—

(*a*) an Adjective: 'I shall go by the *next* train.'
(*b*) an Independent Adverb: 'You fire first; I will fire *next*.'
(*c*) a Preposition: 'I live *next* the post office.'

367. Examples of Parsing.

(1) '*The more*, the *merrier*.'

The is in *form* a pronoun, adjective, demonstrative, neuter gender, singular number, instrumental case (258); in *use* it is an adverb modifying the adjective *more*.

More is an adjective, comparative degree, qualifying a noun (*persons*) understood.

Merrier is an adjective, comparative degree, qualifying a pronoun (*they*) understood.

The sentence expressed in full would be: 'The more persons there are, the merrier they are.'

(2) 'The *more* you look, the surer you will be *to find* it.'

More is an adverb, comparative degree, modifying the verb *look*.

To find is a verb, gerundial infinitive, transitive, active voice, imperfect momentary tense, used as an adverb to qualify the adjective *surer*.

(3) '*Where* do you come from?'

Where is in *form* an adverb; in *use* it is a noun, common, class, neuter gender, singular number, objective case, being object of the preposition *from*.

(4) 'I go there every *day*, or seven *times* a *week*.'

Day is a noun, common, class, neuter gender, singular number, objective case, being an adverbial objective expressing Point of Time [139, (*b*)].

Times is a noun, common, class, neuter gender, plural number, objective case, being an adverbial objective denoting Point of Time.

Week is a noun, common, class, neuter gender, singular number, objective case, being object of the preposition *a* (=on, 268).

(5) '*To reign* is worth *ambition*.'

To reign is in *form* a verb, intransitive, active voice, simple infinitive mood, imperfect momentary tense; in *use* it is a noun, being subject of the verb *is*.

Ambition is a noun, abstract, neuter gender, singular number, objective case, being an adverbial objective denoting *Value* [139, (*c*)].

(6) 'His courage failed *him* in the emergency.'

Him is a pronoun, substantive, personal, third person, masculine gender, singular number, indirect objective case, being the indirect object of the verb *failed* (212, *note* 1).

(7) '*Were* it not for this, I should go *to see* him, as I want *to go* very much.'

Were is a verb, intransitive, subjunctive mood, imperfect momentary tense, singular number, third person, having for its subject the pronoun *it* [472, (*a*)].

To see is a verb, transitive, active voice, gerundial infinitive mood, imperfect momentary tense, used as an adverb qualifying the verb *should go*.

To go is a verb, intransitive, active voice, simple infinitive mood, imperfect momentary tense, used as a noun, being object of the verb *want*.

(8) 'The *police were punished* for *letting* the *accused go.*'

Police is a noun, common. class, common gender, singular number in *form* (but, being collective, it is plural in *use*), nominative case, being subject of the verb *were punished.*

Were punished is a verb, transitive, passive voice, indicative mood, past imperfect momentary tense, plural number, third person, having for its subject the noun *police.*

Letting is a verbal noun, transitive, active voice, singular number, objective case, being object of the preposition *for*, and having for its object the noun *person* understood.

Accused is a verb, transitive, passive voice, perfect participle, qualifying a noun (*person*) understood.

Go is a verb, intransitive, active voice, simple infinitive mood, imperfect momentary tense, used as complement of the verbal noun *letting.*

(9) '*Hunting* the fox is very *exciting.*'

Hunting is a verbal noun, transitive, active voice, singular number, nominative case, being subject of the verb *is*, and having for its object the noun *fox* [**227**, (2)].

Exciting is a verb, transitive, active voice, imperfect participle, being used as complement of the verb *is* [**322**, (2)].

(10) 'This is *no laughing* matter.'

No is an adjective qualifying the noun *matter.*

Laughing is in *form* a verbal noun; in *use* it is an adjective, qualifying the noun *matter.*

(11) 'On *going* into the room, I saw him.'

Going is a verbal noun, intransitive, active voice, singular number, objective case, being object of the preposition *on.*

(12) 'While *going* into the room, I saw him.'

Going is a verb, intransitive, active voice, imperfect participle, qualifying the pronoun *I.*

NOTE.—*While* is a conjunction irregularly used with the participle, owing to a confusion between the two constructions, '*Going* into the room' and '*While I was going* into the room.'

(13) '*Considering* your age, you have made great progress.'

Considering is a verb, transitive, active voice, imperfect participle, used impersonally; *or*—

Considering is in *form* a verb, transitive, active voice, imperfect participle; in *use* it is a preposition having as its object the noun *age* (**269**).

(14) 'Generally *speaking*, summer is preferable to winter.'

Speaking is a verb, intransitive, active voice, imperfect participle, used impersonally; *or*—

Speaking is in *form* a verb, intransitive, active voice, imperfect participle; in *use* it forms with 'generally' an adverbial phrase, qualifying the sentence 'summer is preferable to winter' (**270**, *note.*)

(15) '*There* was a man *there*.'

There (1) is an independent indefinite adverb, used to introduce the subject *man* (**472**, *note*).

There (2) is an independent adverb of place, used as subjective complement of the verb *was* [**10**, (6)].

(16) 'He feels *cold*.'

Cold is an adjective, positive degree, used predicatively as subjective complement of the verb *feels* [**10**, (1)].

(17) 'I count upon your *coming* to see me.'

Coming is a verbal noun, intransitive, active voice, singular number, objective case, being object of the preposition *upon* (**226**).

(18) 'I was glad to find you *coming* to see me.'

Coming is a verb, intransitive, active voice, imperfect participle, qualifying the pronoun *you*.

(19) 'Do not trifle *with* me; I will not be trifled *with*.'

With (1) is a preposition, having for its object the pronoun *me*.

With (2) is an adverb, independent, qualifying the verb *trifled* (**207**, *note*).

(20) 'I travel *outside* the tramcar; those who travel *outside* are called *outside* passengers.'

Outside (1) is a compound preposition, having for its object the noun *tramcar* (**267**).

Outside (2) is an independent adverb, modifying the verb *travel*.

Outside (3) is apparently an adjective, qualifying the noun passengers; it is really an adverb, modifying the participle *travelling* understood after it (**262**).

(21) 'He is stronger *than* his brother' (is strong).

Than is a subordinative conjunction joining the subordinate clause 'his brother is strong' to the principal clause 'he is stronger.'

(22) 'I cannot do less *than* accept your offer.'

Than is a preposition having for its object the simple infinitive *accept* [**143**, **221** (3)].

CHAPTER VI.

IDIOM.

368. Idiom denotes any special use of a word or words that is peculiar to a language. The subject of this and the two following chapters is the study of idiom in connexion with the phraseology rather than with the grammar of English.

369. Metaphor in Idioms.—Metaphor enters largely into idiomatic phraseology, and frequently the idiom consists in the use of a word or words in a metaphorical sense. Thus, when we tell a person to *hold his tongue*, we do not mean that he should literally take hold of his tongue; it is a figurative way of telling him to *be silent*. Similarly, to say that a man is *made of money* is a figurative way of saying that he is *immensely rich*; and when we say that an incident *speaks volumes*, we say metaphorically that it *conveys much information*. Here two methods of study may be recommended:—

(1) Trace the special metaphorical use of a word or expression up to the literal or the general use of the word. Thus, 'to drive a sword *home*' means to drive it in up to the hilt, as when it is driven fully into its home, the scabbard.

(2) Collect and classify the various metaphorical meanings in which the same word is used in different expressions. Take, for instance, the word *world*, which bears the general meaning of 'the earth.' We find it used in the following expressions:—

(1) The way of the *world*.
(2) The *world*, the flesh, and the devil.
(3) To begin the *world* afresh.
(4) A *world* of good.

World means in (1), 'mankind, human society'; in (2), 'irreligion'; in (3), 'course of life'; and in (4), 'a very large quantity.' Of additional expressions—'a man of the *world*,' 'as

the *world* goes' belong to (1); 'to get on in the *world*' belongs to (3); 'I would not do it for the *world*,' 'for all the *world* like so and so,' belong to (4).

370. The Translation of English Idioms into a vernacular, or the reverse process, forms an excellent exercise in composition. In regard to translating from one language into another the following hints may be given:—

(1) Before beginning your translation, carefully *read through the whole passage.* In order to translate, you must understand; and very often words or phrases or sentences in one part of the passage will give you a clue to the meaning of other parts. In the case of a difficult word or expression, consider its relation to the rest of the sentence in which it occurs—in other words, *use the context* to help you to decide the meaning of such words or expressions.

(2) Do your best to give your translation *the same general tone* that marks the original text. Follow as far as possible its style and diction. If the style of the original, for instance, is terse and pithy, or lively and fluent, let your translation be terse and pithy, or lively and fluent, in accordance with it.

(3) The translation should be *faithful*, that is, it should truly and exactly represent the meaning of the original. Do not omit or insert anything, but keep close to your text; and do not slur over a difficulty. At the same time, do not attempt a *word for word* translation. Give the *sense* of each sentence as it comes, without necessarily adhering to the forms of expression or the individual words of which it is composed.

(4) In translating *idioms*, be careful *not to translate literally*,[1] but to render the idiomatic word or phrase of the one language by the *corresponding* idiomatic word or phrase of the other. Thus, to indicate that a bench is full, we say in Bengali স্থান নাই. Translate this not by 'There is no *place*,' but by 'There is no *room*,' since 'room' is the English word which, in this sentence, idiomatically corresponds to the Bengali word স্থান. It is the same with sentences: thus, অনেক কাল পরে তোমাকে দেখিতেছি is, literally translated, 'After a long time I am seeing you'; but the true idiomatic translation is 'I have not seen you for a long time.' Here again, make it your aim to reproduce the *sense* of the idiom as a whole.

[1] The instances where this can be done are rare.

(5) The translation of *figurative language* requires caution. A metaphor may sometimes be rendered literally, but, as a rule, it is best to convey its meaning *in simple language*. Thus, 'This report *bristles with* errors' may be expressed in the translation by 'This report *is full of* errors,' and 'He waded to the throne through a sea of blood' by 'He obtained the throne by the slaughter of all his opponents.'

(6) In regard to *order of words* and *sentence-structure* be careful to follow the genius or idiom of the language into which you translate. For example, in a Bengali sentence, as a rule, the verb comes last; whereas it is placed at or near the beginning of an English sentence. Thus the Bengali এই বইখানি তাঁহাকে দিও, expressed in English in the same order of words, is 'This book him give'; but the true English order is 'Give him this book.'

(7) Remember, finally, that the prime object of a translation is to reproduce the *facts* and *ideas* of the original in such a form as will make them *clear* to the reader of the translation.

371. Fixed Character of Idiom.—When an idiomatic expression is met with, the exact words of which it is composed should be carefully noted, since, as a general rule, no other word or words can be substituted without spoiling the idiomatic character of the expression altogether. Thus, we say a thing is '*pulled* in (*or* to) pieces,' never '*drawn* in pieces.' Such an idiom as 'How do you do?' admits of very little variation: we could not say, 'How *did* you do yesterday?' 'A *clap* of thunder' (or a thunder-*clap*) is correct, but not 'the thunder *was clapping*.' A writer speaks of 'killing two birds *in one shot*'; '*at* one shot' would have been correct English, but he has missed the true phrase, namely, 'To kill two birds *with one stone*.' Sometimes an entire sentence is thus dealt with, as when we find 'he cuts off from his view' for 'he loses sight of.' Examples:—

CORRECT	INCORRECT
Bathed in tears (of mourners)	*washed* in tears
To kick *against* the pricks (of useless opposition)	to kick *at* the pricks
To jump *to* a conclusion (hastily conclude)	to jump *at* a conclusion[1]
To *carry* a thing to extremes	to *put* a thing to extremes
The matter *trembled* in the balance (was at a crisis)	the matter *shook* in the balance

[1] But 'To jump *at* an offer' is correct.

CORRECT	INCORRECT
To *throw* dust in a man's eyes (deceive him)	to *give* dust in a man's eyes
To make it a point of *honour*	to make it a point of *glory*
He *came of age* to-day	he *grew up to age* to-day
The appointment is *at* his disposal	the appointment is *in* his disposal[1]
I shook *hands with him* / I shook *him by the hand*	I shook *his hand*
He *wiped* his feet *on* the mat	he *cleaned* his feet *over* the mat
He pelted frogs with stones	he pelted stones at frogs
He *rose* from his seat	he *stood up* from his seat
Out of the frying-pan *into* the fire (from a bad situation into a worse)	*from* the frying-pan *to* the fire
His *better* half (wife)	his *dear* half
To *cut off* one's nose to spite one's face[2]	to *cut* one's nose to spite one's face
To go to *ruin*	to go to *ruins*
To *cast* one's eye upon a thing	to *throw* one's eye upon a thing
To *beat* (or *cudgel*) one's brains (think deeply)	to *hit* one's brains
This excuse *will not hold water* (is not valid)	this excuse *holds no water*
I left no stone unturned (did everything I could)	I turned every stone
Many a time and *oft*	many a time and *often*
To fly *in* the face of (rashly oppose)	to fly *at* the face of
Out of *doors*	out of *the door*
To bring *to bay* (to his defence)	to bring *to the bay*
To laugh *in* one's *sleeve* (secretly)	to laugh in one's *sleeves* / to laugh *up* one's sleeve
To lie stretched *at full length*	to lie *fully* stretched
To *pick* a quarrel with any one	to *pick up* a quarrel with any one
To *pocket* an insult (submit to it)	to *pocket up* an insult

372. **Particularisation of Use.**—Some words and expressions have come to be restricted in their use, so that they can be employed idiomatically only in certain connexions or with certain meanings. Thus in modern English we speak only of *fast friends*, and never of *fast enemies*. The word *addicted* is always used in relation to a *bad* habit: we say a man is *addicted to gambling*, but never that he is *addicted to economy*. *Devoted*, on the other hand, is almost always used with a good sense—'He is *devoted to literature*,' but not 'He is *devoted to intemperance*.' Similarly, *interference*, when not modified by an epithet like 'friendly,' usually implies intrusion. We speak of a *full*-blown rose, but

[1] But we say 'The appointment is *in* the gift of Mr. Jones.'

[2] To do oneself an injury in trying to punish others. Cf. 'to cut one's own throat,' 'to run one's head against a stone wall.'

a name is not *full*-known but *well*-known. We say 'an apple of *discord*,' but 'a bone of *contention*.' Examples:—

CORRECT	INCORRECT
He was totally *defeated, mistaken, wrong*, etc.	He was totally *victorious, correct, right*, etc.
He richly deserves *punishment*, his *fate*, etc.	He richly deserves *reward, good fortune*, etc.[1]
His *failure, misfortune*, etc., served him right	His *success, good luck*, etc., served him right
You must abide by the consequences (said of something *bad*)	You must abide by the consequences (said of something *good*)
He is prone to *idleness*, etc.	He is prone to *diligence*, etc.
I broke the news to him (said of *bad* news)	I broke the news to him (said of *good* news)
He cut a *sorry* (or *poor*) figure	He cut a *noble* figure[2]
He died in the lap of *victory*	He died in the lap of *conquest*
I pocketed the *injury, affront*, etc.	I pocketed the *favour, kindness*, etc.
This bodes *ill* (or *no good*)	This bodes *good*
He is in *bad* plight	He is in *good* plight[1]
He imprecated *curses* upon me	He imprecated *blessings* upon me
He is an inveterate *talker, gambler*	He is an inveterate *reader, learner*
He perpetrated a *crime*, etc.	He perpetrated a *duty*, etc.
I must retrench my *expenditure*, etc.	I must retrench my *trade*, etc.
He was implicated in the *conspiracy*, etc.	He was implicated in the *good work*, etc.
An accident has happened to him (said of something *bad*)	An accident has happened to him (said of something *good*)[3]
Egregious *folly, carelessness*, etc.	Egregious *wisdom, care*, etc.
Implicit *confidence, faith, obedience, reliance*	Implicit *love, hope*, etc.
Condign *punishment*	Condign *reward*
A flagrant *blunder*, etc.	A flagrant *excellence*, etc.
A glaring *error*, etc.	A glaring *truth*, etc.
A foregone *conclusion*	A foregone *result*
Sheer *loss, folly*, etc.	Sheer *gain, wisdom*, etc.
Utter *ignorance, folly*, etc.	Utter *knowledge, wisdom*, etc.
A bevy of *ladies*	A bevy of *gentlemen*
The livelong *day, night*	The livelong *week, month, year*
He came the other *day, night*	He came the other *week, month, year*
At *night*	At *day*

NOTE.—Similarly, the word *polemical* is generally confined to *religious* discussions or disputes, and *defalcation* and *defaulter* are chiefly applied to dishonesty about *money* matters. *Competence* and *subsidy* are used of *money* or property only. Some words have become so specialised as to be almost wholly technical:—*manslaughter, missionary, retriever, book-keeper, undertaker, occultation, parole, militant, condone, commute, distemper, cohabit.*

[1] These are very occasionally used.

[2] But 'to cut a *fine* figure' may be said ironically.

[3] But we can speak of 'a *happy* accident.'

373. Obsolete words preserved.—Words otherwise obsolete or nearly obsolete, and obsolete meanings or uses of words are often preserved in idiomatic expressions. Such words should not be taken out of their settings and brought into general use, since they are mostly restricted to the expressions in which they occur. Thus the word *nill* (ne-will, not will) survives only in the expression 'will he, *nill* he'[1] (whether he will or not), and therefore may not be introduced elsewhere, as in 'The Hon'ble Judge did *nill* (refuse) the offer.' The following are the principal expressions of this kind:—

EXPRESSION	MEANING
Kith and kin	*relatives* and kinsfolk
Cark and care	*anxiety* and care
Stark and stiff	*rigid*[2] and stiff
To go to *rack* and ruin	to go to *wrack* (wreck) and ruin
To keep watch and *ward*	to keep watch and *guard*
Time and again	repeatedly
To be at a man's *beck* and call	to be at a man's *nod* and call
To be in a *fix*	to be in a *difficulty*
Picking and stealing	*pilfering* and stealing
Without *rhyme* or reason	without *sound* or sense (without any cause whatever)
Without *let* or hindrance	without *obstruction* or hindrance
Sick or *sorry*	sick or *ill* (used of a horse)
Part and *parcel*	part and *portion*
Odds and ends	*points* (bits) and ends
Wear and *tear*	wear and detriment
Tare and *tret*	(allowance for) receptacle and waste
Spick and *span* new	new as a *spike* (nail just made) and a *chip* just cut off
Likes and dislikes	*likings* and dislikes
Waifs and *strays*	waifs and *wanderers*
Weal[3] and woe	*welfare* and woe
By *hook* or by *crook*[4]	by some means or another
In jest or *earnest*	jocosely or seriously
Cheek by *jowl*	cheek by *jaw* (with heads together; in close proximity)
Tit for *tat*	*tip* for *tap* (blow for blow)
To stand one in good *stead*[5]	to be a good substitute; hence, to be of great use
He came in my *stead*	he came instead of me
In the *nick* of time	just at the right moment

[1] Or 'will ye, nill ye,' often written *willy-nilly*; cf. to *shilly-shally* (=shill I? shall I?), to hesitate.

[2] Hence *strong*; and then *strongly*, *utterly*, as in '*stark* mad.'

[3] Cf. 'the common *weal*.'

[4] Under the old forest laws villagers were not allowed to *cut* wood; they might take only what withered boughs, etc. they could collect by employing *hooks* and *crooks*.

[5] *Stead*=standing; cf. *instead*.

EXPRESSION	MEANING
On *pain* of death	on *penalty* of death
To fall (*or* run) *foul* of	to come into collision with
To run a *rig*	to have a frolic
To pay one's *shot*	to pay one's *scot* (share)
To get off *scot*-free	to get off free from *payment* (unhurt, safe)
To say (*or* have) one's *say*	to say what one has to say
To do a man a *shrewd* turn	to do a man an *ill* turn
To give a man a *shrewd* blow	to give a man a *severe* blow
To take *umbrage*	to take *offence*
To be in one's *teens*	to be from 13 to 19 years of age
To raise a *hue* and cry[1]	to raise a *hoot* (clamour) and cry
To *wage* war	to carry on war
To *chop*[2] and change	to *veer* and change
To toil and *moil*	to toil and *drudge*
To learn by *rote*	to learn by repeating over the words without attention to the meaning
To have neither *chick* nor child	to have no child, little or big
To be in *vogue*	to be in *fashion*
To be of no *avail*	to be of no *effect*
To come, etc., without *fail*	to come without *failing* (or *failure*)
To look for a needle in a *bottle* of hay	to look for a needle in a *bundle* (*or* truss) of hay
To lie in *wait*	to lie in *ambush*
Widow's *weeds*	widow's *mourning clothes*
In *fine*	in *conclusion*
In the *heyday* of youth, of life	in the *highest vigour* of youth, of life.

NOTE.—Similarly with the italicised parts of the following:—*still*-born, *strait*-laced (cf. 'a *strait* waistcoat'), ill-*favoured* (ill-looking), *sooth*-sayer (cf. '*sooth* to say'), way*farer*, laughing*stock*, gazing*stock*, new*fangled*, woe-*begone* (beset with woe), safe-*conduct* (passport), foot*pad*, free*booter*, *journey*man, on*slaught*, *ruth*less, *reck*less.

WORD-COLLOCATION.

374. In employing idiomatic expressions, it is important not only to use the right word, but also to put it in the right place. Thus 'to be at *the door of death*,' 'to have a thing at *the ends of one's fingers*' are inadmissible for 'to be at *death's door*,' 'to have a thing at *one's fingers' ends*.' 'I will do as much as *lies in me*' is not so idiomatic as 'I will do as much as *in me lies*.' 'I cannot, *for the life of me*, understand what you mean' is the true order; *for my life* is idiomatically incorrect. We say 'bound in honour,' but 'in duty bound.'

[1] This expression is often misused in India to denote any kind of outcry; it should be used only of the cry raised to stop a thief, etc.

[2] We also say 'the wind *chops*,' and speak of 'a *chopping* sea.'

375. Double phrases.—In the case of phrases where two words or notions are coupled together, care should be taken to place the words or notions that compose them in the idiomatic order. Thus, we should not say '*shade* and *light*' instead of the more idiomatic '*light* and *shade*.' In the same way '*kin* and *kith*,' 'through *thin* and *thick*' are unidiomatic collocations for '*kith* and *kin*,' 'through *thick* and *thin*.' Two general principles govern the collocation of the parts of these phrases.

376. I. Where there is a distinction in meaning between the parts, that part is mentioned first which naturally and logically occurs first to the mind—

(*a*) As being *first* in time or order of events: thus in 'to destroy a thing *root* and *branch*,' *root* is placed before *branch* because a tree is cut down before it is cut up. Similarly, in 'he has lived on the estate *man* and *boy* for the last twenty years,' *man* is put first, because, in a review running backwards from the present time, that which is the more recent naturally occurs to the mind first:—

Much cry and little wool (boastful promises with small results)
To tar and feather
Cut and dried *or* dry (ready for use)
Born and bred
First come, first served (the first comer will be supplied first)
House and home
Hand and (*or* in) glove (very intimate)
(To be) up and doing
(To live) from hand to mouth
(It is) a word and a blow (with him) (he is very quarrelsome)
In word and deed
Law and equity
(It was) touch and go (a narrow escape)
From first to last
Past and present
The ebb and flow
Head or tail
Milk and water
(To repent) in sackcloth and ashes
Pen and ink
Warp and woof
Sin and shame
Winds and waves
Coat and waistcoat
To buy and sell
Bought and sold (betrayed)
Forgive and forget
This and that
Here and there
(That is) neither here nor there (aside from the point at issue)
Now (*or* once) and again
Time and again (frequently)
Now and then
Ever and anon
To and fro
Off and on
Up and down
Up hill and down dale
For ever and a day
Many a time and oft
Now or never
Wear and tear
(To go down) on hands and knees
(To be) at sixes and sevens (in a state of disorder)
Odds and ends (stray bits)
Sooner or later
Enough and to spare
Room and to spare
(To ply) whip and spur
Penny-wise and pound-foolish (careful about small expenses and careless about large ones)

Shoes and stockings
Bread and butter
To give and take
To come and go
Over head and ears (in love, in debt) (deeply in love, etc.)
A fair field and no favour
(To play at) hide and seek

(*b*) As being *higher* in place:—

From head to foot
From top to bottom
From top to toe
High and low
Heaven and earth
(To drag a thing in) by the head and shoulders (forcibly)
(To be all) skin and bone (very thin and lean)
Hand (signature) and seal
Cap and gown
(To turn one out) neck and crop *or* heels (in hasty and summary fashion)
(To smite a foe) hip and thigh (severely defeat him)
(To bind one) hand and foot
Stocks (blocks of wood) and stones
Hedge and ditch

(*c*) As being the *pleasanter*:—

Friend or foe
Right or wrong
Weal (happiness) or woe
Rich and poor
By fair means or foul
(To blow) hot and cold
Peace and war
(A matter of) life and death (a very serious matter)
Fair and false
(Sins of) omission and commission
Yes or no
Use and abuse
Ups and downs (success and failure)
For better for worse (with good or bad fortune)
For love or money (under any conditions)
Little or nothing
More or less
The pros and cons (arguments for and against)
To bear and forbear
To play fast and loose (with any one) (to be untrustworthy)
The sublime and the ridiculous

NOTE.—*Kill or cure*, *sink or swim*, would seem, at first sight, to be opposed to this rule; but, in these phrases, *kill* and *sink* are put first on purpose to show that the person who uses them is as fully prepared for the occurrence of the former as of the latter alternative; the phrases imply recklessness about consequences; cf. *neck or nothing* (at any risk, desperately). Observe that we say *here and now*, but usually *then and there*.

(*d*) As being the more *important*, emphatic, general, or familiar:—

Great and small
More or less
A thousand and one
(To go) through thick and thin[1]
Fire and sword
Horse and hounds
Horse and foot (of soldiers)
(To become) man and wife (to be married)
Life and soul
Body and soul
Out and about
(To beat one) black and blue (so as to make the skin black and blue)
(To do a thing) by fits and starts
(Driven) from pillar to post (hustled)
Wind and tide
(To rain) cats and dogs (very heavily)

[1] 'Thick and thin' must not be used for 'hand and glove,' as 'I am *thick and thin* with him.' We say colloquially 'I am very *thick* (intimate) with him,' 'We are very *thick*.'

Light and shade
Flesh and blood
Son and heir
A man and a brother
Man and beast
Far and near
Far and wide
At home and abroad
Offence and defence
Right and left
(To play) ducks and drakes
The rank and file (ordinary men)
Tagrag and bobtail (low-class people)
Each and all (but 'All and every,' below)
One and all
(To fight) tooth and nail (with one's utmost power)
Heart and soul[1]
(To lead) a cat and dog (a quarrelsome) life
Through the length and breadth of the land
(To be left) high and dry (stranded)
Rough and ready (methods)
Slow and steady
The long and short of it
Near and dear
Public and private
(To lose) heart and hope
(To keep under) lock and key
Life and limb
Meat and drink
Hearth and home
For good and all (permanently)
To beg or borrow
To hum and haw

NOTE.—When there is little or no distinction in meaning between the parts, the more familiar term is also usually placed first:—*fair and square, fair and above board, by leaps and bounds, ways and means, safe and sound, hard and fast, over and above, to toil and moil, well and good, null and void, watch and ward.*

377. II. Where there is little or no distinction of meaning between the parts so as to cause one part naturally to occur to the mind first, and where one part is of more than one syllable, there is a tendency, for the sake of euphony, to place the longer word last:—

Free and easy
High and mighty
Sick or sorry (ailing)
Sure and certain
Pure and simple
One and the same
Fair and above board
First and foremost
Wit and wisdom
Wind and weather
Hole and corner (underhand)
Nook and corner[2]
(To go) through fire and water
Sum and substance
Will and pleasure
To all intents and purposes
Fire and fury
Fire and brimstone
Pith and marrow (gist, essence)
Rites and ceremonies
Airs and graces (affectation)
The loaves and fishes (gain, emolument)
Goods and chattels
Stuff and nonsense
Bag and baggage
Part and parcel
Gall and wormwood
Pins and needles
Rough and tumble (turmoil)
Pains and penalties
All and every (and 'Any and every')
Far and away (by far)
Out and away

NOTE.—(*a*) In *early and late, chapter and verse, hammer* (strong instrument) *and tongs, powder and shot, to meddle and make, merry and* (yet) *wise, little and* (also) *good,* the natural or logical order is preserved. We

[1] 'To try *head and heart*' is inadmissible.
[2] 'Creek and corner is inadmissible.

say 'good, bad, and indifferent,' 'births, deaths, and marriages,' because *good and bad, births and deaths* are natural antithetical couples, to which *indifferent* and *marriages* are respectively additions. 'Free, gratis, and for nothing' follows Rule II. (*b*) Where the phrase is a quotation, the original order of words must be preserved: as, 'The feast of reason and the flow of soul' (*Pope*); 'Few and far between' (*Campbell*); 'Men of light and leading' (*Burke*); 'Weeping and gnashing of teeth' (*Bible*); 'Moth and rust' (*Ib.*); 'Jot or tittle' (*Ib.*); 'Milk and honey' (*Ib.*); 'In season and out of season' (*Ib.*); 'Over the hills and far away' (*Gay*); 'Sound and fury' (*Shaks.*); 'Head and front' (*Ib.*).

The Collocation of some Adjectives.

378. Adjective after Noun.—There are a few phrases, consisting of a noun and its qualifying adjective, in which the adjective is placed *after* instead of *before* the noun. In some instances this is due to French influence, as in 'court martial'; in others, to a desire to emphasise the adjective by its unusual position, as when a newspaper paragraph is headed 'Tiger-hunting extraordinary.' Similarly, 'I yield to no man *living*' (to no one in the world) is more emphatic than 'I yield to no living man' (to no man now alive); and 'I appeal to Philip *sober*' means 'I appeal to Philip *when he is sober.*' Examples:—

blood royal[1]	tartar emetic
battle royal	honour due[1]
theatre royal	Church militant
body politic	Church triumphant
wealth untold[1]	Viceroy elect
point-blank	sum total[1]
matters ecclesiastical[1]	God Almighty[1]
time immemorial	devil incarnate[1]
heir apparent	letters patent
generations unborn[1]	heirs male
lord paramount	darkness visible[2]
notary public	durance vile
procurator fiscal	Lords Temporal and Spiritual[3]
malice prepense	proof positive

NOTE.—We say 'For the *time being*'; also 'On *Monday next*' (or *last*), but 'Next Monday,' 'last Monday' (without the preposition). 'On the *following Monday*' or 'On the *Monday following*' are both correct. *Page* (chapter, etc.) *three* is common for 'the third page' or 'page the third.'

379. Words in 'a-.'—There is a group of so-called adjectives, all compounded with the prefix *a-* (52), which are not true

[1] In this case the adjective *may* (less emphatically) come before the noun.

[2] A quotation from Milton.

[3] That is, the Peers and the Bishops.

adjectives, since they can be used only predicatively and cannot be placed as epithets before the noun.[1] Thus, we can say 'The boat is *adrift*,' but not 'The *adrift* boat'; and 'The man is *ashamed*,' but not 'The *ashamed* man.' Similarly with—

abroad	alive	afloat	aghast	afraid
amiss	alike	awry	awake	aware
aloof	asleep	akin	athirst	

But *above* (cf. 262), *adroit*, *alert*, though belonging to this class of words, may come before the noun. *Live* (short for *alive*) is placed only before the noun:—'a *live* lion,' but not 'the lion is *live*.'

380. Other Adjectives.—*Alone* is almost always placed after its noun; *lone* (short for *alone*) may come either before or after the noun. Thus we can say 'A *lone* widow,' but not 'An *alone* widow.' Compare the difference in meaning between—

(1) I *alone* did it = No one but me did it.
(2) I did it *alone*[2] = I did it without help.

Content (for *contented*), *well* (in good health), and *nigh* come after the noun only: 'A *content* mind,' 'a *well* man,' 'a *nigh* house' are incorrect. *Livelong* is used only before the noun:—'the livelong day'; not, 'the day is livelong.' *Gentle*, in the sense of noble, well-mannered, comes before rather than after the noun: as, 'a gentleman,' 'he is of gentle blood'; but in 'he is gentle,' *gentle* means mild, kind. *Sorry* has a different meaning according as it is used before or after the noun: thus, 'the fellow is sorry' means that he is *grieved*; but 'a sorry fellow' means a *contemptible* fellow.

NOTE.—A '*sad* fellow' means not one who is himself sad, but one who makes others sad to think of him. *Stout*, applied to a person, when not joined with another adjective (as in 'stout and strong'), usually means *fat*; and 'a stout man' = 'a fat man.' We also say 'he *stoutly* denied it,' for 'he vigorously denied it.'

381. Adjectival and Participial forms.—Sometimes one or both forms of the passive participle of a verb are used as

[1] Some of them can be placed *after* nouns to qualify them:—'There is something *amiss* with him'; 'His education *abroad* has improved him'; 'Man *alive*! what do you mean?' Cf. 262, *note*.

[2] 'Alone I did it' is the emphatic order.

adjectives and placed before the noun, while another form is used as a participle, or *vice versâ* :—

ADJECTIVAL FORM	PARTICIPIAL FORM
A *drunken* (not *drunk*) man	the man is *drunk* (not *drunken*)
Past (not *passed*) days	the days have *passed* (not *past*)
A *sunken* (not *sunk*) ship	the ship has *sunk* (not *sunken*)
A *shrunken* (not *shrunk*) limb	the limb has *shrunk* (not *shrunken*)
Roast (not *roasted*) meat	the meat is *roasted* (not *roast*)
Molten (or *melted*) lead	the lead is *melted* (not *molten*)
A *gilt* (not *gilded*) frame	the frame is *gilded* (or *gilt*)
Dread (or *dreaded*) thunder	the thunder is *dreaded* (not *dread*)
A *hidden* (not *hid*) meaning	the meaning is *hid* (or *hidden*)
A *lighted* (not *lit*) candle	the candle was *lit* (or *lighted*)
A *burnt* (not *burned*) child	the child is *burned* (or *burnt*)
Ill-*gotten* (not ill-*got*) gains	his gains are ill-*got* (or *gotten*)
A *bidden* (not *bid*) guest	the guest was *bid* (or *bidden*) to the feast
Mown (not *mowed*) grass	the grass is *mowed* (or *mown*)
Sown (not *sowed*) ground	the ground is *sowed* (or *sown*)
A *sewn* (not *sewed*) cloth	the cloth is *sewed* (or *sewn*)
A *stricken* (not *struck*) deer	the deer was *struck* (not *stricken*)
A *shorn* (not *sheared*) lamb	the lamb was *sheared* (or *shorn*)
Hewn (not *hewed*) stone	the stone is *hewed* (or *hewn*)
Forgotten (not *forgot*) promises	his promises are *forgot* (or *forgotten*)
A *graven* (not *graved*) image	the image is *graved* (or *graven*)

NOTE.—We speak of '*wrought* iron,' but we say that mines are *worked*.

382. Participial forms in Metaphor.—Sometimes one form of the passive participle is used in metaphorical phraseology to the exclusion of the other :—

The mansion is *shorn* of its splendours (not *sheared*).
He is *laden* with guilt (not *laded* or *loaded*).[1]
These truths are *graven* on my memory (not *graved*).
My flesh has often *creeped* (not *crept*) to hear him talk.
Conscience-*stricken*, heart-*stricken*, poverty-*stricken*, etc. (not *struck*; but, moon*struck*, thunder*struck*, etc.).
Well-*stricken* in years (not *struck*).
His enemies are *clothed* with shame (not *clad*).[2]
He is *girt* about with foes (not *girded*).
He is *bereft* of all hope (not *bereaved*).
Close-*knit*[3] friendship (not *knitted*).
The *gilded* mountain-tops (not *gilt*).
The news is *fraught* with joy (not *freighted*).
Day had *broke* (not *broken*).
Our *bounden* (not *bound*) duty.

NOTE.—*Rough-shod*, when used literally, is a participle: 'a *rough-shod* horse': but when used metaphorically, it is an adverb: 'to ride *rough-shod* over (ill-treat, crush) one's feelings.' *Broad-cast* is generally used

[1] But we can say, 'His memory is *loaded* with facts.'

[2] But 'A vine-*clad* hill' is right.

[3] So: 'Firmly *knit* (strong and sinewy) was Malcolm Græme.'—*Scott.*

metaphorically and adverbially: 'errors are sown *broad-cast* (thickly) over his pages.' We say 'with colours flying,' when we wish to speak literally: 'The army marched *with colours flying*.' When we speak figuratively, we say 'with flying colours': 'He came off *with flying colours*'=he was triumphantly successful.

383. Participial forms in Phrases.—In some instances one participial form has come to be appropriated to certain phrases to the exclusion of the other:—

To go down on one's *bended* knees (not *bent*).
To be one's *bounden* duty (not *bound*).
The biter *bit* (not *bitten*).
To show the *cloven* foot (not *cleft*).
The ship was *hove* to (not *heaved*).
I am dead *beat* (not *beaten*).
I am much *beholden* (under obligation) to you (not *beheld*).
A *loaded* gun, cannon, etc. (not *laden*).

NOTE.—In 'a *moot* point' (a point for mooting or discussing), *moot* is a noun. *Agéd* (dissyllable) means 'old,' as 'An *agéd* man'; *aged* (monosyllable) means 'showing signs of old age,' as 'He has *aged* very much since I last saw him.'

ADJECTIVES USED AS NOUNS.

384. There are many instances in English of Adjectives which have come to be used as Nouns,[1] the nouns that belonged to them being suppressed, usually for the sake of brevity: and often their conversion into substantives is so complete that they form plurals and possessives. Thus we have *a noble* and *nobles* instead of *nobleman* and *noblemen*; and *eatables* and *drinkables*, instead of *eatable things* and *drinkable things*. But it must be remembered that these noun-adjectives are *limited in number*, and that we cannot take any adjective and use it as a noun. If a person is described as unfit for a post, we must not speak of him as an *unfit*, or say that he belongs to the class of the *unfits*; though the *incapables* would be correct.[2] Such adjectives may be classified as follows:—

385. (1) **The notion of 'person generally'** is understood with—the *ancients*, the *moderns*, the *Commons*, the *Notables*, a *divine* (a clergyman) and *divines*, a *prodigal* and *prodigals*, an *unfortunate* and *unfortunates*, a *native* and *natives*, a *dear* and *dears*, a *mortal* and *mortals*, a *worthy* and *worthies*, a *sage* and *sages*, a *juvenile* and

[1] For the use of adjectives for their corresponding abstract nouns, as *sad* for *sadness*, see **730**, (α); cf. also **154**.

[2] We can say a coat is a good *fit*, *i.e.* well-fitting. We have also the noun *misfit*.

juveniles, an *innocent* and *innocents*, a *criminal* and *criminals*, a *rough* and *roughs*, a *lunatic* and *lunatics*, a *deaf-mute* and *deaf-mutes* (63, *note*), a *white* and *whites*, a *black* and *blacks*, a *detective* and *detectives*, a *fugitive* and *fugitives*, a *savage* and *savages*, a *brave* and *braves*, an *alien* and *aliens*, an *Oriental* and *Orientals*, an *official* and *officials*, a *stalwart* and *stalwarts*, an *individual* and *individuals*, *irreconcilables*, *inseparables*, *invincibles*:—

The Old Testament *worthies* = the worthy men or heroes of Old Testament history.
A mean *white* = a low-class white man; a loafer.
He is a *stalwart* = a thorough-going political partisan.
The slaughter of the *Innocents* = of the Jewish children by Herod.
The two sisters were *inseparables* = they were always together.

A similar use is that of adjectives denoting equality, superiority, and inferiority, and of other adjectives in the comparative degree, preceded by the possessive pronoun:—

I never saw *his like* = anyone like him.
Make room for *your betters* = those better than you.

Similarly we have—one's *equal* and *equals*, one's *superior* and *superiors*, one's *inferior* and *inferiors*, one's *elder* and *elders*, one's *senior* and *seniors*, one's *junior* and *juniors*, a *minor* and *minors*.

NOTE.—National and sect or party names are adjectives used as nouns:—an *Italian* and *Italians*, a *Hindu* and *Hindus*, a *Christian* and *Christians*, a *Jacobite* and *Jacobites*. But names that end in a sibilant are not so used:—a *Dutchman* and *Dutchmen* (not a *Dutch* and *Dutches*), an *Englishman* and *Englishmen*. (But *Dutch*, *English*, etc., without an article, are used for the Dutch and the English *languages*, as 'I learn *English*.')

386. (2) **The notion of 'thing generally'** is understood with—a *secret* and *secrets*, a *due* and *dues*, *good* (benefit) and *goods* (property), an *explosive* and *explosives*, a *missile* and *missiles*, an *extra* and *extras*, a *sweet* (sweetmeat) and *sweets*, a *liquid* and *liquids*, a *solid* and *solids*, a *fluid* and *fluids*, an *acid* and *acids*, a *cordial* and *cordials*, an *opposite* and *opposites*, an *antique* and *antiques*, an *equal* and *equals*, a *whole* and *wholes*, *bitters*, *bygones*, *necessaries*, *essentials*, *particulars*, *combustibles*, *valuables*, *moveables*, *breakables*, *disagreeables*, etc., *contraries* (and *the contrary*), *odds*:—

The *sweets* and the *bitters* of life = the sweet and the bitter things (or events) of life.
If *equals* be added to *equals*, the *wholes* are equal = equal or whole things or quantities.
To give the devil his *due* = to treat even the worst person justly.
I never saw the *like* of it = I never saw anything like it.
Let *bygones* be *bygones* = let us forget past annoyances.
Dreams go by *contraries* = dreams are in inverse relation to events (a bad dream indicates a good event, and *vice versâ*).

387. (3) **The notion of a particular person or thing** is understood with—

A *general* (and *generals*) = a general officer in the army.
A *major* (and *majors*) = a major officer in the army.
A *private* (and *privates*) = a private soldier.
A *pink* (and *pinks*) = a species of pink flower.
An *empty* (and *empties*) = an empty receptacle for goods.
A *monthly* (and *monthlies*) = a monthly magazine.
A *fortnightly* (and *fortnightlies*) = a fortnightly magazine or newspaper.
A *weekly* (and *weeklies*) = a weekly magazine or newspaper.
A *daily* (and *dailies*) = a daily newspaper.
A *mute* (and *mutes*) = a hired mourner at a funeral, *or* a mute letter.
A *familiar* (and *familiars*) = a familiar spirit, an attendant demon.
A *capital* (and *capitals*) = a capital town.
An *ironclad* (and *ironclads*) = an ironclad ship.
An *obituary* (and *obituaries*) = an obituary notice.
An *initial* (and *initials*) = an initial letter.
A *tributary* (and *tributaries*) = a tributary stream.
A *total* (and *totals*) = a sum total.
A *brilliant* (and *brilliants*) = a diamond.
A *Political* (and *Politicals*) = a Political officer.
A *uniform* (and *uniforms*) = a uniform dress.
Incidentals = incidental expenses.
Canonicals = ecclesiastical dress.
Credentials = documentary guarantees.
Greens = green vegetables.
Simples = medicinal herbs.
The *Reds* = the Red (flag) Republicans in France.
The Territorials = the Territorial forces.
On the *right* and on the *left* = on the right hand side and on the left hand side.
Rights and *lefts* = shoes for the right and the left foot. So of gloves.
A penny *dreadful* = a penny newspaper full of dreadful tales.
To go on all *fours* = on hands and feet (*or* knees).
A *four* (and *fours*) = a four-oared boat.
A coach and *four* = a coach drawn by four horses.
He was driving two *greys* = two grey horses.
To go from *bad* to *worse* = to go from a bad state of things to a worse state of things.
To put down a thing in *black* and *white* = to write a thing down with black ink on white paper; to make a formal written statement.
Two angels in *white* = in white clothes.
To be in *black* = to wear black clothes for mourning.
The *long* and *short* of a matter = the sum and substance of a matter.
To give a *loose* to one's appetite = to give a loose rein to one's appetite; to indulge it without restraint.
To go out in the *wet* = to go out in the wet weather.

NOTE.—(*a*) The words *panic* (a panic fear), *shoal* (shoal water), though properly adjectives, are now used chiefly as substantives. (*b*) Some grammatical terms are instances of adjectives used as nouns:—a *genitive* and *genitives*, a *plural* and *plurals*, a *passive* and *passives*, a *dental* and *dentals*, a *liquid* and *liquids*, etc.

388. (4) **The notion of 'part,' 'portion,' or 'region'** is understood with—*vitals, intestines, posteriors,* one's *right* and *rights,* a *green* and *greens* (as in 'a bowling-*green*'), a *common* and *commons* (as in 'the village *common*'), *the middle, wilds* (as in 'the *wilds* of America'), *levels* (=a plain). Examples:—

The *thick* (the thick or crowded part) of the fray. The *small* of the back. The *interior* of a house. The *white* of an egg. The *whites* of the eyes. The *best* of it[1] is that, etc.=the most interesting or noticeable feature of the business is that, etc. To prepare for the *worst* (event). Stung to the *quick* (the most vital or sensitive part)=deeply affected. The *fat* and the *lean* (parts of meat). To live on the *fat* of the land (on its richest products; in plenty). O'er *rough* and *smooth* she trips along (Wordsworth). To dash through *thick* and *thin* (Cowper). In the *open* (country). To come into the *open* (to disclose one's views or intentions).

389. (5) **The following adverbial phrases** may be classified together:—

(*a*) *Measure, degree, rate* is understood with—*in full, at full, to the full, at the full, to the utmost, in the main, in general, not at all, at best, at worst.*

(*b*) *Way, manner* is understood with—*in vain, in short, in brief, in public, in secret, out of the common, in common, in earnest.*

(*c*) *Time* is understood with—*in a little, before long, to the last, at latest, at soonest, of old, in future, at present, for the present, once for all.*

(*d*) *State, condition* is understood with—*in the dark, in the open* (out of doors), *for the best, in the ascendant, at large, on high.*[2]

ELLIPTICAL SENTENCES.

390. Sometimes sentences or phrases are elliptical—that is, they require that some additional word or words, omitted for the sake of conciseness, should be supplied to make the construction formally complete:—

1. Sink or swim=*whether one* sink or swim (fail or succeed).
2. Waste not, want not=*if you do* not waste, *you will* not want.
3. Thank you=*I* thank you. Well done!=*it is* well done.
4. No sooner said than done=*it is* no sooner said than *it is* done.
5. Practice makes perfect=practice makes *one* perfect.
6. He recovered, owing to[3] his strong constitution=he recovered, owing *his recovery* to his strong constitution.
7. I am safe, thanks to[3] you=I am safe, thanks (for my safety) *being due* to you.

[1] But 'To have the *best* of it' (and 'To get the *better* of a person') means 'to gain the advantage.'

[2] Cf. Walford: 'When the room was at its *fullest* (state) and *noisiest* (state)'; and Tennyson: 'Black velvet of the *costliest* (kind).'

[3] *Owing to* and *thanks to* may be regarded as prepositional phrases equivalent to 'because of.' Cf. 269.

8. I did it, no matter how = I did it, *it is* no matter *for enquiry* (*or*, it does not matter) how.

9. Come at once, please = come at once, *if you* please (but 'Please to come at once' = *may it* please *you* to come at once).

10. Briefly, he has lost his post = *to put the matter* briefly, he has lost his post.

11. The moment I saw it, I fired = *at* the moment *at which* I saw it, I fired.

12. So much for his debts; now for his assets = so much *has been said* for (*i.e.* in regard to) his debts; now *something must be said* for his assets.

13. To let well alone = to let *that which is* well alone.

14. The weather is as hot as hot can be = the weather is as hot as *it* can be hot.

15. His hour (*or* time) was come = his hour *of death—of suffering—of effort*—was come.

16. This coin will pass current here = this coin will pass *as being* current here.

17. He laid about him with a stick = he laid *blows* about him with a stick.

18. To see fair play (*also* To see fair) = to see *that* play *is* fair.

19. He is ill, and no wonder, since, etc. = he is ill, and *there is* no (cause for) wonder *at it*, since, etc.

20. No wonder you are ill = *there is* no (cause for) wonder *that* you are ill.

21. You may take it and welcome = you may take it and *be* welcome *to it*.

22. To act like one possessed = to act like one possessed *by evil spirits*.

23. One more goodbye, and we must part = one more goodbye *must be said*, and *then* we must part (*i.e.* after one more goodbye we must part).

24. One more effort, and you will succeed = one more effort *must be made* and *then* you will succeed (*i.e.* if you make one more effort, you will succeed).

25. He was so kind as to ask me to dinner = he was so (*i.e.* to such an extent) kind as *one would be kind* to ask (*i.e.* in asking) me to dinner.

26. I am not so foolish as to believe that = I am not so foolish as *I should be foolish* to believe (*i.e.* for believing) that.

27. He acted as if he were mad = he acted as *he would act* if he were mad.

28. He acted as though he were mad = he acted as *he would not act* though he were mad (*i.e.* he acted worse than a madman).

29. He acted as though he were the father of his country = he acted as *he would not act* though he were the father of his country (*i.e.* he acted better than the father of his country).

30. He regarded me as his enemy = he regarded me as *he would regard* his enemy.

31. Come as soon as possible = come as soon as *may be* possible.

32. I worked hard so as to get home early = I worked hard so (*i.e.* in such a way) as *I should work* (in order) to get home early.

33. This method has been tried and found wanting = this method has been tried and found *to be* wanting.

34. He thought fit (*or* proper) to refuse my offer = he thought *it to be* fit to refuse my offer.

35. To be up and doing = to be *standing* up and doing *work*.

36. Time out of mind I have told you this = *at* time *now* out of mind (*i.e.* at times too numerous to remember) I have told you this.

37. I can make no use whatever of this = I can make no use, whatever *it may be*, of this.

38. A Douglas thou, and shun to wreathe the victor's brow?=*Art* thou a Douglas, and (yet) *dost thou* shun, etc.?

39. I make bold to differ from you=I make *myself* bold *enough* (*i.e.* I venture) to differ from you.

40. I shall return in an hour, if not sooner=I shall return in an hour, if *I do* not *return* sooner.

41. He more than smiled, he laughed outright=he *did something* more than smile, he laughed outright.

42. I am more than surprised at your conduct=I am more than surprised, *I am astonished* at your conduct.

43. Not but he acted for the best=*I do not say* but *that* he acted for the best.

44. He had the impudence to refuse=he had the impudence *sufficient* to refuse (*i.e.* for refusing).

45. He gave me of his best=he gave me *some* of his best *things*.

391. Often the omitted word is an adjective, which is easily supplied from the context:—

1. A man of family, birth, breeding, position, etc.=a man of *good* family, birth, breeding, position, etc.

2. A man of principle=a man of *good* principle.

3. A person of quality=a person of *high* quality.

4. Women of condition=women of *high* condition.

5. To shout at the pitch of one's voice=to shout at the *highest* pitch of one's voice.

6. He is stupid to a degree=he is stupid to an *indefinitely great* degree.

7. This is just the thing=this is just the *right* thing, the only proper thing.

8. I was in time for the meeting=I was in *sufficient* time for the meeting.

9. The train is behind time=the train is behind *its due* time.

10. That remark is out of place=that remark is out of the *right* place.

11. He gave himself airs=he gave himself *conceited* airs.

12. He made a figure on the occasion=he made a *fine* figure on the occasion.

13. I came of age yesterday=I came of (legally) *full* age yesterday.

14. To call one names=to call one *ill* names.

15. To be in a temper=to be in a *bad* temper.

16. Out of temper=out of *good* temper.

17. I lost my train, as luck would have it=I lost my train, as *ill* luck would have it.

18. Valour and conduct=valour and *good* conduct.

CHAPTER VII.

WORDS FOLLOWED BY PREPOSITIONS.

392. Many Nouns, Adjectives, Verbs, and Participles in English take particular prepositions after them. In a few instances, more than one preposition may be admissible: thus we can speak of a river as *abounding in* fish or *abounding with* fish; or a person may be said to be *careless of* or *careless about* the consequences of his actions. As a general rule, however, only one preposition can follow a particular word used in a particular sense; and it is wrong to say 'I am *ashamed for* your conduct' instead of 'I am *ashamed of* your conduct'; or 'in *respect for* these matters' instead of 'in *respect of* these matters,' though 'I have a great *respect for* your opinion' is correct.

393. Infinitive wrongly introduced.—The use of the Infinitive after this class of words, in place of a preposition followed by a Verbal Noun, is a common error. Thus 'He was prevented *to go*' is wrong for 'He was prevented *from going*'[1]; and 'He was successful *to gain* the prize' is wrong for 'He was successful *in gaining* the prize'; and 'They go *to hunt* in winter' is unidiomatic for 'They go *hunting*.' Sometimes either construction is admissible: thus 'he was accustomed *to take* long walks' is equally correct with 'he was accustomed *to taking* long walks'; and 'I am afraid *to speak* on that topic' with 'I am afraid *of speaking* on that topic.' Examples:—

INCORRECT	CORRECT
Hindered *to come*	hindered *from coming*
Prohibited *to go*	prohibited *from going*
Debarred *to compete*	debarred *from competing*
Precluded *to apply*	precluded *from applying*

[1] We can say 'I prevented *him from going*,' or 'I prevented *his going*,' but not 'I prevented *him to go*.'

INCORRECT	CORRECT
Discouraged *to proceed*	discouraged *from proceeding*
Resigned *to submit*	resigned *to submitting*
Assisted *to do*	assisted *in doing*
A chance *to succeed*	a chance *of succeeding*
Fearful *to fail*	fearful *of failing*
Confident *to prevail*	confident *of prevailing*
Bent *to come*	bent *on coming*[1]
Intent *to win*	intent *on winning*
Negligent *to pay*	negligent *in paying*
Am I correct *to think* this?	am I correct *in thinking* this?
You are right *to believe* this	you are right *in believing* this[2]
I am fortunate *to have* a son	I am fortunate *in having* a son[3]
I think *to take* a walk	I think *of taking* a walk
He despaired *to pass*	he despaired *of passing*
He refrained *to speak*	he refrained *from speaking*
He desisted *to talk*	he desisted *from talking*
He persisted *to refuse*	he persisted *in refusing*
He insisted *me to come*	he insisted *on my coming*
He dissuaded me *to go*	he dissuaded me *from going*
He finished *to read*	he finished *reading*
He excelled *to paint*	he excelled *in painting*
He repented *to speak*	he repented *of speaking*
He meditated *to resign*	he meditated *resigning*
He took a pride *to do* it	he took a pride *in doing* it
He persevered *to go*	he persevered *in going*
Fondness *to read*	fondness *for reading*
A passion *to gamble*	a passion *for gambling*
An excuse *to be* late	an excuse *for being* late
A pretext *to stay*	a pretext *for staying*

NOTE.—We say 'He had the kindness *to ask* me,' but 'I thanked him for his kindness *in asking* me.' We have both 'I intend *to call*' and 'I intend *calling*.' We hesitate *to accept*, not *at accepting*.

394. Prepositions confused.—The following prepositions are liable to be confused :—

(1) *In—into.* We speak of—'falling *in* love,' 'coming *in* sight,' 'taking *in* hand,' 'revelling *in* mischief,' 'being immersed *in* pleasure,' 'steeped *in* misery,' 'dipped *in* water,' 'bathed *in* blood,' 'dissolved *in* tears' (but 'melted *to* tears'), 'cut *in* two (and *in* or *to* pieces),' 'divided *in* half,' 'engaged *in* business,' 'immured *in* prison,' 'sunk *in* depression,' 'put *in* danger,' 'entangled *in* a scheme,' 'implicated *in* a crime,' 'involved *in* a difficulty,' 'enlisted *in* the army,' 'merged *in* a total.' But we speak of—'falling *into* a passion,' 'bursting *into* tears' (but 'to burst *out* crying'), 'coming

[1] But we may be *determined to come* or *on coming*; we may be *resolved to speak* or *on speaking*; we may *decide to go* or *on going*.

[2] But 'It is right *to believe* this' is correct, where *to believe* is a simple infinitive.

[3] But we say 'He was the first *to go*,' not '*in going*.'

into the mind,' 'coming *into* a person's presence,' 'taking *into* consideration,' 'relapsing *into* poverty,' 'penetrating *into* a secret,' 'prying *into* a matter,' 'sinking *into* insignificance,' 'plunged *into* debt,' 'inveigled *into* a plan,' 'introduced *into* society,' 'imported *into* a country.'

NOTE.—We say 'A story founded *on* fact,' 'An argument founded *on* reason'; but 'This has no foundation *in* reason,' not *of* or *on* reason. Also 'This matter was brought *to* (not *into*) light'; 'I cannot call *to* (not *into*) mind his name'; 'I will take the business *in* (not *into*) hand'; 'This is sad *in* (not *to*) the extreme'; 'The mangoes *on* (not *in*) this tree are ripe'; 'The sum devoted *to* (not *in*) the purpose.' We can 'throw dust *in* (rarely *into*) a person's eyes,' *i.e.* deceive or confuse him; we can 'come *in* or *into* contact with one,' but we 'come *into* (not *in*) collision with him.'

(2) *Upon, on—over.* The preposition *upon* (or *on*) follows the verbs *congratulate, determine, dilate, descant, speculate, calculate, discourse, expatiate, reflect, ruminate, encroach, enjoin, enlarge, doat, hinge, dawn.* We say 'He *meditated upon* (considered) the shortness of life,' but 'He *meditated* (purposed or planned) revenge.' To *seize upon* is more emphatic than to *seize.* *Over* follows *muse, ponder,* and such verbs as *rule, domineer, exult, triumph, tyrannize, preside,* and such nouns as *predominance, precedence, rule, control.* We say 'a great improvement *upon* (not *over*) last term's work.'

NOTE.—*Influence* (noun) may be followed by *upon* and *with* as well as by *over* (see p. 191). We say 'Your advice had no effect *upon* (not *to* or *over*) him'; 'He is *pre-eminent above* (not *over*) all the rest.' We are *revenged* or *revenge ourselves on* our enemies. A person may *fall on* the ground *on* his head.

(3) *By—with.* When *by* and *with* are used in the same sentence to denote causality, *by* marks the *agent* and *with* the *instrument* of the action :—

Abel was killed *by* Cain *with* a stone.
The tiger was shot *by* the sportsman *with* a rifle.
He was punished *by* the magistrate *with* a fine.

NOTE.—We say 'The man was struck *by* (not *with*) lightning,' 'He made a fortune *by* (not *with*) his own exertions,' 'He perished—*by* the sword, *by* his own hand, *by* poison,' 'The engines are worked *by* steam,' 'A cart drawn *by* four horses,' 'The town was destroyed *by* fire.'

395. Prepositions inserted or omitted. Prepositions (or prepositions used as adverbs) are sometimes wrongly (1) inserted or (2) omitted after words of this class.

(1) We do not *assist to* a person, but *assist* him; we do not *benefit to* a person, but *benefit* him; we do not *sign to* a deed, but

sign it; we do not *husband out* (adv.) resources, but *husband* them; we do not *purge* a thing *out* of its impurities, but *of* them; we do not *open out* (adv.) a school, but *open* it; a thing does not *give out* (adv.) a good result, but *gives* it; a decree is not *issued out* (adv.), but *issued*; we do not *violate against* a rule, but *violate* it; we do not *examine* or *investigate into* a matter, but *examine* or *investigate* it; we do not *contemplate upon* a landscape, but *contemplate* it; we do not *superintend over* a business, but *superintend* it; we do not *ascend on* (or *up*) a hill, but *ascend* it; we do not *catch up* a speaker's words, but *catch* (= hear) them; we do not *skip over* a chapter, but *skip* it; a thing does not *answer to* our purpose, but *answers* it; we do not *confuse up* things, but *confuse* them; we do not *criticise upon* an action, but *criticise* it; a feeling does not *pervade through* our mind, but *pervades* it; we do not *recommend for* a person, but *recommend* him; we do not *resign from* a post, but *resign* it; we are not *spent up* (adv.), but *spent* with toil; an ape does not *resemble to* a man, but *resembles* him.

NOTE.—Both *share* and *share in*, *repent* and *repent of*, *approve* and *approve of*, *request* and *request of*, *consign* and *consign over* (adv.), *follow* and *follow after*, *seek* and *seek for* are found; but the prepositions are mostly redundant.

(2) We do not *dispense* a person's services, but *dispense with* them; we do not *prevail* a person, but *prevail with* or *upon* or *over* him; we do not *tyrannise* a person, but *tyrannize over* him; we do not *encroach* a person's leisure, but *encroach upon* it; we do not *drive* our enemies, but *drive* them *out* (adv.); we do not *muse* a matter, but *muse over* it; we do not *boast*[1] our talents, but *boast of* them; we should not *beware*[1] dogs, but should *beware of* them. Similarly we are *aware of* a fact, *partake of* a meal, *acquiesce in* an opinion, *believe in* God, *confess to* a suspicion, *enquire for* a friend or *about* his health, *despair of* success, *resort to* a plan, *refer to* a matter, *proceed with* a business, *comply with* a demand, or say that an action *admits of* no excuse.

NOTE.—We *compensate* a loss, but *compensate* a person *for* a loss. We *meet* a person, but *meet with* an accident. 'Do not think it' means 'do not think so,' but 'to *think of* a thing' means to call it to mind. We *combat* an argument, but *combat with* a person. We *inform*, *apprize*, *assure*, *remind*; *convince*, *suspect*, *accuse*, *convict*; *deprive*, *cheat*, *balk*, *defraud*, *beguile*, *cure*, etc., persons *of* things: we *ask*, *demand*, *require*, *beg*, *crave*, *buy*, etc., things *of* or *from* persons. We do not rob money *from* a person, but rob him *of* it. We do not *scrape* money, but *scrape* it *together*. We can *lament* a loss or *lament for* it.

[1] Except in poetry: '*Boast* no more (of) your mighty deeds' (*Shirley*); '*Beware* (of) the pine tree's withered branch' (*Longfellow*). Cf. 731.

396. Corresponding words with different Prepositions.—As a general rule, the same preposition follows words that are related to each other; as participle and noun, or adjective and noun in—

I am *acquainted with* him.	I am *ignorant of* his intention.
My *acquaintance with* him.	My *ignorance of* his intention.

It is the same with *anxious for—anxiety for, dependent on—dependence on, apprehensive of—apprehension of, fit for—fitness for, jealous of—jealousy of, exempt from—exemption from,* and many others. But not a few of such related words take different prepositions after them:—

I *sympathise with* you.	I am *satisfied with* your conduct.
I feel much *sympathy for* you.	I feel great *satisfaction in* (or *at*) your conduct.
I *solicited* him *for* his help.	*Preparatory to* departure.
I am *solicitous of* his help.	*Preparation for* departure.
He is *descended from* the king.	*Proud of* his children.
He is a *descendant of* the king.	*Pride in* his children.
Regardful of his interests.	I am *hopeful of* success.
Regard for his interests.	I *hope for* success.
Fond of money.	*Delighted with* him.
Fondness for money.	*Delight in* him.
Pursuant to his wishes.	*Ashamed of* him.
In *pursuance of* his wishes.	*Shame at* his conduct.
According to your advice.	I went in *search of* him.
In *accordance with* your advice.	I went to *search for* him.

Similarly we say *capable of* but *capacity for, desirous of* but *desire* (noun) *for*,[1] *prejudicial to* but *prejudice* (noun and verb) *against, partial to* but *partiality for, derogate from* but *derogatory to, except* (trans. verb) *from* but *exception to, result* (verb) *from* but *result* (noun) *of, ambitious of* but *ambition for, confident of* but *confidence in, respectful to* but *respect for, alien to* but *alienation* (and *alienate*) *from, angry with* a person but *angry at* a thing, *envious of* but *envy at, affectionate to* or *towards* but *affection for, conform to* but *conformity with* (or *to*), *aspire to* (or *after*) but *aspiration after, need of* (or *for*) but *needful for, agree with* (or *to*) but *agreeable to, wanting in* but *want of.*

397. Corresponding forms with different Prepositions.—In some instances, words that differ but slightly in form from each other, and which might be expected to take the same prepositions

[1] We say 'his desire *for* wealth,' but 'I have a great desire *to see* (not *for seeing*) you.

after them, are followed by different prepositions. Thus we say 'he is *dependent on* your aid,' but 'he is *independent of* your aid'; '*regard for* appearances,' but '*disregard of* appearances.' Similarly we say—

I have a *dislike to* him	*but*	I have a *liking for* him.
I am *sensible of* pain	,,	I am *insensible to* pain.
He is *equal to* me	,,	he is *co-equal with* me.
He is *qualified to compete*	,,	he is *disqualified from competing.*
He *encouraged* me *to proceed*	,,	he *discouraged* me *from proceeding.*
My *trust in* you is great	,,	my *distrust of* you is great.
This is *contrary to* that	,,	this is *contrasted with* that.
Subsequent to his departure	,,	*consequent upon* his departure.
I am *different from* you	,,	he is *indifferent to* my entreaties.
He is *neglectful of* his business	,,	He is *negligent in* his business.

398. The same words with different Prepositions.—As has been seen already, there are some words of this class which can be followed by more than one preposition. In such instances, a difference of preposition generally carries with it a difference in usage or in meaning. Thus, in ordinary usage, we are vexed *with a person* and vexed *at an event*; it is the same with *angry, disgusted, displeased, enraged, annoyed, offended, exasperated, delighted.* Similarly we are *irritated, provoked, excited, affected*, etc., *by* persons, *at* events. Compare the following:—

You had the *advantage of* me. You gained an *advantage over* me.	This is the *subject of* inquiry. This is a *subject for* inquiry.
I *waited upon* him at his office. I *waited for* him two hours.	You are *disqualified from* competing. You are *disqualified for* the post.
He *prevailed upon* me to consent. He *prevailed over* me in the dispute. No argument *prevailed with* him.	You are *liable for* damages. You are *liable to* a fine.
I *agree with* you. I *agree to* your proposal.	I *concur with* you. I *concur in* your decision.
I *commence by* remarking. I *commence with* the remark.	The statesman *deals with* politics. The grocer *deals in* tea.
I *attended upon* his leisure. I *attended to* his commands.	He *lent* money *at* high interest. He *lent* money *on* good security.
He was *invested with* the crown. His money is *invested in* the funds.	We are *responsible to* God. We are *responsible for* our actions.
I am *afflicted with* fever. I am *afflicted at* your failure.	I *charge* my failure *to* or *upon* you. I *charge* you *with* my failure.
I *blush for* you. I *blush at* your misconduct.	His face is *familiar to* me. I am *familiar with* his face.
What is the *cause*[1] *of* this delay? Is there any *cause for* this delay?	Let us *proceed to* business. Let us *proceed with* the business.

[1] So with *reason, occasion, ground*, etc.; but *pretext* is followed by *for* only.

He is the *slave* (or *victim*) *of* his passions.
He is a *slave* (or *victim*) *to* his passions.

He is *possessed of* (=master of) property.
He is *possessed with* (=mastered by) an idea.

I *differ with* you on that question.
I *differ from* you in disposition.

To *compare* great things *with* small.
Ovid *compares* anger *to* madness.

Saul was *converted to* Christianity.
His sorrow was *converted into* joy.

I am *tired of* doing nothing, and wish to change.
I am *tired with* my exertions, and wish to rest.

What is the *use*[1] *of* asking?
There is no *use in* asking.
I have no *use for* this.

He made *war upon* luxury.
He waged *war with* witchcraft.

This treatment was not *expected from* you.
It is not *expected of* us to know Greek.

I have done my *duty by* him.
I have done my *duty in* this matter

Think over (or *on*) what I have said.
Think of me when I am gone.

He is *destined for* the Bar.
I am *destined to* failure.

He was *disappointed of* the prize.
I am *disappointed in* you.

I demand *vengeance upon* him.
I demand *vengeance for* his deeds.

God will *provide for* our wants.
We must *provide against* this risk.

Communicate with him on this.
Communicate this *to* him.

I am not *concerned in* the transaction.
I am much *concerned at* his losses.

I *except* you *from* blame.
I *except to*[2] your testimony.

He *parted with* his property.
He *parted from* his family.

I am *reconciled with* my brother.
I am *reconciled to* his marriage.

The victory was *credited to* Nelson.
Nelson was *credited with* the victory.

NOTE.—Cf. 'I *charged him with* (=accused him of) *taking* my book,' and '*I charged* (=commanded) *him to take* my book.' Observe that 'in respect of' means 'in point of,' while 'with respect to' means 'concerning,' as: '*With respect to* the question of precedence, I am his superior *in respect of* birth.' Compare 'He *witnessed* (=saw) the assault' with 'He *witnessed to* (=gave evidence about) the assault.'

399. Analogy misleading.—In dealing with these words, we cannot always rely upon the guidance of analogy. We *consent to* or *agree to* a demand, but we do not therefore *comply to* or *acquiesce to* a demand; we *comply with* and *acquiesce in* it. Compare the following :—

He is *short of* money.
He is *deficient in* politeness.

I am *alarmed at* your rashness.
I am *afraid of* your rashness.

I was *amused at* his proceedings.
I was *interested in* his proceedings.

He is *eager for* renown.
He is *covetous* (or *desirous*) *of* gain.

I am *inured to* misfortune.
I am *hardened against* misfortune.

He *pretends to* great accuracy.
He *aims at* great accuracy.

This is *foreign to* the purpose.
This is *remote from* my intention.

He is *free from* fever.
He is *rid of* fever.

[1] *Necessity* takes *for* only; *need* takes *of* or *for* indifferently.
[2] More commonly, 'I take exception to.'

His pay is not *adequate to* his needs.
His pay is not *sufficient for* his needs.

In *proportion to* his powers.
In *excess of* his powers.

They had a *design upon* his life.
They laid a *plot against* his life.

Be *attentive to* his wishes.
Be *observant of* his wishes.

He *despaired of* victory.
He *hoped for* victory.

He *helped* me *to do* this.
He *assisted* me *in doing* this.

I am *absorbed in* my work.
I am *taken up with* my work.

He is *poor in* clothing.
He is *destitute of* clothing.

He is *rich in* good works.
He is *lavish of* praise.

He is *diligent in* his business.
He is *careful of* his money.

This ruler is *dear to* his subjects.
This ruler is *popular with* his subjects.

I am *acquainted with* him.
I am *known to* him.

He *gave* the book *to* me.
He *bestowed* the book *on* me.

He *gave way to* me.
He *made way for* me.

This habit is *characteristic of* foreigners.
This habit is *peculiar to* foreigners.

He is *extravagant in* his compliments.
He is *prodigal of* his compliments.

I am *maimed in* my knee.
I am *lame of* one leg.

He is *remiss in* his payments.
He is *careless of* his expenditure.

The speech was *replete with* wit.
The speech was *full of* wit.

You are *wanting in* firmness.
You are *devoid of* firmness.

This farm is *fertile* (or *fruitful*) *in* corn.
This soil is *productive of* corn.

In *proportion to* his powers.
In *excess of* his powers.

Power *joined to* (or *with*) wealth.
Power *combined with* wealth.

400. List of words with their appropriate Prepositions.

[This list is inserted here on account of the importance and difficulty of the subject. The use of wrong prepositions after words is an error into which English writers and speakers often fall, and to which the Indian student is particularly prone. He should commit all the examples to memory, and should be given frequent exercises to test his knowledge of the subject.]

Abhorrence *of* gambling.
Abhorrent *to* the feelings.
Abide *by* a decision.
with a person.
Abound *in*, *with* – flowers, wealth.
Absent *from* school.
Absolved *from* guilt.
Absorbed *in* a novel.
Abstain *from* food.
Accede *to* a request.
Acceptable *to* a person.
Accessible *to* bribes.
Accessory *to* a crime.
Accommodate (adapt) oneself *to* circumstances.
(furnish) one *with* money.
Accompanied *by* a friend.
with delirium.
Accord (grant) *to* a person.
(agree) *with* truth.
Accordance *with* an order.
According *to* an order.
Account (verb) *for* the expenditure.
Accountable *to* God *for* one's actions.
Accrue *to* one *from* a source.
Accused *of* a crime.
Accustomed *to* riding.
Acquainted *with* a person or thing.
Acquiesce *in* a decision.
Acquitted *of* blame.
Adapted *to* one's ability.
for a purpose.
Add this *to* that.

Addicted *to* gambling.
Adequate *to* a want.
Adjacent *to* a house.
Admit *of* excuse.
Admitted *into* a house.
to the Bar.
Admonish one *for*—one's faults.
Adorned *with* jewels.
Adroit *in*, *at*—argument.
Advance *upon*, *against*—the foe.
Advantage *over*, *of* (with *get* or *have*) —a person.
Advantageous *to* him.
Adverse *to* one's wishes.
Advert *to* a topic.
Advised *of* a matter.
Affection *for* a person.
Affectionate *to* a person.
Affixed *to* the paper.
Afflicted *with* lameness.
Afraid *of* punishment.
Agree *with* a person.
in his opinion.
to a proposal.
upon a policy.
Agreeable *to* one's wishes.
Aim (verb and noun) *at* a mark.
Akin *to* a person or thing.
Alarmed *at* a rumour.
Alien *to* the matter.[1]
Alienated *from* a friend.
Alight *from* a carriage.
on the ground.
Alive *to* the danger.
Alliance *with* a person.
Allied *with* a person.
to a thing.
Allotted *to* a person.
Allowable *for* a person.
Allowance *for* leakage.
Allude *to* an event.
Alternates *with*: 'day *with* night.'
Alternative *to* a course of action.
Amalgamate *with* alloy.
into one.
Amazed *at* an event.
Ambitious *of*, *for*—renown.
Amenable *to* the law.
Amount (verb) *to* ten rupees.
Analogous *to* a thing.
Analogy *to* or *with* a thing.
between two things.
Angry *with* him *for* laughing.
at a thing.
Animadvert *on* one's faults.
Annex *to* a document.
Annoyed *with* a person.
at a thing.
Answer (v. and n.) *to* a person *for* one's conduct.
to the description.
Antagonistic *to* his views.
Antidote *to* a disease.
against infection.
Antipathy *to* medicine.
Anxious *for* the prize.
about his health.
Apart *from* the rest.
Appeal *to* one *for* redress.
against a wrong.
Appear *to* me.
Appetite *for* food.
Applicable *to* the case.
Apply *to* a person *for* a thing.
Appointed *to* a situation.
Apposite *to* the case.
(In) Apposition *to*, *with*—a noun.
Apprehensive *of* danger.
Apprenticed *to* a trade.
Apprised *of* an event.
Appropriate *to* the occasion.
Approve *of* an action.[2]
Approximate *to* the sum.
Apropos *of* a remark.
Apt (expert) *at* mathematics.[3]
Aptitude *for* business.
Arrive *at* a village or port.
in a country.
at a conclusion, resolution, &c.
Arrogate *to* oneself.
Ascribe glory *to* God.
Ashamed *of* one's conduct.
Ask a person *for* a thing.
a thing *of* a person.
Aspire *to*, *after*—fame.
Aspiration *after* fame.

[1] *Alien from* is also found.

[2] *Approve of* is common, but *approve* (without *of*) is more correct. Similarly, *accept of* is vulgar for *accept*. 'This empire *comprises* several states' is better than *is comprised of*.

[3] But 'Apt (liable) *to* make (not *at* making) mistakes.'

Assent (n. and v.) *to* conditions.
Assiduous *in* business.
Assigned *to* a person.
Associate *with* a person or thing.
Assured *of* the truth.
Astonished *at* a proceeding.
Atone *for* a fault.
Attached *to* the pier.
Attack (noun) *upon* the fort.
Attacked *with* fever.
by robbers.
Attend (listen) *to* a lecture or speaker.
(wait) *upon* a person.
Attendance *upon* a person.
at the Court.
Attentive *to* a lecture or speaker.
Attribute the loss *to* accident.
Avail oneself *of* an opportunity.
Averse *to*[1] study.
Avert danger *from* a person.
Aware *of* a matter.

Backward *in* one's studies.
Balk a person *of* his object.
Bare *of* grass.
Based *upon* facts.
Battle (n. and v.) *with* a foe.
Bear *with* one's weakness.
Beg a person *for* a thing.
a thing *of* a person.
Begin *at* the first chapter.
with the first part.
upon a task.
Beguile a person *of* a thing.
Believe *in* one's sincerity.
Belong *to* a person.
Bend *to* the storm.
Beneficial *to* health.
Bent *on* a course of action.
Bereft *of* children.
Beset *with* difficulties.
Bestow a thing *upon* a person.
Betake oneself *to* a pursuit.
Betrayed *to* one's enemies.
into one's enemy's hands.
Beware *of* mistakes.
Bigoted *in* his opinion.
Blest *with* children.
Blind *to* the consequences.
of one eye.
Blush *at* one's conduct.
for one's good name.
Boast (v. and n.) *of* success.
Border *on* the miraculous.
Born *of* a mother.
to wealth.
Borrow *of*, *from*—a person.
Bound *in* honour or duty *to* confess.
by considerations.
Bound (102) *for* Madras.
Brood *over*, *upon*—his wrongs.
Burst *into* tears.
upon his vision.
Buy a thing *of* a person.

Calculate *upon* success.
Call *upon* (visit) a friend.
at his house.
for (request) a speech.
Capable *of* thought.
Capacity *for* thought.
Care (verb) *for*, *about*—pleasure.
(noun) *of* one's welfare.
Careful *of* one's comfort.
Careless *of*, *about*—the consequences.
Carp *at* one's conduct.
Catch *at* an opportunity.
Caution *against* error.
Cautious *of* offending.
Cavil *at* an action.
Celebrated *for* skill.
Centred *in* self.
Certain *of* success.
Changed *into* an angel.
Characterised *by* versatility.
Characteristic *of* a person.
Charge a person *with* a business or crime.
a payment *to* a person, or a property *with* a payment.
Cheated *of* his money.
Claim (noun) *upon* one.
Clamour (verb and noun) *for* justice.
Clash *with* one's designs.
Cleansed *from*, *of*—stain.
Clear (adj. and verb) *of* blame.
Cling *to* hope.
Close (adj.) *to*, *by*—the house.
(verb) *with* an offer or a foe.
Clothed *in* fine linen.
with shame.
Clue *to* a mystery.
Coalesce *with* a person.
Coequal *with* another.
Cognate *with* the matter.
Cognisant *of* a matter.

[1] Some modern writers use the more correct 'averse *from*.'

Coincide *with* one's wishes.
Combat (v. and n.) *with* an enemy.
Combined *with* wealth.
Commemorative *of* a victory.
Commence *on* Monday.
with grammar.
at page 10.
Commended *to* one's care.
Commensurate *with* one's desire.
Comment (v. and n.) *on* a matter.
Committed *to* a course of action.
Common *to* both.
Communicate a thing *to* a person.
with a person *on* a thing.
Compare eloquence *with* learning.
eloquence *to* thunder.
Compatible *with* safety.
Compensate a person *for* his loss.
Compete *with* a person *for* a thing.
Competent *for* a post.
Complain *of* a person or thing.
Complaint *against* a person.
about a thing.
Compliment one *on* one's industry.
Comply *with* one's request.
Composed *of* a material.
Comprehended *in* a total.
Concentrated *on* a thing.
Concerned (anxious) *at*, *about*—an event.
for one, or *for* one's safety.
(taking part) *in* a matter.
(having to do) *with* a matter.
Concur *with* a person *in* his decision.
Condemned *to* death.
Condole *with* a person.
Conduce *to* success.
Conducive *to* health.
Confer a thing *upon* a person.
about a thing *with* a person.
Confess *to* a fault.
Confide (trust) *in* one's honour.
(entrust) a thing *to* a person.
Confidence *in* his honesty.
Confident *of* success.
Confined *in* a prison.
to one's bed.
Confirmed *in* the appointment.
Conform *to* a rule.
Conformity *to*, *with*—a pattern.
Confound the innocent *with* the guilty.
Confront a person *with* his accusers.
Congenial *to* one's tastes.
Congratulate one *on* one's success.
Connected *with* the press.
Connive *at* one's proceedings.
Conscious *of* guilt.
Consecrated *to* God.
Consent *to* a proposal.
Consequent *upon* a business.
Consideration *for* a person.
of a matter.
Consign *to* destruction.
Consist (be composed) *of* materials.
(be contained) *in* causes or results.
(be consistent) *with* health, honour.
Consistent *with* safety.
Conspicuous *for* his talents.
by his absence.
Conspire *with* rebels *against* the king.
Constant *to* his purpose.
Contemporary *with* Gladstone.
Contend *with* a foe.
against odds.
about a question.
Contented *with* a little.
Contiguous *to* the border.
Contingent *upon* success.
Contrary *to* orders.
Contrasted *with* this.
Contribute *to* the fund.
Control (noun) *over*, *of*—one's actions
Convenient *for* travelling.
Converge *to* a point.
Conversant *with* persons or things.
Converted *into* money.
to a faith.
Convicted *of* a crime.
Convinced *of* his error.
Convulsed *with* laughter.
Cope *with* a person.
Correct (adj.) *in* his surmises.
Correspond (write) *with* a friend.
(agree) *to*, *with*—a thing.
Count *upon* your help.
for nothing.
Covered *with* glory.
Covetous *of* gain.
Crave *for*, *after*—wealth.
Credited *to* his account.
Cure a person *of* a disease.
Customary *for* a person.
Cut *in*, *into*—pieces (of meat, etc.).
to pieces (of troops, etc.).

Dabble *in* chemistry.

Dally *with* a person.
Dawn (verb) *upon* a person.
Deaf *to* entreaty.
Deal *with* a person.
(fairly) *by* a person.
in cotton, tea.
Dear *to* me.
Debar *from* competing.
Decide *upon* a course.
Dedicated *to* the King.
Deduced *from* the premisses.
Defective *in* manner, body.
Defer *to* one's wishes.
Deficient *in* learning.
Deformed *in* one's limbs.
Defraud a person *of* his due.
Degenerate *into* a scribbler.
Deliberate *upon* a matter.
Delight (v. and n.) *in* study.
Delighted *with* success.
Deluged *with* water.
Demand a thing *of* a person.
(noun) *for* a thing.
Demur *to* a proposal.
Depend *on* one's efforts.
Dependent *on* your help.
Depose *to* facts.
Deprive a person *of* a thing.
Derive pleasure *from* walking.
Derogate *from* one's reputation.
Derogatory *to* one's reputation.
Descant (v. and n.) *upon* a matter.
Descriptive *of* the country.
Deserving *of* blame.
Design (noun) *upon* his life.
Designed *for* a purpose.
Desire (noun) *for* fame.
Desirous *of* fame.
Desist *from* an attempt.
Despair (v. and n.) *of* success.
Despoil a person *of* a thing.
Destined *to* the gallows.
Destitute *of* money.
Destructive *of* health.
Determined *upon* an action.
Deterred *from* his purpose.
Detract *from* one's fame.
Detrimental *to* one's interests.
Deviate *from* truth.
Devoid *of* truth.
Devolve *upon* a person.
Devoted *to* one's studies, parents, &c.
Dexterous *in*, *at*—manual operations.
Die *of* a disease, wounds, cold.
by hanging, poison, violence.
Differ *from* (to be unlike).
with (to be at variance with).
Difference *between* two things.
Different *from* that.
Diffident of success.
Digress *from* the point.
Dilate *upon* a matter.
Diligent *in* business.
Disappointed *of* success.[1]
in the result.
at an event.
Discriminate *between* right and wrong.
Disgust *at* his conduct.
Disgusted *with* a person.
with, *at*—a thing.
(No) Disparagement *to* one's courage.
(Your) Disparagement *of* my courage.
Dispense *with* one's services.
Displeased *with* you.
with, *at*—your conduct.
Dispose *of* property.
Dispute *with* a person.
Disqualified *for*, *from*—competing.
for a post.
Dissent (v. and n.) *from* a proposal.
Dissuaded *from* an attempt.
Distasteful *to* me.
Distinct *from* that.
Distinguish *between* two things.
one thing *from* another.
Distinguished *for* his writings.
by a pointed chin.
Distracted *with* pain.
Distrustful *of* succeeding.
Dive *into* the water.
Diverge *from* the main road.
Diverted *from* his work.
Divested *of* authority.
Divided *in* half.
into parts.
Doat *upon* riding.
Domineer *over* one's inferiors.
Doubt (v. and n.) *of* one's ability.
Dream (v. and n.) *of* power.
Drenched *with* rain.
Drunk *with* joy.

[1] We are *disappointed of* a thing, when we fail to get it; *in* a thing, after we have got it.

Dubious *of* success.
Due *to* old age.
Dull *of* hearing.
Dwell *upon* a subject.
Dwindle *into* nothing.

Eager *for* distinction.
Eased *of* his load.
Easy *of* access.
Economical *of* time.
Effect (noun) *upon* his health.
Effective *for* the purpose.
Elicit the truth *from* a person.
Eligible *for* an appointment.
to an office.
Embark *on* an enterprise.
in speculation.
Embittered *against* a person.
Embodied *in* the motion.
Emboldened *by* poverty.
Eminent *for* genius.
Employed *in* writing.
Emulous *of* distinction.
Enamoured *with* a person.
of a thing.
Encroach *upon* one's rights.
End *in* nothing.
Endeavour (n. and v.) *after*, *for*—happiness.
Endowed, endued *with* talents.
Engaged *to* a suitor.
in a business.
Engraved *on* the memory.
Engrossed *in* business.
Enjoin *upon* a person.
Enlarge *upon* a topic.
Enlist *in* the army.
Enmity *to* foreigners.
Enquire—see *Inquire*.
Enrolled *in* the band.
Entail mischief *upon* a person.
Entangled *in* a scheme.
Enter *upon* a career.
into one's views.
Entertained *with* music.
Entitled *to* a hearing.
Entrust—see *Intrust*.
Enveloped *in* a fog.
Envious *of* one's success.
Envy (noun) *at* one's success.
Equal *to* the task.
Equivalent (adj.) *to* the cost.
(noun) *for* the gift.
Escape (n. and v.) *from* prison.
Essential *to* one's happiness.
Estimate *at* its true value.
Estranged *from* one's friend.
Even *with* an opponent.
Exact payment *from* a person.
Excel *in* painting.
Excepted *from* punishment.
Exception *to* the rule.
Exchange one thing *for* another.
Excluded *from* the list.
Exclusive *of* extras.
Excuse a person *from* attendance.
(noun) *for* one's conduct.
Exempt (adj. and v.) *from* control.
Exhausted *with* his efforts.
Exonerated *from* blame.
Expatiate *on* the advantages.
Expensive *in* his habits.
Experienced *in* warfare.
Expert *at*, *in*—drawing.
Exposed *to* danger.
Expostulate *with* a person.
Expressive *of* satisfaction.
Extorted *from* him.
Extravagant *in* his expenditure.
Extricated *from* a difficulty.
Exult *over* a person.
in his misfortunes.

Fail *in* one's attempt.
of one's purpose.
Familiar *with* a language.[1]
Famous *for* his skill.
Far *from* home.
Fatal *to* his hopes.
Favourable *to* his hopes.
Favoured *with* one's approval.[2]
Fawn (verb) *upon* a person.
Fearful *of* the consequences.
Feed (intrans.) *on* rice.
(trans.) *with* fuel.
Fertile *in* expedients.
Fight *with*, *against*—an enemy.
Filled *with* fear.
Fire (verb) *at* a man.
upon a mob.
Fired *with* zeal.
Firm *in* his opinions.

[1] But a language is *familiar to* a person.

[2] But a letter is 'kindly favoured' (transmitted) *by* a person

Fit *for* service.
Fitted *for* a post.
Fix *upon* a day.
Flash *upon* one's mind.
Flinch *from* danger.
Flirt (verb) *with* a person.
Flushed *with* victory.
Fly *at* its prey.
into a passion.
Foiled *in* an attempt.
Fond *of* jesting.
Fondness *for* jesting.
Foreign *to* the purpose.
Forgetful *of* his promise.
Founded *upon* fact.
Fraught *with* evil.
Free (adj. and v.) *from* blame.
of expense.
(adj.) *of* the city of London.
with his money.
Fret *at* his refusal.
Frown *at*, *upon*—a person.[1]
Fruitful *in* resources.
Fruitless *of* profit.
Full *of* joy.
Furnished *with* money.

Gaze *at*, *on*—the prospect.
Germane *to* the matter.
Gifted *with* talents.
Glad *of*, *at*—the result.
Glance (v. and n.) *at* an object.
over a surface.
Glory (verb) *in* one's success.
Good *for* nothing.
at arithmetic.
Grapple *with* a difficulty.
Grasp *at* gains.
Grateful *to* a person.
for a thing.
Greedy *of*, *after*—riches.
Grieve *at*, *for*—an event.
for a person.
Grounded *in* a subject.
on fact.
Grumble *at* a rule.
Guard (protect) *from* harm.
(watch) *against* mistakes.
Guilty *of* murder.

Habituated *to* abuse.

Hanker *after* wealth.
Happen *to* a person.
Happy *in* his marriage.
Hatred *of*, *for*—falsehood.
Healed *of* his disease.
Hear *from* a person.
of an event.
Heedless *of* the consequences.
Hesitate *at* nothing.
Hidden *from* view.
Hindered *from* going.
Hindrance *to* study.
Hinge (verb) *upon* a decision.
Hint (v. and n.) *at* a reward.
Hit (verb) *upon* a plan.
Honest *in* his dealings.
Honoured *with* your confidence.
Hope (v. and n.) *for* success.
Hopeful *of* success.
Hostile *to* my advances.
Hover *over* the nest.
Hunt *for* a lost object.
after gain.
Hurtful *to* his prospects.

Identical *with* this.
Identified *with* one.
Ignorant *of* everything.
Ill *of* fever.
Illustrative *of* a question.
Imbued *with* confidence.
Immersed *in* pleasure.
Impart a thing *to* a person.
Impatient *of* control.
for payment.
at an event.
Impediment *to* progress.
Impelled *by* necessity.
Impend *over* his head.
Impertinent *to* his master.
Impervious *to* rain, argument.
Implicated *in* the robbery.
Important *to* me.
Impose *upon* a person.
Impress a thing *upon* a person.
Improve *on* one's predecessors.
Impute blame *to* a person.
Inadequate *to* the task.
Incapable *of* improvement.
Incapacitated *for* employment.

[1] But, when used metaphorically, both *frown* and *smile* are followed by *upon* only: as, 'Fortune frowned (or smiled) *upon* (not *at*) him.'

Incapacity *for* office.
Incentive *to* diligence.
Incident (adj.) *to* the matter.
Incidental (adj.) *to* the matter.
Inclined *to* indulgence.
Included *in* the catalogue.
Inclusive *of* expenses.
Inconsistent *in* his action.
with the facts.
Incorporated *with* oil.
in the Empire.
Inculcate *upon* a person.
Incumbent *upon* a person.
Indebted *to* the mahajan.
in a large sum.
Independent *of* your help.
Indicative *of* change.
Indifferent *to* his complaints.
Indignant *at* his conduct.
with him.
Indispensable *to* success.
Indulge *in* excess.
Indulgent *to* his children.
Infatuated *by, with*—his triumph.
with a person.
Infected *with* disease.
Infested *with* rats.
Infirm *of* purpose.
Inflamed *with* passion.
Inflated *with* pride.
Inflict punishment *on* a criminal.
Influence (n.) *over, with*—a person.
on his decision.
Inform a person *of* a thing.
against a person.
Infringe *on* his rights.
Infused *into* a mixture.
Ingratiate oneself *with* a person.
Inherent *in* the matter.
Inimical *to* a proceeding.
Injurious *to* his interests.
Innocent *of* a crime.
Inquire *into, about*—a matter.
of a person (ask him).
for a person (ask where he is).
after one's health.
Insensible *to* pain.
Inserted *in* the book.
Insist *upon* your going.
Inspired *with* hope.
Instructed *in* the art.
Intemperate *in* his diet.
Intent *upon* his studies.
Intercede *with* one *for* another.
Interested *in* knowing.
Interfere *in* a business.
with an attempt.
with other people.
in other people's affairs.
Intersect *with* each other.
Intimate (adj.) *with* a person.
(verb) *to* a person.
Intolerant *of* opposition.
Intoxicated *with* opium.
Intrench *upon* his rights.
Introduced *into* a room.
to a person.
Intrude *upon* one's leisure.
into a garden.
Intrust a person *with* a thing.
a thing *to* a person.
Inundated *with* applications.
Inured *to* fatigue.
Inveigh *against* injustice.
Inveigled *into* a scheme.
Invested *with* authority.
in the funds.
Invited *to* dinner.
Involved *in* debt.
Irrelevant *to* the question.
Irrespective *of* the consequences.
Issue (verb) *from* a spring.

Jealous *of* his renown.
Jest (v. and n.) *at* his misery.
Join *with* a person *in* a thing.
Joined *to, with*—wealth.
Joy *in* his good luck.
Judge (v. and n.) *of* a question.
Jump *at* an offer.

Kick *at, against*—opposition.
Knock *at* the door.
Known *to* all.
for his talents.
by this name.

Labour *under* a delusion.
Laden *with* wheat.
Lame *of* one leg.
Languish *for* home.
Laugh *at* a joke.
Lavish (adj.) *of* money.
(verb) money *on* trifles.
Lax *in* his morals.
Lead *into* temptation.
Lean *upon* my arm.
against the wall.
to an opinion.

Level (adj.) *with* the surface.
(verb) a house *with* the ground.
a gun *at* an object.
Liable *to* injury.
for his actions.
Libel (noun) on a person.
Light (verb) *upon* a quotation.
(noun) *upon* a subject.
Limit (noun) *to* my forbearance.
Limited *to* an allowance.
Listen *to* a person or a speech.
for a mispronunciation.
Live *in* Calcutta.
at 3, Camac St.
on milk.
by selling matches.
Loaded *with* corn.
Long (verb) *for*, *after*—fame.
Lost *to* all sense of shame.
in thought.

Made *of* money.
March *to* (go to) the camp.
upon (attack) the fortress.
Marked *with* ink.
by unselfishness.
Marry one person *to* another.[1]
into a family.
Martyr *to* the gout.
Material (adj.) *to* the business.
Meddle *with*, *in*—a matter.
Mediate *between* the disputants.
Meditate *upon* a doctrine.
Meet *with* a rebuff.
Menaced *with* punishment.
Merged *in* the total.
Militate *against* a theory.
Mindful *of* his promise.
Minister (verb) *to* one's wants.
Mistaken *in* his conclusion.
Mix, mingle *in* society.
with one's fellows.
Moved *at* the sight.
by, *with*—his entreaties.
to tears.
Murmur *at* his decision.
Muse (verb) *over* life's changes.

Natural *to* a person.

Necessary *for*, *to*—a purpose.
Necessity *of* the case.
for indulgence.
Need (noun) *of*, *for*—food.
Needful *for*, *to*—his wants.
Neglectful *of* his friends.
Negligent *in* business.
Nibble *at* a bait.
Noted *for* his skill.
Notorious *for* his crimes.

Obedient *to* parents.
Object (verb) *to* his interference.
Obligatory *on* a person.
Obliged *to* a person *for* a thing.
Oblivious *of* duty.
Obnoxious *to* a person.
Observant *of* his wishes.
Obstacle *to* success.
Obstinate *in* his conduct.
Obstructive *to* his design.
Obtrude one's views *on* others.
Occupied *with* a business.[2]
Occur *to* a person.
Odious *to* a person.
Offend *against* a rule.
Offended *with* a person.
at an action.
Offensive *to* a person.
Officiate *for* a person.
in a post.
Officious *in* his attentions.
Open (adj.) *to* the sky, *to* conviction.
Operate *upon* a patient.
Operations *against* an enemy.
Opposed *to* experience.
Opposite *to* the house.
Originate *with* a person.
in a thing.
Overcome (p.p.) *with* fatigue.
by entreaties.
Overwhelmed *with* grief.
by a wave.

Pant *for* breath.
Parallel *to* a line.
Paramount *to* everything.
Parody (noun) *on*, *of*—a poem.
Part (verb) *from* a friend.

[1] Said of the clergyman or of the father of the bride. A man *marries* or is *married to* a woman, and *vice versâ*. Shakespere speaks of one person *marrying with* another.

[2] But a house is *occupied by* a person; and one is *occupied in* writing a letter.

Part *with* money.
Partake *of* refreshment.
Partial *to* his eldest son.
Partiality *for*, *to*—poetry.
Participate *with* a person.
in his gains.
Pass *by* his door.
over his errors.
for a man of means.
Passion *for* gambling.
Patient *of* insult.
Paved *with* stone.
Peculiar *to* the case.
Penetrate *into* a recess.
Penetrated *with* a desire.
Penitent *for* his faults.
Penurious *in* his habits.
Perplexed *at* his folly.
Persevere *in* an attempt.
Persist *in* his misconduct.
Persuaded *to* a course.
Pertain *to* the question.
Pitch (verb) *upon* one's head.
Play *at* cricket.
on the sitara.
Pleased *with* you.
with, *at*—your conduct.
Pledged *to* secrecy.
Plot (n. and v.) *against* his life.
Plunged *into* the water.
in thought.
Polite *in* his manners.
to his friends.
Ponder *over* your advice.
Popular *with* his neighbours.
for his kindness.
Possessed *of* wealth.
with, *by*—an idea, a devil.
Practised *in* deceit.
Precious *to* a person.
Precluded *from* acceptance.
Predilection *for* mathematics.
Prefer one thing *to* another.
Preferable *to* poverty.
Prefixed *to* a document.
Pregnant *with* meaning.
Prejudice (n. and v.) *against* a person.
Prejudicial *to* his interests.
Preliminary *to* an inquiry.
Prepare *for* the worst.
against defeat.
Preparatory *to* the inquiry.
Preponderate *over* a thing.
Present a thing *to* a person.
a person *with* a thing.
Presented *to* the view.
Preserved *from* death.
Preside *over* the meeting.
Press *upon* one's notice.
Presume *upon* his kindness.
Pretend *to* infallibility.
Pretext *for* interference.
Prevail *with*, *upon* (persuade) a person.[1]
over, *against* (overcome) a person.
Prevented *from* going.
Previous *to* an event.
Prey (noun) *to* avarice.
(verb) *upon* one's mind.
Pride *in* his birth.
oneself *on* one's skill.
Privy *to* the secret.
Proceed *with* (continue) a business.
to (commence) business.
Prodigal (adj.) *of* his gifts.
Productive *of* happiness.
Proficient *in* algebra.
Profitable *to* the seller.
Profuse *in* apologies.
Prohibited *from* coming.
Prompt (adj.) *in* his answers.
Prompted *by* bad motives.
Prone *to* idleness.
Proper *for* consideration.
Proportionate *to* his wants.
Protected *from* harm.
against attack.
Protest (v. and n.) *against* his proceedings.
Proud *of* his wealth.
Provide *for* his children.
against mischance.
Provided *with* clothes.
Provident *in* his expenditure.
Proximity *to* a town.
Pry *into* his doings.
(In) pursuance *of* his enquiries.
Pursuant *to* his enquiries.
Puzzled *at* his conduct.
Qualified *for* the post.

[1] We say, 'No arguments *prevailed with* him'; but, 'I *prevailed upon* him to submit.'

Quarrel (v. and n.) *with* a person.
over, about—a thing.
Quartered *on* the village.
Quick *at* multiplication.

Rail *at* men's follies.
Ready *for* departure.
at figures.
in his answers.
Reason (verb) *with* him.
Rebel (verb) *against* the king.
Reckless *of* the consequences.
Reckon *on* a profit.
Recompense (n. and v.) him *for* his pains.
Reconciled *to* the loss.
with justice.
Recourse *to* medicines.
Recover *of, from*—a disease.
Redolent *of* camphor.
Redound *to* one's credit.
Reduced *to* poverty.
Refer *to* a matter.
Reflect *upon* a matter.
Refrain *from* drink.
Regard (n., care) *for* his interests.
(In) Regard (reference) *to* a question.
Regardful *of* his interests.
Reign *over* a country.
Relapse (v. and n.) *into* idleness.
Related *to* a family.
Relation *to* a matter.
Relations *with* a person.
Relative *to* the question.
Relevant *to* the subject.
Relieved *of, from*—a burden, service.
Relish *for* food.
Rely *on* a promise.
Remark (verb) *upon* his conduct.
Remarkable *for* her beauty.
Remedy *for* a disease.
Reminded *of* a thing.
Remiss *in* his conduct.
Remonstrate *with* a person.
Remorse *for* crime.
Rendered *into* English.
Renowned *for* his achievements.
Repent *of* a fault.
Repentance *for* sin.
Repine *at* misfortunes.
Replace one thing *by* another.
Replete *with* luxury.
Repose (verb) confidence *in* a person.
(n. and v.) *on* a bed.
Repugnant *to* his wishes.
Request (noun) *for* a favour.
Require a thing *of, from*—a person.
Requisite *for* the purpose.
Resigned *to* his fate.
Resistance *to* an attack.
Resolved *upon* a course of action.
into its elements.
Resort (v. and n.) *to* strong measures.
Respect (noun) *for* his master.
(In) Respect *of* a matter.
(With) Respect *to* a matter.
Respectful *to, towards*—superiors.
Respond *to* a call.
Responsible *to* the law *for* one's actions.
Rest (n. and v.) *on* a sofa.
in a belief.
Restricted *to* a low diet.
Result (noun) *of* the examination.
(verb) *from* the evidence (cause).
in the verdict (effect).
Retentive *of* facts.
Retire *from* business.
into private life.
to bed.
Retort *upon* an accuser.
Revel (verb) *in* luxury.
Revenged *on, upon*—his enemies.
(The) Reverse *of* polite (manners).
Revolt *from* allegiance.
Rich *in* houses.
Rid *of* the business.
Ripe *for* revolt.
Rob a traveller *of* his money.
Rule (v. and n.) *over* a country.

Sacred *to* his memory.
Sacrificed *to* idols.
Sanguine *of* success.
Satiated *with* enjoyment.
Satisfied (content) *with* a little.
(convinced) *of* his innocence.
Saturated *with* moisture.
Savour *of* malice.
Search (v. and n.) *for, after*—happiness.
(In) Search (n.) *of* happiness.
Secondary *to* that.
Secure *from, against*—attack.
Seek *for, after*—gold.
Seize *upon* the property.
Seizure *of* the property.
Sensible *of* your kindness.
Sensitive *to* blame.

Serve *in* the army.
for an excuse.
one *with* a summons.
a summons *upon* one.
Serviceable *to* a person.
Short *of* money.
Sick (tired) *of* doing nothing.
Side (verb) *with* a person.
Significant *of* his intentions.
Similar *to* this.
Sin (v. and n.) *against* God.
Skilful *at* drawing.
Skilled *in* music.
Slothful *in* business.
Slow *of* speech.
at his business.
Slur (verb) *over* (adv.) the matter.
(noun) *on* his character.
Smell *of* the lamp.
Smile *at*, *upon*—a person.[1]
Smitten *with* a disease.
Snatch *at* an opportunity.
Sneer *at* a person or thing.
Solicited *for* his vote.
Solicitous *of* a reply.
Sorry *for* his misfortunes.
Sparing *of* blame.
Specific *for*, *against*—cholera.
Speculate *in* shares.
upon possibilities.
Spite *against* a person.
Stained *with* vices.
Stare *at* a person.
a person *in* the face.
Start (set out) *for* Bombay.
Steal *into* a place.
upon a person.
Steer *for* the shore.
Stick *to* your work.
at nothing.
Stimulus *to* exertion.
Stoop *to* baseness.
Stripped *of* his property.
Strive *with*, *against*—opposition.
for truth.
Subject (adj.) *to* his decision.
Submit *to* authority.
Subordinate (adj.) *to* this.
Subscribe *to* a fund.
Subsequent *to* an event.
Subservient *to* the king.
Subsist *upon* rice.
Substitute one thing *for* another.
Subversive *of* discipline.
Succeed *to* an estate.
in an undertaking.
Succumb *to* a disease.
Sufficient *for* the purpose.
Sue *for* damages.
Suffer *from* fever.
for past follies.
Suffocated *with* dust.
Suitable *for* the purpose.
to his income.
Suited *to* one's taste.
Supplementary *to* the question.
Supply a person *with* a thing.
a thing *to* a person.
Sure *of* success.
Surprised *at* the news.
Surrender (n. and v.) *to* the foe.
Susceptible *of* explanation.
Suspected *of* theft.
Suspicious *of* his intentions.
Swerve *from* the right path.
Sympathize *with* a person.
Sympathy *for*, *with*—a person.
with his opinions.
Synonym *for* a word.
Synonymous *with* that.

Tamper *with* the accounts.
Tantamount *to* a refusal.
Taste (n. and v.) *of* salt.
(noun) *for* music.
Teem *with* fish.
Temperate *in* his diet.
Tenacious *of* his rights.
Tend *to* prosperity.
Testify *to* his innocence.
Testimonial *to* his merits.
Thankful *to* a person *for* a thing.
Think *of* me.
on, *over*—my advice.
Thirst (n. and v.) *for* revenge.
Tide *over* a difficulty.
Tired *of* waiting.
with his exertions.
Tolerant *of* criticism.
Touch *at* a port.
upon a subject.
Touched *with* pity *at* his distress.

[1] See *foot-note* to *frown* above. *Smile at*=to be amused at, to deride; *Smile upon*=to be pleased with, to favour.

Trade (n. and v.) *in* rice.
Trample *upon* justice.
Translated *into* Bengali.
to a see.
Transported *with* joy.
Treat *of* a subject.
with a person.
him *to* a dinner.
Trench *upon* his rights.
Trespass *against* a person.
upon his premises or patience.
Trifle (verb) *with* his feelings.
Triumph (v. and n.) *over* obstacles.
True *to* one's word.
Trust (v. and n.) *in* Providence (have faith in).
(verb) *to* my judgment (depend upon).

Umbrage *at* his conduct.
Uniform *with* the series.
Unison *with* his character.
Unite *with* others.
United (married) *to* a peer.
Unsuitable—see *Suitable.*
Unsuited—see *Suited.*
Upbraided *with* his treachery.
Urged *upon* his consideration.
Used *to* cycling.
Useful *to* a person *for* a purpose.

Vain *of* his fine clothes.
Variance *with* a person.
Veiled *in* mist.
Versed *in* science.
Vested *in* a magistrate.
with powers.
Vexed *with* a person.
at a thing.
Victim *of* oppression.
to jealousy.
Victorious *over* difficulty.
Vie *with* him *in* luxury.
Void *of* meaning.

Wait *upon* (attend) a person.
for (stay for) a person or thing.
Want (noun) *of* money.
Wanting *in* consideration.
War *with* Russia.
Warned *of* his danger.
against the conspirator.
Wary *in* one's schemes.
of another's schemes.
Weaned *from* a habit.
Weary *of* delay.
Wedded *to* his studies.
Wink *at* his carelessness.
Wish *for* quiet.
Work (verb) *upon* one's feelings.
Worthy *of* praise.
Wrapped *in* mystery.
Wrestle *with* difficulties.

Yield *to* persuasion.

Zealous *for* liberty.
Zest *for* enjoyment.

CHAPTER VIII.

PHRASAL USES OF WORDS.

PHRASAL USES OF PREPOSITIONS.

401. Prepositions were originally Adverbs expressing relation in *Space*, next they were applied to relation in *Time*, and lastly they were used figuratively to mark relation to other *Attendant Circumstances*:—

I was present *at* the Court (*Space*) *at* twelve o'clock (*Time*) *at* your request (*Attendant Circumstance*).

We can conceive of various Space-relations, which may be denoted by appropriate prepositions. These relations may be conceived of in connexion with the notions either of *Rest* or *Motion*:—

	REST	
Rest near with contact	*at*	I was *at* home.
Rest near without contact	*by* / *with*	I stood *by* him. / I sat *with* him.
Rest on the surface	*on*	The house is *on* the hill.
Rest in the interior	*in*	He rides *in* a carriage.
	MOTION	
Motion towards, resulting in contact	*to*	He is gone *to* school.
Motion towards, before it results in contact	*for*	He sailed *for* Japan.
Motion away from the upper surface	*of* / *off*	The balloon passed within 100 yards *of* the ground. / He jumped *off* the chair.
Motion away from the exterior	*from*	He came *from* the town.
Motion along the interior	*through*	The carpenter bored *through* the plank.
Motion to a higher point	*up*	He ran *up* the ladder.

These are the simple prepositions; the rest, expressing these and other new relations, are all derivatives of these simple

forms. Prepositions will now be considered in detail, with special reference to the numerous idiomatic phrases in which they occur.

About.

402. About (*on-by-out, on* that which is *by* the *out*side) has for its primary meaning *close proximity to the outside*, as in 'Bind them *about* thy neck' (*Bible*), 'Have you any money *about* you (on your person)?' 'Keep your wits *about* you' (close to you, so as to be ready for use). Then it is used more generally in the sense of *over, around*, as in 'A man *about* town' (one who frequents fashionable town resorts), 'To beat *about* the bush' (a metaphor from hunting; to deal with the mere surroundings of a matter; not to come to the point).

Hence it is used figuratively in the sense of—

(1) *Close to, on the verge of:*—

It is *about* three o'clock. I will come in *about* five minutes. This happened *about* a year ago [cf. its adverbial use in 'I am *about* tired out'; 'This wall is *about* as high as that'; 'His health is much *about* (very nearly) the same as it was yesterday']. He is *about* to be married.

(2) *Engaged in* (of occupations):—

I must be *about* my Father's business (*Bible*). I sent him *about* (to engage in) his business (implying angry or abrupt dismissal). What are you about?[1] (what are you doing?) Mind you set *about* the inquiry at once (set yourself to engage in it).

(3) *On all sides of, concerning:*—

To consult *about* a matter. Tell us all *about* the war. I will see *about* this. What *about* your promise? Go for the doctor, and be quick *about* (not *at*) it.

403. Adverbial Uses.—*About* is used as an adverb in the following phrases:—

He went two miles *about* (he made a *circuit* of two miles). They did it turn and turn *about* (every one in his turn). *About* ship! (turn her round!) To turn (*or* face) *about* (round). To wander *about*. To come *about* (to come round, to happen). To bring *about* (to cause to happen). To be *about* (to be astir; as, after an illness). He cast *about* for (tried to find) an opportunity. He is too ill to get *about* (to leave the house). The men were hanging *about* (loitering near).

Above.

404. Above (*on-by-up, on* that which is *by* the *upper* side) means primarily *close proximity to the upper surface;* and then it

[1] Here *about* indicates no very direct contact with the work—no open and definite aim; hence the question implies slight fault-finding.

is used merely in the sense of *higher than*, of position or order: as, 'I will catch him, if he is *above* ground' (unburied, alive), 'He managed to keep his head *above* water' (he avoided failure or bankruptcy), 'He was fair and *above* board' (honourable, straight-forward), 'He is *above* me in the class.'

Hence it is used figuratively in the sense of—

(1) *Out of the range of, beyond*:—

This is *above* my comprehension. His conduct is *above* suspicion. He lives *above* his means (spends more than his income). He did not speak *above* a whisper—*above* his breath (he spoke softly).

(2) *More than* (of quantity or degree):—

Not *above* fifty people were present. The subscriptions came to *above* Rs. 500. I value this *above* everything. *Above* all (cf. *before* all and *beyond* all), be punctual. One day *above* the rest (particularly). This stock is *above* par (at a higher than the nominal value).

(3) *Superior to*:—

I am *above* such meanness. He is not *above* asking a favour. I am not *above* work (too proud to work). A man should not be *above* his business. He is *above* the common (not an ordinary man).

Across.

405. Across (*on cross*, cross-wise) indicates *intersection*, and hence is used to indicate—

(1) *Motion from one side of a thing to the other*:—

A road runs *across* the plain. He sailed *across* the Atlantic Ocean.

(2) *Position on the other side of a thing*:—

My house is just *across* the street.

(3) *Position on both sides of a thing*; hence *contiguity*:—

He threw the load *across* his shoulders. I have not been *across* a horse (ridden a horse) for years. I came *across* him (*lit.* met him at an angle or sideways) yesterday.

After.

406. After (*af-ter*, more off) indicates *distance measured from the back part* of a thing; hence it has the meaning of *behind*, with the notion of *following* or *sequence*, as 'He ran *after* me,' 'Ram was examined *after* the other boys.'

Hence it is used in the sense of—

(1) *Behind*, with the notion of sequence in time:—

Day *after* day passed by. He came night *after* night. He arrived *after* dark (after darkness had set in). To be *after* the fair (to be too late to share in some pleasure).

(2) *In accordance with, in imitation of:*—

He is a man *after* my own heart (just suited to my liking; cf. '*to* my mind'). This boy takes *after* his father (is like his father in habits, disposition, etc.). Let us make man in our image, *after* our likeness (*Bible*). This picture is *after* Turner (painted in imitation of his style). He is named *after* his uncle. They acted *after* the fashion (or manner) of the times (according to the practice of). He succeeded—*after* a sort, *after* a fashion (to some extent).

(3) *In quest of, in regard to:*—

Seekers *after* God. He hankers *after* wealth. What are you *after*?[1] (what are you doing?) I inquired *after* his health. Please to see *after* (attend to) this matter. I have a man to look *after* the cattle.

(4) *As a result of*, and so, *in spite of:*—

After what you have said, I consent. Did you go then, *after* all? (denoting an *unexpected* consequence). You see that *after* all (in spite of all that was said or done) you were wrong. I succeeded *after* all (in spite of everything to the contrary). Cf. 655.

Against.

407. **Against** (*on going*, in the way) indicates *opposition*, as in 'To go *against* the stream' (metaph. for 'to be opposed to the general or popular course'), 'They complied much *against* the grain' (metaph. for 'unwillingly'), '*Against* (opposite to) the house there stands a tree,' 'Over *against* (opposite to at a distance) the park there is a lake.' Hence it marks *collision*, as 'He ran *against* me': and then mere *contact*, as 'He was leaning *against* the wall.'

It is used figuratively in the sense of—

(1) *Opposed to, in opposition to:*—

This is *against* the law. You are acting *against* your own interests. It is *against* reason to expect this. I am working *against* time (I am working in competition with time; I am working hard in order to finish within a given period). He is talking *against* time (in order to consume time). To hope *against* hope (when there are very slight grounds for hoping). There are 50 candidates this year *against* (as compared with) 30 last year. He drew bills *against* (in exchange for) merchandise shipped.

(2) *In provision for*, with reference to some necessity or danger:—

Keep your swords bright *against* the day of battle. We should lay up something *against* a rainy day (hard times).

NOTE.—In this sense, *against* was once used as a conjunction; 'It will be ready *against* you come' (in provision for your coming).

[1] Here *after* points to secrecy or evil intention; hence the question implies suspicion or slight fault-finding.

Along.

408. Along (over against in length, length-wise) indicates *motion* or *position by the side* of a thing or *in the direction of its length*:—

Rushes grew *along* the river-bank. The ships were anchored *along* shore. The army marched *along* the highway. Flowers were blooming all *along* the valley.

Among, Amongst.

409. Among (in the crowd or company of) indicates *motion to* or *position in the midst of*, as 'He fell *among* thieves,' 'I was *among* them, but not of them.' Hence it is used in the sense of—

(1) *In the number of*:—

The chiefest *among* ten thousand. These years are *among* the most shameful in our history. *Among* the blind the one-eyed is king.

(2) *By the joint action of*:—

You must settle this *among* yourselves. You have, *among* you, killed an innocent lady.

(3) *For distribution to*:—

This money is to be shared *among* you. What are five loaves *among* so many hungry people?

Around, Round.

410. Around (*on round*, in a round or circle) indicates *proximity on all sides*; it is generally used in the shortened form *round*. It denotes—

(1) *On every side of*:—

Around the house grew trees. He wore a belt *round* his waist.

(2) *Circuitously about*:—

He is travelling *round* the world. We sailed *round* Cape Horn. A murmur went *round* the audience at these words. The sparrow flew *round* and *round* the room. I got *round* him (circumvented or overpersuaded him).

411. Adverbial Uses.—*Round* is used as an adverb in the following phrases:—

You will have to go *round* (make a circuit). Spring has come *round* again. She soon came *round* (revived, as after a fainting fit). A little cold water brought her *round*. The carriage will be *round* (will be here after making a circuit) in half an hour. There was not enough fruit to go *round* (to provide for everybody). Pass the refreshments *round*. All the year *round* (from beginning to end). To pass the hat *round* (to collect money for some object). He is, taking him all *round* (in every direction, making a general estimate), one of the ablest men living. He is a clever all-*round* writer. A *round*-about turn (in the opposite direction). The Muses ... *round* about Jove's altar sing (*Milton*). He explained in a *round*-about (tortuous, indirect) way.

At.

412. At primarily indicates *external proximity* with the notion of contact actual or intended:—'He is not *at* home,' 'I fell *at* his feet,' 'He aimed *at* the tiger,' 'The dog sprang *at* him.'

Hence it is used to denote—

(1) *Proximity* in relation to *a point in space*, in the phrases:—

I am sick *at* heart. He is out *at* elbows (in a ragged, dilapidated condition). His wife is always *at* his elbow (close beside him). He had a dog *at* his heels (close behind him). Up, guards, and *at* them! (go at, attack them). He is *at* death's door (nearly dead). The invader is *at* the door (close at hand). The time is *at* hand (nearly arrived). I have my lesson *at* my fingers' ends (I know it thoroughly). I kept him *at* arm's length (at a distance; I prevented his becoming intimate with me). He is a good man *at* bottom (in his inner nature). He lays this misfortune *at* my door (attributes it to me). What are you *at*?[1] (what are you doing?) Pray make yourself *at* home (behave as if you were at home). I am quite *at* home on this topic (familiar with it). He came with a jeering crowd *at* his back (behind him). Napoleon's power lay in the fact that he had the army *at* his back (supporting him).

NOTE.—*At* is generally used with reference to small places, regarded as *points*, as 'He lives *at* Serampore,' 'He arrived *at* Chinsurah'; *in* is used with reference to large places, regarded as *spaces*, as 'He lives *in* Calcutta,' 'He arrived *in* London.' So, when they are used figuratively, *at* relates to *minor* operations, as 'He is skilful *at* football'; *in* relates to *extensive* operations, as 'He is skilful *in* war.'

(2) *Proximity* in relation to *a point in time*:—

He arrived *at* daybreak, *at* five o'clock. Wild beasts sleep *at* noon and go abroad *at* night (night-fall). *At* dusk. *At* sunset. *At* this time of day (at so late a period). He yielded *at* the eleventh hour (at a very late time). Go *at* once (at one time, without any interval; and so, immediately). *At* this (as soon as this happened), he went away in a rage. *At* first. *At* last. *At* latest. *At* earliest. *At* present. *At* all.

NOTE.—*On*, *in*, and *by* are used in relation to a *space* of time:—'*on* Monday,' '*in* the morning' (but '*on* the morning of Tuesday, the 10th,' etc.), '*by* day' (not '*at* day'). '*At* length' (after a long time, finally) belongs to (2); '*at* length' (fully, without abridgement) belongs to (5).

(3) *Proximity* in relation to *value* or *degree*:—

This horse is valued *at* Rs. 100. Interest *at* 5 per cent. He sells cloth *at* six annas a yard. Wheat is *at* Rs. 3 a bushel. I will sell this *at* cost price (at the price I paid for it). He lends money *at* a high rate of interest. He ran *at* a great pace. The horse went *at* full speed. He shouted *at* the top of his voice. The cavalry advanced *at* a trot—*at* a gallop. *At* a snail's pace (very slowly). He set my advice *at* naught (valued it at nothing, despised it).

NOTE.—Hence *at* is used in adverbial phrases often with the notion of *degree* or *reckoning* understood:—'He is a fool *at best*' (at the best

[1] Denoting some degree of fault-finding; cf. *foot-notes*, pp. 193, 200.

reckoning; taking the best view of his character). 'Life is short *at the longest*' (however long in any special case it may be); cf. 'The room was *at its fullest*.' 'I am not *at all* tired' (at all reckonings; however you regard the matter). So—*at worst, at most, at least; at all events* (whatever happens), *at any rate, at any cost, at all costs, at all risks, at all hazards.*

(4) *Proximity* in relation to the notions of *consequence* or *dependence*:—

He calmed them *at* (by means of) a word. The horse cleared the hedge *at* a bound. He came *at* my call. I can see that *at* a glance. I heard this *at* second hand (indirectly). This poem was thrown off *at* a heat (by a single, great effort). He walked ten miles *at* a stretch (with one effort). The fort was taken *at* the point of the bayonet (by a bayonet charge). He killed three men *at* a blow. I bought this *at* a venture (on the chance of its turning out well). You must be ready *at* short notice. Please reply *at* your earliest convenience. Love *at* first sight. A draft payable *at* sight. A tenant *at* will (of his landlord). I take you *at* your word (I act in dependence upon what you have said). I have always received good *at* your hands (from you). The boat is riding (or lying) *at* anchor. The ship is *at* the mercy of the storm. He lives *at* his father's expense. He was engaged *at* a salary of Rs. 100. My wealth is *at* your disposal—*at* your service. Every luxury was *at* his command (in his power, obtainable by him). When he wanted money, he stuck *at* nothing (was ready to do anything to get it). His blood boiled (his anger was excited) *at* the sight of cruelty. I jumped *at* (eagerly accepted) his offer. Drowning men catch *at* straws. The city surrendered *at* discretion (of the conquerors). Do it *at* your peril (you will incur danger by doing it).

(5) *Proximity* in relation to the notions of *occupation, situation, condition*:—

To play *at* cricket, cards, chess, etc. He is a good hand *at* essay-writing. I beat him *at* his own weapons (used his own weapons or arguments to overcome him). The storm was *at* its height. These lines are *at* right angles. He is *at* his best (in his best condition). To be *at* one's beck and call (submissive to his command). I am *at* your service (ready to do your bidding). I am *at* one (in agreement) with you in this matter. Armed *at* all points (completely armed). My mind is ill *at* ease (restless). He thwarts me *at* every turn (continually). Set *at* liberty. He was *at* the expense—*at* the trouble—of, etc. I was *at* the pains (took the trouble) to follow him. This will do *at* a pinch (in a difficulty; in default of anything better). The stag is *at* bay. He attacked me *at* a disadvantage (under conditions unfavourable to me). My business is *at* a low ebb (in a low state). I am *at* a dead set (brought to an utter standstill). He is *at* the end of his tether (has reached the limit of his resources). They are *at* cross purposes (are unintentionally acting counter to each other). He worked five hours *at* a stretch (continuously). He is *at* his last gasp—*at* the point of death. I was *at* my wit's end (hopelessly puzzled). They are *at* daggers drawn (in a state of open hostility). Gold is *at* a premium—*at* a discount (above or below par value; hence the phrases often mean very valuable or of little value). To be *at* fault, *at* a loss (not to know how to proceed in any matter; but 'to be *in* fault'=to have done wrong). The world *at* large (as a whole). The prisoner is *at* large (free). *At* random (carelessly). *At* the first blush (at the first view). *At* stake (in danger). *At* odds or *at* variance. *At* issue (in dispute *or* in a state of disagreement).

At one's ease. *At* a stand (in perplexity). *At* pleasure (whenever one pleases). *At* unawares. *At* an end. *At* war. *At* peace. *At* work. *At* leisure, etc.

Before.

413. Before (*by fore*) marks *motion* or *position in front of*, literally or figuratively :—

You must appear *before* the magistrate. He laid the petition *before* the king. Men *before* the mast (common sailors). He fell dead *before* my very eyes. *Before* God (in the sight of God). Come to me *before* 10 o'clock. You are *before* your (fixed) time. You put the cart *before* the horse (put things out of their proper order). He will arrive *before* long. Men have died of grief *before* now. The enemy sat down *before* the town (to besiege it). He advanced, and they fled *before* him (pursued by him). The ship is running *before* the wind (with the wind behind it). This is important *before* everything. He was *before*hand with me (anticipated me in doing anything).

Behind.

414. Behind (*by hind*) marks *motion* or *position at the back of*, literally or figuratively :—

The dog walks *behind* his master. The sun is *behind* a cloud. The train is *behind* (its due) time. You are *behind* the times *or* the age (do not keep up with modern ideas). To be *behind*hand (late). Do not speak evil of a man *behind* his back (in his absence). He left one son *behind* him (at his death). To be *behind* the scenes (to know the secret working of a transaction). This happened *behind* the curtain (in secret). There is something *behind* his suggestion (he has some secret or ulterior motive).

Below.

415. Below (*by low*) indicates *motion to* or *position at a lower point*, literally or figuratively :—

He went *below* the deck. He was struck *below* the knee. He is *below* me in the class. Life *below* stairs (in the kitchen). These shares are *below* par. This essay is *below* the mark (inferior to the proper standard). This poem is *below* his genius. These answers are *below* mediocrity. To sit *below* the salt (among the inferior guests). *Below* par (at a discount).

Beneath.

416. Beneath (*by* the *nether* part) indicates *motion to* or *position at a lower point*, often with the added notion of *inferiority* :—

He dived *beneath* the water. He is buried *beneath* this stone. Beasts are *beneath* man in the scale of creation. They all fell *beneath* his sword. He married *beneath* him (he married a woman of lower rank than his own). His conduct is *beneath* your notice (too low to be worthy of your notice). It is *beneath* my dignity to notice his conduct. You are *beneath* contempt (not worth bestowing even contempt upon).

Beside, Besides.

417. Beside (*by side*) indicates *motion* or *position by the side of*, as 'He walked *beside* the river,' 'Lovely Thais sits *beside* thee.' Hence it is used in the sense of—

(1) *Aside from, outside of* :—

All this is *beside* the mark—the purpose—the question. He is *beside* himself (out of his senses) with joy.

(2) *In addition to* (also in the form *besides*) :—

Besides three children at home, he has two at school. This book will be useful to others *beside* candidates for examination.

Between.

418. Between (*by twain*) means *in the middle of two* :—

I dropt it *between* my house and the station. I will come *between* twelve and one o'clock. I did not get wet, as I came *between* the showers. *Between* asleep and awake. *Between* you and me (I tell it you in confidence), I think him a fool. This matter is *between* ourselves (confidential). We can manage this *between* us (by our united action). I am *between* Scylla and Charybdis (two equally bad alternatives). What with his debts and what with his large family, he is *between* two fires (in a double difficulty). *Between* two stools, you are sure to come to the ground (*Proverb*). His speech must be read *between* the lines (it has a meaning which is not apparent on the surface). The ship was struck *between* wind and water (at the water-line, and so *metaph.* of a dangerous spot). He muttered something *between* his teeth (in a low voice).

Beyond.

419. Beyond (*by yonder*) means *on the further side of* and so *outside the limits of* :—

My home is *beyond* the sea. The life *beyond* the grave. He went *beyond* all bounds. The matter is *beyond* dispute (cannot be disputed). The result is *beyond* my expectation (better than I expected). *Beyond* all question you are right. The scene was magnificent *beyond* description. The book is quite *beyond* me (above my comprehension). It is *beyond* the power of medicine to cure him. He went into the river *beyond* his depth (so that the water was over his head). His conduct is *beyond* all praise. He was *beyond* measure (excessively) pleased. In saying this, you go *beyond* the mark (you say what is excessive).

By.

420. By indicates *proximity* (often without contact) either in connexion with rest or motion :—'He sat *by* his father,' 'I passed *by* his garden,' 'I have no money *by* me' (in my house; 'I have no money *with* me' = in my pocket). It is so used figuratively in—

I will stand *by* you (I will support you). To come *by* a thing (to acquire it). To set store *by* a thing (to put a high value upon it). To abide *by* a

decision (to act in accordance with it). We ought to do as we would be done *by* (we ought to act towards others as we desire others to act towards ourselves). I did my duty *by* him (towards him, concerning him). I say this *by* the way (beside the way; while on the way to some other and more important matter). Three yards in length *by* four in breadth. The wind is north-east *by* north.

Hence it is used to denote—

(1) *Proximity* in relation to *time* [cf. *against*, (2)]:—

I shall arrive *by* 12 o'clock (not later than 12 o'clock). He is dead and buried *by* this time (now that so much time has elapsed, and we have reached the present time). He is gone *by* now. We took a drive *by* moonlight. *By* day and night (cf. *by* land and sea).

(2) *Instrumentality, agency*:—

I can read *by* moonlight. The fort was taken *by* storm. I was completely taken *by* surprise. To travel *by* rail—*by* steamer—*by* land—*by* water. Send the letter *by* post, not *by* hand (by a messenger). His money was left him *by* will. He had six children *by* his first wife. The goods were sold *by* (not *in*) auction. This sonata is *by* Beethoven. He was conspicuous *by* his absence (said of one expected to be present). I delivered the message *by* word of mouth (orally). To learn *by* heart—*by* rote. He answered *by* return of post (by the next post after his receipt of the letter). This cloth was woven *by* hand (not by machinery). He did it *by* main force. He succeeded *by* (or *in*) virtue of his talents. He succeeded *by* dint of perseverance. I said it *by* way of a joke (jokingly). We met *by* appointment (previous arrangement). *By* all means (certainly). *By* accident (accidentally). *By* chance. *By* mistake. *By* stealth.

(3) *Manner*:—

I caught him *by* the leg. The favourite led the king *by* the nose (made him follow him blindly). He set the whole village *by* the ears (made them quarrel). We ought to take time *by* the forelock (be prompt). To take the bull *by* the horns (boldly to confront a difficulty). To lay a person *by* the heels (to shackle his feet, to put him in confinement). His life hung *by* a thread (was in great danger). He paid the money *by* instalments.

(4) *Measure, standard, amount*:—

It is 10 o'clock *by* (not *in*) my watch. He is a carpenter *by* trade. He is a doctor *by* profession. A man, Ram Chandra *by* name. *By* what name do you call him? What name does he go *by*? I go *by* (act according to) my instructions. They sell rice *by* the maund. He is dying *by* inches. They rushed out *by* hundreds. To do a thing *by* halves (partially, not thoroughly)—*by* fits and starts—*by* snatches—*by* turns. To sell *by* wholesale. The Council, *by* a small majority, passed the bill. They arrived one *by* one (cf. drop *by* drop, year *by* year, little *by* little). He is taller *by* four inches. This is not large enough *by* a long way. Too small *by* half—*by* a great deal. Larger *by* one third. *By* far the best. He escaped *by* the skin of his teeth (very narrowly). To speak *by* the book (with strict accuracy).

NOTE.—The repetition of an action was originally denoted by repeating the adverbial phrase, as *by drop, by drop*[1]; then the first *by* was omitted,

[1] Cf. 'Which doth *by little and little* deface,' etc.—*Bacon.*

and so we get *drop by drop*. Cf. 'They went *by two and two—by twos—by one at a time*'; 'He went *by himself*.' See **149**, (*a*).

(5) *Adjuration, appeal:*—

I swear *by* Heaven (near to, under the fear or binding influence of Heaven). He is a Liberal, and swears *by* Mr. Gladstone (regards him as a supreme authority). I entreat you *by* all that is holy. I beseech you *by* the mercies of God (*Bible*). *By* our Lady, I think it be so (*Shaks.*).

421. **Adverbial Uses.**—*By* is used as an adverb in—

They passed *by* on the other side. He laid (*or* put) *by* (saved) a rupee every week. Let *by*gones be *by*gones. I gave him the go-*by* (avoided him). *By* and *by* (*lit.* 'near and near,' 'very near, very soon').[1] *By* the *by* [*lit.* 'near the near' (time), 'in passing'; cf. '*by* the way' above].

For.

422. **For** (*fore*) in Old English means *before, in front of;* hence, since one who fights in front of another may either *take his place* as his companion, or act *on his behalf*, or *confront* him as a foe—*for* is used in relation to the three main notions of (1) Substitution, (2) Causality, (3) Opposition.

(1) *Substitution;* with the meanings of—

(*a*) *In the place of, instead of:*—

A lamp-post served *for* a gallows. He passed *for* a rich man (he was regarded as rich). That was meant *for* a joke. I shall take you *for* my model. I took you *for* (regarded you as) a gentleman. I mistook him *for* his brother. I knew him *for* a thief. He was sold *for* a slave. He was taken up *for* dead (as dead). I gave myself up *for* lost. I, *for* one (as far as I am concerned, at any rate), refuse to go. You may take that *for* granted. This goes *for* nothing (is of no avail). I know this *for* certain. You will be killed *for* a dead certainty (without any doubt). Once *for* all (for all occasions).

(*b*) *In exchange for:*—

An eye *for* an eye, and a tooth *for* a tooth. I bought it *for* a song (a mere trifle). You could have it *for* the asking. He sells mangoes at six *for* an anna. He only got laughed at *for* his pains. So much *for* your objections. I could not *for* the life of me (even to save my life; in spite of every effort) understand his meaning. His face is *for* all the world like a monkey's (I would risk all the world that it is like; it is exactly like). Not *for* worlds (on no consideration) would I have this known. Do not, *for* your life, advance (if you advance, it will be at the risk of your life). This is an apology *for* a dinner (a poor dinner).

(*c*) *In correspondence to:*—

I wrote down his speech word *for* word (each word of the writer answering to each word of the speaker). These two books are page *for* page and line *for* line alike. He has ten vices *for* (as an offset to) one virtue.

[1] But, in earlier English, *by and by* meant 'forthwith.'

(2) *Causality;* with the meanings of—

(*a*) *On behalf of, in favour of, in the interest of:—*

We will die *for* our king. I am *for* peace. We are *for* going at once. I shall vote *for* this candidate. Let us strike *for* liberty. He stood (was candidate) *for* Bristol at the last Elections. People should think *for* themselves (be guided by their own opinion). You must shift *for* yourself (provide for your own safety or livelihood). There was nothing *for* it but to retreat (there was no other course left). Hurrah *for* the President! He called *for* his pipe.

(*b*) *For the sake of, on account of:—*

We choose dogs *for* scent and speed. He did it *for* love of me. Anything *for* a quiet life. He could not speak *for* tears. I did not fire, *for* fear of missing. This coat is the worse *for* wear. He is the worse *for* liquor (drunk). But *for* your kindness I should be undone. If it had not been *for* your help, I should have been drowned. O *for* a muse of fire! (*Shaks.*). I am sorry *for* you. Terror felt *for* a supernatural being. Fie *for* shame!

(*c*) *In regard of, in point of:—*

For my part, I don't care what happens. He did not want *for* friends. As *for* me, I do not object. It is not *for* me to dictate. *For* anything I know, you may be right. No employer and, *for* that matter (as far as that is concerned), no workman would accept such an offer. The walls are like rocks *for* solidity. He is small *for* his age (considering his age; taking his age as the index of what we might expect). He is tall *for* his years. She is brave *for* a woman (considering that she is a woman). So much *for* Bolingbroke.

(*d*) *For the purpose of:—*

This is not fit *for* food. Quinine is good *for* fever. He is too old *for* the appointment. He is a good-*for*-nothing fellow. He did it *for* effect (to make a fine show). He sat *for* his portrait. He gasped *for* breath. *For* example. *For* instance. To ride *for* a fall (intending to fall).

(*e*) *In the direction of:—*

He started *for* Delhi. We set out *for* home. He sailed *for* Japan. I shall go in *for* the examination. It all turned out *for* the best. Follow after the things that make *for* (tend towards) peace (*Bible*). A change *for* the better—the worse.

(*f*) *To the extent of:—*

He is lamed *for* life. I have known him *for* years. I have not seen you *for* an age. It is fine *for* the present. He was silent *for* a time. *For* the time being. *For* ever and aye. *For* better, *for* worse. Do be quiet *for* once. I met him, *for* the first time, yesterday morning. I pardon you *for* this time. He is ruined *for* good and all (entirely, irrecoverably). He is good *for* 100 rupees (he is to be relied on to that amount; he will contribute so much). I ran *for* all I was worth (as fast as ever I could). They are out *for* 50 runs. He failed *for* 10,000 rupees.

(3) *Opposition*; with the meaning of—

In the face of, in spite of:—

For all his wealth he is unhappy. I will do as I please *for* all your opposition. This news is strange, but it is true *for* all that (notwithstanding all its strangeness). He is gone, *for* anything (or aught) I know. She may go to France *for* me (there will be no opposition on my part). You may do it *for* all I care. We were so far off that he might have been drowned *for* us (as far as we were concerned).

From.

423. **From** indicates *motion away from*, and thence *rest at a distance from*:—'Figs come *from* Turkey.' 'He is *from* (away from) home.'

Hence it is used in connexion with the two main notions of—

(1) *Starting-point, origin, cause*:—

He was bruised *from* head to foot. Driven *from* pillar to post (from one refuge to another; harassed). He lives *from* hand to mouth (precariously). The book passed *from* hand to hand. I sympathise with you *from* the bottom of my heart (very heartily). These buildings date *from* Akbar's time. I have watched his progress *from* his youth up. *From* a child (from childhood) he was fond of study. He was delicate *from* the cradle (from infancy). He has risen *from* the ranks (from a low social position). In Parliament he has, *from* first to last (throughout his whole career), been successful. I judge *from* his manner that he is innocent. I thought, *from* what you said, that it was so. He went *from* bad to worse. You are arguing *from* false premisses. *From* what I hear I think he is guilty. He acted *from* low motives. *From* time to time (occasionally). *From* this time onward (or forward).

(2) *Separation, distinction*:—

He is safe *from* danger; free *from* care. I prohibit you *from* doing this. This is far *from* being the case. I did not know him *from* his brother.

In.

424. **In** marks *position within*. *Motion inward* is usually indicated by *into*, though *in* is occasionally employed: as in 'to fall *in*, not *into*, love,' 'to fly *in* the face of,' 'to break *in* pieces,' 'to cast *in* one's teeth,' 'to put *in* force.'

In is used in connexion with the notions of—

(1) *Place*:—

I met him *in* the street.[1] Go *in*doors. He looked (or stared) me *in* the face. They had news of what was *in* the air (prevalent). The whole matter is *in* the air (indefinite) at present. Castles *in* the air (visionary

[1] So also '*in* the field,' because *street* and *field* are enclosed places; but we say '*on* the plain,' '*on* the maidan.'

projects). He laughed in his sleeve (secretly). A tempest (or storm) *in* a tea-pot (a great disturbance about a trivial matter). The matter lies *in* a nutshell (can be easily explained). He basks *in* the sunshine of popular favour. Her voice rings *in* my ears. The trade of Malta is a drop *in* the ocean of British trade (a very insignificant part of it). The Tsar tried to fish *in* troubled waters (to gain some advantage at a time of public confusion or disorder). To be a thorn *in* one's side (to be continually troublesome to one). He is a man *in* a thousand (such that in a thousand you would find only one like him; of rare excellence). The very name of liberty stank *in* his nostrils (was odious to him). They took the oath *in* the teeth of their principles (in direct opposition to them). He cast it *in* my teeth (reproached me with it). I repent *in* sackcloth and ashes. Children *in* arms (that are carried; that cannot walk). He is still *in* the land of the living (alive). He lives *in* clover (in abundance, prosperity). He is *in* his master's black books—good books (in favour or disfavour with him). Born *in* the purple (of royal descent). We are *in* the clutches of the robbers (completely in their power). To die *in* harness (while still at work). Cotton is a drug *in* the market (there is no demand for it). My whole future trembled *in* the balance (was in a critical condition). You have placed me *in* a false position (made me appear to be in the wrong). This office is *in* the gift of the Crown (in the power of the King to give). His indolence is bred *in* the bone (is innate in him). The news is *in* every one's mouth (is the common talk). There is something *in* the wind (covertly in preparation). 'Tis not *in* mortals (in the power of mortals; cf. 'he hasn't got it *in* him') to command success. I will do as much as *in* me lies (as I can). He is still *in* leading-strings (not his own master).

(2) *State*, hence *manner*:—

I found her *in* tears (weeping). I am *in* a difficulty. He is *in* a dilemma. I am *in* a strait. They are *in* mourning for their father. I held him *in* check. He is over head and ears *in* love. He is *in* his cups (drunk). He persevered *in* the teeth of (in spite of) all opposition. They rushed out *in* a body (all together). I have never seen him *in* the flesh (while living). My star is *in* the ascendant (I am having good fortune). The Whigs were *in* the ascendant (were powerful). This landlord is not *in* touch (in sympathetic contact) with his tenants. He knew not what ills were *in* store for him (awaited him). He took my criticisms *in* good part (favourably, without offence). His strength stood him *in* good stead (was of great advantage to him). That will stand you *in* (cost you) a large sum. I was not *in* the vein (in the mood, inclined) for study. *In* a state of nature (naked). The King travelled *in* state (with all due pomp and ceremony). The dead Queen lay *in* state at Whitehall (lay in her coffin for the public inspection). To lie *in* ambush. The country is *in* the throes of (suffering from) civil war. A leap *in* the dark (an action of which we cannot foresee the consequences). They murdered him *in* cold blood (deliberately, without sudden passion). That's enough *in* all conscience (surely). I kept him *in* countenance (gave him my support). The hounds were *in* full cry. Put that down *in* black and white (in writing; 387). He went off *in* fine (or high) feather (in good health and spirits). He is *in* bad odour (unpopular, disliked). He died *in* the odour of sanctity (with a reputation for holiness). I am *in* favour of lenity. Vice follows *in* the train (or *in* the wake) of luxury (closely attends it). He praises and blames me *in* the same breath (at the same

instant). I have a case *in* point (an apposite instance). His honesty was never called *in* question (doubted). His promises ended *in* smoke came to nothing). The new factory is *in* full swing (working busily). He does not say so *in* so many words (in exact terms). He spoke *in* no measured terms (in very strong language). His servant is *in* his confidence (is trusted by him). I cannot *in* conscience (conscientiously) do that. A change is *in* contemplation (intended). I am *in* good case (healthy, prosperous). He is *in* the good graces of (in favour with) his employer. To pay *in* cash (or *in* hard cash, in ready money). To pay rent *in* kind (in goods, not in money). *In* return for his abuse I paid him back *in* kind (in the same thing, viz. abuse). I acted *in* good faith (with sincerity). I came *in* compliance with your request. We have one thing *in* common (shared by both of us). The building is *in* course of erection (is being erected). He acted *in* defiance of (or *in* opposition to) my orders. I am acting *in* the interests (for the benefit) of the community. The whole town was *in* arms—up *in* arms (ready to fight). *In* case (if) I should not succeed, etc. *In* that case (if that happens) I shall resign. *In* case of (or *in* the event of) failure you must apply to me. Do not talk to me *in* that strain. He is *in* high spirits. His novels are *in* great request. They conversed *in* a whisper. The king was there *in* person. The enemy appeared *in* force (in large numbers). The treaty is still *in* force (valid). The corn trade is *in* a bad way (getting into a bad condition). *In* round numbers (in a number ending in a cipher, approximately). My speech was nipped *in* the bud (stopped at the outset). You are *in* the right about this. My essay is at present *in* the rough (unpolished). No one *in* his senses (not mad) would act so. Stock *in* trade (goods on hand for sale). He is rolling *in* wealth. You are reasoning *in* a circle (illogically). He is *in* a fair way (likely) to succeed. Your actions are not *in* keeping with (consistent with) your words. He was king only *in* name (not in reality). He was king *in* theory, but *in* practice his prime minister was king. *In* the name of God, I demand, etc. *In* the king's name. What, *in* the name of goodness, do you mean? I am bound *in* honour to tell the truth (it is my duty).

In is similarly used in numerous adverbial phrases:—

In a word (briefly), *in* brief, *in* advance (before it is due), *in* advance of (ahead of), *in* all respects, *in* concert, *in* haste, *in* hot haste, *in* demand, *in* exchange, *in* hand, *in* deposit, *in* earnest, *in* good earnest, *in* fun, *in* jest, *in* common parlance (in the ordinary way of speaking), *in* abeyance (in a state of suspension), *in* addition, *in* conclusion (finally), *in* fine (in short), *in* behalf of, *in* a manner (to some extent), *in* company (with other people), *in* comparison, *in* consequence, *in* consideration of, *in* place (or lieu) of, *in* detail (minutely), *in* person, *in* passing, arm *in* arm (with arms interlocked), *in* view, *in* effect (virtually), *in* good (or bad) taste, *in* train (ready to effect a certain purpose), *in* private, *in* all probability, *in* general, *in* league with, *in* season, *in* luck, up *in* arms, *in* one's element (in a congenial situation), *in* possession of, *in* prospect, *in* public, *in* confidence, *in* pursuance of, *in* office, *in* front, *in* the rear, *in* attendance, *in* fashion, *in* secret, *in* reserve, *in* sunder, *in* reason, *in* the extreme (extremely), *in* the main, *in* the long run (in the end), *in* detail (minutely), *in* the lump, *in* the mass, *in* the wrong, *in* fact, *in* point of fact, *in* truth, *in* especial, *in* particular, *in* turn, *in* vain, *in* virtue of (by the force of), *in* vogue (in use, prevalent), *in* all (taking all together), *in* unison, *in* succession (one after another).

(3) *Point of reference :—*

Increased *in* goods. Firm *in* his opinions. There is no use *in* doing this. What is your object *in* asking this question? Garibaldi fought *in* the cause of freedom. I am stinted *in* my resources. You have shown yourself to be a brave man, *in* acting as you did. You had a dear bargain *in* this horse. An interesting volume *in* the shape of "Old Calcutta" has reached us. I am disappointed *in* him. We shall have most agreeable neighbours *in* the Throckmortons (*Cowper*). He is a host *in* himself.

(4) *Time :—*

I will come *in* (after) a few minutes. He was cut off *in* the prime of life. Do not sleep *in* (during) the daytime. *In* an evil hour (unfortunately for himself) he resolved to be avenged. He goes out *in* (at some time of) the evening. *In* the fulness of time (when the time was ripe). He arrived *in* (or *at*) the nick of time (exactly at the right moment). You are just *in* time. *In* the meantime (during the interval). *In* no time (very quickly).

425. Adverbial Uses.—*In* is used as an adverb in—

The Tories are *in* (in office). This horse must be broken *in* (trained to work). Pull the horse *in* (check his speed). He is so ill that you had better call *in* a doctor. I cast *in* my lot with you. A new fashion is coming *in*. He enlisted and was sworn *in* by the magistrate (entered the army by taking the oath). He came *in* for (received) a large property at his father's death. He was drawn *in* (induced) to join the plot. The troops fell *in* (got into marching order). I fell *in* with him (met him accidentally) yesterday. His speech falls *in* with (agrees with) my opinions. You can fill *in* (insert) the details afterwards. Have you got *in* (collected) your reports? You had better give *in* (yield).

Into.

426. Into marks—

(1) *Motion or direction inward :—*

You have driven me *into* a corner (placed me in a difficult position). Show the visitor *into* the room. To enter *into* (take part in) an agreement, a conversation, a discussion, a negociation, etc. I cannot enter *into* your views (share your opinions) on this subject. I will take you *into* my confidence in this matter (trust you with the secret). He wormed himself *into* my confidence (artfully induced me to trust him). A new law has come *into* force—*into* operation. This serves for a bed and an armchair *into* the bargain (over and above, in addition). The writer has brought all his hero's good points *into* relief (given them prominence). My services were put *into* requisition (were called for). She burst (or broke) *into* a fit of laughter. The patient next fell *into* a fever. He has come *into* a fortune (inherited great wealth). These authors are thrown (or cast) *into* the shade (dimmed, outrivalled) by their successors.

(2) *Change of condition :—*

The boy has grown *into* a young man. His stern features relaxed *into* a smile. The sea was lashed *into* a fury by the storm. The name of Crœsus has passed *into* a proverb. You must render the Bengali *into* English (translate it). Your expenses shrink *into* insignificance (are reduced to almost nothing) beside his. I reasoned him *into* submission (induced him to submit by reasoning with him).

Of, Off.

427. Of, off are different forms of the same word. They indicate *motion away from* or *rest at a distance from* something: as, 'The house is within a mile *of* the town,' 'The cat jumped *off* the chair,' 'The ship is anchored *off* Madras' (at a short distance from the coast of Madras; cf. *off-shore*).

Hence *of, off* have the meanings of—

(1) *From*, with the notion of *separation*:—

To deprive, rob, bereave, strip a person—*of* a thing. To get rid *of* a thing. I acquit you *of* blame. You should break yourself *of* that habit. To miss, fail, come short, be disappointed—*of* a thing. He is clear *of* debt. You are void *of* sense. I am short *of* money (in want of it). Nothing short *of* the crown (less than the crown) would satisfy him. I fought shy *of* him (distrusted and avoided him). He is cured (or healed) *of* his ailment. I must break him *of* this habit (make him give it up). You are very wide *of* the mark. I will relieve you *of* this burden. Upwards *of* (rising from, more than) 100 rupees was subscribed. He got *off* his horse. He was thrown *off* his balance by the news (was upset, confounded). I have taken the edge *off* my appetite (diminished its keenness). He is eating *off* (or *from*) a broken plate. He was *off* his guard (not on the watch, careless). He is *off* his head (insane). The officer is *off* duty. The hounds are *off* the scent.

(2) *Proceeding from*, with the notion of *source* or *starting-point*:—

He comes *of* good family. He is a chip *of* the old block (a son with the characteristics of his father). Nothing came *of* his proposal. To buy, hire, receive, etc., a thing—*of* a person. Evil must come *of* evil. Made *of* money (very rich). He made a fool *of* himself. What do you make *of* this (what do you think it means)? To make the best *of* a bad bargain—*of* a bad business (do as well as one can about it). He made game *of* (derided) me. A play *of* Shakspere. A picture *of* Landseer (a picture painted by Landseer).[1] Give me something, *of* your charity. He is *of* right the heir. He gave it me *of* his own accord—*of* his own free will. The tree fell *of* itself (without external impulse). This is *of* the greatest importance. Resistance is *of* no avail (useless)—*of* no use. To be *of* no account (unimportant). I will take nothing short *of* (less than) 100 rupees. The amount was upwards *of* 100 rupees.

(3) *Resulting from*, with the notion of *cause*:—

He died *of* a broken heart. He is sick *of* a fever. I am sick (tired) *of* waiting. The tank is full *of* water. He acted *of* malice aforethought. This tastes *of* almonds. This smells *of* musk. I stand in awe *of* him.

NOTE.—*Of* was once used with the notion of *agency*:—'He was despised and rejected *of* (by) men' (*Bible*), 'The observed *of* all observers' (*Shaks.*).

[1] But 'A picture *by* Landseer' is preferable.

(4) *Appertaining to*, with the notions of—

(*a*) *Possession*:—

The house *of* Ram. The light *of* the sun. A slip *of* the pen—the tongue. A picture *of* Landseer (a picture owned by Landseer).[1] The battle *of* Plassey. The Council *of* Nice. The debate *of* last night. The courage *of* despair. Bread is the staff *of* life. Money is the sinews *of* war. The crack *of* doom (the end of the world). Presence *of* mind (readiness of resource). This news will be the death *of* him (not 'his death').

(*b*) *Material*, and so *distinguishing characteristic*:—

A bar *of* iron. A rope *of* sand (a feeble bond). A man *of* straw (an imaginary person). A yoke *of* oxen. A bed *of* roses (an easy, comfortable situation). A gentleman *of* the long robe (a barrister). The tug *of* war (violent conflict). A matter *of* fact. A reign *of* terror. A debt *of* honour (one that cannot be legally enforced). He has paid the debt *of* nature (died). A passage *of* arms (a warlike encounter). Rule *of* thumb (a rough, unscientific process). A matter *of* taste—*of* opinion. The burden *of* proof (the obligation of proving a statement). The sick man requires a change *of* air. He made it a point *of* honour to, etc. (he regarded it as his duty). A present *of* Rs. 10. A sum *of* Rs. 10. A matter *of* a few annas. His savings *of* Rs. 2000. A farm *of* 10 acres. An army *of* 10,000 men. A large body *of* soldiers. A man *of* courage—*of* few words—*of* parts, etc. A man *of* his word (a man who will keep his word or promise). A beast *of* burden. A bird *of* prey. A bird *of* passage. A man—*of* good family, *of* mark, *of* honour, *of* business, *of* letters. A book *of* proverbs. A labour *of* love. An act *of* grace. A matter *of* course. A card *of* (not *for*) admission. A deed *of* gift. A war *of* extermination. To show a clean pair *of* heels (to run away). He is a tower *of* strength (a strong support). He has the courage *of* his opinions (acts up to his convictions). No one should eat the bread *of* idleness (everyone should work for his living). A labour *of* love (a work undertaken without expectation of reward). A creature *of* circumstances (one at the mercy of circumstances). We are *of* one mind (agreed) on this question. His conduct is *of* a piece with (like) his creed. That was the best *of* the joke. To the best *of* my power. He is *of* age (has passed his minority). He has come *of* age. A gem *of* the first water. A chapter *of* accidents (a succession of accidents). A picture *of* Landseer (a picture representing Landseer). A bone *of* contention (a subject of dispute). He has arrived at years *of* discretion (manhood). The republic *of* letters. A matter *of* life and death (involving the risk of loss of life). A right *of* way (passage). A matter *of* consequence. A custom *of* long standing. My success is only a matter *of* time (will only take time). A child *of* three years. An apple *of* discord (a cause of strife). A bone *of* contention (a subject of dispute). The country *of* one's adoption. A prisoner *of* war. A monster *of* depravity.

(*c*) *Apposition*:—

The city *of* Calcutta (but not 'The river *of* Ganges'). The month *of* May. The name *of* Ram. The hour *of* 12 (o'clock). A reward *of* five

[1] But 'A picture of *Landseer's*' is preferable.

rupees. The cry *of* 'Land ahoy!' The prison *of* the body. A rogue *of* a lawyer (a roguish lawyer). A brute *of* a dog. A monster *of* a pig. A darling *of* a child. A jewel *of* a servant (a most valuable servant). He is a fine figure *of* a man.

(*d*) *Partition*:—

A piece *of* cheese. A picture *of* Landseer's (137). A page *of* a book. A figure *of* speech. He is a bit *of* a poet (somewhat poetical). I am something *of* an artist. I am not *of* your religion. He gave me (some) *of* his best. I should like this *of* all things. To think that you, *of* all persons, should act so!

NOTE.—In 'some *of* them,' 'three *of* them,' *of* denotes partition. But in 'all *of* them' (they all), 'both *of* them' (they both), 'three *of* them' (they three), *of* cannot be partitive, and these latter phrases must be regarded as formed by analogy with the former.

(*e*) *Point of reference, object*:—

He is light *of* foot. Hard *of* heart. Lame *of* both legs. Short *of* money. Blind *of* one eye. Intolerant *of* contradiction. Beware *of* dogs. The ship ran foul *of* (came into collision with) a rock. To have the best—*of* it, *of* him. We made the best *of* our way to Calcutta (went there quickly). To speak, tell, hear, know, think, accept, dispose—*of* a thing. I do not think much *of* this book (value it). There is no book that treats *of* (deals with) this topic. What *of* that (what does it matter that it is so)? What *of* Ram's prospects? I don't know what became *of* him (what his fate was). This is easy *of* belief. It is foolish (or wrong) *of* you to talk so. What he says *of* me is false. He is a very smart youth *of* his years (considering his youth). He is small *of* his age. He was made free *of* the society (admitted to all its privileges, etc.) You have the advantage *of* me (over me). He had the best *of* it (gained the victory).

428. Adverbial Uses.—*Off* is used as an adverb in—

He took *off* his hat. This flower gives *off* (emits) a sweet smell. Take yourself *off* (depart)! Be *off*! *Off* with you! He took me *off* (mimicked me). The captain paid *off* his crew. He was cut *off* (died) in early youth. His father cut him *off* with a shilling (left him no legacy). Cast (or left) *off* (discarded) clothes. Leave *off* (stop) jesting. The bargain is *off* (cancelled). He called *off* (tried to go back from his promise). He declared *off* (renounced the bargain). The background sets *off* (throws into relief, embellishes) the picture. A loss must be set *off* against a gain (placed over against as an equivalent). They set *off* (started) for Delhi. He broke *off* (stopped) in the middle of his story. The (marriage) engagement was broken *off*. He came *off* (at the end of the contest) victorious. The examination came *off* (took place) yesterday. The prisoner was let *off* (released). He got *off* (escaped) unhurt. I hope the rain will hold *off* (keep away). The mist cleared *off*. The gun went *off* (was discharged). Everything went *off* (took place) well. The goods went *off* (were sold) rapidly. She is very much gone *off* (deteriorated in looks). He palmed *off* damaged goods upon me (cheated me into accepting them as perfect). I laughed *off* (made light of) her fears. He has slept *off* his debauch. I have bought him *off* (released him by a money payment). These losses were written *off* (cancelled from the account). I warned him *off* (advised

him to go away). He struck *off* (printed) a hundred copies. You have hit *off* (well described in a few words) his character. He dashed *off* (wrote quickly) a letter. Let me finish *off* what I am doing. He has fallen *off* (declined) in diligence. He is well *off* (rich, prosperous). He is badly (or ill) *off*. I have known him, *off* and on (at intervals) for years.

On, Upon.

429. **On** is from the same root as *in*, and originally meant *at* or *near*, with the added notion of superposition.

Hence *on*, *upon* (up-on) are used to indicate *contact with the upper surface* in relation to—

(1) *Place*:—

Calcutta stands *on* (on the banks of) the Hoogly. Dinner is *on* the table. To play *on*—the piano, the harp, etc. This is obvious to any man with a head *on* his shoulders (with brains). It is best to be *on* the safe side (not to run any risk). He touched me *on* my tenderest point (where I am most sensitive). The army was large *on* paper (in writing or as registered, but not in reality). I am *on* the brink (or verge) of ruin (very nearly ruined). He journeyed now *on* foot, now *on* horseback. A conspiracy was *on* foot (in preparation) to murder Elizabeth. He is *on* the high road to fortune (making good progress towards success). His mind is always *on* the rack (anxious and troubled). The stolen goods were found *upon* him. While the fit was *on* him. His blood is *upon* his own head (he is responsible for his own violent death). The gate is *on* the latch (latched, not locked). The door is *on* the jar (ajar, partly open). To draw *upon* a bank. He is *on* his last legs (near to ruin or death). I stand *on* the tiptoe of expectation. This is absurd *on* the face of it (obviously). This is probable *on* the face of it (seemingly). Millions *on* millions (millions heaped on, or added to, millions) were squandered. He gave me blow *upon* blow. He is *on* the sick list. I am *on* a level with him. This is a blot *on* his escutcheon (a stain on his good name). There was no pardon for him *on* this side the grave (in this life).

(2) *Time*:—

Come *on* Wednesday. Once *upon* a time. *On* that day. *On* the morrow. *On* the eve of the battle (just before it).

(3) *Attendant circumstances*:—

I throw myself *upon* your mercy. I take my stand *upon* the facts. To stand *on* ceremony—*on* one's rights—*on* one's dignity—*on* the defensive. To be *on* one's guard. There is a run *on* the bank (its clients are hurriedly drawing out their money). I have hit *upon* a plan. This is the rule we go *upon* (follow). He dwelt *upon* the topic. We entered *upon* the discussion. I have placed him *on* short allowance (allow him little money, food, etc.). I am *on* good terms with him. I am not *on* speaking or visiting terms with him (we do not speak to or visit each other). I am *on* a familiar footing with him. You are *on* the wrong scent, or track (are misled). He has something *on* his mind (something that troubles or depresses him). Time hangs heavy *on* his hands (he does not know what to do with himself). This sour fruit sets my teeth *on* edge. My house is *on* fire. Still harping *on* (continually

talking of) my daughter! (*Shaks.*). He practised *upon* my credulity (turned my credulity to account for his own ends). He worked *upon* the king's fears (excited his fears to gain advantage for himself). He fell back *upon* journalism for a living (resorted to it). I have many demands *upon* my purse (many expenses). I call *upon* (request) you to be firm. I called *upon* (visited) him yesterday. I prevailed *upon* (persuaded) him to submit. He rang the changes *on* his poverty (talked much about it). He received a pension *on* (charged upon) the revenues of Naples. I gave him five rupees *on* account (as part payment). A price was set *on* his head (a reward was offered for killing him).

NOTE.—*On* occurs in numerous adverbial phrases:—*On* the sly (slily), *on* the wing (in flight), *on* the alert (prompt, ready), *on* a sudden, *on* a large scale (extensively), *on* view (placed for people to see), *on* one's guard, *on* the watch, *on* the move, *on* the (or an) average, *on* the look-out, *on* high, *on* foot, *on* all hands (in all directions), *on* all accounts, *on* no account (for no reason whatever), *on* account of, *on* one's account (for one), *on* one's own account (at one's own risk, for one's own benefit), *on* a par (equal), *on* duty, *on* service, *on* hand (in present possession), *on* the one hand—*on* the other hand, *on* purpose, *on* the contrary, *on* the spur of the moment (by the impulse of the moment), *on* occasion (at need), *on* the stretch (fully exercised), *on* the wane (in a state of decline), *on* the whole (considering the whole matter), *on* the point of going (just about to go).

Hence *on* acquires the notion of—

(4) *Reliance, dependence, aim*, as in 'Sheep feed *on* grass,' 'He lives *on* the bounty of his friends'; and it is used in the senses of—

(*a*) *Because of*:—

I congratulate you *on* your success. He complimented her *upon* her beauty.

(*b*) *Just after*, and so *in consequence of*:—

Upon my arrival I will see you. *On* hearing this, he fled. *On* second thoughts, I think you are right. *Upon* this, he went away in a rage. To pay *on* demand. He came *on* the stroke of twelve (just as 12 o'clock had struck). Do not bathe *on* a full stomach (just after a meal).

(*c*) *In the direction of, with a view to, against*:—

The enemy advanced *upon* the fortress. The Philistines be *upon* thee (about to attack thee), Samson! (*Bible*). The door was locked *upon* the prisoner. He made an attack *upon* me. He set his dog *on* me (made it attack me). The army marched *on* Paris. The guns opened fire *on* the fort. The troops retreated *on* the reserves. He has stolen a march *upon* me (secretly got the advantage of me). The policeman gained *upon* the runaway (began to overtake him). The love of money grew *upon* him (gradually gained power over him). I will not be hard *upon* him (treat him unkindly). He is gone *on* an errand. I was sent *on* a fool's errand (on a profitless adventure). To go *on* tour—*on* a pilgrimage. He started *on* an expedition. All advice is lost *upon* him. *On* them followed the archers. Shame *upon* you! Out *upon* it! (an exclamation of annoyance).

(*d*) *In accordance with, in dependence upon:*—

I will act *on* your suggestion—*on* your advice. He acted *on* the maxim, 'Never too late to mend.' I am acting *on* my own responsibility. I recommend this practice *on* the score (or ground) of convenience (because it is convenient). These books are arranged *on* a different plan. I wait *upon* your pleasure. He has retired *on* pension. *On* this supposition you are right. *On* the strength of your representations I bought the horse. He borrowed money *on* credit. I went there *on* the chance of seeing him. I take this *upon* trust. I promise this *on* my honour. He was liberated *on* parole (after giving a promise to return). To obtain money *on* false pretences. They gathered the wood *on* (or by) sufferance (without prohibition). I count *upon* (expect) your help. Hence, *on* thy life (at the risk of forfeiting it). I charge thee *on* thy allegiance. *Upon* my word (I assure you), you talk strangely. Calcutta is London *on* a small scale.

(*e*) *On condition of:*—

He is engaged *on* probation (on the condition that he is approved of). I will take this *on* approval. He is *on* his good behaviour (his success, etc., depends upon his good behaviour). But 'he is *on* his promotion'=his promotion depends upon how he conducts himself. This is forbidden *on* pain of death (with death as the penalty of disobedience). We live together *on* terms of equality. He lends money *on* good security.

430. Adverbial Uses.—*On* is used as an adverb in—

Go *on* and prosper. He lived *on* in spite of the accident. *On*, Stanley, *on* (go on)! (*Scott*). The beam struck him end-*on* (end foremost, not sideways). A house with water laid *on* (supplied by pipes). We will discuss this later *on*. They carried *on* a conversation. He helped *on* the cause of education. Fall *on* (begin your attack)! How are you getting *on* (progressing)? He is sure to get *on* (succeed) in the world. He kept his hat *on*. He had *on* (wore) a long robe. I cannot hold *on* (keep up my effort) in this business any longer. You must provide your own pens, ink, paper, and so *on* (and such-like, etc.; cf. 'and so forth').

Out of.

431. Out of is a compound preposition, indicating—

(1) *Motion from the interior*, and so *origin, derivation:*—

I drove him *out of* the house. I laughed him *out of* that folly. Seduced and flattered *out of* all (*Milton*). He took a leaf *out of* my book (imitated my course of action). I took the wind *out of* his sails (gained the advantage over him). You are not yet *out of* the wood (escaped from the difficulty). In this matter you are *out of* court (your action is unjustifiable). He fell *out of* the frying-pan into the fire (in avoiding one evil he fell into a greater). He paid me *out of* his own pocket (with his own money). I judge you *out of* your own mouth (from your own words). This quotation is *out of* Shakspere. He spoke *out of* the fulness of his heart (with intense feeling). He did it *out of* envy, spite, etc.

(2) *Rest on the outside*, and so, *exclusion, defect, loss:*—

I spend my time *out of* doors. He is *out of* prison. In his present position he is a fish *out of* water (out of his element or natural sphere).

The ship is *out of* her course. I shouted to him, but he was *out of* hearing (too distant to hear). *Out of* sight, *out of* mind. *Out of* debt. *out of* danger. He is *out of* breath with running. That is *out of* my reach. That dress is *out of* fashion. Quill pens are almost *out of* use. Such conduct is *out of* character (contrary to one's proper character). Mail-coaches are now *out of* date (obsolete). *Out* of use. *Out of* harm's way. *Out of* order (disarranged or contrary to rule). The time is *out of* joint (confused) (*Shaks.*). I feel *out of* spirits (dispirited) to-day. I seem to be quite *out of* it (dissociated from what is going on). *Out of* place *Out of* tune. *Out of* humour—temper—patience. *Out of* practice. *Out of* employment. *Out of* sorts (slightly ill). *Out of* health. Time *out of* mind (longer or more often than can be recollected). I am *out of* pocket (I have lost money) by that bargain. The shopkeeper is *out of* pens, pictures, buttons, etc. (has none in stock). *Out of* keeping (not in harmony). The book is *out of* print. This fruit is *out of* season. This is *out of* the question (quite impossible). He is *out of* his depth (where he cannot touch bottom). The man is *out of* his wits (insane). That horse is *out of* the running (has no chance of winning the race). He lives in an *out-of*-the-way place. This is very *out-of*-the-way (strange) conduct. *Out of* the wood (free from danger or difficulty). In season and *out of* season. I felt quite *out of* countenance (abashed). She was frightened *out of* her senses by the thunder.

432. Adverbial Uses of 'out.'—The adverb *out* is used in—

He was *out* (not at home) when I called. Find *out* (discover) the truth of this. I have found him *out* (discovered his true character). Murder will *out* (be discovered). The results will soon be *out* (published). The fire is *out* (extinguished). It rained before the day was *out* (ended). The Liberals are *out* (not in Government Office). Hear me *out* (to the end). Fight it *out*. He laughed *out* (without restraint). You are *out* (in error) in that matter. He is *out* at elbows (has holes in the elbows of his coat; hence, *metaph.* 'is impoverished'). My coat is worn *out* (not *up*, *off*, or *away*). His money is *out* on loan. Look *out* (take care)! Write *out* (copy in full) the lesson. To spin *out* a discourse. He bore *out* (confirmed) my statement. The secret leaked *out*. The fruit was served *out* to the guests. I will serve you *out* (punish you) for this. You must work *out* this problem. He eked *out* (supplemented) his income by teaching music. He is *out* and *out* (by far) the best boy in the class.

Over.

433. Over indicates—(1) *position above*:—'I wept *over* his grave'; (2) *motion above*:—'He travelled *over* the mountains'; (3) *position beyond*:—'My home is *over* the sea.'

Hence it is used with the senses of—

(1) *Above* (in place, time, or other relations):—

He is *over* head and ears in debt. He turned head *over* heels. He was absent *over* (more than) two hours. He came *over*night (during the night just passed; before bedtime yesterday). He lords it *over* me. You have great advantages *over* him. Victory *over* temptation. He rules *over* a vast empire. The excess of my expenditure *over* my income. He tried to come the critic *over* me (he set himself up as my critic).

(2) *About the surface of, across:—*

I showed him *over* my house. He ferried them *over* the river. He threw a shield *over* the delinquents (protected them). We will draw (or throw or drop) a veil *over* their sufferings (hide them from public view). I have looked *over* your composition. Think *over* my proposal. To cry *over* spilt milk (to be troubled about what cannot be helped). Let us discuss it *over* a glass of port (while drinking a glass). I will sleep *over* the matter (not decide about it till the next morning). All the world *over*.

(3) *On the other side of, beyond:—*

He lives *over* the way (on the other side of the street). There is a man *over*-board. *Over* and above these considerations. He has got *over* his disappointment. I will pass *over* this fault (not punish it). He stayed *over* the next day. I have tided *over* (surmounted—*metaph.* from a ship crossing a bar) the difficulty.

434. **Adverbial Uses.**—*Over* is used as an adverb in—

My ancestors came *over* (from Normandy to England) with the Conqueror. I will make this *over* to you (give, transfer it). He has thrown me *over* (abandoned me). I will take *over* (accept) charge of the office on Monday. Is there any money *over* (remaining, not expended)? He was bound *over* to keep the peace for six months. The storm has blown over (passed away). Come to me when school is *over*. The pot is boiling *over*. He called *over* (read aloud) the names. I gained (or won) him *over* to my side. I succeeded in talking him *over* (persuading him). You must turn *over* a new leaf (reform your conduct). He gave *over* (abandoned) the attempt. This matter must stand (or be held, or lie, or hang) *over* (be postponed) till our next meeting. When all was *over*. It is all *over* with him (all is past and gone in his case; he is ruined or dead). He is all *over* mud (is muddy on all parts of his person). He is his father all *over* (in every part of him). He read it *over* and *over* again. You shall have the money twenty times *over* (in succession).

Through.

435. **Through**, from a root meaning to bore or pierce, indicates *motion along the interior* from side to side or from end to end of a thing.

It is thus used of—

(1) *Place:—*

They walked *through* the wood. The prize slipped *through* his fingers (was lost through carelessness). He climbed in *through* the window. I will go *through* fire and water (risk any danger) on his behalf. His good name was dragged *through* the mire (was defamed). He went *through* thick and thin (was hindered by no obstacles).

(2) *Time:—*

Through the year. *Through* the ages. *Through* all eternity. *Through* life.

(3) *Attendant circumstances:*—

He passed *through* many dangers. He pulled *through* (managed to surmount) the crisis in his affairs. I can drive a coach and four *through* this enactment (infringe it with impunity). I have got *through* my lessons. He was my friend *through* evil and good report. I saw *through* his design.

Hence *through* is used with reference to that which we pass through in order to attain our object, and so gains the sense of—

(4) *By means of, in consequence of:*—

He escaped *through* his speed of foot. It is all *through* you that I failed. *Through* his industry he gained the prize.

To.

436. **To** indicates *motion towards* a point in space or time, with the notion of reaching it; as 'He is gone *to* school,' 'I shall be at home from 12 *to* 4 o'clock.' Then it denotes mere *proximity*, either of place, as 'I sat close *to* him,' or of time, past or future, as '*to*-day' (for the day).

Hence it is used to mark—

(1) *The direction* of an action or a feeling *towards* an object or state:—

Sweet *to* the taste. Our duty *to* (towards) our parents. He is a friend *to* the poor. He came *to* the rescue. All his promises came *to* nothing. They wished *to* come to terms (to an agreement). This costs next *to* (almost) nothing. All is fish that comes *to* his net (he can turn everything to his advantage). My plan came *to* nothing (failed). I have come *to* the end of my tether (have no resources left). The two parties came *to* blows (fought together). You have no right *to* the prize. I gave him the lie *to* (not *in*) his face. I am a prey *to* anxiety. I put him *to* the blush—*to* shame (made him ashamed). I broke the news *to* him. He refused consent *to* (not *for*) the production of the play. Thanks *to* his lightness of foot he escaped. The crime was laid *to* his charge (he was accused of it). Undaunted by failure, he returned *to* the charge (made a second attempt). I jumped *to* the conclusion (hastily concluded) that he was deaf. He repeated his assertion in spite of assurances *to* the contrary. He extols (or lauds) the book *to* the skies (excessively). Do not proceed (or go) *to* extremities (take extreme measures). All fell victims (or a prey) *to* famine. She would believe nothing *to* his prejudice (against him). The men were true *to* their salt (faithful to their leaders). The barons bade defiance *to* the king. They showed much hostility *to* (not *against*) my proposal. Nothing was left but an appeal *to* arms (recourse to war). What is that *to* me? I drink *to* your success. Let us sing *to* the praise and glory of God. I would *to* God I were safe at home. I am alive *to* (fully conscious of) the difficulties. The tower is nodding *to* its fall. The fort was razed *to* the ground. We fell *to* talking (began to talk) about him. May I help you *to* this dish? Stand *to* your arms. *To* arms! *To* horse! It stands *to* (or with) reason (is clearly reasonable). All present rose *to* their feet (stood up), as he entered. He rose *to* the occasion. As *to* the result, it is uncertain.

A message *to* this effect (with this purport). He is given *to* opium-eating. Face *to* face. A hand *to* hand fight. We do not see eye *to* eye (agree exactly) in everything. They both worked shoulder *to* shoulder (with united effort). To speak *to* the question. This is greatly *to* your credit. *To* his honour be it said. His life is drawing *to* a close. I took him *to* task (I asked him to explain his conduct). I called him *to* account. Do not lay this *to* my account (attribute it to me). I lost Rs. 10 *to* him last night. He took *to* his heels (ran away). He took *to* his bed. I do not take *to* him (I do not like him at first sight). He took (or laid) my remarks *to* heart (felt them deeply). Napoleon was now brought *to* bay (to a position from which escape is impossible). *To* boot (in addition). It is so reported *to* this day (down to the present time).

(2) *Reference to some standard :—*

To all appearance he is guilty. This is the same *to* all intents and purposes (practically the same). *To* the best of my recollection he used those very words. He made one son his heir *to* the exclusion of the rest. He is not in Calcutta *to* my knowledge. Much *to* my surprise I found him gone. He is, *to* my mind (in my opinion), our greatest general. She tried to soothe him but *to* no purpose (vainly).

(3) *Adaptation, consonance :—*

An occupation *to* his taste (agreeable to him). A wife *to* his mind—*to* his liking (cf. *after* one's own heart). This is nothing *to* the purpose. It is not *to* my advantage. Her figure was shown (or displayed) *to* advantage (favourably) by her dress. I am Rs. 100 *to* the good (I have made a profit or saving of Rs. 100, or I have a credit of Rs. 100). The prospect is seen *to* the best advantage from this spot. She sang *to* his accompaniment on the harp. A meteor streaming *to* the wind (*Milton*). They marched *to* the music of the band. The article was written *to* order (according to instructions). It stands *to* reason (is clearly reasonable).

(4) *Comparison ;* hence used in wagers :—

As three is *to* six, so is four *to* eight. All that they did was piety *to* this (*B. Jonson*). I'll lay four *to* one upon him. Ten *to* one (most probably) you will fail. My bow of yew *to* a hazel wand, Thou'lt make them work upon the Border (*Scott*).

(5) *Purpose :—*

I went *to* see him. I call you *to* (for, as) witness. To take *to* wife. Ready *to* one's hand (for immediate use). The nymph, *to* the destruction of mankind, Nourished two locks (*Pope*). To put one's money out *to* interest. *To* this end (with this object) he joined the Whigs.

(6) *Degree, limit :—*

They came *to* the number of fifty. They were slain *to* a man (all without exception). We will fight *to* the last man (even when all but one have been killed). To fight *to* the bitter end—*to* the death. You must pay me *to* the uttermost farthing. He was stripped *to* his shirt. She drained the cup of sorrow *to* the dregs. He remained my friend *to* the end of the chapter (all through my career or life). I was stung *to* the quick (deeply wounded) by his remark. Armed *to* the teeth (at all points). Steeped *to* the very lips in poverty (*Shaks.*). Game *to* the backbone (thoroughly courageous). Staunch *to* the core. He acted (or drew) it *to* the life. He came *to*

the minute (was exactly punctual in arriving). Exact *to* the letter. To do a thing *to* a nicety—*to* the best of one's ability. He is right, *to* a certainty. The meat is done (cooked) *to* a turn. Flatterers fooled him *to* the top of his bent (let him go on being as foolish as he would). I obeyed his order *to* a tittle—*to* a hair (with minute exactness). He loved her *to* distraction (madly). He succeeded *to* admiration. The Carthaginians were perfidious *to* a proverb (notoriously perfidious). Though I *to* dimness gaze (*Keats*). War *to* the knife. His house was burnt *to* the ground. I was frightened *to* death (excessively; but, 'frightened *into* fits').

(7) *Result:*—

Turned *to* stone. Worn *to* a shadow—*to* a skeleton. Crushed *to* death. Smashed *to* atoms. Torn *to* pieces. He was flattered *to* his ruin. He did it *to* his cost. They laughed him *to* scorn (derided him). Forget thyself *to* marble (*Milton*).

437. **Adverbial Uses.**—*To* is used as an adverb in—

Go *to* (set yourself to prove what you say—a formula of remonstrance). *To* and fro (backwards and forwards). He fainted, but was soon brought *to* (was revived; so a person 'comes *to*'). Supper was brought in, and we fell *to* (began to eat).

Toward, Towards.

438. **Toward, towards** (*tending to*) signify *in the direction of*:—'The army marched *towards* the city.' Hence, they have the senses of—

(1) *Approaching to*, and so *near to*:—

Towards the end of his book, he states, etc. I will come *towards* the close of the day. It is *towards* evening, and the day is far spent (*Bible*).

(2) *With a view to, for the aid of*:—

I have done all I could *towards* that object. I will contribute something *towards* payment of the amount.

(3) *With reference to, regarding*:—

To have a conscience void of offence *toward* God and *toward* man (*Bible*).

Under.

439. **Under** marks *position* or *motion beneath*:—'He stood *under* a tree,' 'The boat is passing *under* the bridge.' It has this meaning in—

Under cover (sheltered). *Under* lock and key (locked up). *Under* sail (with the sails spread; hence also, '*under* steam'). *Under* weigh (in motion; of a ship). *Under* arms (with arms in the hands, ready for fighting). *Under* the rose (secretly, confidentially). *Under* the sun (in the world). *Under* one's nose (before one's very face). *Under* one's wing (protection). *Under* fire (exposed to the enemy's shot). *Under* one's thumb (in complete subjection). *Under* a cloud (in trouble or disfavour). *Under* the breath (in a whisper, very softly). *Under* age (a minor).

Hence it has the meaning of—

(1) *In subordination to, subject to:*—

The English army, *under* Clive, took up its position. Many reforms were introduced *under* Lord Bentinck. Be patient *under* misfortune. Christianity was established *under* the auspices of Constantine (with his favour or patronage). I will go *under* these conditions. *Under* (or, better, *in*) the circumstances, I ask permission, etc. The bill is *under* discussion—*under* consideration. The troops are *under* orders to embark (have received orders). The medicine, *under* God (by God's providence), saved his life. He is *under* sentence of death. A post *under* Government. Given *under* (authenticated by) my hand (signature) and seal. I tell you this *under* the seal (bond) of secrecy. He labours *under* the disadvantage of a poor education. This is forbidden *under* penalty of a fine—*under* pain of death (with a fine or death as the punishment for disobedience). I am *under* obligation to him. Every city was laid *under* contribution (was made to contribute). The building is *under* (in course of) construction. I am *under* the necessity of refusing. I do this *under* protest. I am *under* the impression that this is so. He came *under* suspicion. You are *under* a delusion (or mistake) in this matter. The case is *under* trial. He is *under* arrest. He was arrested *under* a warrant from the Court. I inherited this property *under* my father's will. This item comes *under* the head of receipts.

(2) *Falling short of, less than:*—

I will not sell it *under* ten rupees. The work cannot be finished *under* a fortnight. He will not associate with any one *under* a lord. This calculation is *under* the mark (less than the true amount). These goods are *under* the mark (inferior to the standard quality).

(3) *Covered, represented, designated by:*—

He travelled *under* the name of Courtenay. A statue of Pity, *under* the figure of an angel. He deceived me *under* the mask (or colour or guise or pretence or pretext) of friendship.

440. Adverbial Uses.—*Under* is used as an adverb in—

The doctor soon brought the fever *under* (subdued it). I was obliged to knock *under* (to yield). I keep *under* my body and bring it into subjection (*Bible*).

Up.

441. Up indicates *motion to*, and sometimes *rest at, a higher point*:—

He is gone *up*stairs. I saw Ram *up* a tree. The ship sailed *up* the river. They went *up* stream. He is gone *up* country (to the interior parts). They travelled *up* the country (inland from the coast). This is very *up*hill (difficult) work.

442. Adverbial Uses.—*Up* is used as an adverb in—

To get *up* early. Let us be *up* and doing. Prices are looking *up* (have a tendency to rise). He offered (or put) *up* a prayer. To keep *up*

appearances (to maintain outwardly a good show). He brought *up* (educated) his son to his own trade. The barrister threw *up* his brief (abandoned it as hopeless). His blood was *up* (he was excited or in a passion). He fired *up* (was very angry) at this retort. To bear *up* (be firm) under difficulties. Buoyed *up* by the hope of success. I cheered him *up*. A case cropped *up* (came into notice). He came *up* (arrived, approached) soon after. He was *up* to time (he was ready at the appointed time). I caught him *up* (overtook him). The general followed *up* his advantage by capturing the fort. This does not come *up* to (equal) my expectations. He was very much cried *up* (belauded) as a musician. I will show him *up* (expose him). The newspapers wrote him *up* (praised him). I will have you *up* (prosecute you) for assault. If the weather clears *up*—holds *up*. The band struck *up* a tune. To beat *up* (collect, *lit.* by beat of drum) recruits. To train *up* (educate) a child. I sat *up* all night. The matter was hushed *up*. His name calls *up* (recalls) old memories. I must act *up* to (in accordance with) my convictions. He is quite *up* (equal) to his work. I can put you *up* (lodge you). I put him *up* to asking the question (instigated him to ask it). I put him *up* to ask the question (utilised him as a means of asking it). We put *up* (roused) several snipe. It was soon known that Gladstone was *up* (on his legs, speaking). The roads are *up* (under repair). The rebels are *up* (have risen against the Government). The hunt is *up* (afoot). The game is *up* (the plan has failed). They are *up* in arms (in open warfare). It is all *up* with me (I am lost, done for). Time is *up* (exhausted). I knocked him *up* (waked him) at 6 o'clock. I feel quite knocked (or done) *up* (exhausted). He is laid *up* (confined to his bed) with fever. I have used *up* (expended) all my paper. He tore *up* the letter. They drew *up* (composed) a petition. The troops were drawn *up* (set in array). He pulled *up* his horses. The fort was blown *up*. I must get (or learn) *up* (thoroughly) that subject. They got *up* (set on foot) a concert. This is a got-*up* (concocted) affair. This is a trumped-*up* (invented) charge. He is well *up* (learned) in mathematics. He is hard *up* (in difficulty) for funds. The matter was patched *up* (arranged somehow). I fitted *up* these rooms at great expense. I will back you *up* in this matter (support you). The judge summed *up* the case. I must wind *up* my watch. The company was wound *up* (its business was closed). To store *up*—lay *up* treasure, etc. He is much cut *up* (grieved) at his loss. The mutineers were cut *up* (killed) in large numbers. His book was cut *up* (severely criticised) in the papers. We have made *up* (composed) our quarrel. I have made *up* (set in order) my accounts. I have made *up* (compensated) his loss to him. He made *up* to me (tried to win my favour). Cast *up* (add up) the bill. When does your school break *up* (disperse for the holidays)? The meeting then broke *up*. The frost has broken *up*. He gave *up* (abandoned) the attempt. To give *up* the ghost (to die). To run *up* (incur quickly) a bill. To run *up* (erect quickly) a fence. To stir *up* strife. He was sold *up* (his property was seized and sold by his creditors). *Up* to the hilt (thoroughly, completely). He acted *up* to his principles (in accordance with them). I do not feel *up* to my work to-day (equal to doing it). He lives *up* to his income.

With.

443. With first had the meaning of *from*, still seen in '*with*hold,' '*with*draw,' 'to part *with*,' 'to differ *with*,' 'to break *with*' (quarrel), etc. Then it took the meaning of *against*, seen in

'*with*stand,' 'to be angry *with*, 'to fight *with*,' etc.[1] Lastly, it gained its modern sense of *association*, as in 'I will go *with* you,' 'I am *with* you in that matter,' *i.e.*, "I agree in your view of it.'

It is thus used in relation to—

(1) *Attendant circumstances*:—

I will come *with* pleasure. Born *with* a silver spoon in his mouth (fortunate from his birth). His interests are bound up (intimately connected) *with* mine. He heard the news *with* bated breath (in anxious silence). *With* you to help me, I shall succeed. *With* what object did you do this (What was your object in doing this)? *With* one exception, all the candidates passed. *With* (in spite of) all his diligence, he failed in the examination. England, *with* all thy faults, I love thee still (*Cowper*). *With* that (immediately after saying or doing that), he drew his sword. *With* these remarks, the speaker sat down. He works *with* a will (with zest, diligently). To do a thing *with* a vengeance (violently, excessively). He did it *with* the best intentions (meaning well). He took the reproof *with* a good grace (in a becoming manner). He entered into the project heart and soul. Will you help me?—Yes, *with* all my heart (most ...tily). He gazed *with* all his eyes (eagerly, intently). He received me *with* open arms (affectionately). He escaped *with* his life (he just escaped death). The doctor gave him quinine *with* a good result. The police came *with* a view to making enquiries. The Court sat *with* closed doors. No one could see it *with* dry eyes. They started off *with* one consent (by common agreement). *With* one voice (unanimously). *With* one accord. *With* difficulty—*with* ease.

(2) *The point of reference* of an action or a feeling:—

He is popular *with* his countrymen. It is the custom *with* the Hindus to burn their dead. What shall I do *with* it? It is all over *with* him (he is ruined, dead, etc.). I was beforehand *with* him. The decision lies (or rests) *with* you. My father is *with* God (in Heaven; no longer living). Poverty, *with* most, is self-inflicted woe (*Cowper*). Make haste *with* your lessons. I was much taken (pleased) *with* him. He made free *with* my money. What is the matter *with* you? The petition found favour *with* the king. It will go hard *with* me, if I fail to pay him (it will expose me to serious trouble). I will be even *with* you (be revenged upon you). The danger weighed little *with* him (he thought it of small importance). Do not break faith *with* me (violate your promise to me). Why do you find fault *with* me? Have patience *with* me. No arguments prevailed *with* him. Everything goes wrong *with* me to day. I will not put up *with* (tolerate) your conduct. I hope you will bear *with* me. The Thugs made away *with*[2] (killed) the travellers. Some wish to do away *with*[2] (abolish) the House of Lords. I have broken *with* him (ceased to be friends with him). I have nothing to do *with* him. What has this to do *with* the matter? (how does it affect it?) I helped him on *with* his coat. I will

[1] Cf. 'He can make a watch *with* (in competition with) any one in the trade'; 'He can write an essay *with* the best' (essay-writers).

[2] The original phrases are 'to make away,' 'to do away,' without *with*, which has crept in from confusion with the exclamatory 'Away with' below. Cf. 'Is every landmark of the country to be *done away* in favour' etc. ?—*Burke*.

close *with* (accept) your offer. This is not in keeping *with* your position (in harmony with it). Get on (proceed) *with* your lessons. I cannot get on (be on friendly terms) *with* him. He charged him *with* the crime (accused him of it). He charged him *with* the message (entrusted him with it). Get along, be off—*with* you! Off *with* his head! Down *with* him! Down *with* your dust (pay your money at once)! Down *with* the tyrant (overthrow him)! Away *with* him!

(3) *Instrumentality* :—

He did it *with* his own hands. He was elated *with* joy. The estate is saddled (burdened) *with* a debt of Rs. 5,000. To carry matters *with* a high hand (arbitrarily).

Within.

444. Within means *in the interior of* and so *inside the limits of* :—

He kept *within* doors. I will come *within* an hour (before an hour expires). He lives *within* easy distance of the town. I am *within* [illegible] months as old as you (I am less than three months your junior). He [illegible]s *within* his income (does not exceed it). The bough is *within* reach. The fort is *within* range of the enemy's guns. That is hardly *within* the range of probability (hardly ever likely to happen). *Within* the bounds of possibility (just possible). This amount is *within* the mark (below the truth, not exaggerated). The doctor was *within* call (near enough to be summoned). The ship was *within* hail. No one was *within* earshot (near enough to hear a call). The deserter was *within* an ace (or a hairsbreadth, or a little) of being shot (was very near being shot). I will flog you *within* an inch of your life (till you are nearly dead). I am *within* my rights in doing this (legally entitled to do it). They buried him *within* hearing of the waves (where their sound could be heard). Wheels *within* wheels (a complication of circumstances, motives, etc.).

Without.

445. Without means *on the outside of*, as, 'They stood *without* the door'; but in this sense *outside* has taken its place, and *without* is generally used to express *exclusion* or *deficiency* with reference to attendant circumstances only :—

He was left *without* a penny in the world. To make bricks *without* straw (to try to do something without the requisite materials or appliances). A distinction *without* a difference. He tried, *without* success, to win the prize. *Without* doubt you are right. We cannot do (manage) *without* some help. He went *without* (dispensed with) his dinner. I will come *without* fail (for certain). All, *without* exception, fled. I make this offer *without* prejudice (without detracting from my rights or previous claims). He told me his plans *without* reserve. His father gave him money *without* stint. He resigned *without* notice. He went off *without* a word. He reckoned *without* his host (he came to an unwarranted conclusion; he was disappointed). Everything was carried through *without* a hitch (smoothly).

PHRASAL USES OF VERBS.

446. There are many common English verbs which enter largely into the idiomatic phraseology of the language; and the same verb often seems to bear in one expression a very different meaning from that which it bears in another. Take, for instance, the verb *strike*; we have:—

(1) He *struck* (entered suddenly) into the conversation.
(2) A man well *stricken* (advanced) in years.
(3) The tree *strikes* (thrusts) its roots deep into the ground.
(4) The clock *strikes* (sounds the hour of) twelve.
(5) This *strikes* (impresses) me as strange.
(6) The dealer *struck* (concluded) a bargain with him.
(7) To *strike* (lower) sail, a flag, a tent.

Here it is difficult, at first sight, to understand how one verb can come to be used with such a variety of meanings, many of which seem to have little or no connexion with one another. But when we investigate the original meaning of the verb *strike*, we find that it is comparatively easy to trace all these different idiomatic uses up to that one original meaning. Thus the original notion contained in *strike* is that of *quick, regular motion*, a meaning which is seen underlying example (1) above. Then *strike* gained its common Old English sense of 'to advance,' a meaning which is seen exemplified in (2). In (3) *strike* is used transitively in the sense of 'to make to advance' and so 'to push or thrust.' The transition is easy from this meaning to the common one of 'to hit, to give a blow,' a sense which is illustrated in (4) by the *beats* of the clock's hammer which sound the hour, and which is figuratively employed in (5). 'To *strike* a bargain,' in (6), comes from the *striking* together or clasping of the hands of the two persons who make the bargain. Finally, the meaning of *strike* in (7) is derived from the swift, smooth motion given to the sail-yard, the flag, or the tent-pole in lowering them.

It forms a good exercise in idiom to classify the various idiomatic uses of a word by tracing them up to its original meaning, as in the following examples.

447. Catch.

The primary notion of *catch* is *to lay hold promptly* or *suddenly* on an object in motion, so as to retain it: as, 'to *catch* a ball,' 'to *catch* a thief,' 'to *catch* a notion.' So *catch* means to take or acquire anything that is fugitive: as, 'to *catch* a likeness,' 'to *catch* a habit.' Hence we get the meanings—

(1) *To captivate, win* :—

The soothing arts that *catch* the fair (*Dryden*). The speaker *caught* the ear (won the attention) of his audience. A *catch*-penny (a worthless thing, made to gain money).

(2) *To fasten upon, take hold of* (as wild beasts *catch* their prey):—

The fire *caught* the adjoining house. The house *caught* fire. Drowning men *catch* at straws. He *caught* at my offer (received it eagerly). If this should *catch* the eye, etc. (attract the gaze). I *caught* his eye (I watched him till he looked at me). To *catch* hold of a thing.

(3) *To take, apprehend* :—

To *catch* cold ; to *catch* the measles. To *catch* one's death of cold. The disease is *catching*. The other tribes *caught* the contagion of rebellion. To *catch* a tune (by listening to the tune to be able to reproduce it). To *catch* the spirit of the occasion. The painter has *caught* his expression in the portrait. To *catch* a trick (to imitate unconsciously a habit or action). I *caught* a glimpse of him. I *caught* the sound of distant roaring. I do not *catch* the point of your remarks. Elijah was *caught* up to heaven.

(4) *To come upon unexpectedly, to find* :—

I *caught* him in the act of stealing. He was *caught* red-handed (in the actual execution of a crime). To *catch* one napping (to gain an advantage over one through his inattention). To *catch* one tripping (making a mistake or in fault). Mind I don't *catch* you at that again. You won't *catch* me going there again in a hurry. I have *caught* myself, when thinking in the dark of a horrid spectacle, closing my eyes firmly (*Darwin*). To *catch* a Tartar (to seize or attack one who is too strong for you).

(5) *To come up with, overtake, reach* :—

To *catch* a companion (as during a walk. 'To *catch up*' or '*catch up with*' has the same meaning). To *catch* a train.

448. Take.

The primary notion of *take* is *to lay hold of, to grasp with the hand* : as, 'to *take* up arms' (to go to war). Hence we get the meanings—

(1) *To assume, accept, adopt* :—

He *took* it into his head that, etc. (he conceived the notion that, etc.). He *took* it ill or amiss (was offended). He *took* it in good part (was not offended). I *take* it (I think) you are wrong. You may *take* my word for it (you may accept my statement as true). To *take* a thing for granted. The report was *taken* as read. I *take* you at your word (I accept your statement as true, and act accordingly). I *took* him by surprise (came upon him unexpectedly). Whom do you *take* me for? He *took* his leave (departed). I must *take* leave of you (part from you). I *take* leave (venture) to say you are wrong. I *take* the liberty (or the opportunity) of telling you this. He *took* possession of the property. You must not *take* liberties with him. He *took* advantage of my weakness. To *take* cold. The house *took* fire. His imagination *took* fire (was greatly excited). To

take the alarm. My horse *took* (leaped over) the fence well. I *took* a great fancy (or liking) to him. This watch *takes* (captivates) my fancy. A *taking* (captivating) person. He is *taking* the air in his carriage. The plot *took* air (was divulged). He *took* a turn (a short walk to and fro) in the garden. His disease has *taken* a favourable turn (change). You *take* things (or the world) easily. To *take* the bull by the horns (to face a danger boldly). I must *take* my own time to do it. This business will *take* (consume) a great deal of time. You have *taken* a false step (made a blunder). His army now *took* the field (entered upon warlike operations). A tiger will *take* (enter) the water. The ship *took* (touched) the ground. She has *taken* the veil (become a nun). We must *take* stock of our position (make an estimate of it). He was quite *taken* aback (dismayed) at my refusal. *Taking* one thing with another (on an average). To *take* a person in (to cheat him). To *take* a person off (to mimic him). To *take* a person to task (to find fault with him). To *take* a thing to heart (to feel it strongly). To *take* down evidence (to record it). To *take* to one's bed (through illness). To *take* to one's heels (to flee). To *take* (kindly) to a person [to feel a (great) liking for him]. To *take* upon oneself (to presume). To *take* after (to resemble). To *take*—part, effect, heart, place, stock, wing, flight, breath, aim, fright, note, notice, care, heed, pains, counsel, exception to, objection to, pity on, refuge in, action, a walk, hold of, in hand, into account, in tow, oath, offence, revenge, service, exercise, cognisance, the initiative (start, commence), the lead

(2) *To accept without resistance, to submit to* :—

He never can *take* a joke. You must *take* the consequences. I will *take* my chance (accept what happens).

(3) *To understand* (of mental *apprehension*) :—

I do not *take* your meaning. Do you *take* me? He *took* the hint.

449. Tell.

The radical meaning of *tell* is to count; we still speak of *telling* (counting) votes and beads, and those who count the votes in Parliament are called the *tellers*. Similarly we say 'The crew consisted of twenty-five men, all *told*' (reckoned). Hence a *tale* is literally a 'number' as in 'the *tale* of bricks' (*Bible*), and 'to *tell* a *tale*' is literally to 'reckon a reckoning.' So too 'untold gold' is 'countless gold.'[1] Hence we get the meanings—

(1) *To recount, narrate a string of events* or *story, inform* :—

Tell us all about the war. Shall I *tell* your fortune (predict what is to happen to you)? I hear *tell* that he is bankrupt (I learn by hearsay). You must promise not to *tell* (reveal the secret). These withered crops *tell* their own tale (show the want of rain, without any explanation being required; they *speak for themselves*). Not a man escaped to *tell* the tale (of disaster). To *tell* tales out of school (to betray secrets). I will *tell* your father of you (inform against you). To *tell* a lie.

[1] So persons are '*told off*' (counted off, appointed) to perform certain duties or functions; and cf. 'While one with moderate haste might *tell* a hundred' (*Shaks.*).

(2) *To command* :—

I *told* you not to do so.

(3) *To determine, know* :—

I cannot *tell* what he means. How could I *tell* that?

(4) *To be reckoned* or *count towards producing a sum total*, and so *to produce an effect* :—

Every shot *tells*. A *telling* (effective) speech. The great exertion *tells* upon his strength. Your bad writing will *tell* against you in the examination. The prisoner's youth *tells* in his favour.

[A selection of verbs follows, with special idiomatic uses appended to each verb. To classify these uses according to the method pursued above will form a good exercise in idiom; the exact meaning of each phrase should be learned.]

450. Draw.

To *draw*—a tooth, a sigh, a curtain, the veil, a sword, lots, rain, blood, water, breath, a fowl, a fox, a deed, a will, a cheque, a picture, interest, profit. I have *drawn* his teeth for him. To *draw* the long bow. To *draw* on a person for an amount. The ship *draws* twenty feet of water. Hanged, *drawn*, and quartered. A *drawn* game. To *draw* one out. This play will *draw* a good house. The year is *drawing* to a close. To *draw*—an inference, a moral, a conclusion, a comparison, a parallel. To *draw* in one's horns. To *draw*—near, back. To *draw* up—troops, a treaty. It is hard to *draw* a line between things so similar. He *drew* the pen through this clause. The huntsmen *drew* the cover.

451. Get.

You must *get* your lessons by heart or you will *get* into trouble. He *got* me into trouble. I cannot *get* him to go. *Get* this letter written. The ship *got* a mile out of her course. *Get* you gone. *Get* along with you! I *got*—the start of him, ahead of him, the better of him. To *get*—drunk, rid of, quit of, clear of, ready. I *got* round him. The invalid is *getting* better. I cannot *get* to sleep. I should like to *get* at the truth. The prisoner *got* loose (or free). How are you *getting* on? You must *get* on with your lessons. I cannot *get* on with him. He *got* off unpunished. He *gets* over the ground rapidly. He has *got* over his father's death. I have *got* through my work. The chairman *got* up and made a speech. This book is well *got* up. I like the *get*-up (noun) of this book. What time do you *get* up in the morning? He *got* up an entertainment. This is a mere *got*-up affair. The story *got* (or took) wind. I *got* wind of the affair. He *got* scent of the plot. It has *got* abroad that you intend to take leave. You will *get* the worst of it. He has *got* into hot water about that business. Take care you don't *get* into a scrape. To *get* into harness. He has *got* into the way of being late. He is too ill to *get* about.

452. Give.

Do not *give* yourself airs. The sentinel *gave* the alarm. Cows *give* milk. I will not *give* countenance to such accusations. *Give* ear to my

prayer. His deeds *give* the lie to his words. He *gave* rein (or the reins or a loose) to his passion. The rider *gave* the horse his head. His conduct *gave* rise to suspicion. This occupation *gives* scope to his talents. The boy *gave* him the slip and could not be found. He *gave* vent to his rage. I *give* you my word it is true. The general *gave* the word to halt. The king *gave* audience to the ambassador. The troops *gave* battle. This fact *gives* some colour to his complaint. They *gave* chase to the stag. I *give* you credit for meaning well. This shopkeeper *gives* no credit. The nation is *given* up to idolatry. He is *given* to being unpunctual. The king *gave* a garden party. He is *given* over by the doctors. They *gave* over the pursuit. I *gave* myself up for lost. It is *given* to some to be rich and great. I urged him, but he would not *give* way. The troops began to *give* ground. *Give* place to your betters. He *gave* me a box on the ear. The mob *gave* a great shout. I *gave* him a bit (or a piece) of my mind on that subject. She *gave* birth to a son. You must *give* effect to your proposal. I *gave* him the cold shoulder. The hounds *gave* tongue. To *give* up the ghost.

453. Go.

To *go* mad. This fish has *gone* bad. To *go* naked. To *go* halves. To *go* shares with one. To *go* without one's dinner. This *goes* for nothing. This flattery *goes* against the grain with me. I fear it will *go* hard with you. To *go* ill or well with one. You must *go* through with what you undertake. This excuse won't *go* down in a court of law. So the story *goes*. As things *go*. Everything has *gone* wrong with me. As the world *goes*. To *go* in for an examination. How do prices *go*? You must not *go* upon this supposition. Dead and *gone*. Look how his colour comes and *goes*. He is very far *gone*. Let by*gones* be by*gones*. The mast *went* by the board. He *goes* by the name of Narain. You had better *go* by my advice. I gave him the *go*-by (noun). You may *go* further and fare worse. He *went* head over heels. To *go* to law. He has *gone* to the dogs (coll.). The weaker must *go* to the wall. His property is *gone* to rack. He *went* through fire and water in the king's cause. He *went* the whole length (or all lengths) in that matter. I will not *go* the length of saying that he is a rogue. I will not *go* so far as to say that. The tax-collector is *going* his rounds.

454. Keep.

You must *keep* me company. I will not *keep* company with him. I *kept* my counsel in that matter. It was hard to *keep* one's countenance. I have been *kept* in the dark about this. *Keep* clear of debt. He *kept* in the background. Even poor people like to *keep* up appearances. He could hardly *keep* body and soul together. He wished to be friendly, but I *kept* him at arm's length. After that he *kept* aloof. You must *keep* warm. His memory is *kept* alive by his works. By great frugality they *kept* their heads above water. It is unwise to *keep* late hours. He ran so fast that I could not *keep* pace with him. The mayor *kept* open house. She *kept* house for him. I wish you would *keep* to the point. I *kept* my thoughts to myself. To *keep*—one's word, one's promise. They were so poor that it was hard to *keep* the wolf from the door. I was *kept* up all night. *Keep* up your spirits. They *kept* up the old customs. He *kept* his bed (or the house) for five weeks. To *keep*—the laws, the sabbath. He *keeps* three servants. *Keep* a shop, and the shop will *keep* you. I fear I have *kept* you a long time. The soldiers marched, *keeping* step. The rowers all *kept* time. The pickets were ordered to *keep* touch. *Keep* quiet! You

should *keep* accounts and a diary. He has *kept* three terms at Oxford. You must *keep* an eye on his doings. I warn you to *keep* your distance. So slippery was it, he found it hard to *keep* his feet. I want to *keep* my hand in. The army *kept* the field. You must *keep* the peace.

455. Make.

To *make* (or drive) a bargain. To *make*—haste, choice, provision, mention, sail, war. To *make* the best of a bad bargain. He *made* the most of his spare time. You must *make* allowance for him. I *made* an appointment with him. He is *making* progress in his studies. He *made* the first advances. You are *making* a catspaw of me. He *made* a clean breast of the affair. They *made* common cause with the rebels. I shall *make* an example of him. I will not be *made* a fool of. He *makes* (or cuts) a figure in society. I *make* bold to say you are wrong. It is easy to *make* free with other people's money. He *made* light of my offer. *Make* sure that you are right. *Make* sure of your proofs. They all *made* merry at his expense. I want to *make* friends with him. He *made* game (or sport, or fun, or a mock) of my scruples. My words *made* no impression upon him. Don't *make* such a noise. I am going out to *make* some calls. He *made* love to her. When found, *make* a note of. Have you any objection to *make*? He *made* a point of taking a walk daily. You may *make* your own terms. I will *make* it worth your while to accept. Do not *make* use of such expressions. He *made* a clean sweep of the whole gang. The king *made* short work of the rebels. Get a good education and you are a *made* man. His education *made* a man of him. The result will *make* or mar us. This story is all a *make*-up. Life is *made* up of incidents. You must *make* up for lost time. They have *made* up their quarrel. Come, shake hands and *make* it up. I will *make* up my accounts. I have *made* up my mind. He has *made* a fortune in business. He *made* a merit of refusing an offer which he could not accept. Tennyson *made* a name for himself as a poet. To *make*—a remark, an observation, a proposal, an offer, a sensation. He has *made* away with (p. 226, *foot-note* 2) all his money. The children *made* believe that they were a robber band. Poor people often find it difficult to *make* both ends meet. They *made* for the French coast. Thrift and industry *make* for progress. Do not *make* mouths at me. He was *made* much of in society on account of his wealth. He was so confused that I could *make* nothing (or little) of what he said. I do not know what to *make* of this proposal. The thief *made* off with the purse. Every one *made* way for the great man. He *made* his way home. The ship *made* ten knots an hour. This *makes* no difference. You must make amends for your wrong-doing. They *made* a landing on the coast. He *made* head against his opponents. The tide was so strong that the boat *made* little headway. The ship was *making* water fast.

456. Pick.

You cannot *pick* and choose. To *pick* one's teeth. To *pick* a bone. I have a bone (or a crow) to *pick* with you. To *pick* fruit. To *pick* a pocket. *Picking* and stealing. To *pick* a person's brains. To *pick* a lock. He *picked* a quarrel with me. You must *pick*—your way, your steps. He was too indignant to *pick* his words. I have *picked* up a bargain to day. To *pick* oakum. She *picked* his character to pieces. He is always *picking* holes in people's coats. I *picked* acquaintance with him. The invalid is *picking* up. To *pick* up—a language, a livelihood, information. A white

boat *picked* out with gold. They were *picked* off by the enemy's sharp-shooters.

457. Play.

To *play*—the fool, the man, the mischief with, truant. You must *play* fair. He *played* me false (or, He *played* false with me). He was *playing* a part to deceive me. He *played* me a trick. He *played* a double game. He knows how to *play* his own game. She *played* fast and loose with him. The fountain *plays*. The fire-engine *played* on the flames. The wind *played* upon the surface of the water. He *played* the salmon. You *played* into his hand. He *plays* on the harp. You are *playing* upon words. He *played* off a fraud upon me. They are *playing* at cross purposes. In our youth we *played* at sailors. I *played* upon his love of flattery. He refused to *play* second fiddle. The candidate *played* his cards well. To *play* with fire is dangerous. Iago *played* off Othello's suspicions against Desdemona's simplicity.

458. Put.

He *put* the question to me. I can *put* two and two together. You *put* the matter in its true light. To *put*—to sea, ashore. To *put*—in mind, in practice, on trial, to rights, to the vote, to the proof, to shame, to the blush, to the sword, to death, to flight, to inconvenience, to the rout. To *put* one—on one's guard, on one's mettle. The magistrate *put* the law in force. I *put* him at his ease. I have *put* a spoke in his wheel. He *put* a veto on my visits. I have *put* him on his good behaviour. You must *put* your best foot foremost. He has *put* the cart before the horse. *Put* out the light. The child was *put* out to nurse. My money is *put* out to interest. I was much *put* out at his conduct. He has *put* out his ankle. *Put* on your coat. He *put* on airs. The crew were *put*—on short allowance, on half rations. I have been *put* upon in this matter. He was *put* to many shifts to make a living. I was hard *put* to it for enough money to pay my fare. He did not *put* in an appearance. He has *put* in for a share in the profits. I shall *put* this off till to-morrow. He *put* me off with excuses. The boat *put* off to the ship. To *put* up a friend. They *put* up at the inn. I will not *put* up with this noise. To *put* up for sale. What *put* you up to asking this question? The ship *put* about. *Put* away your books.

459. Run.

The bill has thirty days to *run*. His zeal *ran* away with his prudence. You must not *run* away with that notion. The lease is *run* out. To *run*—riot, wild, rampant, a muck (or amuck), a race, a risk, a rig. That tune *runs* in my head. His wildness of disposition *runs* in the blood. The wax began to *run* with the heat. This colour *runs* in washing. The waves *ran* high. The excitement *ran* high at the news. The ship *ran* foul of the pier and then *ran* aground. The story *runs* that, etc. Just *run* over these papers for me. The boy was *run* over by a bullock-cart. My cup *runneth* over (*Bible*). The four weeks had *run* out, and the money was due. He has *run* up a bill. To *run* up a building. The hunters *ran* down the stag. The boat was *run* down by a steamship. You are always *running* him down. He *ran* me hard for the prize. He has *run* through his fortune. He *ran* his enemy through. I have *run* short of pens and paper. Sharks frequently *run* to an enormous size. The plant is *run* to seed. His property is *run* to waste. He *ran* counter to my wishes.

I keep a *running* account. It has rained for three days *running*. A *running* fight. The army kept up a *running* fire. The *running* title of a book. The mill is still *running*. This play *ran* for fifty nights. This street *runs* east and west. Do not let your mind *run* on these topics. There is a *run* (noun) upon the Bank. Are you *running* a candidate for the post? My book has *run* the gauntlet of criticism. Do not *run* into debt. How you do *run* on!

460. Set.

To *set*—a trap, a razor, a clock, a tune, a broken leg, sail, one's teeth, the fashion, a task, an example, a precedent. He was the first to *set* foot on the island. A ring *set* with diamonds. He *set* his heart upon the marriage. He *set* them together by the ears. He *set* spurs to his horse. He *set* his dog upon me. He is *set* upon the marriage. I must *set* to work. His jokes *set* the table in a roar. He *set* me at defiance. He *set* at naught my advice. This item is not *set* down in the bill. This fellow must be *set* down. I *set* this failure down to your folly. To *set* up—a school, a howl, a claim, a type. He has *set* up his son in business. He *sets* up for a wit. He *set* the watch going. To *set* the ball rolling. That noise *sets* my teeth on edge. He *set* fire to the jungle. The jungle was *set* on fire. He will never *set* the Thames on fire. I have *set* my life upon a cast (*Shaks.*). I *set* my face against such conduct. He *set* his face as a flint. She *set* her cap at him. He *set* his hand to the document. To *set* store by a thing. To *set* a high value upon a thing. A price was *set* upon his head. To *set* one's house in order. To *set* a thing to rights. I *set* him right in the matter. The jelly (or cream) has *set*. The rains have *set* in. Let us *set* out at once. He *set* off (or forth) on his travels. Her beauty was *set* off by her attire. Men were *set* to cut a path through the jungle. A subscription was *set* on foot. This agreement cannot be *set* aside. The law must be *set* in motion. A *set* speech. He did it of *set* purpose. He abused me in good *set* terms. He *set* light by his opportunities. I *set* him at his ease. It is time to *set* about the business. He is *set* against all reforms. You may *set* your heart at rest on that matter. To *set* free. I never *set* eyes on him before. This song is *set* to music. I am hard *set* to find out the error. The current *sets* westwards.

461. Turn.

To *turn* ivory in a lathe. To *turn* an honest penny. To *turn* on—a tap, the water. He *turned* his talents to good account. He turned his attention to the subject. To *turn* prose into verse. The sick man has *turned* the corner. To *turn* tail. Success has *turned* his head (or his brain). I *turned* the tables on him. The thunder has *turned* the milk. To *turn* one's stomach. Everything *turned* upon the result of the battle. The talk *turned* on other matters. The troops *turned* the enemy's right. To *turn* a fort. He *turned* up his nose at my offer. I *turned* my horse loose. The tyrant is but a slave *turned* inside out. The boat *turned*—topsy-turvy, bottom upwards, upside down. *Turn* him out. I *turn* out at six every morning. It is time to *turn* in. The troops *turned* out 500 strong. The scheme *turned* out a failure. This machine *turns* out 100 buttons per minute. You had better *turn* to and finish the work. That evidence *turned* the scale in the prisoner's favour. He *turned* a deaf ear to my entreaties. The boat was *turned* adrift. Bismarck's marriage was the *turning* point in his life. He is *turned* sixty. The path *turns* off to the left. I have *turned* off a great deal of work. This tradesman *turns*

over Rs. 1000 a week. He has *turned* over a new leaf. *Turn* this over in your mind. He *turned* his back upon me. You should *turn* your opportunities to account—to advantage. He *turned* upon me in a fury. The political adventurer *turned* his coat. He can *turn* his hand to anything. This hard wood *turns* the edge of the saw. He then *turned* newspaper-editor. His influence with the prince was so great that he *turned* him round his finger. Even a worm will *turn*. His valour *turned* the tide of fortune.

462. Other Examples.—The following verbs are frequently found in idiomatic phraseology. It will form an excellent class-exercise to collect and classify the various phrases in which they occur :—

act	cast	fix	lead	show
bear	come	fly	leave	speak
beat	cry	gain	let	spring
bid	cut	grow	lie	stand
blow	deal	hang	look	stick
break	do	have	lose	strike
bring	drop	hold	pass	throw
burn	fall	join	pay	touch
call	fetch	knock	raise	walk
carry	find	lay	see	work

PHRASAL USES OF ADJECTIVES.

463. Dead.

(1) *Deprived of life :—*

He is *dead* and gone. More *dead* than alive (nearly dead). To wait for *dead* men's shoes (to look out for promotion upon a death). A *dead* language (a language no longer spoken, as Sanskrit). *Dead* as a door-nail.

(2) *Destitute of life :—*

Dead matter. Faith without works is *dead* (*Bible*). He is *dead* (indifferent, callous) to all sense of honour. The *Dead* (unclaimed) Letter Office.

(3) *Death-like :—*

Dead darkness. He fell into a *dead* faint (or swoon). The *dead* (noun) —of night, of winter (the death-like part, the depth of).

(4) *Motionless, inert, impotent :—*

A *dead* calm. A *dead* sleep. A *dead* halt. A *dead* weight. A *dead* lift (a lift of a lifeless thing which cannot help to raise itself; hence, an effort of sheer strength). A *dead* pull. A *dead* reckoning (a reckoning by log book, without the advantage of taking observations). A *dead*-lock (a stoppage with no power of motion left). A *dead* loss (a loss with no counterbalancing gain). I am *dead* (adv.) beat (utterly exhausted). The ball is *dead* (out of play, excluded from the game). This law is a *dead* letter (not in force, obsolete).

(5) *Unproductive, bringing no profit :—*

Dead capital. *Dead* stock-in-trade. A *dead* heat (a race in which the competitors are equal, a race without results).

(6) *Spiritless, dull :—*

Dead colouring. A *dead* fire. *Dead*-alive (half-dead and half-alive).

(7) *Monotonous, blank :—*

A *dead* level. A *dead* wall.

(8) *Sure to kill, sure to hit, sure, certain :—*

He is a *dead* shot. He is *dead* upon (sure to notice) any mistake. He made a *dead* set (a determined attack) at me. A *dead* certainty. *Dead* (adv.)—ahead, in front (exactly ahead, etc.; as, 'The wind was *dead* foul'). He was *dead* (adv., completely) against my plan.

464. Fair.

She is *fair* and false. The good ship started *fair* and free. The *fair* sex (women). The weather is *fair*. *Fair* play is a jewel. Is she *fair* or dark? She is *fair*-haired. By *fair* means or foul. He gave me *fair* (plausible) words. He is a *fair*-spoken (228) man. He is *fair* in his dealings. He is in a *fair* way to be ruined (likely to be ruined). He is on the *fair* road (or way) to ruin. This composition is *fair* (moderately good). He plays a *fair* game at chess. He bids *fair* (adv.) to become (is likely to become) a great author. He *fairly* (adv.) astonished me. I *fairly* (undeniably, actually) pushed him overboard. Make a *fair* copy of this exercise (638). My *fair* name is injured. He has acted *fair* (adv.) and square in the business. All I ask is a *fair* field and no favour. He is a *fair* subject of ridicule. Ram has a *fair* chance of winning the prize.

465. Good.

The *good* old time (or days). The *good* old rule. He died at a *good* old age. Write me a *good* (very) long letter. He stayed with me for a *good* (or for the best) part of last year. As *good* luck would have it. He is a *good*-for-nothing fellow. All in *good* time (there is no need for hurry). A *good* riddance. He pulls a *good* oar. I acted in *good* faith. Will you be *good* enough to cash this cheque? Put in a *good* word on my behalf. *Good* heavens! He was as *good* as his word. I am *good* for a 10-mile walk. He is *good* for Rs. 100. This rule still holds *good*. My promise stands *good*. I made his loss *good*. He gave me a *good* deal of trouble. He was a *good* way off. Take *good* heed to avoid him. A *good* many people. He subscribed a *good* round sum (a large sum). You must take a *good* strong dose of medicine. He arrived a *good* hour behind time. He is gone for *good* (noun). You must decide for *good* (noun) and all. He is working in *good* earnest. He has robbed me of my *good* name. We are *good* men and true. It does my heart *good* (noun) to see you. Their *good* swords are rust. A miss is as *good* as a mile. It was as *good* as a play to see them. He as *good* as refused me. I have got into his *good* graces. He is a *good* hand at (or *good* at) essay-writing. He has bought the *good*-will of the business. Do not throw *good* money after bad. I did him a *good* turn. He wished me *good* day.

466. Other examples for study :—

bad	dry	light	plain	sound
black	flat	long	quick	spare
clean	free	low	round	square
clear	great	main	simple	straight
close	hard	nice	small	tall
common	high	open	soft	white

PHRASAL USES OF NOUNS.

467. Hand.

(1) *The extremity of the human arm* :—

At *hand* (near). He offered her his *hand* (made a proposal of marriage; so, She gave him her *hand*=she accepted such a proposal). The letter was sent by *hand* (not through the post). Some commodities change *hands* (pass from one purchaser to another) many times before they are consumed. To receive at the *hands* of another (to receive from him). To wash one's *hands* of a thing (to disclaim responsibility for an event, to declare that one has nothing to do with it; derived from Pilate's action at the trial of Christ). To have clean *hands* (to be innocent). In this matter my *hands* are tied (I am not a free agent). We are in God's *hands* (at his disposal). He killed all on whom he could lay *hands*. To shake *hands* (1. in salutation; 2. as a token of reconciliation). A *hand* to *hand* fight (a fight at close quarters). *Hand* in *hand* (in close union). *Hands* off! (don't touch). *Hand* over *hand* (rapidly; from passing the hands alternately one above the other in climbing a rope). To live from *hand* to mouth (to live precariously, without provision for the future; *lit.*, using daily for food what is received by the hand). To do a thing off-*hand* (to do it without delay or hesitation; so, out of *hand*). To be *hand* and glove (also '*hand* in glove') with a person (to be very intimate with; *lit.*, as close as the glove is to the hand). To take (or have) in *hand* (to undertake). Money in *hand* (ready money). The subject in *hand* (the subject under discussion). To come to *hand* (to be received). To have on *hand* (to have for disposal or sale). We have an account of this event at first *hand* (from one who first knew about it; from the original source). To buy at second *hand* (when no longer in the first or producer's hand, not new). These are second-*hand* books (not 'used books').

(2) *That which resembles it* or *performs its office* :—

The *hand* of a clock. (Cf. 'Fancy, like the *finger* of a clock.'—*Cowper.*)

(3) *A measure of a hand's breadth* (4 inches) :—

A horse fifteen *hands* high.

(4) *Side, part* :—

On the one *hand*; on the other *hand*. It is agreed on all *hands* (by all parties).

(5) *Power of performance, agency, ability, skill* :—

To try one's *hand* at a thing (cf. 'a *handy* person'). He can turn his *hand* to anything. To bear (or lend) a *hand* (to aid). He had a *hand* in the business (was concerned in it). The business is in my *hands*. To

have one's *hands* full (to be completely occupied). To have the upper *hand* (to be superior). To carry matters with a high *hand* (to act arrogantly; so, high-*handed* = arrogant). He kept his men well in *hand* (under control). The younger men got completely out of *hand*. He made a bad *hand* of the business (mismanaged it). The Government gave the Viceroy a free *hand* (full liberty of action). He died by his own *hand*.

(6) *A performer, agent*:—

He is a good *hand* at composition. A mill *hand* (a worker in a mill). All *hands* (in a ship: all the sailors). In everything he is the Emperor's right *hand* (chief assistant).

(7) *Penmanship*:—

To write a good *hand*. A running *hand*.

468. Face.

Darkness came over the *face* of things. How can you have the *face* to tell me this? The *face* of a watch or clock. The whole *face* of the ground was covered with frost. He persevered in the *face* of all obstacles. I withstood him to the *face*. We must put a good (or bold) *face* upon it. He fled from the *face* of the king. You are flying in the *face* of authority. I set my *face* against such practices. The six *faces* of a cube. This consideration gives some *face* to his proceedings. This is absurd on the *face* of it. He made *faces* at me. They stood *face* to *face*. The troops *faced* (verb) about. He boldly tried to *face* (verb) it out. They calmly looked death in the *face*. Ruin stared him in the *face*. They cursed him to his *face*.

469. Head.

He has a *head* for mathematics. The *heads* of a discourse. Under what *head* does this item come? A *head*-stone (of a grave). At the bed's *head*. He is the *head* of the class. She has a beautiful *head* of hair. You have hit the nail on the *head*. I met him at the *head* of the street. Three hundred *head* of cattle (125). Matters have now come (or drawn) to a *head*. They sailed up to the *head* of the bay. I gave the horse his *head*. To make *head* against a difficulty. The rebellion gained (or gathered) *head*. He dragged in that topic by the *head* and shoulders [376, (*b*)]. This writer is *head* and shoulders above his contemporaries. This reservoir has a fine *head* of water. This beer has a good *head* on. These wet days my horse is eating his *head* off. She sat at the *head* of the table. Peel was now at the *head* of affairs. He did it out of his own *head*. A story has just come into my *head*. He took it into his *head* to object. Such an idea never entered my *head*. He did not know whether he was standing on his *head* or his heels. The boy fell *head* over heels. He was over *head* and ears in debt. I can't make *head* or tail of what he says. To break Priscian's *head*. Armed from *head* to foot.

470. Other examples for study:—

breath	ground	light	order	side
day	heart	line	part	time
ear	home	matter	place	way
eye	life	mind	point	word

THE PRONOUN *IT*.

471. I. The Neuter Pronoun *it*, followed by a relative clause either expressed or understood, is used in relation to a person or a thing, when it is intended that the reference should be quite indefinite.

(*a*) In questions :—

'Who was *it* (the unknown person) that you saw? There is some one at the door—Who is *it*? (that is at the door). Who is *it* that is standing near the chair? What was *it* that you said?

(*b*) In statements; where it is used as a device for emphasising the main subject of the sentence :—

It was Ram that I saw (and no one else; more emphatic than 'I saw Ram'). *It* was he that broke the window (more emphatic than 'He broke the window'). *It* is a good divine that follows his own instructions. *It* is an ill wind that blows nobody any good. *It* is I; be not afraid (*Bible*).

NOTE.—Since the relative pronoun refers to *it*, the verb of which the pronoun is the subject should be in the third person; but we do not say '*It* is you that *says* so,' but '*It* is you that *say* so,' the verb being made by attraction to agree not with *it*, but with the subject *you* which immediately precedes the relative.

(*c*) In Ballad or Lyrical poetry, where a relative clause of some sort must be mentally supplied :—

It is an ancient mariner (that is going along), And he stoppeth one of three (*Coleridge*). *It* is the miller's daughter (that I write of), And she hath grown so dear, so dear (*Tennyson*). Hark! 'Tis the twanging horn (that we hear)! (*Cowper*).

(*d*) Indefinitely in relation to a person, without being followed by a relative clause :—

It is (he is) a peerless kinsman (*Shaks.*).

Generally, this application of a neuter word to a person implies familiarity or contempt :—

'What a merry dog *it* is,' said Mr. Pickwick (*Dickens*). What a jealous old lady *it* is! (*C. Brontë*). What an ass *it* is! (*Shaks.*). *It* is the most impenetrable cur, that ever kept with men (*Ib.*).

472. II. Similarly *it* is employed either to introduce or to represent a phrase or clause. Thus it may—

(*a*) Introduce a succeeding phrase or clause (*Introductory It*) :—

It is said *that he is out of his mind*. *It* is vain *to make excuses*. *It* is six weeks *since I saw you last*. I never thought *it* possible *to act otherwise*. What is *it to be a gentleman*? *It* seems *you are wrong*.

NOTE.—*This* is similarly used (with greater emphasis):—'*This* was his aim, *to be loved rather than to be famous.*' *There* is used in a similar way to introduce the subject of a sentence:—'*There* was once a man, who, etc.,' instead of 'Once a man was, who, etc.'

(*b*) Represent a phrase or clause, whether succeeding or preceding:—

He is out of his mind, *it* (that he is out of his mind) is said. He is, *it* is said, out of his mind. If *it* (to walk) is not too fatiguing, I should like to walk. If the day is fine, *it* (that the day is fine) will be pleasant for our journey. If she will, she will, you may depend on *it* (that she will). You can do so, but I do not think *it* (to do so) right. Should he command *it* (that my gold, etc., should be, etc.), my gold, my person, and all I possess shall be at your disposal (*Prescott*).

473. III. The Pronoun *it* is used elliptically in relation to some subject or object which is understood.

(*a*) Sometimes the thing which *it* relates to is understood from the context:—

It (the sky, the weather) rains. *It* snows. *It* freezes. If *it* is fine, I shall go out. *It* (the clock) is striking six. There is nothing (or no other course) for *it* (the matter in hand) but to submit. He has got the worst of *it* (the business). But yet, the pity of *it*, Iago! (*Shaks.*). I mean to have *it* out with you (clinch the matter in dispute). How far is *it* (the distance) to your house? *It* (the season) will soon be spring. *It* (the state of the tide) is low water. *It* (the time) is too late to go. 'To be or not to be,' as Shakspere has *it* (expresses the idea). To 'gab,' as they term *it* (the practice). It is true, as Tennyson puts *it*, that, etc. Depend upon *it* (the state of things), you are wrong. Out upon *it*! I was too late, as ill luck would have *it* (the event). This is so, as I take *it* (the matter). There is no help for *it*. How is *it* (the state of things generally) with you to-day? *It* (life, success, etc.) is all over with him. We were late as *it* (the state of things) was. Please make *it* convenient to call to-morrow. I was, as *it* were, thunderstruck at the news. If *it* were not for my lameness, I should walk. I fear *it* will go hard with him. Have *it* your own way (do as you like). Did you have a good time of *it* in the vacation? I see you are still at *it* (engaged upon the business in hand). He was in for *it*, and could not draw back (he was committed to a certain course).

(*b*) Sometimes *it* forms a sort of Cognate Object (210) to a verb:—

Courage, father, fight *it* (the fight) out (*Shaks.*). She (the mole) courseth *it* (her course) not on the ground as the rat or mouse (*Addison*). Come and trip *it* (your tripping) as you go (*Milton*). They frolic *it* along (*Cowper*). We can walk *it* perfectly well (*Goldsmith*). You will have to rough *it* (to have a rough time). I was hard put to *it* (was in a great difficulty). He carries *it* (conducts the affair) with a high hand. Run *it*! Go *it*!

NOTE.—In a similar way, *it* is placed after nouns when they are used as verbs, to represent the cognate notion:—'Lord Angelo dukes *it* well' (*Shaks.*). 'Whether the charmer sinner *it* or saint *it*' (*Pope*). To foot *it*. To queen *it*. To prince *it*. He lords *it* over his fellows.

THE PREPOSITION *BUT*.

474. But means '*by* the *out*side,' and is used as—

(1) *Preposition*, with the sense of 'except':—

All is lost *but* honour. I cannot *but* go (I cannot do anything *except* go; I must go). *But* for you, I should have perished (*except* because of you, *or* if it had not been for you, I should have perished).

NOTE.—Owing to a confusion with *but* when used as a conjunction, the preposition *but* often takes a nominative case after it, as 'And was not this the Earl?—'Twas none *but he*,' as if 'but he' were for 'but it was he.' Similarly, 'All *but he* had fled' (*Hemans*) is a confusion of (1) 'All had fled *but him*,' and (2) 'All had fled, *but he* had not fled.'

(2) *Adverb*, with the sense of 'only':—

There is *but* a step between me and death (*Bible*). I can *but* go (I can *only* go; I can at least go).

NOTE.—Here we must remember that a negative has dropt out before *but*, and that the sentence should properly be 'There is *not but* a step' (there is *not* anything *except* a step; there is *only* a step).

(3) *Subordinative Conjunction*, with the sense of 'except that,' 'unless,' 'that not,' 'who not,' 'which not':—

He was all *but* killed (he was everything *except that* he was killed; everything happened to him except killing; he was very nearly killed).

Your conduct is anything *but* kind (your conduct is anything else *except that* it is kind; it is not at all kind).

Never dream *but* ill must come of ill (never dream anything *except that* ill must come of ill).—*Shelley.*

Not *but* he acted for the best (I do not say anything *except that* he acted for the best).

It never rains *but* it pours (*except that* it pours; without pouring).

Perdition catch my soul *but* I do love thee! (may perdition catch my soul *unless* I love thee).—*Shaks.*

It cannot be *but* you are right (it cannot be *except that* or otherwise than that you are right).

Earth does not hold a lonesome glen So secret *but* we meet again (so secret *that* we shall *not* meet; so secret as to prevent us from meeting).—*Scott.*

On the housetops was no woman
But spat towards him and hissed;
No child *but* screamed out curses
And shook its little fist.—*Macaulay.*

(there was no woman *who* did *not* spit, and no child *who* did *not* scream).

NOTE.—This *but* was originally followed by *that*, which was afterwards omitted for the sake of brevity:—

I cannot believe *but that*[1] you are wrong,

where *but* is a preposition having for its object the clause 'that you are wrong.' After verbs of 'doubting,' 'denying' (with or without a negative)

[1] Sometimes *what* is used for *that*:—'I do not say *but what* you are right about this.' But this is colloquial rather than literary.

but (or *but that*) as well as *that* may be used, and there is no difference in meaning, only in emphasis, between—

(*a*) I doubt *that* you are wrong = I doubt (have misgivings about) the fact that you are wrong.
(*b*) I doubt *but* you are wrong = I doubt everything except the fact that you are wrong.
(*c*) I do not doubt *that* you are wrong = I do not doubt the fact that you are wrong.
(*d*) I do not doubt *but* you are wrong = I do not doubt anything contrary to the fact that you are wrong.

(4) *Co-ordinative Conjunction*, with the sense of 'still,' 'however,' 'on the other hand':—

He is poor *but* honest.
I love him, *but* he hates me.

NOTE.—This adversative use of *but* easily grew out of its prepositional use: thus 'I am sorry to punish you, *but* (conj.) you must learn to obey' would be, in older English, 'I am sorry to punish you *but* (prep., = except) *that* you must learn to obey.'

THE ADJECTIVE *ALL*.

475. All is used as—

(1) *Adjective*, with the sense of 'the whole quantity or number of,' 'every,' 'any':—

All flesh is grass (*Bible*). *All* hell shall stir for this (*Shaks.*). *All* mine is thine. He works *all* day *all* the year. *All* these things are against me (*Bible*). *All* thoughts, *all* passions, *all* delights (*Coleridge*). Men shall say *all* manner of evil against you (*Bible*). He is beyond *all* controversy the first.

NOTE.—We can say 'we *all*' ('*all* we' is archaic) or '*all* of us' or 'we *all* of us':—

We *all*
All of us
We *all* of us
} complain of the shortness of time.

(2) *Substantive Pronoun*, with the sense of 'everybody,' 'everything':—

Death comes to *all*. Then I and you and *all* of us fell down (*Shaks.*). *All* that glitters is not gold. Is that *all* you can give? Above *all* (more than anything else) do not quarrel. I was surprised that he came at *all* (in any degree; on any consideration). He was not at *all* (in any way; to any extent) offended. I could not hear anything at *all* (anything whatever). The tree fell to the ground, nest, eagles, and *all* (and everything else). He lost his purse, money and *all* (including his money). Singing, laughing, ogling, and *all* that (everything of that kind). You must decide once for *all* (all purposes or occasions); cf. 'for good and *all*'. For *all* (notwithstanding that) you are my man, go wait upon my cousin Shallow (*Shaks.*). There were in *all* (in the whole number; counting everybody)

a hundred persons present. Her child was *all* in *all* to her (everything in everything to her; her whole existence).

NOTE.—For 'after *all*,' see **406**, (4), **655**; for '*all* but,' see **474**, (3); and for '*all* of them,' see **427**, (4), (*d*), *note*.

(3) *Noun*, with the sense of 'a whole,' 'an entirety':—

The widow gave her *all* (all her property). I have lost my little *all*. He is my *all* (everything to me). Her child was her *all* in all.

(4) *Adverb*, with the sense of 'completely,' 'quite':—

I live *all* alone. You are *all* too late. I am *all* obedience (obedient or ready to obey in every respect). Like Niobe, *all* tears (*Shaks.*). I was *all* ear (*Milton*). You are wrong *all* the same (nevertheless). He is *all* for (entirely in favour of) resisting. I told you *all* along (throughout; from first to last) how it would be. He did it with a grace *all* his own. It was *all* your fault. Trust me not at all or *all* in all. *All* at once (=suddenly).

NOTE.—For '*all* one,' see **146**; for '*all* the better,' see **258**; and for '*all* over,' see **434**.

CHAPTER IX.

MINOR AIDS TO COMPOSITION.

THE ALPHABET.

476. The English alphabet consists of twenty-six[1] letters, which represent two great divisions of sounds:—

(*a*) *Vowels*, or *open* sounds, which can be produced without the help of a consonant.

(*b*) *Consonants*, or *closed* sounds, which cannot be pronounced without the help of a vowel.

477. Its Imperfection.—The English alphabet is imperfect because it is—

(*a*) *Inconsistent*; since the same letters are used to represent different sounds: thus the letter *a* represents five simple vowel sounds, as in *fate*, *fall*, *far*, *fat*, *want*; and letters are often written but not pronounced, as in *k*now, *h*our, autum*n*, island, of*t*en, si*g*n, ta*l*k, h*e*art, lam*b*, throu*gh*, ya*ch*t, *w*rap, *p*salm.

(*b*) *Redundant*; since the same sounds are represented by different letters or combination of letters: thus the sound of *a* in *far* is the same as the sound of *e* in *clerk*, of *au* in *aunt*, and of *ea* in *heart*; and the sound of *g* in *gave* is the same as the sound of *gu* in *guile* and of *gh* in *ghost*.

ACCENT.

478. Accent is the stress laid upon a *syllable* in pronouncing a word:—*commendátion*, *recommend*. It must not be confounded

[1] Of these, three letters, *c*, *q*, *x*, are superfluous: since *c* can be represented by *k* or by *s*, *q*(*u*) by *kw*, and *x* by *ks*.

with *Emphasis*, which is the stress laid upon a *word* in pronouncing a sentence:—'I come to *bury* Caesar, not to *praise* him.'

479. Variation of Accent.—(1) In many words, mostly of Latin origin, difference of accent makes up for the want of inflexional endings, and serves to distinguish—

(*a*) A *Noun* from a *Verb*; the noun being accented on the first syllable, and the verb on the second—

NOUN.	VERB.	NOUN.	VERB.
ábstract[1]	abstráct	éxport	expórt
áccent	accént	éxtract	extráct
áffix	affíx	férment	ferménт
áttribute	attríbute	ímport	impórt
aúgment	augmént	ímpress	impréss
cólleague	colléague	íncense	incénse
cóllect	colléct	íncrease	increáse
cómmune	commúne	ínsult	insúlt
cómpound[1]	compoúnd	óbject	objéct
cómpress	compréss	pérfume	perfúme
cóncert	concért	pérmit	permít
cónduct	condúct	pérvert	pervért
cónfine	confíne	préfix	prefíx
cónflict	conflíct	prel'ude	prelúde
cónserve	consérve	prem'ise (s)	premíse (z)[3]
cónsort	consórt	pres'age	preságe
cóntest	contést	pres'ent	presént
cóntract	contráct	prod'uce	produce
cóntrast	contrást	prógress	progréss
cónverse	convérse	proj'ect	projéct
cónvert	convért	prótest	protést
cónvict	convíct	reb'el	rebél
cónvoy	convóy	rec'ord	recórd
décrease	decreáse	ref'use (s)	refúse (z)
défile	defíle	rétail	retáil
déscant	descánt	súbject	subjéct
des'ert	desért[2]	súrvey	survéy
dígest	digést	tórment	tormént
díscount	discoúnt	tránsfer	transfér
éscort	escórt	tránsport	transpórt
éssay	essáy	úndress	undréss
éxile	exíle	úpset	upsét

(*b*) An *Adjective* from a *Verb*; the accents being various.

ADJ.	VERB.	ADJ.	VERB.
ábsent	absént	diffúse (s)	diffúse (z)
altérnate	álternate	fréquent	frequént
close (s)	close (z)	loath (or loth)	loathe
cónsúmmate	cónsummate		

[1] Also used as an adjective. [2] The noun *desért* (merit) is a different word.
[3] So, *excúse* (s) is the noun; *excúse* (z) is the verb.

(*c*) A *Noun* from an *Adjective*; the noun being accented on the first syllable, and the adjective on the second.

NOUN.	ADJ.	NOUN.	ADJ.
Aúgust	augúst	min'ute	minúte
cómpact	compáct	prec'edent	precédent
éxpert	expért	súpine	supíne
ínstinct	instínct		

NOTE.—*In'valid* is the noun, *inval'id* is the adjective.

480. (2) Sometimes there is no difference of accent:—

assáy, consént, hérald, respéct, cómment, suppórt (*nouns* and *verbs*)
cóncrete, pátent (*adjectives* and *nouns*)
exáct (*verb* and *adjective*)
contént (*adjective*, *noun*, and *verb*)

481. (3) Difference of accent occasionally marks a distinction of meaning:—

cónjure, *to juggle*	conjúre, *to implore*
gállant, *brave*	gallánt, *courteous*

SYLLABICATION.

482. The division of words into syllables is governed by pronunciation, and not by etymology. Thus we divide *preface* into *pref-ace*, *anklet* into *ank-let*, in accordance with their pronunciation, and not into *pre-face*, *ankl-et*, in accordance with their etymology. Compare *la-ment'* and *lam'-en-ta'-ble*; *pho'-to-graph* and *pho-tog'-ra-phy*; *me-chan'-ic* and *mech'-a nism*; *fi'-nite* and *in'-fin-ite*.

NOTE.—(1) Dissyllabic terminations that are sounded as one syllable should be so divided: as in—fam-il'-*iar*, so'-*cial*, po-ten'-*tial*, re'-*gion*, po'-*tion*, pen'-*sion*, right'-*eous*, cap'-*tions*, spa'-*cious*, o'-*cean*, sup-*plied'*.

(2) In words ending in double consonants, the consonants are not separated in syllabicating their derivatives: *fall*, *fall-en*; *miss*, *miss-ing*; *pass*, *pass-ive*. But—*sob*, *sob-bing*; *sup*, *sup-per*.

PUNCTUATION.

483. Punctuation, in writing, answers to pauses or variations of tone in speaking, the object in each case being to make the sense clear. It is also a guide to the grammatical construction of a sentence, by helping to show the relation of its different parts to one another.

484. The Full Stop (.) is used—

(1) At the end of a complete sentence:—

Time and tide wait for no man.

(2) After abbreviations and initials:—

A. D. for 'Anno Domini'; *Inst.* for 'instant'; *W. T.* Smith, *Esq.*; Edward *VII.* is King.

485. The Colon (:) is used—

(1) After a statement, complete in itself, when it is followed by another statement or series of statements connected with it (without a conjunction) by way of *enumeration*, *example*, *consequence*, *cause*, or *antithesis*:—

They endured the greatest hardships: they were short of provisions; they were half dead with cold; night was coming on.
The subject generally precedes the verb: as, "Ram reads his book."
They are infatuated: to reason with them is vain.
No man should be too positive: the wisest often err.
The artillery lead the van: the rear is composed of infantry.

NOTE.—Also when the *general* statement comes *after* the *particular* statements, the colon is used before it:—'They were short of provisions; they were half dead with cold; night was coming on: these were the hardships they had to endure.' The enumeration may consist of *words*:—'The following are feminine: sow, duck, ewe, hind.'

(2) Before quotations when not immediately dependent on the verbs that introduce them:—

The inscription ran as follows: "This is the tomb of Cyrus."

486. The Semi-colon (;) is used—

(1) Between co-ordinate clauses with different subjects, when they are not connected by conjunctions:—

The carcases of horses and camels might be counted by hundreds; the plain was strewn with arms that had been thrown away in the flight; the roads were crowded with fugitives.

(2) Between co-ordinate clauses connected by conjunctions, when their parts are divided by commas:—

The plain, where the battle took place, was strewn with arms, broken and blood-stained; and the roads were crowded with fugitives, few of whom were unwounded.

NOTE.—But in 'He pushed, pulled, beat, kicked the ass, but it would not stir,' commas are sufficient, since all the verbs have the same subject.

487. The Comma (,) is used—

(1) To separate from the rest of the sentence phrases or clauses used as Adjuncts:—

Lord Wolseley, *the general of the forces*, ordered an advance.
The regiment, *full of enthusiasm*, dashed forward.
Clad in complete armour, the duke rode at the head of his troops.
Ram, *having spent all his money*, returned home.
The river having been crossed, the army resumed its march.
They soon overtook the enemy, *who were in great disorder*.
He, *the only field officer present*, took the command.
The proverb, "*Seeing is believing*," is not always true.

NOTE.—When a relative clause is restrictive (185, *note*), no comma should be used:—'This is the man *that I saw yesterday*'; 'Every one *whose opinion I value* thinks so.' Descriptive titles often take no comma:—'William *the*

Conqueror,' 'Paul *the Apostle*.' Similarly, 'The Emperor William,' 'A man *full of conceit* is to be avoided,' without commas.

(2) Between two or more words or phrases, not connected (except the last two of a series) by *and*, that have the same grammatical relation to the sentence :—

Horse, foot, and marines were in one camp.
A *long, narrow* lane led to the house.[1]
They were all *well armed, in good spirits, and eager for the fight.*
The stores were *collected, forwarded, and served out* at once.
Then, when all was ready, the signal was given.

NOTE.—When such words go in pairs, connected by *and*, each pair is followed by a comma :—'*Rifles and bayonets, spades and axes, drums and trumpets*, littered the ground.' Similarly, repeated words require a comma between them :—'I will *never, never* consent.'

(3) To separate an adverb clause from a principal clause :—

He won the prize, *because he worked diligently.*
When next you see him, give him this.

NOTE.—In short sentences the comma may be omitted :—'Pay me *before I go.*'

(4) Often after adverbial phrases at the beginning of a sentence :—

On the arrival of the general, the troops presented arms.

(5) After a noun clause used as subject to a verb, when clearness demands it :—

Whatever is, is right.
To be continually on the watch to find fault and to give no praise to honest effort, shows an unkind disposition.

(6) Before and after words, phrases, or clauses let into the body of a sentence :—

This, *then*, is the state of the case.
They did not, *however*, succeed in their attempt.
He died, *appropriately*, on the eve of the French Revolution.
The enemy, *in accordance with their usual tactics*, harassed us at night.
When, *as we had expected*, we found the place deserted, we retired.
He was, *as it were*, the king of the party.
I am, *to tell the truth*, quite at a loss.
'Be off,' *said he*, 'and take your goods with you.'

(7) Between co-ordinate clauses with different subjects, connected by *and*; or between co-ordinate clauses with the same subject, connected by some other conjunction :—

His mother is dead, and his father is an old man.
He gained the prize, though he had little time for study.

NOTE.—But 'He shot at a pigeon and killed a crow,' without a comma, since the verbs have the same subject. Cf. example in 488, *note*.

[1] When two adjectives are similar in meaning, the comma may be omitted:—'He is a *great burly* man.'

(8) Before and after vocative cases, except when passion or emotion is to be expressed (489):—

Come here, *boy*, and sit down.
I am, *Sir*, your obedient servant.

(9) After both of two prepositions used with a single noun:—

He studied hard *for*, and came out first *in*, the Examination.

(10) To indicate the omission of words logically necessary to the construction:—

To err is human: to *forgive*, divine.
This is the camp of the English: *that*, of the French.

(11) Before direct quotations:—

He said, "I am your friend."

NOTE.—In the Indirect form no comma is needed:—'He said that he was my friend.' 'The proverb that seeing is believing is not always true'; see (1).

488. **The Note of Interrogation** (?) is used after direct questions:—

Where are you going?

but not after indirect questions:—

He asked me where I was going.

NOTE.—It is placed after the last only of two or more questions joined by *and*:—'Where are you going, and why are you running?'

439. **The Note of Exclamation** (!) is used after vocative cases in emotional appeal, after phrases or sentences uttered with emotion, and after rhetorical questions that do not require an answer (hence it is oftener employed in Poetry than in Prose):—

Earth! render back from out thy breast A remnant of our Spartan dead.
This folio of four pages, *happy work!*
Oh, how shall man appear before his Maker!

490. **The Dash** (—) is used—

(1) To mark an abrupt break in a sentence:—

Here lies the great—false marble, where?
Nothing but sordid dust lies here.

(2) After or before an enumeration of several particulars, when all are summed up in one common expression:—

The cotton mills of Lancashire, the wool manufactories of Leeds, the foundries of Sheffield—these are what make the wealth of England.
Everything is lost—money, health, friends, reputation.

(3) To indicate a significant pause, made to emphasise what follows :—

The hero of the story is rich, clever, charming but—a gambler.
The two rivals met at last—in a prison.

(4) To indicate a parenthesis, one dash being placed at the beginning, and one at the end :—

He described—and he was a long time about it—what had happened in my absence.

(5) To indicate the repetition of a word or a notion :—

I wondered at his errors—errors which could so easily have been avoided.
This is a wonderful picture—perhaps the most perfect that has ever been painted.

491. Brackets [()] are used, like dashes, to enclose a parenthesis :—

He gained from Heaven ('twas all he wished) a friend.

NOTE.—Expressions like 'I replied,' 'said he,' are marked off by commas only, not brackets. Brackets also mark off words used in explanation :—'I will come on the 15th (Thursday) at 10 o'clock.'

492. The Apostrophe (') is used to mark the omission of a letter or letters, mostly for the sake of shortness :—

Boy's for 'boyes' (**131**), *o'* for 'of' (as in 'two *o'* clock'), *tho'* for 'though,' *don't* for 'do not,' *doesn't* for 'does not,' *didn't* for 'did not,' *haven't* for 'have not,' *isn't* for 'is not,' *won't* for 'will not,' *can't* for 'cannot,' *shan't* for 'shall not,' *couldn't* for 'could not,' *I'll* for 'I will,' *I'm* for 'I am,' *I've* for 'I have,' *he's* for 'he is,' *'tis* and *it's* for 'it is,' *he'd* for 'he would' or 'he had,' *we're* for 'we are,' *we've* for 'we have,' *you're* for 'you have,' *'twill* for 'it will,' *'twas* for 'it was,' *let's* for 'let us,' *ma'am* for 'madam,' *lov'd* for 'loved,' *fall'n* for 'fallen,' *gu'st* for 'guest' (but *canst*, *dost*, *mayst*, *hadst*, *couldst*, *shouldst*, *wouldst*, without any apostrophe). For poetic abbreviations, see **729**, (*d*), (*e*), (*f*). Also write *teens*, not *'teens*.

CAPITAL LETTERS.

493. Capitals are used at the beginning of—

(1) The first word of every new sentence.

(2) The first word of every line of poetry.

(3) The first word of a quotation :—
Solon said, 'Know thyself.'

(4) Proper names and proper adjectives :—
India, Indian. Shakspere, Shaksperian.

(5) Personified objects :—

O *Death* ! where is thy sting ?

(6) Months, days of the week, seasons, festivals :—

March. Friday. Spring. Midsummer Day. The Poojah Holidays.

(7) Titles of honour or office, descriptive titles, forms of address in letters :—

Mr. Jones. Lord Ripon. His Honour the Lieutenant Governor. William the Conqueror. Charles the Bold. Edward the Seventh. My dear Sir. Dear Madam. My Lord Bishop.

(8) Titles of books, newspapers, poems, etc. :—

The Holy Bible. The Daily News. Paradise Lost.

(9) The name of the Deity (and its epithet) or a pronoun that stands for it :—

But chiefly *Thou*, O *Spirit* ! instruct me, that I may assert *Eternal Providence*.

(10) Terms used technically :—

Political Economy. The Parts of Speech. The Reformation.

(11) The pronoun I and the interjection O.

UNDERLINING.

494. Underlining in writing is equivalent to italics in printing. It is used—

(1) To emphasise a word or words :—

I will *never* consent to such a proposal.

NOTE.—It is better, wherever possible, to rely upon the *position* of the word for emphasis, and to write 'Never will I consent to such a proposal.'

(2) To indicate the name of a book or a periodical :—

Have you read Bacon's *Essays* ? I take in *The Daily News*.

NOTE.—In this case quotation marks can be substituted :—Bacon's "Essays."

(3) To show that a word or expression is foreign :—

A *virâ voce* (oral) Examination. An *al fresco* (open air) entertainment.

(4) To show that a word is specified, or spoken of as a word :—

The original meaning of *miscreant* has become obsolete.

NOTE.—Here too quotation marks can be substituted :—The meaning of "miscreant."

SPELLING.

Rules.

495. Rule I. Final *-e* is dropped before a suffix beginning with a vowel:—*leave, leav-ing; construe, construe-ing; cure, cur-able.*

Exceptions.—Final *-e* is retained—

(*a*) In all words ending in *-ce, -ge,* before suffixes beginning with *a, o,* or *u,* if the soft sound of *c, g* is to be retained:—*peace, peace-able; courage, courage-ous;* but *practice, practic-able.*

Note.—We write *singe, singe-ing; swinge, swinge-ing,* to distinguish them from *sing-ing, swing-ing.* We also find *age-ing* and *centre-ing.*

(*b*) In all words ending in *-ee, -oe, -ye*:—*agree, agree-able; hoe, hoe-ing; eye, eye-ing.* But *free, free-er.*

Note.—Monosyllables in *-ie* change *-ie* into *-y* before the suffix *-ing*:—*die, dy-ing; lie, ly-ing; tie, ty-ing; vie, vy-ing* (or *vie-ing*). But *hie, hie-ing.*

(*c*) In many words before the suffix *-able,* to show that the root vowel of the word has a long sound:—*sale, sale-able; debate, debate-able.*

496. Rule II. Final *-e* is retained before suffixes beginning with a consonant:—*care, care-ful; excite, excite-ment.*

Exceptions.—Words in *-dge, -le, -ue, -ve,* drop the *-e* final:—*judge, judg-ment; whole, whol-ly; due, du-ly; awe, aw-ful.*

497. Rule III. Monosyllables in *-ll* drop the final *-l* before suffixes beginning with a consonant:—*full, ful-ly; well, wel-come.*

Exceptions.—Monosyllables in *-ll* do not drop the final *-l* before the suffix *-ness*:—*ill, ill-ness; still, still-ness; dull, dullness* and *dulness.*

498. Rule IV. Monosyllables in *-ll* drop the final *-l* when used as suffixes:—*roll, en-rol; fill, ful-fil.*

Exceptions.—Many monosyllables retain the final *-l*:—

Fall: *be-fall, down-fall* (but *of-fal*).
Call: *mis-call, roll-call.*
Well: *fare-well, un-well.*

499. Rule V. Monosyllables ending in a consonant preceded by a single vowel, double the final consonant before a suffix beginning with a vowel:—*sit, sitt-ing; dip, dipp-ed; run, runn-er; god, godd-ess.* Also *wool, wooll-en.*

500. RULE VI. Polysyllables accented on the last syllable and ending in a consonant preceded by a single vowel, double the final consonant before a suffix beginning with a vowel:—*refer, referr-ing; omit, omitt-ed.*

Exceptions.—Many words in *-l*, although not accented on the last syllable, double the final letter:—*travel, travell-er; libel, libell-ous; jewel, jewell-er; carol, caroll-ing;* but *unparallel-ed.* Also *worship, worshipp-er, worshipp-ed; rivet, rivett-er; bias, biass-ed.*

501. RULE VII. Words in *-y* preceded by a consonant, change the *-y* into *-i* before all suffixes except *-ous*:—*dry, dri-ed; deny, deni-al; lady, ladi-es; merry, merri-er, merri-ly, merri-ment; gloomy, gloomi-est, gloomi-ness; jolly, jolli-ly, jolli-ty; beauty, beauti-ful* (but *beaute-ous*). But *-y* preceded by a vowel remains unchanged:—*boy, boys; valley, valleys.*

Exceptions.—(*a*) Some monosyllables in *-y* preceded by a consonant have two forms before suffixes:—*dry, dry-ly* and *dri-ly, dry-er* and *dri-er.*

(*b*) Some words in *-y* preceded by a vowel, change the *-y* into *-i* before a suffix beginning with a vowel:—*pay, pai-(e)d; say, sai-(e)d; gay, gai-ety* (also *gayety*); *soliloquy, soliloqui-es; colloquy, colloqui-es* (but *guy, guys*). Also, *day, dai-ly.*

NOTES.

502. Ie, ei.—The diphthongs *ie* and *ei*, when they have the *ee* sound, are often confused. The rule is that *i* precedes *e*, except after *c*. Thus—*field, yield, siege, liege, believe, achieve, mien, fierce, brief, chief, grief, niece:* but (after *c*)—*ceiling, deceive, conceit, receipt.*

Exceptions.—Either, neither, leisure, plebeian, seize, weird.[1]

NOTE.—To help the student's memory the rule may be given thus:—

Except after *c*,
Put *i* before *e*;
But—*leisure, seize, neither,*
Plebeian, weird, either.

503. -ceed, -cede.—Words in *-ceed* and *-cede* introduced before the 16th century are spelt *-ceed*:—*exceed, proceed, succeed;* later words are spelt *-cede*:—*accede, concede, intercede, precede, recede, secede.*

[1] *Counterfeit* is not one of these exceptions, as the *ei* has not the true *ee* sound; so with *surfeit, forfeit,* pronounced *surfit, forfit. Either, neither, leisure* are also pronounced *īther, nīther, lezh'-ure.*

504. **-our, -or.**—Most words in *-our* and *-or* are derivatives from Latin words in *-or* through Norman French words in *-eur*.

Some retain the Norman French *u* :—*arbour, ardour, armour, clamour, colour, honour, humour, labour, odour, rancour, valour, vapour, vigour*.[1]

Others have reverted to the Latin spelling :—*error, horror, languor, liquor, squalor, stupor, tenor, torpor, tremor*.

505. **-er, -or** (denoting persons).—Words in *-er* are generally formed with the English suffix *-er*, or through the Norman French *-eur* :—*adventurer, believer, biographer, player*.

Words in *-or* are generally such as represent words formed with the Latin suffix *-or* (often preceded by *t* or *s*) :—*actor, assessor, auditor, censor, professor, speculator*.

NOTE.—Observe also—*bachelor, councillor, creditor, donor, emperor, governor, oppressor, orator, sculptor, surveyor, survivor, tailor, warrior*.

Some words take *both* suffixes :—

Accepter—acceptor, asserter—assertor, detecter—detector, detracter—detractor, exhibiter—exhibitor, exterminater—exterminator, granter—grantor, promiser—promisor, relater—relator, vender—vendor, visiter—visitor, voucher—vouchor, warrenter—warrantor.

506. **-able, -ible.**—The following words end in *-ible*, whereas a much larger number end in *-able* :—

Accessible, admissible, audible, combustible, compatible, comprehensible, contemptible, credible, defensible, discernible, divisible, eligible, fallible, flexible, forcible, horrible, incorrigible, indelible, indivisible, invincible, irresistible, legible, permissible, possible, responsible, sensible, visible.

507. **-ce, -se.**—The rule is that *-ce* is used in nouns, *-se* in verbs :—

-ce :—*advice, device, licence, practice* (nouns).
-se :—*advise, devise, license, practise* (verbs).

508. **-el, -le** are liable to confusion :—

el :—angel, chapel, chisel, gospel, lintel, shekel.
le :—angle, apple, tussle, people, cattle, sickle.

509. **-re (=-er).**—Words in *-re*, pronounced *-er* :—

Accoutre, acre, calibre, centre (also *center*, American), fibre, lucre, lustre, manœuvre, massacre, meagre, mediocre, metre, mitre, nitre, ochre, ogre, reconnoitre, sabre, saltpetre, sceptre, sepulchre, sombre, spectre, theatre.

[1] Many of these words drop the *u* before a suffix :—*laborious, humorist*, etc.; but *colourable*. We have both *honourable* and *honorable, armourer* and *armorer*; but *armorial* only.

510. -ory, -ary.—The suffix *-ory* is generally added to stems in *-s* or *-t* :—*curs-ory, audit-ory, consolat-ory, hist-ory.*

Exceptions.—(*a*) *-ary* is added, when *n* precedes the final *-t* of the stem :—*comment-ary, compliment-ary, element-ary.*

(*b*) *-ary* is added to stems ending in *-s* or *-t* in the following words :—

Adversary, caravansary, commissary, dispensary, glossary, hereditary, limitary, military, monetary, necessary, notary, proprietary, salutary, sanitary (*but* sanatory), secretary, solitary, tributary, voluntary, votary.

511. -ic.—Some words in *-ic* add *k* before suffixes :—*frolic, frolick-ing* (but *frolic-some*); *mimic, mimick-ing*; *traffic, traffick-er*; *physic, physick-ed*; *picnic, picknick-ed.* But *comic-al, tragic-al, historic-al*, etc.

512. In-, en- (*im-, em-* before *b* and *p*) are liable to confusion. Some words take both forms, some take *in-, im-* only, and some take *en-, em-* only.

(*a*) *In-, im-* or *en, em* :—

Inclose—enclose, incrust—encrust, indorse—endorse, reinforce—re-enforce,[1] inquire—enquire,[2] ingrain—engrain, insnare—ensnare, insconce—ensconce, insure—ensure,[3] inthral—enthral, intrust—entrust, intwine—entwine, intwist—entwist, inweave—enweave, intrench—entrench, incase—encase, incircle—encircle, imbrue—embrue, impanel—empanel, imbitter—embitter.

(*b*) *In-, im-* only :—

Include, increase, incur, indite, induce. indulge, infer, infect, infest, inflate, inflame, infold, infringe, infuse, inhale, inject, inscribe, insert, insist, inspect, intone, invest, inveigh, invoke; imbibe, imbue, immure, impede, impel, impair, impeach, impend, imperial, imprint, imprison, improvise, impale, impoverish.

(*c*) *En-, em-* only :—

Enact, encamp, enchant, encompass, endear, endow, engage, engrave, enjoin,[4] enhance, enlarge, enlist, enrage, enrich, ensue, entice, entitle, entreat, envelop; embalm, embark, embrace, embroil, employ, embezzle.

513. -ent, -ant.

(*a*) Words in *-ent* :—

Adherent, apparent, benevolent, clement, competent, component, confident (adj.), consequent, continent, convenient, correspondent, current, dependent (adj.), descendent (adj.), eminent, evident, excellent, expedient, impotent, incipient, incumbent, ingredient, innocent, latent, obedient, orient, parent, patient, penitent, pertinent, potent, precedent, president, prevalent, provident, recurrent, redolent, resident, reverent, salient, sentient, solvent, sufficient, transient, transcendent.

[1] But *enforce* only. [2] But *inquest* and *inquisition* only.
[3] But *insurance* only. [4] But *injunction*.

(*b*) Words in *-ant* :—

Abundant, arrogant, aspirant, complaisant, compliant, confidant (noun), defendant, dependant (noun), descendant (noun), disputant, dominant, emigrant, extravagant, extant, litigant, pedant, petulant, protestant, tenant, vagrant.

514. Anomalies.—The following may be noticed :—

Deceive, deceit	*but*	receive, receipt.
Suffer, sufferance	,,	hinder, hindrance.
Pure, purity	,,	sure, surety.
Pure, purify	,,	rare, rarefy (*and* rarify).
Mountain, mountainous	,,	villain, villanous (*and* villainous).
Murder, murderous	,,	monster, monstrous.
Thunder, thunderous	,,	idolater, idolatrous.
Murderer, murderess	,,	emperor, empress.
Duke, dukedom	,,	wise, wisdom.
Mire, miry	,,	fire, fiery.
Dexterous	,,	ambidextrous.
Proceed	,,	procedure.

515. Double Forms.—Some words are spelt in two ways, one of which is more correct than the other.

CORRECT.	LESS CORRECT.	CORRECT.	LESS CORRECT.
analyse	analyze	mosquito	musquito
apostasy	apostacy	mould	mold
attar (of roses)	otto	negotiate	negociate[3]
aught	ought[1]	net (cf. *neat*)	nett
balk	baulk	paralyse	paralyze
basin	bason	pedlar	pedler
brahman	brahmin	plaster	plaister
brasier	brazier	potato	potatoe
by the by	by the bye	pygmy	pigmy
calligraphy	caligraphy	reindeer	raindeer
chaps (jaw)	chops	resin	rosin
cider	cyder	show	shew
cipher	cypher	siphon	syphon
contemporary	cotemporary	siren	syren
curbstone	kerbstone	skulk	sculk
decrepit	decrepid	skull (head)	scull
despatch	dispatch	somersault	somerset
dike	dyke	stupefy	stupify
ecstasy	extasy, ecstacy	surloin	sirloin
endue (cf. *endow*)	indue[2]	surname	sirname
handiwork	handywork	tire (of a wheel)	tyre
hibernate	hybernate	tiro	tyro
lackey	lacquey	trapan (ensnare)	trepan[4]
licence (noun)	license	visor	vizor
lodestar	loadstar	whisky	whiskey
lodestone	loadstone		

[1] But *nought* is commonly used. [2] *Indue* means to *put on*, as a dress.

[3] But *negociation*—since it is derived from the F. *negociation*, and not directly from the L. *negotium*—is the correct form.

[4] *Trepan* means 'to use the trepan,' a small circular saw employed in surgery.

516. Indifferent Double Forms.—The following double (or treble) forms of spelling may be used indifferently. Some of them, however, are marked (M) as the more usual in *modern* writing; some are marked (C) as being *contracted* or weakened forms of the original words.

alchymy alchemy (M)	coppice copse (C)	idyll idyl (C)	programme program (C)
almanac (M) almanack	develope develop	jail (M) gaol	reinforce (M) re-enforce
apophthegm apothegm (C)	disc disk	janissary (M) janizary	sergeant[4] serjeant
bauble (M) bawble	felly felloe	jaunty (M) janty	seamstress sempstress (C)
bay-window[1] bow-window	fetich fetish	jostle (M) justle	sled sledge sleigh (C)
booze (M) boose	frith firth	lacquer (M) lacker	spew spue (M)
borough (M) burgh	garrote garrotte	lanch launch (M)	spinach spinage (C)
briar brier	gauge gage	lithesome lissome (C)	stanch staunch
burden (M) burthen	garish (M) gairish	loath loth (C)	stedfast (C) steadfast
burgeon bourgeon	gauntlet (M) gantlet	manikin mannikin manakin	subtle (M) subtile subtil
caldron cauldron	gourmand (M) gormand	mediæval medieval	tarpauling tarpaulin (C)
carcass carcase	gray grey	mizzen mizen (C)	thresh thrash[5]
cess-pool sess-pool	guild (M) gild	moustache (M) mustache	treadle treddle (C)
checker chequer (M)	hiccough hiccup	murky (M) mirky	trowsers trousers (M)
choir (M) quire	hotch-potch[2] hodge-potch	palanquin (M) palankeen	wale weal
clew clue (M)	hough hock	pourtray[3] portray (M)	woeful (M) woful
coolie cooly	hyena hyæna		

[1] A *bay-window* is a window with a *bay* or recess; a *bow-window* is a *bowed* or curved window.

[2] The true form is *hotchpot*.

[3] But *portrait*, not *pourtrait*.

[4] *Sergeant*, in the army or police; *serjeant*, in a legal sense.

[5] When the beating is applied to a person rather than to corn, *thrash* is used.

517. Misspellings.—The following words are often misspelt:—

accommodation	corroborate	indict	repetition
aghast	cruise	inveigh	rheumatic
agreeable	cypress	jeer	righteous
aisle	dearth	jeopardy	sanitary
artisan	destroy	jewelry	sceptic
ascetic	dexterous	journey	schedule
awkward	dialogue	knoll	scintillate
beggar	dilapidated	knowledge	scholar
besiege	dissyllable	lettuce	scythe
bicycle	drowsy	lozenge	sensitive
bleach	faint	magazine	separate
boulder	fascinate	mantelpiece	sewer
browse	fiery	medicine	stalactite
bylaw	furlough	monkey	staunch
calendar	furniture	muscle	syllable
chagrin	gibe	mutineer	symptom
chandelier	goodbye	mystery	tariff
chapel	grate	mythical	veil
chimney	grocer	niece	vigorous
clamorous	guild	oculist	villany
coarse	handsome	pamphlet	vinegar
college	hoarse	piebald	whether
committee	holiday	privilege	whoop
comparative	horde	putrefy	woollen
comparison	humorous	rehearse	wreak
competitive	independent	remedy	yacht

PRONUNCIATION.

518. Names of Letters.—The names of letters in the English alphabet afford, in many cases, but a slight clue to the sounds of the letters when used in forming syllables, and the *names* of the letters should be taught quite separately from their *sounds*. The names of the following letters are often mispronounced:—

The name of	C	should be pronounced	*See*	not	*Shee.*
,,	F	,,	*Eff*	,,	*Epf.*
,,	G	,,	*Jee*	,,	*Zheh.*
,,	H	,,	*Aitch*	,,	*Etch.*
,,	J	,,	*Jay*	,,	*Zhay.*
,,	Q	,,	*Kew*	,,	*Kee-ew.*
,,	V	,,	*Vee*	,,	*Bhee.*
,,	X	,,	*Eks*	,,	*Eksh.*
,,	Y	,,	*Wy*	,,	*Ou-ai.*
,,	Z	,,	*Dsed*	,,	*Dshed* or *Jed.*

NOTES.—*C, S, X.* In pronouncing the names of these letters care must be taken to give the *sibilation* or hissing sound clearly, and to avoid the sound of *sh*.

G, J. The *sh* sound must not be heard. The surface of the tongue must be pressed against the palate.

Q. Pronounce (as near as possible) as *one* syllable, not as two separate syllables.

V. The lower lip must be pressed against the upper teeth and not against the upper lip.

Z. The *j* sound or the *sh* sound must be carefully avoided. Only the tip of the tongue should touch the palate and a hissing sound should be emitted.

519. **Sounds of Letters.**—The sounds of the following letters when used to form syllables are often mispronounced:—

Au is mispronounced *ah*:

August is wrongly sounded as *Ahgust.*

Dg is mispronounced *j*:

Judgment is wrongly sounded as *juzment.*

Ea is mispronounced *ah*:

Early is wrongly sounded as *ahrly.*
Earnest ,, ,, *ahrnest.*

P is mispronounced *f*:

Depth is wrongly sounded as *depth.*

I (short) is mispronounced *ee*:

It is is wrongly sounded as *eet ees.*

J is mispronounced *z*, *zh*:

Jealous is wrongly sounded as *zealous.*
Jury ,, ,, *zhury.*

O, with *ū* sound before *r*, is mispronounced *o* in *or*:

Work is wrongly sounded as *wawrk.*

S (and *C*) is mispronounced *sh*, *z*:

Assume is wrongly sounded as *ashume.*
Crimson ,, ,, *crimshon.*
Proposal ,, ,, *proposhal.*
Treason ,, ,, *treashon.*
Sword ,, ,, *shord.*
Consumption ,, ,, *conszumption.*
Magnificent ,, ,, *magnifishent.*

Sm, *St*, at the beginning of a word, are mispronounced *esm*, *est*:

Small is wrongly sounded as *e-small.*
Strict ,, ,, *e-strict.*

V is mispronounced *b* or *vw*:

Verandah is wrongly sounded as *berandah.*
Verb ,, ,, *vwerb* or *verve.*
Very ,, ,, *vwery.*

W is mispronounced *oo* or *v*:

Weep is wrongly sounded as *oo-eep*.
Wool ,, ,, *oo-ool*.
Where ,, ,, *vair*.

NOTE.—So *one*, pronounced *wun*, is called *on* or *un*, and *woes* is confused with *owes*.

Y final is mispronounced *ee*:

Lady is wrongly sounded as *ladee*.

X is mispronounced *ksh*:

Saxon is wrongly sounded as *sakshon*.
Axiom ,, ,, *axshiom*.

Z is mispronounced *j* or *dzh*:

Zero is wrongly sounded as *jero* or *dzhero*.

520. Ch is generally *soft*, being sounded nearly as *tsh*:—*chase, charter, chess, chin, church, churl, achieve, anchovy, archbishop, niche, ostrich.* But—

(1) It is *hard*, being sounded as *k*, when it represents the Greek *ch*:—*chaos, chemist, chimera, chorus, chord, chameleon, chyle, ache, archangel* (**44**), *distich, lichen, mechanics, tribrach.*

(2) It is sounded as *sh* in many words taken from the French:—*chaise, chagrin, chamois, champagne, chandelier, chaperon, charade, charivari, charlatan, Charlotte, chateau, chemise, chevalier, chicanery, chiffonier, chivalry, machine, fetich, brochure.*

(3) It is silent in the words *drachm, schism, yacht*; it is sounded as *kw* in *choir* (kwīr) and as *j* in *spinach* (spināj).

521. G is *hard* before all vowels in words of Teutonic origin; in non-Teutonic words it is *hard* before *a, o, u*, and *soft* before *e, i, y*. Thus:—

(1) It is *hard* in the Teutonic words—*gear, gewgaw, geyser, gibberish, gibbon, gig, giggle, gill* (of a fish), *begin, ghost.*

(2) It is *soft* (=*j*) in the non-Teutonic words—*gesture, gibbet, giblet, gill* (a measure), *gimcrack, gin, gist, gymnasium, gypsum, gypsy, gyrate, apogee, endogenous, frugiferous, homogeneous, indigenous, plagiarise.*

Exceptions.—(*a*) It is *soft* before *a* in the non-Teutonic word *gaol* (now often spelt, as pronounced, *jail*) and before *i* and *y* in the Teutonic words *gibe, gyve, stingy.*

(*b*) It is *hard* before *e, i*, and *y* in the non-Teutonic words *Gehenna, gibbous, gingham, gizzard, misogynist.*

522. Sch- at the beginning of a word has three sounds :—

Sch = *sk* in most words : *scheme, scholar, schooner*, etc.
" = *sh* in the words *schedule, schist.*
" = *s* in the word *schism.*

523. Id- at the beginning of a word is pronounced *long* in the words *īdol, īdyl*, where it represents the Greek *ei;* also in *īdea, īdentical, īdle*, etc. It is pronounced *short* in *ĭdiot, ĭdiom*, etc.

524. -Ine at the end of a word has three pronunciations :—

īne: divine, elephantine, saline, iodine, Alpine.
ĭn: feminine, medicine, discipline, Philistine.
ēēn: marine, machine, gelatine.

525. -Ean at the end of a word has three pronunciations :—

ĕan: cerúlean, hercúlean, Mediterránean, Prométhean
ēan: empyréan, Européan, Chaldéan, Pythagoréan, Jačobéan.
ēēn: lean, mean.

526. Mispronunciation.—The following words are often mispronounced :—

WORD.	PRONUNCIATION.	WORD.	PRONUNCIATION.
aërated	a'-erated	ghost	gōst
again	agen	ghoul	gool
against	agenst	hasten	hās'n
antipodes	antip'odēs	heart	hart
apostle	apos'l	hearth	harth
bedizen	bedī'-zen	heinous	hā'nus
clerk	clark	herb	herb
comely	kŭmly	hough	hock
comfort	kŭmfort	humble	hum'bl
company	kŭmpany	humour	ū'mor
compass	kŭmpass	interesting	int'eresting
conduit	kŭndit	knowledge	knŏledge
conquer	kongker	legend	lej'end
constable	kŭnstable	levée	lev'ay
contumely	kon'-tūm-e-ly	lever	leever
covetous	kuv'etus	lien	lī'en, lee'en
cuirass	kwē-ras'		
drama	drăhma, drāma	live (adj.)	līv
environ	envi'ron[1]	live (verb)	lĭv
falcon	fawkon	lower (to let down)	lō'-er
fealty	fee'-alty	lower (to frown)	lou'er
feign	fayn	massacred	massak-erd
feint	faynt	medicine	med'sin
fiend	fēēnd	miscellany	mis'cellany
		myth	mĭth

[1] The noun is either *envi'rons* or *en'virons.*

WORD.	PRONUNCIATION.	WORD.	PRONUNCIATION.
often	off'en	skein	skān
parallel	par'allel	slaver (slave-dealer)	slā'ver
parliament	par'lyment	slaver (saliva)	slăv'er
phaeton	phay'ĕton	slough (a morass)	slou
plaid	plăd	slough (of a snake) / slough (of a wound)	sluff
plait	plāt / plăt	solder[1]	sŏl'der / sod'er
pleiades	ply'ad-es	sough (of wind)	sou
poignant	poin'yant	southerly	sŭtherly
puisne	pūny	southern	sŭthern
puissant	pu'-isant / pu-iss'ant	sugar	shūg'ar
quay	kēē	suite	sweet
quoit	koit	sure	shūre
reverie	rĕv'ery	surveillance	survāl'yance
route	root	trait	trāt[2]
ruse	rooze	tricolour	trī'colour
sceptic	skeptic	trimeter	trĭm'-eter
semaphore	sĕmaphore	unanimous	ū-nanimous
serenade	sĕrenayde	venison	ven'zon
sergeant	sar'jent	victuals	vittels

ANSWERS TO EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

527. The main object of an Examination paper is to test the candidate's—(*a*) knowledge of his subject; (*b*) ability to put his ideas together and express them in good English (structure and style); (*c*) handwriting, spelling, punctuation, and general neatness.

528. In answering an Examination paper the following rules should be observed:—

1. First of all, glance through all the questions and mark those to which you know the answers best. *Begin by answering these questions*, without regarding the order in which they are numbered, and re-arrange your sheets afterwards. If answer-books are used, a sufficient number of leaves may be left blank for the omitted answers, which may be afterwards inserted in their proper places. Any leaves left blank at the conclusion of the Examination should be folded across.

2. Calculate roughly *the time available for each answer*, proportioning the time to the number of marks allotted to each question.

[1] *Sawder* in the phrase 'soft sawder' (flattery) is a corruption of the same word.

[2] When printed in italics it is pronounced *trā*.

Too much time is often spent in giving lengthy answers to one or two questions; so that other questions, the answers to which are well known by the candidate, have to be left untouched. Leave out of your calculation any question about which you know nothing. Guess-work answers are a waste of time and make a bad impression.

3. Before starting to write, read the question through and *carefully note its wording*, so as to grasp its obvious intent. Make your answer *to the point* by including in it all that is called for by the question and excluding all extraneous matter.

4. Shun vague and rambling answers; express them as simply and *tersely* as possible. Avoid introductions; start upon the answer proper. Do not make a rough copy to be transcribed afterwards; time will not permit of this.

5. Avoid *carelessness*. Many marks are lost by heedless blunders in spelling and grammar. When, in revising, any word or phrase is altered, corresponding alterations must be made, if necessary, in the rest of the sentence; thus, if in the sentence 'do not place,' *do not* be altered to *avoid*, then *place* must be altered to *placing*, so as to make the revised sentence 'avoid placing.' Where a *choice* of questions or parts of questions is given, do not overlook the fact and answer more than are required. Failure in Examinations is often the result of carelessness rather than of ignorance.

6. Reserve a quarter of an hour for *a final revision* of your answers, reviewing them for each of the following, *separately*: (*a*) wording; (*b*) punctuation and use of capitals; (*c*) spelling; (*d*) grammar and syntax; (*e*) idiom.

7. Make *full* use of the time allowed. Even if you have answered all the questions, do not leave the Examination room, but devote any spare minutes to a further review of your papers.

8. Send your papers up in good shape. The hand-writing should be *easy to read*, *neat*, and free from smudges and blots, and the lines should be kept *straight*, and not be allowed to sprawl slant-wise across the paper. Erase blots, if small; if large, rewrite the answer on a fresh page. A word blotted by accident should be crossed out *by a line drawn through it*, and the word should be rewritten above the blot. Keep your words *distinct* and do not allow them to run into one another. The lines should be about half an inch apart. Begin a fresh paragraph wherever a new thought or subject requires it. In mathematical papers each new step in the process of reasoning requires a fresh

line. A space of at least an inch should be left between the last line of one answer and the first line of the next. Keep a margin of at least an inch on the left-hand side of your paper. (This margin can be readily defined by doubling the paper back so as to leave a straight crease.)

9. Be careful to number and letter your answers *in exact accordance* with the numbering and lettering of the questions. *Important* points in the answer may be underlined. To insert the words "Answer to Question" before each answer is unnecessary. Appeals to the Examiner to show leniency to the candidate are wholly out of place in an Examination paper.

10. Remember, finally, that your success in an Examination largely depends upon your *making your meaning easily clear* to the Examiner, by distinct handwriting, by good arrangement, by sentences fairly short and to the point, and by using plain and simple English.

CHAPTER X.

ERRORS IN GRAMMAR, SYNTAX, AND IDIOM.

NOUNS.

529. Nouns omitted after Adjectives.

Incorrect: He went with his *elder*.
Correct: He went with his *elder brother*.

Incorrect: Please give me some *blotting*.
Correct: Please give me some *blotting paper*.

Incorrect: He lives in a *boarding*.
Correct: He lives in a *boarding-house*.

NOTE.—*Elder* is used with a possessive pronoun to mean *one who is older*, as 'He is *my elder*' (=he is *older than I am*). Cf. **144**, (*b*); **385**. It is also used as a noun with *the*, as 'He is *the elder* of the two'; 'By six years *the elder* of Cæsar.'

Freeship for 'free-studentship,' *earlihood* for 'boyhood' or 'early life,' are mere coined words.

530. Nouns omitted after Verbs.

Incorrect: He wished me.
Correct: He wished me *good morning*, etc.

Incorrect: I beg you.
Correct: I beg *your pardon*.

531. Plural *for* Singular.

Common examples of this error are—

Rices, corns (grain), *foods, cattles, furnitures, mischiefs, filths, dirts, needleworks, woolworks, machineries, hairs, advices, preys, behaviours, poetries, abuses, sceneries, clergies, fuels, issues* (progeny), *offsprings, youngs, peoples* (persons), *alphabets, sweats, logics, alarms, tributes, gouts* (the disease):—

Incorrect: The *sceneries* of Switzerland are very fine.
Correct: The *scenery* of Switzerland is very fine.
Incorrect: Natives of India have black *hairs*.
Correct: Natives of India have black *hair*.
Incorrect: He gave me *many* good *advices*.
Correct: He gave me *much* good *advice*.

NOTE.—*Rices, corns, foods*, etc., are used only when *different varieties of rice, corn, food*, etc., are intended (106). We say a house is built of *brick* or of *stone*; not *bricks* or *stones*.

Cattle, prey, clergy, people in the sense of 'persons' (with *vermin, poultry, gentry*), being plural already in sense, have no plural form.

Needleworks and *woolworks* could only mean places where needles and wool were manufactured; cf. 'brickworks.'

Hairs is found in poetry for *hair*. *Hairs* is used in prose when attention is called to the *number* of hairs:—'I found several grey *hairs* on my head this morning.'

Advices is used, especially in mercantile language, in the sense of 'notification':—'From *advices* just received from our London firm, we learn that the price of rice has risen.'

Abuses means *evil* or *corrupt practices*; it should not be used to denote *terms of abuse*; see **127**, (2).

Logic, with *arithmetic, music, magic*, and *physic* in the sense of medicine, *filth, prey, dirt, sweat, gout, poetry, scenery, youny*, with *offspring* and *issue* in the sense of 'progeny,' are never used in the plural.

We say *logic, arithmetic, music, magic, physic* (medicine); but *mathematics, mechanics, optics, physics* (the science), *gymnastics, phonetics, politics, hysterics*, etc.: the former being derived from a Greek *singular* adjective, the latter from a Greek *plural* adjective.

532. Singular *for* Plural.

Incorrect: Please pass *order* for his release.
Correct: Please pass *orders* for his release.
Incorrect: This amounts to two and three *fourth*.
Correct: This amounts to two and three *fourths*.
Incorrect: There *is much cloud* in the sky.
Correct: There *are many clouds* in the sky.
Incorrect: I take *meal* at home.
Correct: I take *my meals* at home.
Incorrect: He does not like *vegetable*.
Correct: He does not like *vegetables*.
Incorrect: My *circumstance* will not allow of my pursuing my *study*.
Correct: My *circumstances* will not allow of my pursuing my *studies*.

NOTE.—*Circumstance* = 'occurrence' (ঘটনা); *circumstances* = 'condition' (অবস্থা).

533. Possessive ending omitted.

Incorrect: The hero's death is different from the *martyr*.
Correct: The hero's death is different from the *martyr's*.

534. A Singular Collective noun referred to by a plural pronoun.

Incorrect: The *firm* has given a bonus to each of *their* clerks.
Correct: The *firm* has given a bonus to each of *its* clerks.

535. Possessive Case misused.

Incorrect: He went out by *the house's door*.
Correct: He went out by *the door of the house*.
" " *the house door*.
Incorrect: I shall go by the twelve *o'clock's* train.
Correct: I shall go by the twelve *o'clock* train.

Similarly, '*Easter's* holidays,' '*Eden's* gardens,' '*Monday's* night, '*holiday's* dress,' '*Puja's* clothes,' are incorrect for '*Easter* holidays,' '*Eden* gardens,' '*Monday* night,' '*holiday* dress, '*Puja* clothes' (135).

NOTE.—In the above instances we cannot substitute the form with *of*; we cannot say 'the holidays *of Easter*,' etc. But 'on the night *of Monday*, the 2nd of June' is correct. So 'the *summer* vacation,' not 'the vacation *of summer*'; 'the *winter* term,' not 'the term *of winter*'; 'a *sea* fog,' not 'a fog *of the sea*,' etc.

536. Water *for* Climate.

Incorrect: The *water* of Behar does not suit my health.
Correct: The *climate* of Behar does not suit my health.

NOTE.—The Bengali জল is used in the sense of 'climate.'

537. Nouns incorrectly used.

Incorrect: The hall is full, there is no *place* for any more.
Correct: The hall is full, there is no *room* for any more.
Incorrect: He had a severe *toss* while running down stairs.
Correct: He had a severe *fall* while running down stairs.
Incorrect: Good *night*, Sir; I am glad you have come.
Correct: Good *evening*, Sir; I am glad you have come.
Incorrect: I have a private *business* with you.
Correct: I have a private *piece of business* with you.
Incorrect: He is seeking for *an employment* under Government.
Correct: He is seeking for *some employment* under Government.

Incorrect: He is *one of my members.*
Correct: He is *a member of my family.*

Incorrect: Credit it *in my name.*
Correct: Credit it *to my account.*

NOTE.—*Good night* is a parting salutation; *Good morning, Good day, Good afternoon, Good evening* are either meeting or parting salutations. In 'This is a bad *business*,' *business* means 'matter,' 'event.' The word বাজে is used in Bengali for '*to* (one's) *account*.'

538. 'O'clock' inserted.

Incorrect: I am going by the 12.30 *o'clock* train.
Correct: I am going by the 12.30 train.

NOTE.—When the number of minutes is specified, *o'clock* is not used. It is correct to say 'by the *half-past twelve o'clock* train,' but not 'by the *twelve and a half o'clock* train,' nor 'by the *twelve and a half* train.'

ADJECTIVES.

539. Not any *for* No.

Incorrect: There is *not any* snake in Iceland.
Correct: There are *no* snakes in Iceland.

Incorrect: *Any* one can*not* do this.
Correct: *No* one can do this.

NOTE.—'*Not every one can* do this' is preferable to '*Every one cannot* do this.' Observe that—*not every* = some; *not any* = none. Both the following are correct:

(1) I could *not* find *anybody* there.
(2) I could find *nobody* there.

540. 'Other' (1) omitted after a Comparative, *or* (2) inserted after a Superlative:—

(1) *Incorrect:* Solomon was *wiser than all* the Jewish kings.
Correct: { Solomon was *wiser than all the other* Jewish kings.
{ Solomon was the *wisest of all* the Jewish kings.

NOTE.—Since Solomon was a Jewish king, the first sentence makes him wiser than himself.

(2) *Incorrect:* *Of all other* kings Solomon was the *wisest.*
Correct: { *Of all* kings Solomon was the *wisest.*
{ Solomon was *wiser than all other* kings.

NOTE.—'*Of all others* I like a boy that tells the truth' should be '*More than all others* I like a boy' etc., or '*Most of all* I like a boy' etc.

541. Less *for* Fewer.

Incorrect: There are no *less* than ten books here.
Correct: There are no *fewer* than ten books here.

NOTE.—*Fewer* denotes number, *less* denotes quantity or degree :—'*fewer* mangoes,' '*less* rice.' But we say 'I will not take *less* than ten rupees,' because the ten rupees are regarded as a sum of money and not as a number of coins.

542. Quite better *for* Quite well.

Incorrect: I have been ill for a long time, but I am now *quite better.*

Correct: I have been ill for a long time, but I am now *quite well.*

NOTE.—'I am now *much better*' is correct.

543. Latter *for* Last.

Incorrect: He brought pen, ink, and paper, the *latter* being foolscap.

Correct: He brought pen, ink, and paper, the *last* being foolscap.

NOTE.—*Latter* should be confined to the second of *two* things previously mentioned :—'He brought pen and ink, the *latter* in a small bottle.'

544. The Superlative *for* the Comparative.

Incorrect: This is the *wisest* plan of the two.

Correct: This is the *wiser* plan of the two.

NOTE.—But the Superlative is often used colloquially of two things :—'I like this *best* of the two,' 'Of two evils choose the *least.*'

545. Superlatives in '-est' *for* Positives with 'very,' 'most.'

Incorrect: This is *a best* book.

Correct: This is *a very good* book.

Incorrect: They made *a fiercest* attack on him.

Correct: They made *a most fierce* attack on him.

NOTE.—The superlative in *-est* must never be used after the indefinite article. It always implies comparison : thus 'This is *the best book*' implies that this book is *better than any of certain books with which it is compared.* Cf. 151.

546. Comparatives in '-er' with 'more'; Superlatives in 'est' with 'most'

Incorrect: This road is *more shorter* than that.

Correct: This road is *shorter* than that.

Incorrect: This road is *the most shortest* of all.

Correct: This road is *the shortest* of all.

NOTE.—We may, however, say 'This is a *far shorter* road than that'; 'This is the *very shortest* road.'

547. Positive Degree with 'than' *for* Comparative.

Incorrect: This stick is *long than* that.
Correct: This stick is *longer than* that.

Incorrect: We learnt *a great deal than* the others.
Correct: We learnt *a great deal more than* the others.

548. 'Than' *for* 'to' after 'superior,' 'inferior,' etc.

Incorrect: This paper is *superior than* that.
Correct: This paper is *superior to* that.

NOTE.—A similar mistake is *more preferable than* for *preferable to*; cf. 672.

549. Positive Degree coupled by 'and' to Superlative.

Incorrect: He enjoyed all the *sweetest and charming* scenery.
Correct: He enjoyed all *the sweetest and most charming* scenery.

550. Adjectives incorrectly used.

Incorrect: He gave the boy a *tight* slap.
Correct: He gave the boy a *smart* slap.

Incorrect: I cannot eat *hard* (or *stiff*) meat.
Correct: I cannot eat *tough* meat.

Incorrect: I am suffering from a *strong* headache.
Correct: I am suffering from a *bad* headache.

Incorrect: I thanked him for his *sweet* words.
Correct: I thanked him for his *kind* words.

Incorrect: Do not go out with your head *open*.
Correct: Do not go out with your head *bare*.

Incorrect: He has paid his *schooling* fees.
Correct: He has paid his *school* fees.

Incorrect: I feel somewhat *uneasy*.
Correct: I feel somewhat *unwell* (or *out of sorts*).

Incorrect: A very *little* number of the students remained.
Correct: A very *small* number of the students remained.

NOTE.—Similarly we say 'a *small* quantity' not 'a *little* quantity,' 'a *small* amount' not 'a *little* amount.' *Uneasy* generally denotes *mental* disquiet, anxiety.

551. Passable, Clerical, Sick.—'*Passable* marks' (or 'the *passable* mark') is sometimes incorrectly used for *marks sufficient to pass*, or *pass marks*. *Passable* means *tolerably good*.

'A *clerical* error' denotes *a mistake in writing*, and should not be used for 'a mistake (of any other kind) made by a *clerk*.'

Sick ordinarily means *suffering from nausea*. It occurs with the sense of *ill*, *unwell* in phrases common in older English and still

current, such as '*the sick* and afflicted,' 'visitation of the *sick*,' '*sick* unto death'; and in technical terms like '*sick* leave,' '*sick* list.' But we do not say 'He obtained leave to go home, as he was *sick*,' but 'as he was *ill*.' It is also used metaphorically, as 'I am *sick* of all this nonsense' (= I am *disgusted* at it).

ARTICLES.

552. Indefinite Article omitted.

(1) *Incorrect:* 'Have you any guests this evening?'—'Yes, I have *few* friends to dinner.'
Correct: 'Have you, etc.?'—'Yes, I have *a few* friends to dinner.'
Incorrect: 'Did you not stay with him?'—'Yes, I spent *little* time with him.'
Correct: 'Did you not, etc.?'—'Yes, I spent *a little* time with him.'

(2) *Incorrect:* I have *great deal* of work to do.
Correct: I have *a great deal* of work to do.
Incorrect: I saw *great many* people there.
Correct: I saw *a great many* people there.

(3) *Incorrect:* Give me three and *half* rupees.
Correct: { Give me three and *a half* rupees. / Give me three rupees and *a half*.

(4) *Incorrect:* He took *short* sleep.
Correct: He took *a short* sleep.

(5) *Incorrect:* I have got *headache*.
Correct: I have got (*or* I have) *a headache*.

NOTE.—*Few* = *a small number*, as opposed to *many*.
A few = *a certain number, some at least*, as opposed to *none* (**158**, *note*).
Little = *a small amount*, as opposed to *a great deal*.
A little = *a certain amount, some at least*, as opposed to *none*.

553. Definite Article omitted.

Incorrect: The famine prevailed over *whole* district.
Correct: The famine prevailed over *the whole* district.

Incorrect: Bengali is not spoken in *whole* Bengal.
Correct: Bengali is not spoken in *the whole of* Bengal.

NOTE.—*Whole* is used only with plural nouns:—'The famine prevailed over *whole districts*'; *i.e.* over *several entire districts*. *The whole* cannot be used with proper names, as *the whole Bengal*; say, *the whole of Bengal*.

554. Article omitted after 'and,' when it joins distinct objects.

Incorrect: *The Magistrate and Judge* were present.
Correct: *The Magistrate and the Judge* were present.

Incorrect: *The first and second class* have been examined.
Correct: { *The first and the second class* have been examined.
{ *The first and second classes* have been examined.

NOTE.—But when *and* joins two nouns that refer to the *same* object, the article should not be inserted:—'*The Magistrate and the Collector* was present' should be '*The Magistrate and Collector.*' '*A black and a white horse*'=two horses, one black and the other white; '*a black and white horse*'=a horse that is partly black and partly white.

PRONOUNS.

555. Pronouns, etc., omitted.

Incorrect: 'Please bring me the book.'—'I am bringing.'
Correct: 'Please bring me the book.'—'I am bringing *it.*'

Incorrect: 'Will you give me your knife?'—'Take.'
Correct: 'Will you give me your knife?'—'Take *it.*'

Incorrect: Suffice to say, you are wrong.
Correct: Suffice *it* to say, you are wrong.

Incorrect: 'Do you think so?'—'Yes, I think.'
Correct: 'Do you think so?'—'Yes, I think *so*' (or 'Yes, I do').

NOTE.—In assenting to a request or answering a question, it is contrary to English usage, except for the sake of special emphasis, to repeat the verb used by the first speaker—as is customary in Indian vernaculars. Thus, the reply to the request 'Please give me the book,' should be 'Here it is,' not 'I am giving it.' Observe that *it* is too unemphatic a word to be separated from its governing verb: we say 'Give *me the book*,' but 'Give *it me*,' not 'Give *me it*.'

556. The same *for* It, So.

Incorrect: He stole a horse and sold *the same* for Rs. 500.
Correct: He stole a horse and sold *it* for Rs. 500.

NOTE.—This use of *the same* is confined mainly to legal or formal diction.

Incorrect: I cannot go, though I should like to do *the same.*
Correct: I cannot go, though I should like to do *so.*

557. 'I,' 'me' (*with nouns or other pronouns*) placed first.

Incorrect: *I and Ram* went home together.
Correct: *Ram and I* went home together.

Incorrect: Divide it between *me and him.*
Correct: Divide it between *him and me.*

NOTE.—But a sentence *confessing a fault* would run—'It was *I and Ram* that broke the window.' The business formula is 'For self (=myself) and

partner,' not 'partner and self.' Do not say 'Ram and *myself* went home,' but 'Ram and *I*' (or *I myself*).

558. You and I *for* You and me.

Incorrect: Everything is settled between *you and I*.
Correct: Everything is settled between *you and me*.

NOTE.—Similarly, 'They invited *him and I*' should be *him and me*. 'Let *Ram and I* go' should be *Ram and me*.

559. Ambiguous reference of personal pronouns.

(1) *Incorrect:* The King having refused to pardon Monmouth, *he* was executed the next day.
Correct: *Monmouth*, the King having refused to pardon *him*, was executed, etc.

(2) *Incorrect:* Ram hurt his hand so severely that, unless his thumb is amputated, he will lose the use of *it*.
Correct: Ram hurt his *hand* so severely that he will lose the use of *it*, unless his thumb is amputated.

NOTE.—In (1) only the context shows to whom *he* refers; in (2) the sentence logically means that Ram will lose the use of his amputated thumb. Similarly, in 'The gentleman told his careless coachman that *he* would be the death of *him*,' it is uncertain whether the gentleman threatened death to the coachman, or predicted that the coachman would cause the gentleman's death. Insert 'the coachman' in brackets after 'he.'

560. 'My,' 'his,' etc., used as antecedents.

Incorrect: Follow in *his* steps who is your leader.
Correct: Follow in the steps *of him* who is your leader.

561. Yours *for* Your house.

Incorrect: I will see you at *yours* this evening.
Correct: I will see you at *your house* this evening.

NOTE.—*Yours* is, of course, correctly used for *your house* when the word *house* has been previously expressed:—'Shall we send it to my house or to *yours*?'

562. My, your, etc., *for* Of me, Of you, *or* From me, From you.

Incorrect: We hope soon to have *your good report*.
Correct: We hope soon to have *a good report of you*.

Incorrect: I cannot endure *your separation*.
Correct: I cannot endure *separation from you*.

Incorrect: I must now take *your leave*.
Correct: I must now take *leave of you*.

NOTE.—*Your good report* means *good report made by you;* cf. **711.** The converse mistake is sometimes made:—

Incorrect: He left without asking permission *of me.*
Correct: He left without asking *my* permission.

563. Reflexive Pronouns inserted.

Incorrect: He *weighed himself* two maunds.
Correct: He *weighed* two maunds.

Incorrect: He *keeps himself* away from school.
Correct: He *keeps* away from school.

NOTE.—In some cases either form is admissible:—

{The king *prepared himself* for war. / The king *prepared* for war.
{He *engaged himself* in business. / He *engaged* in business.

But 'I feel *myself* ill to-day' is incorrect for 'I *feel* ill to-day,' and 'Off with *yourself!*' for 'Off with *you!*' Cf. **204.** The pronoun is sometimes wrongly *omitted*:—

Incorrect: I will *avail* of your permission.
Correct: I will *avail myself* of your permission (**204**, *note*).

564. That (*demonstrative*) misused.

Incorrect: I told you *on that* day.
Correct: I told you *the other* day (**196**).

565. Which *for* As, *after* Such (191).

Incorrect: His conduct is *such which* I cannot forgive.
Correct: His conduct is *such as* I cannot forgive.

Incorrect: This is not *such* weather *which* was expected.
Correct: This is not *such* weather *as* was expected.

566. 'Who,' 'which,' 'that' (*as subjects of a verb*) omitted.

Incorrect: There were several boys won prizes.
Correct: There were several boys *who* (or *that*) won prizes.

NOTE.—When the Relative clause is restrictive (**185**, *note*), *that* is preferable to *who* or *which*:—'The man *that* (not *whom*) I saw'; 'This is the house *that* (not *which*) Ram built.'

567. 'Which,' 'that' (*as subject and object in the same sentence*) not expressed twice.

Incorrect: Here is the book *which* I admired and is full of pictures.
Correct: Here is the book *which* I admired and *which* is full of pictures.

568. 'And which,' 'But which,' etc., used without being preceded by another 'Which.'

Incorrect: This is a tree easy to climb *and which* is full of fruit.

Correct:
- This is a tree *which* is easy to climb *and which* is full of fruit.
- This is a tree easy to climb and full of fruit.

NOTE.—Similarly with *who*: 'Men of high birth, *but who* had sunk into poverty' should be 'Men *who were* of high birth, *but who*, etc.'

569. 'Which' used to refer to a clause.

Incorrect: He spoke for two hours without a pause, *which* shows how fluent he is.

Correct:
- He spoke for two hours without a pause, *a fact which* shows how fluent he is.
- He spoke for two hours without a pause, *and this* shows how fluent he is.

NOTE.—Other words—*a statement, a notion, a belief, a task*—may be inserted, to fit the sense:—'He said that the Government had made a mistake, *a statement which* was much applauded'; 'He tried to carry the business through in one day, *a task which* was too much for his powers.'

570. Whom *for* Who.

Incorrect: *Whom* do men say that I am?
Correct: *Who* do men say that I am?

Incorrect: Somebody told me, I forget *whom*.
Correct: Somebody told me, I forget *who*.

Incorrect: He is a man *whom* I know is trustworthy.
Correct: He is a man *who* I know is trustworthy.

NOTE.—The ungrammatical use of *who* for *whom* in 'Who did you see?' 'Who shall I give it to?' etc., is colloquial, not literary; as also is the use of *me* and *him*, for *I* and *he*, in 'It is *me*,' 'That's *him*.'

571. A Relative Pronoun (*referring to a plural antecedent*) followed by a singular verb.

Incorrect: This is one of the boldest plans that *has* ever been proposed.
Correct: This is one of the boldest plans that *have* ever been proposed.

572. Somewhat *for* Some.

Incorrect: He found the place with *somewhat* difficulty.
Correct: He found the place with *some* difficulty.

NOTE.—*Somewhat* is either (*a*) a *noun*, and therefore requiring the noun with which it is connected to be preceded by *of*:—'He is *somewhat of a poet*'; or (*b*) an *adverb*:—'He is *somewhat poetical*.'

573. Some *for* Any.

Incorrect: If *some* of you make a noise, they shall be punished.
Correct: If *any* of you make a noise, they shall be punished.

Incorrect: I have not got *some* pens.
Correct: I have not got *any* pens.

574. Some *for* One, A certain.

Incorrect: The conspirators met *some day* and arranged their plans.
Correct: The conspirators met *one day* (or *on a certain day*) and arranged their plans.

NOTE.—*Some day* is generally used of an uncertain point of future time:—'I cannot tell you now, but I will tell you *some day*.' So '*Some day* next week' means '*on one of the days* of next week.'

575. And others *for* etc. *or* &c. (= *et cetera*, 'and the rest').

Incorrect: He was ruined by losses, misfortunes, *and others*.
Correct: He was ruined by losses, misfortunes, *etc.*

NOTE.—*And others* can be used in the sense of *and other persons*, when some particular persons have been specified:—'There were present Mr. Smith, Mr. Brown, *and others*.' *And others* can be used of *things* only when the things already mentioned have been specially defined:—'I have lost the books I bought yesterday *and others* (*i.e.* other books) also.'

576. 'Either,' 'Neither,' 'Each,' 'Every one,' 'Any one,' treated as plurals.

Incorrect: *Neither* of us *were* present.
Correct: *Neither* of us *was* present.

Incorrect: *Every one* should respect *their* superiors.
Correct: *Every one* should respect *his* superiors.

Incorrect: I will help *any one* in whatever subject *they* choose.
Correct: I will help *any one* in whatever subject *he* chooses.

NOTE.—Conversely, 'More than one king *was* blind' should be '*were* blind,' since *more* = more kings.

577. Either, Neither *for* Any, None.

Incorrect: I have not read *either* of these three books.
Correct: I have not read *any* of these three books.

VERBS.

578. Passive *for* Active.

Incorrect: This *is alluded* to a passage in 'Paradise Lost.'
Correct: This *alludes* to a passage in 'Paradise Lost.'

Incorrect: My remark *was referred* to his conduct.
Correct: My remark *referred* to his conduct.

Incorrect: Great advantages *are accrued* from this measure.
Correct: Great advantages *accrue* from this measure.

Incorrect: What *will be ensued* on this?
Correct: What *will ensue* on this?

Incorrect: He *was adhered* to his determination.
Correct: He *adhered* to his determination.

579. Active *for* Passive.

Incorrect: No benefit is likely *to produce.*
Correct: No benefit is likely *to be produced.*

580. Passive Infinitive *for* Active, after adjectives.

Incorrect: This prize is hard *to be won.*
Correct: This prize is hard *to win.*

581. Present Imperfect Continuous Tense (231) misused.

Incorrect: This is the first time *I am hearing* of it.
Correct: This is the first time *I have heard* of it.

582. Different tenses in the same sentence.

Incorrect: While Rome *was* burning, Nero *is* playing on the flute.
Correct: While Rome *is* (or *was*) burning, Nero *is* (or *was*) playing, etc.

Incorrect: I *called* at his house yesterday and *have given* him a lesson.
Correct: I *called* at his house yesterday and *gave* him a lesson.

583. 'Make' with Participle of Causative Verbs.

Incorrect: Intemperance *makes* the constitution *weakened.*
Correct: { Intemperance *makes* the constitution *weak.*
{ Intemperance *weakens* the constitution.

NOTE.—*Weakened* means *made weak*; so that 'makes weakened' = 'makes made weakened.'

584. Perfect Participles of Intransitive Verbs (cf. 228).

Incorrect: Lava is matter *issued* out of rocks.
Correct: Lava is matter *that has issued* out of rocks.

Incorrect: This belongs to a gentleman *proceeded* up-country.
Correct: This belongs to a gentleman *who has proceeded*, etc.

NOTE.—*Failed candidate* has come into use in India from the mistaken notion that *fail* can be used as a transitive verb, as in 'The examiner *failed* him in the examination.' *Fail*, in the sense of 'to be wanting to,' can take an indirect object:—'Thought, look, and utterance *failed him* now.'—*Scott.* See 212, *note* 1.

585. An Adverb placed between 'to' and the Infinitive.

Incorrect: I wish *to fully answer* your question.
Correct: { I wish *fully to answer* your question.
{ I wish *to answer* your question *fully*.

586. Finite Verb *after* But [223, (4)].

Incorrect: I did nothing but *laughed*.
Correct: I did nothing but *laugh*.

587. Providing *for* Provided (271, *note*).

Incorrect: *Providing* there is room, I will invite him.
Correct: *Provided* there is room, I will invite him.

NOTE.—Conversely, '*Admitted* that I am right, we must succeed' should be *admitting*.

588. Am to *for* Have to, Wish to.

Incorrect: Please give me leave, as I *am to* post a letter.
Correct: Please give me leave, as I *have to* post a letter.

NOTE.—See 290. Observe that—
'I *have* much work *to do*'=I have much work in hand.
'I *have to do* much work'=I am obliged to do much work.

589. Tell *for* Say.

Incorrect: He *tells* that he is going away.
Correct: He *says* that he is going away.

Incorrect: I *told* him, 'Leave the room!'
Correct: I *said* to him, 'Leave the room!'

NOTE.—If *tells* is used in the sense of *informs*, the person to whom the information is given must be expressed:—'He *tells me* that he is going away.' *Tell* should not be used to introduce a direct speech.

590. Say *for* Tell.

Incorrect: He *said* me to go away.
Correct: He *told* me to go away.

NOTE.—Here *told* means *commanded;* in this sense *tell* is followed by the infinitive mood. Observe that *tell* in the sense of *inform* or *command* requires an objective of the person addressed; *say* requires an objective of the thing only, except in the rare phrase 'Who shall *say me* nay?' *Tell*, in the sense of *narrate*, does not require an objective of the person:—'The historian goes on to *tell* how the war ended.'

591. Say *for* Call.

Incorrect: He *says* me a fool.
Correct: He *calls* me a fool.

592. See *for* Look at, Look over.

Incorrect: Please *see* my certificates.
Correct: Please *look at* my certificates.

Incorrect: The examiner promised *to see* my papers.
Correct: The examiner promised *to look over* my papers.

NOTE.—*See* is a general term for using the power of vision without special effort or attention. Thus 'I could not *see* him,' because he was hidden or because I was blind; 'I could not *look at* him,' because his appearance was distasteful to me. The Bengali দেখা has the double meaning of *see* and *look at*. Similarly, '*See* (or *look*) this word in the dictionary' is incorrect for '*Look out* (or *look up*) this word.' Again, 'When I reached home I *saw* him ill' should be 'I *found* him ill.'

593. Hear *for* Listen to.

Incorrect: He spoke so rudely that I would not *hear* him.
Correct: He spoke so rudely that I would not *listen to* him.

NOTE.—This mistake is exactly parallel to the misuse of *see* for *look at*. *Hear* is a general term, while *listen* should be used to denote attention. Thus: 'I could not *hear* him,' because he spoke indistinctly or because I was deaf; 'I could not *listen* to him,' because his words were distasteful to me. The Bengali শুনা has the double meaning of *hear* and *listen to*.

594. Forward *for* Offer.

Incorrect: I beg to *forward* myself as a candidate.
Correct: I beg to *offer* myself as a candidate.

NOTE.—*Forward* means to send on, to transmit; 'to *forward* my name as a candidate' is correct.

595. Got *for* Had.

Incorrect: He *got* these words inscribed on his tomb.
Correct: He *had* these words inscribed on his tomb.

Note.—But we say 'I cannot *get* this letter written in time.'

596. 'Got' inserted unnecessarily.

Do not write: I have *got* a headache.
Write: I have a headache.

Note.—This use of *got* is colloquial, not literary; *got* means 'acquired':—'I have bought and sold and *got* gain.' Another colloquialism is the use of *get* for *reach*:—'I *got* home at five o'clock,' instead of 'I *reached* home.'

597. Make *for* Get.

Incorrect: He *makes* a few hours for study.
Correct: He *gets* a few hours for study.

598. Make *for* Do.

Incorrect: You have *made* injustice to his efforts.
Correct: You have *done* injustice to his efforts.

Note.—We *make*—a mistake, an error, a blunder; we *do*—wrong, harm, injury; we *commit*—a fault, a crime, an offence, sin.

599. Make *for* Bid.

Incorrect: I *made* him good-bye.
Correct: I *bade* him good-bye.

Note.—We *make* (or present) our compliments and *make* our bow (or salaam) to a person, and we *pay* him a compliment or our respects. We *bid* a friend good-bye or farewell or welcome.

600. Hope *for* Expect.

Incorrect: I *hope* it will be a month before he recovers.
Correct: I *expect* it will be a month before he recovers.

Note.—*Hope* means 'expect *with pleasure*.'

601. Know *for* Believe.

Incorrect: We once *knew* much that we now find to be false.
Correct: We once *believed* much that we now find to be false.

Note.—*Know* is generally used about what is true; we cannot *know* anything but actual fact. The Bengali জানা is not used solely of knowledge of the truth; it may be applied to any impression made on the mind.

602. Believe *for* Presume, Trust.

Incorrect: You will not want me again, I *believe*.
Correct: You will not want me again, I *presume*.

Incorrect: You are in good health, I *believe*.
Correct: You are in good health, I *trust*.

NOTE.—*Believe* generally denotes a *settled conviction* or certainty of the mind, and is too formal and serious a term to be used in sentences like the above, which are a sort of enquiry.

603. Intend *for* Want, Wish.

Incorrect: Please grant me leave, as I *intend* to go home early.
Correct: Please grant me leave, as I *want* to go home early.

NOTE.—*Intend* signifies a *fixed determination*, and should not therefore be used by a subordinate when making a request to a superior. The Bengali ইচ্ছা is used for both *wish* and *intention*.

604. Acknowledge *for* Promise.

Incorrect: His uncle *acknowledged* to take charge of him.
Correct: His uncle *promised* to take charge of him.

605. Confess *for* Grant.

Incorrect: He *confessed* Rs. 10 for my support.
Correct: He *granted* Rs. 10 for my support.

NOTE.—The Bengali স্বীকার may be used to translate *confess* as well as *grant*.

606. Deny *for* Refuse.

Incorrect: I gave him your invitation, but he *denied* to come.
Correct: I gave him your invitation, but he *refused* to come.

NOTE.—The Bengali অস্বীকার may be used to translate *deny* as well as *refuse*.

607. Stop, Stay, Remain *for* Reside, Live.

Incorrect: Where do you usually *stop*, when you are at home?
Correct: Where do you usually *reside*, when you are at home?

Incorrect: He *stays* in Calcutta.
Correct: He *lives* in Calcutta.

NOTE.—*Stop* is now considered inelegant in such sentences as 'I shall *stop* with a friend for two days'; *stay* may be here used; but neither word is properly applied to *permanent, habitual abode*. The Bengali থাকা is used for both *stay* and *reside*.

608. Catch *for* Catch hold of, Take hold of.

Incorrect: Do not *catch* my hand.
Correct: Do not *take hold of* my hand.

NOTE.—The Bengali ধর্ is used in the sense of *catch*, as '*Catch* the ball' (গুলি ধর্), and of *take hold of*, as '*Take hold of* my hand' (আমার হাত ধর্).

609. Die *for* Be killed.

Incorrect: Many people *died* by the explosion.
Correct: Many people *were killed* by the explosion.

NOTE.—*To die* is used of death from natural causes; or if the cause of death is expressed, the preposition after *die* must be *of*:—'The man *died of* his wounds.'

610. Be drowned *for* Sink.

Incorrect: The ship struck on the rock and *was drowned.*
Correct: The ship struck on the rock and *sank.*

NOTE.—The Bengali ডুবিয়া গেল may be used to translate both *was drowned*, which is applied only to living things, and *sank*, which is applied to either animate or inanimate things.

611. Mistake *for* Be mistaken.

Incorrect: You *mistake* in thinking that I was angry.
Correct: You *are mistaken* in thinking that I was angry.

NOTE.—We say 'You *mistake me*,' 'You *mistake my meaning*'; also 'If I *mistake not*,' though 'If I *am not mistaken*' is more usual.

612. Fetch *for* Bring.

Incorrect: I have forgotten to *fetch* my book.
Correct: I have forgotten to *bring* my book.

NOTE.—*Fetch* is *to go and come back with*. *Bring* is *to come with* without the idea of previous *going*.

613. Go *for* Come.

Incorrect: I hope to *go* and see you to-morrow.
Correct: I hope to *come* and see you to-morrow.

Incorrect: 'Come along.'—'I am *going*; wait for me.'
Correct: 'Come along.'—'I am *coming*; wait for me.'

NOTE.—In such sentences as the above the speaker adopts the standpoint of the person he addresses, and therefore says that he will *come* to or with him, not *go*. 'Are you *going* to the Durbar?' is a general enquiry; 'Are you *coming* to the Durbar?' implies that the speaker himself means to attend

it. *Come* denotes motion *towards*, *go* denotes motion *away*: the sun *comes* up and *goes* down; a balloon *goes* up and *comes* down. Compare the following:—

I *asked* him to *come* and *bring* his books with him.
I *told* him to *go* and *take* his books with him.

614. Go from *for* Leave.

Incorrect: *Go from* the room.
Correct: *Leave* the room.

615. Go to *for* Enter.

Incorrect: He has *gone to* the musical profession.
Correct: He has *entered* the musical profession.

616. Break *for* Tear.

Incorrect: He has *broken* the cloth of his coat.
Correct: He has *torn* the cloth of his coat.

NOTE.—Conversely, *tear* is incorrectly used for *break*:—'The strain was so great that the rope *was torn*' (say *broke*).

617. Cut *for* Erase, Cancel.

Incorrect: *Cut* this word; it is not needed.
Correct: *Erase* this word; it is not needed.

NOTE.—We do not say '*Pen* through this word,' but '*Draw your pen* through this word.'

Incorrect: These two numbers *cut* each other.
Correct: These two numbers *cancel* each other.

NOTE.—'I shall *fine* you Rs. 5' is better than 'I shall *cut* you Rs. 5.'

618. Wear (*clothes*) *for* Put on (*clothes*).

Incorrect: We dried our clothes and *wore* them again.
Correct: We dried our clothes and *put* them *on* again.

619. Mend *for* Sharpen.

Incorrect: Please *mend* this pencil.
Correct: Please *sharpen* this pencil.

NOTE.—We *mend* a (quill) pen, but *sharpen* or *cut* a pencil.

620. Throw *for* Spill.

Incorrect: The cat has *thrown* the milk.
Correct: The cat has *spilt* (or *upset*) the milk.

621. Open out, Open *for* Unfasten, Untie.

Incorrect: *Open out* the boat.
Correct: *Unfasten* the boat.

Incorrect: *Open* this knot.
Correct: *Untie* this knot.

NOTE.—The Bengali খুলিয়া দেওয়া is used for both *open* and *untie*.

622. Reach across *for* Cross.

Incorrect: The boat has *reached across* the river.
Correct: The boat has *crossed* the river.

NOTE.—'The boat has *reached the other side of* the river' is correct.

623. Saturate *for* Imbue.

Incorrect: His mind is *saturated* with good principles.
Correct: His mind is *imbued* with good principles.

624. Keep *for* Put, Place.

Incorrect: 'Where is the book?'—'I just now *kept* it there.'
Correct: 'Where is the book?'—'I just now *put* it there.'

NOTE.—*To keep* indicates *to deposit for a length of time, to retain*, as 'I *keep* my books in this drawer.' The Bengali রাখা includes the meanings *keep, preserve, put, place*, etc.

625. Keep *for* Obtain.

Incorrect: Every candidate must *keep* two-thirds of the maximum of marks.
Correct: Every candidate must *obtain* two thirds of the maximum of marks.

626. Give *for* Put.

Incorrect: The pan is empty, *give* some water in it.
Correct: The pan is empty, *put* some water in it.

NOTE.—*To give Examination*, a literal translation of the Bengali পরীক্ষা দেওয়া, should be *to appear in an Examination*, or, more familiarly, *to go in for an Examination.*

627. Give *for* Inflict.

Incorrect: I shall *give him punishment* for this.
Correct: I shall *inflict punishment upon him* for this.

628. Take admission *for* Be admitted.

Incorrect: He has *taken admission in* the Hare School.
Correct: He has *been admitted into* the Hare School.

NOTE.—'He took his birth' is incorrect for 'He was born'; but we say 'The river *takes* its rise'; 'He *took* his departure.'

629. Take leave *for* Ask leave.

Incorrect: I shall *take leave of* the master for two days.
Correct: I shall *ask leave of* the master for two days.
I shall *ask* the master *for* two days' *leave.*

NOTE.—To *take leave of* a person means to part from him, to bid him farewell.

630. Inform to *for* Inform of.

Incorrect: The matter *was informed to him.*
Correct: *He was informed of* the matter.

631. Insist to *for* Insist upon.

Incorrect: I insisted *him to go.*
Correct: I insisted *upon his going.*

632. Would *for* Used to.

Incorrect: When I lived in Calcutta, I *would* study at the Presidency College.
Correct: When I lived in Calcutta, I *used to* study at the Presidency College.

NOTE.—*Would* may be used to denote *action occasionally and irregularly repeated*, but not a *systematic course of conduct*: thus, 'When I lived in Calcutta, *I would often visit* the museum' is correct. Cf. 312, (1).

633. Use *for* Are accustomed.

Incorrect: Hindus *use* to burn their dead.
Correct: Hindus *are accustomed* to burn their dead.

NOTE.—The verb *use*, when denoting customary action, is not employed in the present tense in modern English. We may say 'Hindus *used to do so formerly*,' but not 'Hindus *use to do so now*.' Observe that *used* (were accustomed) has the *s* sound, whereas *used* (made use of) has the *z* sound (*uzed*). We say 'I am *used* (accustomed) *to such treatment*,' or 'I am *used to being treated so*'; but not 'I am *used to be treated so.*'

634. Contain *for* Be contained.

Incorrect: Put as much in as *will contain* in the box.
Correct: Put as much in as *can be contained* in the box.
Put *into* the box as much as *it will contain.*

NOTE.—*Contain* can be used only as a transitive verb.

635. Substitute *for* Replace.

Incorrect: He was *substituted* by a junior clerk.
Correct: He was *replaced* by a junior clerk.

NOTE.—We *substitute* one thing *for* another, but *replace* one thing *by* another.

636. Come to know *for* Find, Find out.

Incorrect: I *came to know* my watch was too fast.
Correct: I *found* my watch was too fast.

Incorrect: He *came to know* that he had lost his purse.
Correct: He *found out* that he had lost his purse.

NOTE.—'Come to know,' 'get to know' imply a *process* of discovery:—'How did you come to know it?'='How did you acquire the information?' 'I could know' is wrongly used in the same way.

637. Air oneself *for* Take the air.

Incorrect: He has been *airing himself* on the maidan.
Correct: He has been *taking the air* on the maidan.

NOTE.—We also 'take an airing.' We 'air *clothes*' and 'air (tell out) our *opinions*,' but not *ourselves*.

638. Fair out *for* Make a fair copy of.

Incorrect: Shall I *fair out* this report, sir?
Correct: Shall I *make a fair copy of* this report, sir?

NOTE.—*To fair out* is a type of a class of words or phrases coined in India and unknown in England. Others are—*fooding expense* for *board*, *teachery* for *teachership*, *to by heart* for *to learn by heart*.

639. 'To be' omitted.

Incorrect: I *knew him* a thief.
Correct: I *knew him to be* a thief.
I *knew that he was* a thief.
I *knew him for* a thief.

NOTE.—We can say 'I thought (or considered or reckoned) him a wise man,' as well as 'I thought (etc.) him *to be* a wise man'; but 'I believed (or fancied) him *to be* a wise man,' and 'I regarded him *as* a wise man,' only. Cf. 223, (2), *note*.

ADVERBS.

640. Too *for* Very.

Incorrect: I am *too* glad to see you looking so well.
Correct: I am *very* glad to see you looking so well.

NOTE.—*Too* denotes *excess over what is fitting*, or *reasonable*, or *agreeable*, or *natural*. Thus in the phrase 'You are really *too* kind,' the speaker implies that the kindness is *greater than could reasonably have been expected*.

In 'I am only *too glad* to be of service to you,' the speaker asserts that his desire to be of service is so great as to outweigh any other consideration, as of obstacles, etc.

641. Too much *for* Too.

Incorrect: This house is *too much* small for me.
Correct: This house is *too* small for me.

NOTE.—'This house is *much too* small' is correct.

642. Much *for* Very.

Incorrect: I am *much* happy to accept your offer.
Correct: I am *very* happy to accept your offer.

NOTE.—The rule is that with adjectives and adverbs in the positive degree, and with present participles used as adjectives, *very* is used:—'This book is *very* amusing.' With adjectives and adverbs in the comparative degree, and with past participles, *much* is used:—'I thought him looking *much* altered.' A few past participles that are used so frequently as to be reckoned as adjectives, take *very* before them:—'*very* tired,' '*very* pleased.'

643. Quite *for* Very.

Incorrect: This climate is *quite* injurious to my health.
Correct: This climate is *very* injurious to my health.

NOTE.—*Quite* should, strictly, be used only in the sense of *perfectly, completely*:—'He is *quite* innocent,' 'I am *quite* well.' Colloquially, we say 'You have been *quite* a long time (=a very long time) coming,' 'You are *quite* a stranger' (=a complete stranger), 'He made *quite* a sensation' (=a great sensation).

644. Very *for* Too.

Incorrect: He feels *very* weak to walk.
Correct: He feels *too* weak to walk.

NOTE.—Where the meaning intended is 'so weak as not to be able to walk,' *too weak*, and not *very weak*, must be used. 'He is *very* weak to walk' may be used to imply an amount of weakness enough to render his walking a *matter of difficulty*, while '*too* weak' implies that his walking is *impossible*. 'He is *very* foolish *to act* thus' is good English; it means 'In acting thus he is very foolish.'

645. 'Somewhat' misused.

Incorrect: 'How are you?'—'I am *somewhat* well.'
Correct: 'How are you?'—'I am *pretty* (or *fairly*) well.'

Incorrect: This is *somewhat* true.
Correct: { This is *partly* true.
{ There is *some truth* in this.

Incorrect: He is *somewhat* tall for his age.
Correct: He is *rather* tall for his age.

646. Once *for* Just, etc.

Incorrect: Will you lend me your knife *once*?
Correct: Will you *just* lend me your knife?

NOTE.—This mistake arises from using *once* to express the Bengali একবার in such a sentence as the above. The Bengali word is often used in making a request with a softening effect; it has no exact equivalent in English, but a request may be softened by the use of *just, please, kindly, would you mind*, etc. *Once* is the equivalent of একবার in 'I saw him only *once*,' 'Let me *once* begin, and I shall soon finish it.'

647. At once *for* Once for all, Outright, Altogether.

(1) *Incorrect:* If you leave the class, you cannot return; you must leave *at once*.
Correct: If you leave, etc.; you must leave *once for all*.

NOTE.—In the above sentence, 'You must leave *at once*' can be used only in the sense of 'You must leave *without delay*.'

(2) *Incorrect:* If not provided with food, they will *at once* starve.
Correct: If not provided with food, they will starve *outright* (*i.e.* will starve *altogether, without remedy*).

NOTE.—The Bengali একবারে, of which *at once* in the above incorrect sentences is a translation, is not the true equivalent of *at once*. *At once* has two general meanings:—

(1) *Simultaneously:* 'Go one by one, not all of you *at once*.'
(2) *Immediately:* 'Do not delay, but go *at once*.'

648. By and by *for* One by one, Little by little, etc.

Incorrect: The students left the class-room *by and by*.
Correct: The students left the class-room *one by one*.
Incorrect: If you cannot lift the whole, lift it *by and by*.
Correct: If you cannot lift the whole, lift it *little by little*.

NOTE.—The Bengali ক্রমে২ must not be translated into English by the expression *by and by*, which means *shortly* or *after an interval*, not *gradually* or *after a series of intervals*, which is the force of ক্রমে২. Hence also 'He became a magistrate *by and by*' is wrong; it should be 'He became a magistrate *in course of time*.'

649. Thus *for* So.

Incorrect: I cannot afford *thus* much.
Correct: I cannot afford *so* much.

NOTE.—We say '*thus* far' as well as '*so* far,' but '*thus* much' is antiquated.

650. Of course *for* Certainly, Undoubtedly.

Incorrect: 'Is he the best boy in his class?'—'*Of course* he is.'
Correct: 'Is he the best boy in the class?'—'*Certainly* he is.'

NOTE.—*Of course* should not be used except to denote a *natural* or *inevitable* consequence:—'Is the whole always greater than its part?' '*Of course* it is.'

651. Hardly, Freely, Directly, Nearly *for* Hard, Free, Direct, Near (141).

Incorrect: He was *hardly* hit by his friend's bankruptcy.
Correct: He was *hard* hit by his friend's bankruptcy.

Incorrect: Tickets will be presented *freely*.
Correct: Tickets will be presented *free*.

Incorrect: I shall not make a round, but shall go home *directly*.
Correct: I shall not make a round, but shall go home *direct*.

Incorrect: I have never seen the sea *nearly*.
Correct: I have never seen the sea *near*.

NOTE.—'*Hardly* hit' means '*scarcely* hit'; '*hard* hit' means '*severely* hit.' 'Presented *freely*' means 'presented *liberally*'; 'presented *free*' means 'presented *gratuitously*.' *Directly* means 'immediately' (এখনই); *direct* means 'straight' (বরাবর): 'I shall go *straight* home.' *Nearly* means 'almost,' not 'close at hand.'

652. Shortly *for* In short.

Incorrect: *Shortly*, I was the hero of the occasion.
Correct: *In short*, I was the hero of the occasion.

NOTE.—*Shortly* means 'presently, soon'; it is never placed at the head of a sentence:—

Incorrect: *Shortly*, we reached the site of the camp.
Correct: *Soon after*, we reached the site of the camp.

653. Perhaps *for* Probably, etc.

Incorrect: 'Has the clock struck three?'—'*Perhaps* not.'
Correct: 'Has the clock struck three?'—'*Probably* not' (or '*I think* not').

654. Likely *for* Probably.

Incorrect: I shall *likely* leave Calcutta to-morrow.
Correct: I shall *probably* leave Calcutta to-morrow.

NOTE.—'I shall *very likely* leave Calcutta' would be correct.

655. After all *for* Finally, In conclusion.

Incorrect: He served Government faithfully for many years, and *after all* retired with a large pension.
Correct: He served Government, etc., and *finally* retired with a large pension.

NOTE.—*After all*, used by itself, denotes *in spite of all that has gone before*, and should never be used of a *natural* consequence [406, (4)].

656. At all *for* Altogether.

Incorrect: You are *at all* wrong.
Correct: You are *altogether* wrong.

NOTE.—*At all* means *in any way, to any extent*, and is used only in negative or interrogative sentences. *Altogether* means *quite, completely.*

657. Indeed, In fact *for* Undoubtedly, Certainly.

Incorrect: *Indeed* Wellington was a most skilful leader.
Correct: Wellington was *undoubtedly* a most skilful leader.

NOTE.—*Indeed* is seldom placed at the beginning of a sentence, merely to add force to an assertion.[1] It is used—(*a*) *concessively*:—'Wellington was *indeed*[2] (*i.e.* admittedly) a most skilful leader, but his troops were raw recruits'; (*b*) *emphatically*:—'That was *indeed* a hard question'; (*c*) as an *interjection* expressing surprise:—'*Indeed!* You don't say so?'

658. Back *for* Behind.

Incorrect: Sir, you are leaving *back* your pen.
Correct: Sir, you are leaving your pen *behind.*

659. 'Not' inserted before 'Only.'

Incorrect: I did *not* take *only* three.
Correct: I took *only* three.

NOTE.—*Only* implies *not more than*; the *not* before the verb is, therefore, superfluous. *Not only* is used correctly in sentences like—'He *not only* promised me the post, but appointed me to it.'

660. As well *for* As soon.

Incorrect: I would *as well* go as stay.
Correct: I would *as soon* go as stay.

[1] *Indeed* is, however, used at the beginning of a sentence to give emphasis to the answer to a question:—'Are you thirsty?'—'*Indeed* I am.' It also commences a sentence to add to a previous statement:—'For more than half a century the Tlascalans had no salt. *Indeed*, from long abstinence their taste had been so far affected, that it was long before they could be reconciled to its use' (*Prescott*).

[2] Sometimes *surely* is inelegantly substituted for this *indeed.*

661. 'As' inserted.

Incorrect: Attila was named *as* the Scourge of God.
Correct: Attila was named the Scourge of God.

NOTE.—*As* is not inserted after verbs of 'naming'—*call, term, dub, style, entitle, denominate.* But *as* is used after verbs of 'describing'—*represent, portray, depict, mention, define, specify, characterize.* We also say 'to act *as*,' 'to pass *as*:'—'He acted *as* Principal of the College;' 'Banknotes pass *as* money.'

PREPOSITIONS.

662. Prepositions inserted after Verbs (395).

Incorrect: This much *resembles to* that.
Correct: This much *resembles* that.

Incorrect: The magistrate *directed for* his dismissal.
Correct: The magistrate *directed* his dismissal.

Incorrect: Please *recommend for* me to the judge.
Correct: Please *recommend* me to the judge.

663. Prepositions omitted after Verbs (395).

Incorrect: Have you *applied* the inspector for the post?
Correct: Have you *applied to* the inspector for the post?

Incorrect: The master did not *listen* his complaint.
Correct: The master did not *listen to* his complaint.

Incorrect: The judge *disposed* the case summarily.
Correct: The judge *disposed of* the case summarily.

Incorrect: One cannot *depend* his promise.
Correct: One cannot *depend on* his promise.

Incorrect: In the end the invaders *were driven.*
Correct: In the end the invaders *were driven out* (adv.).

Incorrect: The historian next *goes* to describe Waterloo.
Correct: The historian next *goes on* (adv.) to describe Waterloo.

Incorrect: The prize is *competed* by all graduates.
Correct: The prize is *competed for* (adv.) by all graduates.

Incorrect: Open the fifth page.
Correct: Open *at* the fifth page.

664. Infinitive *for* 'From,' 'In,' etc., with Verbal Noun (393).

(1) *Incorrect:* He was prevented *to do* his work.
Correct: He was prevented *from doing* his work.

Incorrect: I prohibit you *to go* with him.
Correct: I prohibit you *from going* with him.

NOTE.—'I prohibit *your going* with him' is also correct. Most verbs denoting *prevention* or *hindrance* take *from* after them. But, 'I *forbid* you *to go*' is correct, as well as 'I *forbid your going*.'

(2) *Incorrect:* They persisted *to go* in spite of the rain.
Correct: They persisted *in going* in spite of the rain.

665. 'For' with Verbal Noun to express a purpose.

Incorrect: He went to Bombay *for doing* some business.
Correct: He went to Bombay *to do* some business.

Incorrect: The temptation was great *for taking* the money.
Correct: The temptation was great *to take* the money.

NOTE.—*For* with the verbal noun is correctly used to express a *cause*:—'He was punished *for doing* wrong.' The *purpose* may be more emphatically expressed by 'in order to do,' 'for the purpose of doing,' 'with the object of doing.'

666. At *for* In.

Incorrect: He lives *at* Calcutta.
Correct: He lives *in* Calcutta.

NOTE.—For the correct use of *at* and *in* before names of towns, see **412**, (1), *note*.

667. Of *for* About (or after).

Incorrect: Knowing he had been ill, I enquired *of* him.
Correct: Knowing he had been ill, I enquired *about* (or *after*) him.

668. Near *for* With, In the care of.

Incorrect: I shall leave my horses *near* him during my absence.
Correct: I shall leave my horses *with* him during my absence.

NOTE.—*Near* denotes *not far from*, and must not be used to translate the Bengali নিকট when it has the sense of *in the care of, in the hands of*.

669. In *for* Into [394, (1)].

Incorrect: He entered *in* an agreement with them.
Correct: He entered *into* an agreement with them.

Incorrect: Come *in* my house with me.
Correct: Come *into* my house with me.

670. Upon *for* For, At.

Incorrect: I am angry with you *upon* going without leave.
Correct: I am angry with you *for* going without leave.

Incorrect: I am angry *upon* your going without leave.
Correct: I am angry *at* your going without leave.

671. To, Than *for* From, *after* Different.

Incorrect: This is *different to* (or *than*) that.
Correct: This is *different from* that.

672. Than *for* To, *after* Prefer.

Incorrect: I *prefer* to read *than* to write.
Correct: I *prefer* reading *to* writing.

673. 'With' treated as equivalent to 'And.'

Incorrect: The general, *with* all his soldiers, *were* killed.
Correct: The general, *with* all his soldiers, *was* killed.

NOTE.—Similarly with *as well as*:—'Ram as well as Sham *have* gone' should be '*has* gone.' In such sentences the word or words introduced by *with* and *as well as* are parenthetical. Hence also 'He as well as I *am* here' is incorrect for 'He as well as I *is* here.'

674. 'To' inserted.

Incorrect: Where have you been *to*?
Correct: Where have you been?

675. Between *for* Among.

Incorrect: Divide these mangoes *between* you three.
Correct: Divide these mangoes *among* you three.

NOTE.—Conversely, when only two persons are mentioned, *among* is incorrect: 'Divide these mangoes *among* you two' should be '*between* you two.'

676. In front of *for* In the presence of.

Incorrect: He refused to repeat his confession *in front of* the judge.
Correct: He refused to repeat his confession *in the presence of* the judge.

NOTE.—*In front of* is ordinarily used of mere locality:—'He sat *in front of* me'; 'A tree stood *in front of* the house.'

677. Word by word *for* Word for word.

Incorrect: Copy this *word by word*
Correct: Copy this *word for word*.

NOTE.—'Word *for* word' means 'each word (in the copy) representing each word (in the original)'; so, 'A *word-for-word* translation.' 'Word *by* word' means 'taking each word separately.' Compare—

(1) I interpreted his speech *word for word* = I gave an exact version of it.
(2) I interpreted his speech *word by word* = I gave the meaning of each word as he uttered it.

CONJUNCTIONS.

678. 'That' inserted.

Incorrect: He said *that* I am coming.
Correct: He said, 'I am coming.'

Incorrect: He asked *that* how much it cost.
Correct: He asked how much it cost.

Incorrect: He enquired *that* who had done it.
Correct: He enquired who had done it.

NOTE.—In Bengali the word যে would generally be used even when the actual words of the speaker are given: as, তিনি বলিলেন যে আমি যাইতেছি. See 293-295.

679. 'That' omitted after 'Now.'

Incorrect: *Now* you are ill, I will act for you.
Correct: *Now that* you are ill, I will act for you.

680. Directly *for* As soon as.

Incorrect: *Directly* he comes, you may go.
Correct: *As soon as* he comes, you may go.

NOTE.—This use (with that in 679) is colloquial, not literary.

681. When *for* Since, As, Seeing that.

Incorrect: *When* I listen to one, I must listen to all.
Correct: *Since* I listen to one, I must listen to all.

NOTE.—*When* is seldom used in English (as যখন is used in Bengali) to express *cause* or *reason*.

682. Than, But *for* When, *after* Scarcely (*or* hardly), Not.

Incorrect: He had *scarcely* gone *than* (or *but*) his friend arrived.
Correct: {He had *scarcely* gone *when* his friend arrived.
{He had *no sooner* gone *than* his friend arrived.

Incorrect: He had *not* been on the ship five minutes *but* he jumped overboard.
Correct: He had *not* been on the ship five minutes *when* he jumped overboard.

683. But *for* Than *after* No sooner [192, (8)].

Incorrect: Ram *no sooner* saw the tiger *but* he climbed a tree.
Correct: Ram *no sooner* saw the tiger *than* he climbed a tree.

684. Until *for* So long as, While.

Incorrect: *Until* you remain idle, you will make no progress.
Correct: *So long as* you remain idle, you will etc.

NOTE.—Observe that—

Until you go = as long as you stay.
Until you amend = as long as you do not amend.

685. Without *for* Unless.

Incorrect: I cannot go *without* I get my lessons done.
Correct: I cannot go *unless* I get my lessons done.
I cannot go *without getting* my lessons done.

NOTE.—Similarly, *except* and *against* are not now used as conjunctions: 'You will perish *except* you repent' should be '*unless* you repent,' and 'Be ready against *I arrive*' should be 'against *my arrival.*'

686. As if *for* As it were.

Incorrect: A good king is *as if* the father of his people.
Correct: A good king is, *as it were*, the father of his people.

NOTE.—'As it were' means 'if I may use the expression,' 'so to speak.' 'He acts *as if he were* the father of his people' is correct, but has a different meaning.

687. 'Not' inserted after 'Unless.'

Incorrect: *Unless you do not try*, you will never succeed.
Correct: *Unless you try* (or *if you do not try*) you will never succeed.

NOTE.—*Unless* is equivalent to *if not;* the *not* after it is therefore superfluous.

688. Because *for* In order that.

Incorrect: I am going to Calcutta, *because* I may consult a physician.
Correct: I am going to Calcutta, *in order that* I may consult a physician.

NOTE.—*Because* denotes *cause* or *reason*, and must not be used to express *end* or *purpose.*

689. 'So' inserted after 'As.'

Incorrect: *As* I am ill, *so* I hope you will grant me leave.
Correct: *As* I am ill, I hope you will grant me leave.

NOTE.—*As* (=since) does not take *so* after it; see **357**, (*a*). In 'Are you ready? if so, let us *then* begin,' *then* is superfluous.

690. 'And' omitted.

Incorrect: The regiment contains *six hundred fifty* men.
Correct: The regiment contains *six hundred and fifty* men.

NOTE.—Similarly, a date, as 1889, should be read *eighteen, eighty-nine* or *eighteen hundred and eighty-nine*, not *eighteen hundred, eighty-nine*.

691. And *for* To (*infinitive*).

Incorrect: Be sure *and* ask him to come.
Correct: Be sure *to* ask him to come.

NOTE.—This is a common colloquialism, to be avoided in written composition. So 'Try *and* help me' should be 'Try *to* help'; 'Take care *and* bring it' should be 'Take care *to* bring'; but we say 'Mind *and* (not *to*) be in time' (better, 'Mind *you are* in time'). A similar colloquialism is '*Nice and* warm' for '*Nicely* warm.'

692. 'Or,' 'Nor' misused in negative sentences:—

Incorrect: { You are *not* right *or* wrong.
{ You are *not* right *nor* wrong.
Correct. { You are *neither* right *nor* wrong.
{ You are *not* right *nor are you* wrong.

693. 'Or,' when strongly alternative, not followed (*where possible*) by an Article or a Preposition.

Incorrect: Has he gone to the jail *or* hospital?
Correct: Has he gone to the jail *or the* hospital?

Incorrect: I could not move him by gentle *or* severe words.
Correct: I could not move him by gentle *or by* severe words.

NOTE.—Conversely, when *or* is not alternative, they should not be inserted:—'He is the chief *or* (=in other words) captain of the band'; 'He was not wanting in strength *or* (=and) courage.' Cf. 278.

ERRORS IN EXPRESSIONS OF TIME.

694. Tomorrow *for* Yesterday.

Incorrect: I was ill *to-morrow*, but am better to-day.
Correct: I was ill *yesterday*, but am better to-day.

Conversely *yesterday* is wrongly used for *to-morrow*.

NOTE.—This confusion arises from the double meaning of the Bengali কল্য, which may be used of the 'day *before* to day' or 'the day *after* to-day.'

695. Long before *for* Long ago.

Incorrect: I knew him *long before*.
Correct: I knew him *long ago*.

NOTE.—I knew him *long before this* is correct. *Before*, as an adverb of time, is used only when priority to some fixed point of time already

mentioned is to be expressed:—'You learnt this *yesterday*; I knew it *long before*' (*i.e.* before yesterday).

696. From *for* Since.

Incorrect: I have been ill *from* yesterday morning.
Correct: I have been ill *since* yesterday morning.

NOTE.—*From* is prefixed to the point of time at which an action begins, when the time at which the action ends is also specified:—'I have been ill *from yesterday morning till this evening.*' *From* may also be used when the action is continuous or is constantly repeated:—'I draw full pay *from the date of arrival*'; 'He has been lame *from childhood.*'

697. Since *for* For.

(1) *Incorrect:* I have been ill *since two months.*
Correct: I have been ill *for two months.*

NOTE.—*Since* refers not to *space* but to *point* of time:—'I have been ill *since last year.*' In 'I saw (not 'have seen') him two months *since*,' *since* = *ago.*

(2) *Incorrect:* I have not seen you *long since.*
Correct: { I have not seen you *for a long time.*
{ It is *long since* I saw you.

NOTE.—This error seems to arise from a confusion of the two equivalent expressions, *not . . . for a long time* and *long since.* The sense of the above sentence is often expressed by the unidiomatic '*After a long time* I am seeing you,' a word-for-word translation of the Bengali অনেক কাল পরে তোমাকে দেখিতেছি।

Similarly:—

Incorrect: *It is* more than two years *that I am doing this.*
Correct: *I have been doing this for* more than two years.

698. Within *for* Before, By.

Incorrect: You must finish this *within* 12 *o'clock.*
Correct: You must finish this *before* (or *by*) 12 *o'clock.*

NOTE.—*Within* is used of *space* not *point* of time:—'You must finish *within two hours.*' The Bengali মধ্যে may be used of either.

699. After *for* In.

Incorrect: I shall be able to go *after a week.*
Correct: I shall be able to go *in a week* (or *in a week's time*).

NOTE.—We say 'I will come in *two or three* days,' not '*two three* days,' as in Bengali. And we do not say, as in Bengali, '*two* (*or*) *one* days,' '*two* (*or*) *four* days,' '*five* (*or*) *seven* days'; but '*a day or two*,' '*three or four* days,' '*six or seven* days.'

700. Not . . . before *for* Not . . . for.

Incorrect: I shall *not* be able to go *before* a week.
Correct: I shall *not* be able to go *for* a week.

701. Just now *for* Presently.

Incorrect: I will come *just now.*
Correct: I will come *presently.*

NOTE.—*Just now* indicates present time or time just past, and should not be used of future time.

702. No sooner *for* As soon as.

Incorrect: *No sooner* he died, the heir took possession.
Correct: *As soon as* he died, the heir took possession.

NOTE.—*No sooner than* means much the same as *as soon as*, and the sentence might be expressed—'*No sooner* did he die, *than* the heir took possession' [129, (6)].

ERRORS IN ORDER OF WORDS.

703. Interrogative sentences.

(1) *Incorrect:* When *you are going* to leave school?
Correct: When *are you going* to leave school?

Incorrect: What country *he belongs to?*
Correct: What country *does he belong to?*

Incorrect: Between whom *the battle was fought?*
Correct: Between whom *was the battle fought?*

NOTE.—The simple rule in asking direct questions in English is, that the nominative must come after the verb, or, more commonly, after the auxiliary [129, (1)].

(2) *Incorrect:* Tell me *when are you going?*
Correct: Tell me *when you are going.*

Incorrect: He asked me *did I know him?*
Correct: He asked me *whether* (or *if*) *I knew him.*

NOTE.—When the question is asked indirectly (294), and the interrogative sentence is dependent on some verb denoting request, the natural order, nominative before verb, is kept.

704. He ran *for* Did he run, etc. [129, (6)].

Incorrect: So quickly *he ran* that he came in first.
Correct: So quickly *did he run* that he came in first.

Incorrect: No sooner *I had fallen* than they ran away.
Correct: No sooner *had I fallen* than they ran away.

705. What for *for* What . . . for, Why, For what.

Incorrect: *What for* did you leave the school?

Correct: { *What* did you leave the school *for*?
{ *Why* did you leave the school?

Incorrect: *What for* are these towns noted?

Correct: { *What* are these towns noted *for*?
{ *For what* are these towns noted?

NOTE.—When *what . . . for* is used in a sentence in the sense of *why*, *what* should come at the beginning of the sentence and *for* at the end. *What for* may come together when the rest of the sentence is understood:—'I left the school'—'*What for?*' (*i.e.* '*What* did you leave *for?*')

706. A so (good) *for* So (good) a, Such a (good).

Incorrect: It is not *a so good* book as I expected.

Correct: { It is not *so good a* book as I expected.
{ It is not *such a good* book as I expected.

NOTE.—Similar forms to *such a* are: *many a* man, *what a* pity, *half a* pound, *all the* time.

707. So much a (better) *for* A so much (better), So much (better) a.

Incorrect: This is *so much a better* plan.

Correct: { This is *a so much better* plan.
{ This is *so much better a* plan.

708. Enough (good) *for* (Good) enough.

Incorrect: He was *enough good* to ask me to dinner.

Correct: He was *good enough* to ask me to dinner.

NOTE.—Similarly, 'this meat is not *enough cooked*' is unidiomatic for 'is not *cooked enough*.' With nouns, *enough* may come before or after them:—'I have *enough bread*.' or 'I have *bread enough*.' Cf. 343.

709. The last but one (day) *for* The last (day) but one.

Incorrect: He went on *the last but one day* of the month.

Correct: He went on *the last day but one* of the month.

NOTE.—*The second last* is sometimes wrongly used instead of *the last but one*. Some English writers inelegantly use *the second largest* (as, 'Glasgow is *the second largest* city in the British Isles') for '*the largest* city *but one*.' But '*the next largest* navy to that of England' is correct. We also say *second best*: as, 'This coat is my *second best*.'

710. Care it *for* Not care for it.

Incorrect: I *care'il* a straw.

Correct: I do *not care* a straw *for it*.

711. Your favour of granting *for* The favour of your granting.

Incorrect: I request *your favour of granting* me three days' leave.
Correct: I request *the favour of your granting* me three days' leave.

NOTE.—Similarly, 'its height of power' is wrong for 'the height of its power'; 'his immortal creations of fancy' for 'the immortal creations of his fancy'; 'his English knowledge' for 'his knowledge of English.' There are some few expressions in English like the above, which are considered as forming only one idea and treated as a single noun: as, 'He enquired about *your state of health*,' instead of the more correct 'the state of your health'; but such phrases are rare and should not be imitated. Cf. **562**.

712. Illogical order.

Errors often arise from not placing words in their *logical* position in a sentence. Thus, 'He *not only fired* at a crow but also at a kite' should be 'He *fired not only* at a crow but also at a kite'; whereas 'He *not only fired* at a crow but also killed it' is correct.

(1) *Incorrect:* He *neither offended* him nor his brother.
Correct: He *offended neither* him nor his brother.

(2) *Incorrect:* He *both offended* him and his brother.
Correct: He *offended both* him and his brother.

(3) *Incorrect:* Exercise is good *both for* body *and* mind.
Correct: Exercise is good *for both* body *and* mind.
Exercise is good *both for* body *and for* mind.

(4) *Incorrect:* This house is *not advertised* for sale but for hire.
Correct: This house is *advertised not* for sale but for hire.

(5) *Incorrect:* I *only received* this yesterday.
Correct: I received this *only yesterday*.

NOTE.—The rule is that *only* immediately precedes the word or the group of words that it modifies:—'I *only take a walk* when it is fine' should be 'I take a walk *only when it is fine*.' *Only* may come after its noun at the end of a sentence:—'I give you leave for this *occasion only*' (more emphatic than 'only for this occasion').

(6) *Incorrect:* You can *almost get* any book at that shop.
Correct: You can get *almost any* book at that shop.

(7) *Incorrect:* He *quickly* runs *always* to school.
Correct: He *always* runs *quickly* to school.

NOTE.—The adverb, unless it is one of time, comes immediately after an Intransitive verb:—'Peter went out and *wept bitterly*,' not *bitterly wept*; 'He *seldom* answers *correctly*,' not 'He *seldom correctly* answers.'

(8) *Incorrect:* He *suddenly* was taken ill.
Correct: {He was *suddenly* taken ill. / He was taken ill *suddenly*.}

NOTE.—The adverb should not be placed *before* a verb with an Auxiliary[1]; but it may come between the Auxiliary and the Participle:—'I have *quite* finished my work.'

(9) *Incorrect:* When I met *them*, I told *the boys* to go home.
Correct: When I met *the boys*, I told *them* to go home.

(10) *Incorrect:* He is an *undoubted man of* genius.
Correct: He is a *man of undoubted* genius.

NOTE.—*Man of genius* (with similar expressions) should not be treated as a compound and qualified by an epithet that belongs to *genius*.

ERRORS IN CONSTRUCTION.

713. Incongruous Constructions.

Errors often arise from the attempt to make one word do the work of two.

(1) *Incorrect:* This watch is *superior* and more expensive *than* that.
Correct: {This watch is *superior to* and more expensive *than* that. / This watch is *superior to* that and more expensive.}

(2) *Incorrect:* In one day he was *appointed* and dismissed *from* the post.
Correct: {In one day he was *appointed to* and dismissed *from* the post. / In one day he was *appointed to* the post and dismissed *from* it.}

(3) *Incorrect:* This pen is no *better*, and not even as good *as* yours.
Correct: {This pen is no *better than;* and not even as good *as* yours / This pen is no *better than* yours, and not even *as* good.}

(4) *Incorrect:* I *accepted* his excuse and his request.
Correct: I *accepted* his excuse and *granted* his request.

(5) *Incorrect:* I have not *seen* him act or sing.
Correct: I have not *seen* him act or *heard* him sing.

[1] Except for emphasis:—'*Bitterly* have I repented my choice.'

(6) *Incorrect:* I always *have*, and always *shall be* your friend.
Correct: I always *have been*, and always *shall be* your friend.

(7) *Incorrect:* Many *were* delighted and every one contented.
Correct: Many *were* delighted and every one *was* contented.

(8) *Incorrect:* All the patients *have been* admitted and received attention.
Correct: All the patients *have been* admitted and *have* received attention.

714. Confusion of Constructions.

Errors often arise from the incorrect mixture of two correct phrases or constructions; see **474**, (1), *note*. In the following examples (*a*) and (*b*) are the correct phrases or constructions, and (*c*) is the incorrect mixture.

(1) (*a*) I hoped *to get* on and *to have* a good chance of success.
(*b*) I hoped *that I should get* on and *that I should* have etc.
(*c*) I hoped *to get* on and *that I should have* etc.
I hoped *that I should get* on and *to have* etc.

(2) (*a*) The child died when he was *three years old.*
(*b*) The child died *at three years of age.*
(*c*) The child died *at three years old.*

(3) (*a*) I live *a mile distant* from the town.
(*b*) I live *at a mile's distance* from the town.
(*c*) I live *at a mile distant* from the town.

(4) (*a*) A child *of three years of age.*
(*b*) A child *three years old.*
(*c*) A child *of three years old.*

(5) (*a*) Nothing prevents *us from* going.
(*b*) Nothing prevents *our* going.
(*c*) Nothing prevents *us* going.

(6) (*a*) It was *not* the failure of the plan *but* the plan itself that vexed him.
(*b*) It was *not so much* the failure of the plan *as* the plan itself etc.
(*c*) It was *not so much* the failure of the plan *but* the plan itself etc.

(7) (*a*) He had *no* desire *but* to make a fortune.
(*b*) He had *no other* desire *than* to make a fortune.
(*c*) He had *no other* desire *but* to make a fortune.

(8) (*a*) I like *this sort* of pens.
(*b*) I like *these sorts* of pens.[1]
(*c*) I like *these sort* of pens.

(9) (*a*) The doctor told him when he was ill *to send* for him.
(*b*) The doctor told him *that* when he was ill *he should send* for him.
(*c*) The doctor told him *that* when he was ill *to send* for him.

[1] We say '*all sorts* of men,' but '*all manner* (not *manners*) of men.'

(10) (a) *I give* my full consent to it.
(b) *You have* my full consent to it.
(c) *I have* full consent to it.

(11) (a) He could not *suffer* his dog *to be* illtreated.
(b) He could not *bear to see* his dog illtreated.
(c) He could not *suffer to see* his dog illtreated.

(12) (a) It *did not take long for* new troubles *to arise*.
(b) It *was not long before* new troubles *arose*.
(c) It *did not take long before* new troubles *arose*.

(13) (a) He is a tall man, *as I am*.
(b) He is a tall man, *like me*.
(c) He is a tall man, *like I am*.

(14) (a) Ram is a delicate child, *as* my son used to be.
(b) Ram is a delicate child, *like what* my son used to be.
(c) Ram is a delicate child, *like* my son used to be.

(15) (a) It *would be* strange that you *should be* unsuccessful.
(b) It *is* strange that you *are* unsuccessful.
(c) It *is* strange that you *should be* unsuccessful.

(16) (a) I *wrote to him* yesterday.
(b) I *wrote him a letter* yesterday.
(c) I *wrote him* yesterday.

CHAPTER XI.

STYLE AND PARAPHRASING.

STYLE.

715. A finished style of composition in any foreign language can be acquired only by long and careful practice and by close observation of the best models. But to write English in a simple, clear, and correct style is within the reach of any Indian student who will exercise ordinary care and endeavour to avoid certain errors to which he is specially prone.

716. Rules.—There are six main Rules conducive to a good style:—I. The Rule of Proximity; II. The Rule of Perspicuity; III. The Rule of Precision; IV. The Rule of Simplicity; V. The Rule of Coherence; VI. The Rule of Unity.

717. I. **The Rule of Proximity** is that things that are associated in *thought* should be associated as closely as possible in *expression*. Thus—

(1) Nouns and pronouns connected in sense should be placed near together:—

Incorrect: A novel has just been published by a new author.
Correct: A novel by a new author has just been published.

Incorrect: Solomon was the son of David, the builder of the Temple.
Correct: Solomon, the builder of the Temple, was the son of David.

Incorrect: As a kind-hearted man, I hope that you will forgive my son.
Correct: I hope that you, as a kind hearted man, will forgive my son.
As a kind-hearted man, you will, I hope, forgive my son.

(2) An adjective and its qualifying phrase should come together:—

Incorrect: This is too good news to be true.
Correct: This news is too good to be true.
This is news too good to be true.

(3) A relative pronoun should be placed next to its antecedent:—

Incorrect: Duke William rode in the centre, who bore a battle-axe.
Correct: Duke William, who bore a battle-axe, rode in the centre.
In the centre rode Duke William, who bore a battle-axe.

Incorrect: I have read this author's works, who is a good writer.
Correct: I have read the works of this author, who is a good writer.

Incorrect: All is not gold that glitters.
Correct: All that glitters is not gold.

(4) A prepositional phrase should be placed immediately after the word to which it is an Adjunct:—

Incorrect: I was walking when I saw the new moon in the garden.
Correct: I was walking in the garden when I saw the new moon.

(5) When a subject has two qualifying phrases, one should be placed before and one after it:—

Incorrect: Othello, seizing a bolster, mad with jealousy, smothers her.
Correct: Mad with jealousy, Othello, seizing a bolster, smothers her.

NOTE.—Similarly with a principal statement that has two qualifying clauses:—

Incorrect: As it does not rain, if I have time, I shall take a walk.
Correct: As it does not rain, I shall take a walk, if I have time.

(6) An adverbial phrase should be placed close to the word that it modifies:—

Incorrect: You complain that I am mistaken a great deal too soon.
Correct: You complain a great deal too soon that I am mistaken.

718. II. **The Rule of Perspicuity** is that the writer's diction should clearly and readily convey his meaning to the reader. To ensure clearness, the writer, before making any attempt to express his thoughts, should settle definitely in his own mind what his thoughts are. He should construct a sentence in his head before he writes it down. Clearness of thought goes far toward ensuring clearness of expression. A lazy habit of thinking frequently leads to a vague manner of writing. Thus a young writer, giving a description of a visit to Calcutta, will commence—

I left my home very early in the morning. We went to Calcutta in a gharry, and on my arrival I could not find my luggage. We spent the first day in seeing the sights. I was too tired to walk far, so we did not see everything. [The reader naturally asks—Why start very early in the morning? Who are 'we'? Why could he not find his luggage? What were the sights? Which did he see and which did he not see?]

Examine the following sentences:—

(1) The chapter on analysis may be omitted, if thought desirable. [Why omit a chapter that is thought desirable? Write—If it is thought desirable to do so.]

(2) Please excuse my coming to see you. [Owing to the ambiguity of *excuse*, this sentence might mean—(*a*) Please dispense with my coming, *or* (*b*) Please pardon my action in coming. The sense is clear if we write—(*a*) Please excuse me from coming, (*b*) Please excuse me for coming.]

(3) The adversaries of our policy in France are very numerous. [Does this mean (*a*) that the adversaries are in France, *or* (*b*) that the policy relates to France? If (*a*), write—The adversaries in France of our policy; if (*b*), write—The adversaries of our policy in relation to France.]

(4) Tell me if you are tired. [This might mean—(*a*) Tell me *whether* you are tired, *or* (*b*) Tell me *in case* you are tired. Use *whether* rather than *if*, when there is risk of such ambiguity.]

(5) I was so distressed that I missed you on your arrival. [This might mean that my distress caused me to miss you. Write—I was *much* distressed that I missed you, *or* I was so distressed *to miss* you.]

(6) He had not a single certificate to show or recommend him. [Here *show* appears to have *him* for its object. Insert a second *to* after *or*.]

(7) He is not the inventor, who is really an Italian physicist, and only made some successful experiments. [Repeat the subject *he* after *and*, otherwise *who* is the natural subject of *made*.]

(8) He was angry with his neighbours for blaming his children, and especially Gopal. [Repeat *with* before *Gopal*, otherwise *Gopal* becomes object to *blaming*.]

(9) Napoleon criticised his officers more than Wellington. [This might mean 'more than he criticised Wellington.' Write 'more than Wellington did.']

(10) India is in bad plight, if pestilence and famine remain unchecked, and her prosperity is lost. [The last clause might mean 'and *if* her prosperity is lost.' Rearrange—If pestilence and famine remain unchecked, India is in bad plight and her prosperity is lost.]

(11) The poor man was attacked by robbers, whom he resisted as best he could, and left for dead on the roadside. [The sentence, as it stands, means that the robbers were left for dead. Repeat the auxiliary *was* before *left*.]

(12) He determined to send his son to Calcutta to learn English and to engage the services of a tutor. [Is *to engage* dependent on *determined* or on *send*? Rewrite—He determined to send his son to Calcutta that he might learn English and to engage, etc.]

(13) You want a new umbrella. [Here *want* might mean *wish for*. Write—You *need* a new umbrella.]

719. **Force** is an element of perspicuity. It is a quality of style which impresses the reader with a sense of the importance of a statement. Force is to a large extent attained—

(1) By placing words, phrases, and clauses in emphatic positions. Thus the beginning and the end of a sentence are its emphatic parts, and words may have emphasis given them

by being placed out of the normal order and thus attracting attention :—

You may buy service ; *love* you cannot buy (*Object before Verb*).
Never will I consent (*Adverb placed first*).
Go you must. *To beg* I am ashamed } (*Complement before Verb*).
So furious was the wind, that the sail split }
We lived on rabbits—rabbits *hot* and rabbits *cold*, rabbits *tender* and rabbits *tough* (*Adjective after Noun*).

(2) By repetition :—

I will *never, never* consent.
My friends are all *dead* and *gone*.
I will follow him *by* land and *by* sea, *through* fire and *through* water.

(3) By the use of *it* followed by a relative clause [471, (*b*)] :—

It was Ram that broke the window (*for* Ram broke the window).

720. III. The Rule of Precision is that words should be used *accurately*, in their proper connexion and in their exact meaning. Thus we speak of 'a *bunch* of flowers' but 'a *bundle* of sticks'[1]; we say that asses *bray*, but that horses *neigh*.[2] We do not *persuade* but *convince* a man that he is wrong. *Ascertain* means 'to make sure of,' 'to find out for certain,' and should not be used for merely 'to find out.' In 'Earthworms are *apt* at any moment to be cut in two by a spade,' *apt* is wrongly used for *liable*; while in 'He is *apt* to fail if he does not work hard,' *apt* should be *likely*. Similarly, *avocation*, an *occasional* employment, should not be used for *vocation*, a *regular* employment; and *allude*, implying *indirect* reference, should not take the place of *refer*. Epithets like *nice*, *fine*, *funny*, *good*, should be kept to their proper application and not be used indiscriminately, as in—'a *nice* (=agreeable) man,' 'a *nice* (=fine) day,' 'a *nice* (=pleasant) walk,' 'a *nice* (=good) house,' etc. Examples :—

(1) *Climax* should not be used for *crisis* :—

Incorrect : To-day is the *climax* of your fate.
Correct : To-day is the *crisis* of your fate.

[1] Similarly :—a *heap* of stones ; a *stack* of corn ; a *clump* of trees ; a *packet* of envelopes ; a *set* of instruments ; a *batch* of letters ; a *parcel* of goods ; a *cluster* or *group* of islands—stars ; a *range* of mountains ; a *fleet* of ships ; a *flock* of sheep—geese ; a *covey* of partridges ; a *shoal* of fish ; a *school* of whales ; a *pack* of wolves—hounds ; a *swarm* of bees—flies—ants ; a *herd* or *drove* of oxen—swine ; a *bevy* of girls ; a *band* of robbers ; a *gang* of thieves ; a *horde* of savages ; a *corps* of engineers ; a *crew* of sailors.

[2] Similarly :—dogs and foxes *bark* ; bears *growl* ; lions and tigers *roar* ; wolves *howl* ; jackals *yelp* ; bulls *bellow* ; oxen *low* ; geese *cackle* ; hens *cluck* ; doves *coo* ; cats *mew* ; sheep and goats *bleat* ; ravens and frogs *croak* ; crows and rooks *caw* ; monkeys *chatter, gibber* ; pigs *grunt* ; mice *squeak* ; cocks *crow* ; ducks *quack* ; bees *hum* ; flies *buzz* ; owls *hoot* ; small birds *chirp, twitter* ; eagles and kites *scream* ; snakes *hiss* ; elephants *trumpet*.

NOTE.—*Climax* is the highest point, *crisis* is the turning point. A general's fortunes arrive at their *crisis*, when an important battle is still undecided; they reach their *climax*, when he finishes his campaign victoriously.

(2) *Aggravate* should not be used for *annoy*:—

Incorrect; His conduct is very *aggravating.*
Correct: His conduct is very *annoying.*

NOTE.—*Aggravate* means 'intensify':—'His impudence *aggravates* his guilt.'

(3) *Verbal* should not be used for *oral*:—

Incorrect; Not having a pencil, I gave the boy a *verbal* message.
Correct: Not having a pencil, I gave the boy an *oral* message.

NOTE.—*Verbal* means relating to words, as '*verbal* differences,' differences in *words* (not in sense); an *oral* message means a *spoken* message. 'A *verbal* translation' is also incorrect; say 'a *literal* translation.'

721. IV. **The Rule of Simplicity** is that plain words should be used instead of high-sounding words and roundabout phrases; short and simple sentences rather than long and complex sentences; and easy constructions rather than intricate constructions. To be simple, the writer should use the smallest number of words that is necessary for the adequate expression of his ideas. Thus in the sentence 'It is an (undoubted) fact (which no one can question) that Moloch was actuated by (feelings of) hatred to the (supreme) Deity,' the words enclosed in brackets are superfluous. Again, it makes for simplicity to use Teutonic group-verbs rather than their more ornate Romanic equivalents (208). Purity of style, consisting, as it does, in the employment of such words and phrases as are sanctioned by the best modern usage, goes hand in hand with simplicity. It should be remembered that a simple, straightforward style is much easier to acquire than one loaded with ornament and dealing largely in figurative language. The student who is content to write simply and to the point is less likely to make mistakes in idiom and in the meaning of words than one who aims at an ornate and elaborate diction.

(1) *Fine writing* may be illustrated by the use of *individual* for 'man'; *apex* for 'top'; *purchase* for 'buy'; *assist* for 'help'; *proceed* for 'go'; *donate* for 'give'; *commence* for 'begin'; *enquire* for 'ask'; *inform* for 'tell'; *injure* for 'hurt'; *expire* for 'die'; *retire* for 'go to bed'; *prohibit* for 'forbid'; *eventuate* for 'happen, result'; *precipitous* for 'steep'; *considerably* for 'much'; *the tender passion* for 'love'; *the fair sex* for 'women'; *residence* for 'house'; *vituperation* for 'abuse'; *metamorphosis* for 'change'; *maternal relative* for 'mother'; *conflagration* for 'fire'; *ruination* for 'ruin';

the lower extremities for 'legs' or 'feet'; *observations* for 'words'; *location* for 'site'; *he sustained a broken leg* for 'his leg was broken.' The liking for fine words often leads to inaccuracy, as in the use of *partake of dinner* for 'have dinner'; *avocation* for 'calling' (720); *transpire* for 'happen'; *remark* for 'see'; *indicate* for 'show'; *anticipate* for 'expect'; *mutual* for 'common'; *experience* for 'feel'; *period* for (point of) 'time'; *rejoinder* for 'answer'; *conscious* for 'aware'; *similar* for 'the same'; *veracity* for 'truth'; *witness* for 'see'; *intimate* for 'say'; *require* for 'need.'

(2) *Quotations* should be sparingly introduced. Avoid such hackneyed expressions as *the festive board* for 'the dinner table'; *the cup that cheers but not inebriates* for 'tea'; *there's the rub* for 'that is the difficulty'; *the feast of reason and the flow of soul* for 'pleasant conversation'; *the swan of Avon* for 'Shakspere'; *durance vile* for 'imprisonment'; *few and far between* for 'rare'; *the green-eyed monster* for 'jealousy'; *to teach the young idea how to shoot* for 'to educate'; *the end is not yet* for 'there is more to happen or to be done.'

(3) *Colloquialisms and slang* should be eschewed altogether. They are beneath the dignity of written composition, and in addition to their incongruity, they are seldom fully understood by the Indian student, and so are liable to be misused. Such are—to *go the whole hog* for 'to do a thing completely'; he *made himself scarce* for 'he disappeared'; it was *awfully* hot for 'very hot'; the king was a *good chap* for 'a worthy man'; he took a *lot* of trouble for 'a great deal of trouble'; there were *heaps* of people present for 'a great number of people'; I *sat upon* him for 'blamed him'; *fluke* for 'lucky stroke.' See *notes* to **261, 544, 570, 596, 680, 691.** There are colloquial *constructions* as well as colloquial *expressions*, as: 'I knew (that) he was going and (that he) had plenty of money to buy all (that) he wanted'; 'Since no one else is willing to take the lead, I offer to (do so)'; 'There was not one of them (that) came';—where the bracketed words, which might be omitted colloquially, should be inserted in written composition. Colloquial *forms*, such as *I've* for 'I have,' *won't* for 'will not' (**492**), are also inadmissible. Do not turn nouns into verbs, as 'to *bulk* largely,' 'to *voice* a matter.'

(4) *Foreign words and phrases*, such as *rara avis* for 'rarity,' *en fait* for 'proficient,' *sotto voce* for 'in a low voice,' are out of place in the vocabulary of Indian students, and should, therefore, be avoided. There are, it is true, a few Latin and other foreign phrases, mostly technical, which have become established in English, and for which it is not easy to find satisfactory English

equivalents: such are *a fortiori*, *a priori*, a statement *ex cathedrâ*, an adjournment *sine die*, a *sine quâ non*, a *tu quoque*. But the student can easily dispense with these in his English compositions.

722. V. **The Rule of Coherence** is that clauses and sentences should follow one another in their logical order and in their proper connexion. Each sentence should be so framed as to carry on the thought from what precedes to what follows. Disjointed sentences are a sign of confusion and vagueness of thought. Use freely conjunctions and conjunctive phrases, such as *though*, *while*, *hence*, *accordingly*, *yet*, *notwithstanding*, *therefore*, *then again*, *on the one hand*, *on the other hand*, *on the contrary*, *for*, *indeed*, *moreover*, *however*, *now*, *then*, *to be sure*, *at the same time*, *as a matter of fact*, *consequently*, *in short*, *it is true . . . but*. Thus:—

(1) A common error with young writers is the monotonous use of *and*, *so*, *and so*, *as* to join their sentences, instead of employing appropriate connectives:—

A little dog once saved its master's life. So one day it was watching by his side, and he lay asleep in a summer-house, and it was old and crazy, and so the dog saw the walls shake. So it understood the danger, as it began barking, and so it awoke its master. And[1] he started up, and so he had just time to escape as the whole building fell down.

Rewrite as follows:—

A little dog once saved its master's life. For one day it was watching by his side, as he lay asleep in a summer-house, which was old and crazy. Presently the dog saw the walls shake, and understanding the danger, began barking. This awoke its master, who started up, and had just time to escape before the whole building fell down.

(2) Another similar error is that of running together clauses or sentences which ought logically to be kept apart by semicolons or full stops or joined by conjunctions, and separating them only by commas:—

I have been on a visit to my uncle, he lives in Assam, it does not suit his health, his house is large and well-built, it stands on a hill, it commands a fine view.

Rewrite as follows:—

I have been on a visit to my uncle. He lives in Assam, though it does not suit his health. His house is large and well-built; it stands on a hill and commands a fine view.

723. VI. **The Rule of Unity** is that a sentence should contain one, and only one, main fact. Nothing should be introduced that tends to obscure it. Avoid the common fault of crowding a sentence with incongruous or unnecessary details. A good

[1] A good rule is never to begin a new sentence with *and*.

sentence may contain several facts, but the bearing of each upon the main fact should be distinctly shown, so that the whole impresses the reader as an organised unit.

(1) In the following sentence two distinct facts are joined together so as to make it appear that Napoleon's death was due, or partly due, to the annoyance mentioned:—

During his exile he was subject to much annoyance, real or imaginary, and died on the 5th of May, 1821, of cancer of the stomach, a disease which, etc.

Break up the sentence into two by placing a full stop after *imaginary* and changing ***and*** into *He*, and thus give a separate sentence for each fact.

(2) The following sentence consists of a jumble of ill-assorted details:—

In the afternoon, which was very wet, I went by train, in which there were very few passengers, to Calcutta, to see my sick brother, who was better, which made me glad, returning the next day, which was fine, in an open carriage to my home.

As the sentence stands, the clause about the fewness of the passengers is an irrelevant detail. Rearrange as follows:—

Since the afternoon was very wet, I went to Calcutta by train, to see my sick brother, and was glad to find him better. It was a comfortable journey, because there were very few passengers in the train. The next day being fine, I returned home in an open carriage.

(3) On the other hand, unity may be violated by a series of short sentences that do not contain separate facts:—

Dr. Ghose died this morning. He was born March 10, 1820. He was seventy years old, and left Rs. 20,000 to his wife and children.

Here there are only two main facts, the death of Dr. Ghose and his bequest. The fact that he was seventy years old follows from the fact that he was born March 10, 1820, and that fact is subsidiary to the main fact of his death. Rearrange as follows:—

Dr. Ghose died this morning at the age of seventy, having been born March 10, 1820. He left Rs. 20,000 to his wife and children.

(4) Unity of *form* or structure in a sentence is also important. Examples:—

(1) *Incorrect:* I tried a plan which I had thought of, but I had never tried *it* before.
Correct: I tried a plan which I had thought of, but *which* I had never tried before.

(2) *Incorrect:* The general determined to persevere, and a second attack *was ordered.*
Correct: The general determined to persevere, and *ordered* a second attack.

(3) *Incorrect:* He killed himself in his despair and *deranged mind.*
Correct: He killed himself in his despair and *derangement of mind.*

(4) *Incorrect:* Payment in money is better than *to pay* in kind.
Correct: Payment in money is better than *payment* in kind.

(5) *Incorrect:* He called to me to look out, there is a snake going to bite you.
Correct: He called to me to look out, as there was a snake going to bite me.
He called to me, 'Look out, there is a snake going to bite you.'

(6) *Incorrect:* The eagle is the king of birds, as *lions* are of beasts.
Correct: The eagle is the king of birds, as *the lion* is of beasts.

(7) *Incorrect:* It is used as a warehouse, with goods on the first floor, and *has* an office below.
Correct: It is used as a warehouse, with goods on the first floor and *with* an office below.

PARAPHRASING.

FIGURATIVE LANGUAGE.

724. **A Figure of Speech** is the use of a word in other than its literal meaning, to produce a special effect. Thus in 'Richard was a *lion* in the fight,' *lion* does not mean 'lion' but 'brave man'; but the statement as it stands is much more vivid than the literal statement, 'Richard was a *brave man* in the fight.'

725. **A Simile** is a comparison between things *of different kinds* in respect to some particular point of resemblance: as, 'Richard fought *like a lion*.' If we say 'Richard fought *like a brave man*,' there is no Simile, because Richard and a brave man are both of the same kind.

726. **A Metaphor** (transference) is an *implied* Simile. It does not, like the Simile, state a resemblance between two things, but takes it for granted that the two things are identical. Thus the Simile, 'Richard fought like a lion,' states that Richard's fighting was *like* that of a lion; whereas the Metaphor, 'Richard was a lion in the fight,' states that Richard in fighting actually *was* a lion. The word *lion* is *transferred* from the animal to which it properly belongs to the man who resembles it in the quality of bravery.

727. **To turn a Metaphor into a Simile** it is necessary first to find out the exact points of resemblance between the two objects compared. Thus in turning into a Simile the Metaphor in 'The

camel is the ship of the desert,' we must enquire what the point is in which a camel resembles a ship, and having found it to lie in the fact that both are *used for crossing*, the former for crossing the desert, the latter for crossing the sea, we must assign to each of the two things compared its proper action; and the resemblance between these actions must be expressed by some word or words like *as ... so*. We thus get the Simile: 'As the ship is used for crossing the sea, so the camel is used for crossing the desert.'

Poetic Diction.

728. A useful exercise in composition, and one that is often made the subject of an Examination question, is to reproduce in simple prose the meaning of a piece of poetry.

In order to comprehend the principles that should guide him in this task, the student must first learn in what main features the style and diction of Poetry differ from those of Prose.

This difference is founded on the fact that the primary object of Poetry is to give *pleasure*, while the primary object of Prose is to convey *information*. Poetry, then, chooses such a diction as will please the reader, while Prose prefers language that will best convey the information to be imparted. Hence the diction of Poetry is distinguished from that of Prose by the following peculiarities:—

(1) The use of archaic or uncommon words.

(2) The use of archaic or uncommon constructions.

(3) The omission of words retained in Prose.

(4) The inversion of the regular order of words.

(5) The freer use of picturesque, ornamental, and figurative language.

(6) Greater conciseness of expression.

(7) Longer sentences.

729. (1) **The use of archaic or uncommon words.**—These may generally be distinguished by their unfamiliar appearance or sound.

(*a*) Nouns:—*Swain* for *lover* or *peasant*; *nymph, damsel, maid* for *girl*; *ire, wrath* for *anger*; *bale* for *evil* or *misery*; *woe, dole* for *sorrow*; *bliss* for *happiness*; *cheer* for *joy*; *foe, foeman* for *enemy*; *lay* for *song*; *main* for *sea*; *steed* for *horse*; *bard* for *poet*; *warrior* for *soldier*; *combat, fray* for *battle*; *tourney* for *tournament*; *hest, behest* for *command*; *meed, guerdon* for *reward*; *ruth* for *pity*; *billow* for *wave*; *ken* for *sight, perception*; *isle* for *island*; *locks, tresses* for *hair*; *accents* for *words*; *hue* for *colour*; *seer* for *prophet*; *numbers* for *verse*; *vale* for *valley*; *mount* for *mountain*;

marge for *margin*; *eve* for *evening*; *morn* for *morning*; *mead* for *meadow*; *nuptials* for *marriage*; *might* for *strength*; *spouse* for *husband* or *wife*; *quest* for *search*; *guile* for *deceit*: *chanticleer* for *cock*; *goblet* for *cup*; *realm* for *kingdom*; *scribe* for *writer*; *victor* for *conqueror*; *tube* for *tobacco-pipe*; *byre* for *cowshed*; *fume* for *smoke*; *boot* for *profit*; *pinion* for *wing*.

(*b*) ADJECTIVES:—*Rathe* for *early*; *darksome* for *dark*; *winsome* for *winning*; *lovesome* for *lovely*; *jocund*, *joyous* for *joyful*; *joyless* for *unhappy*; *doleful* for *sorrowful*; *roseate* for *rosy*; *wont* for *accustomed*; *stout* for *strong* or *bold*; *goodly* for *good-looking*; *plenteous* for *plentiful*; *fond* for *foolish*; *mute* for *silent*; *stilly* for *still*; *verdant* for *green*; *dauntless* for *brave*; *martial* for *military*; *ware* for *aware*; *swart* for *swarthy*; *hapless* for *unfortunate*; *lowly* for *humble*; *forlorn*, *lorn* for *desolate* or *wretched*; *silvan* for *woody*; *bootless* for *unprofitable*; *ingrate* for *ungrateful*; *recreant* for *unfaithful*; *quenchless* for *unquenchable*; *fadeless* for *unfading*; *wroth* for *angry*; *lone*, *lonesome* for *lonely*; *drear* for *dreary*; *dread*, *dire* for *dreadful* or *dreaded*.

(*c*) PRONOUNS:—*Thou* (or *ye*), *thy*, *thine*, *thee* for *you*, *your*, *yours*, *you*; *mine*, *thine* for *my*, *your*; *aught*, *naught* for *anything*, *nothing*; *something* for *somewhat*; *yon*, *yonder* for *that*.

(*d*) VERBS:—*Quoth* for *said*; *wax* for *grow*; *reck* for *care*; *trow* for *believe*; *wot*, *wis* for *know*; *ween* for *think*; *smite* for *strike*; *hie*, *speed* for *hasten*; *tarry*, *abide* for *stay*; *rend* for *tear*; *list* for *listen*; *hearken* for *hear*; *fresh* for *refresh*; *list* for *wish*, *be willing*; *warble* for *sing*; *obscure* for *darken*; *fare* for *be* or *go*; *vanquish* for *conquer*; *quaff* for *drink*; *cleave to* for *adhere*; *bade* for *bid*; *clove* for *cleft*; *drave* for *drove*; *clomb* for *climbed*; *clad* for *clothed*; *doth*, etc. for *does*, etc.; *ta'en* for *taken*; *'gin* for *begin*.

(*e*) ADVERBS:—*Hard by*, *fast by* for *near to*; *erewhile* for *lately*; *whilom*, *erst* for *formerly*; *of yore*, *of old* for *in ancient times*; *anon* for *presently*; *amain* for *violently*; *right* for *very* or *exactly*; *haply* for *by chance*, *perhaps*; *scarce* for *scarcely*; *sore* for *sorely*; *wondrous* for *wonderfully*; *e'er* for *ever*; *e'en* for *even*; *o'er* for *over*; *full oft* for *very often*.

(*f*) PREPOSITIONS:—*Adown* for *down*; *withal* for *with* (or *moreover*); *'neath* for *beneath*; *'twixt* for *betwixt*; *'gainst* for *against*.

(*g*) CONJUNCTIONS:—*Eke* for *also*; *ere*, *or ere* for *before*; *an if* for *if*; *albeit* for *although*; *nathless* for *nevertheless*; *or—or* for *either—or*, and *nor—nor* for *neither—nor*.

(*h*) INTERJECTIONS:—*Avaunt* for *begone*; *hist* for *hush*; *alack*, *alackaday* for *alas*.

730. (2) The use of archaic or uncommon constructions.

(*a*) An Adjective substituted for a Noun:—

'The central *blue*' (=sky); 'the azure *deep* (=depth) of air'; the *void* (=chaos) profound'; 'the blanket of the *dark*' (=darkness).

His *sprightly* (=sprightliness) mingled with a shade of *sad* (=sadness).—*Cowper*.

Happily to steer
From *grave* to *gay*, from *lively* to *severe*.—*Pope*.

(*b*) An Adjective substituted for an Adverb :—

Trip it *deft* and merrily.—*Scott.*
Then they praised him *soft* and *low*.—*Tennyson.*
Less *winning* soft, less amiably mild.—*Milton.*

(*c*) A Noun in the possessive case substituted for an Adjective :—

Her *angel's* (=angelic) face.—*Spenser.*
Pity and *woman's* (=womanly) compassion.—*Longfellow.*
The *mother's* (=motherly) nature of Althæa.—*Lowell.*

(*d*) Adverbs in *-ly* compared by the suffixes *-er* and *-est* :—

You have taken it *wiselier* than I meant you should.—*Shaks.*
Strange friend, past, present, and to be;
Loved *deeplier*, *darklier* understood.—*Tennyson.*
Each act is *rightliest* done,
Not when it must, but when it may be best.—*Milton.*

(*e*) A Superlative adjective substituted for a Positive with *very* :—

Hail, *divinest* (=very divine) Melancholy.—*Milton.*
Through *busiest* street and *loneliest* glen.—*Wordsworth.*

(*f*) The Subject (noun) of a verb repeated by a Pronoun :—

So, 'Fair and softly,' John, *he* cried.—*Cowper.*
The smith, a mighty man is *he*.—*Longfellow.*
My banks, *they* are furnished with bees.—*Shenstone.*

(*g*) The Subjunctive form of the verb used in the first and the third person of the Imperative :—

Well, *sit we* down
And let us hear Bernardo speak of this.—*Shaks.*
Thither our path lies; *wind we* up the heights.—*Browning.*
Every soldier *kill* his prisoners.—*Shaks.*
Yet—*witness* every fainting limb.—*Scott.*

(*h*) A Personal pronoun used in a Reflexive sense :—

I thought *me* (=myself) richer than the Persian king.—*Ben Jonson.*
Mark ye how close she veils *her* (=herself) round.—*Keble.*

(*i*) The use of Impersonal verbs (248) that are obsolete in prose :—

Methinks (=I think) I see my father.—*Shaks.*
Him thought (=he thought) he by the brook of Cherith stood.—*Milton.*
A bard here dwelt, more fat than bard *beseems* (*i.e.* than is seemly for a bard).—*Thomson.*
(They led his) palfrey, when at need
Him listed (=he wished to) ease his battle steed.—*Scott.*

NOTE.—The verb *worth* is similarly obsolete :—'Woe *worth* the chase, woe *worth* the day' (*i.e.* woe be to the chase)!—*Scott.*

(*j*) The simple forms of verbs preferred to the forms with auxiliaries :—

'Twere long to tell	*for*	it *would be* long to tell.
Mine *be* a cot	,,	*may* a cot *be* mine.
Tell me not in mournful numbers	,,	*do* not *tell* me, etc.
The cup that cheers but not *inebriates*	,,	*does* not *inebriate*.
He goes to do what I *had* done, if etc.	,,	he goes to do what I *should have* done, if etc.
What *think'st* thou of our stranger guest?	,,	what *dost* thou *think*, etc.

NOTE.—On the other hand, the auxiliary *do* is often introduced in poetry merely for metrical reasons :—'The dogs *did bark* (for *barked*), the children *screamed*.'—*Cowper*. Cf. 'doth sing' for 'sings' in 737, (1).

731. (3) The omission of words retained in Prose.

Creeping like (a) snail unwillingly to school.
(He) Who never fasts, no banquet e'er enjoys.
For is there aught in sleep (that) can charm the wise?
To whom thus Adam (spoke).
Happy (is) the man whose wish or care, etc.
To be weak is (to be) miserable.
Soldier, rest! thy warfare (being) o'er.
(Neither) Trump nor pibroch summon here.
He knew himself (how) to sing.
(There) Was none that would be foremost.
Entreating all things to weep (over) Balder's death.
Peace is despaired (of).
Far up the lake 'twere safest (to) land.
Permit (that) I marshal thee the way.

732. (4) The inversion of the normal order of words.

Again *returned the scenes* of youth (Verb before Subject).
More would he *of Clan Alpine know* (Object before Verb).
He rose and sought the *moonshine pure* (Noun before Adjective).
Thou sun, *of this great world* both *eye* and *soul* (Adjectival phrase before Noun).
Together *up the pass* they *sped* (Complement before Intransitive Verb).
Some feelings *are to mortals given* (Complement between Auxiliary and Participle).
They dashed that rapid *torrent through* (Noun before Preposition).
To expiate his treason (man) hath naught *left* (Infinitive before Verb).
For saddletree scarce *reached had* he (Participle before Auxiliary).

733. (5) The freer use of picturesque, ornamental, and figurative language.—Since the aim of Poetry is to please rather than to instruct, it naturally employs picturesque, ornamental, and figurative language much more freely than Prose does. Hence Poetry often forms new compound words, as *love-whispering*, *violet-embroidered*, *sphere-descended*, *crimson-circled*; and is fond of merely ornamental or descriptive epithets, as "the *golden* corn,"

'the *flowery* meadows,' 'the *rolling* main,' 'the *revolving* year,' '*smiling* plenty,' 'the *bold* Sir Bedivere'; while in the following two stanzas from Gray's *Elegy* we find at least eleven instances (italicised) of figures of speech:—

> Perhaps in this neglected spot are laid
> Some hearts once *pregnant* with celestial *fire*;
> Hands that the *rod* of empire might have *swayed*,
> Or *waked* to ecstasy the *living* lyre.
>
> But *Knowledge* to their eyes its ample *page*,
> Rich with the *spoils* of time, did ne'er unfold,
> *Chill Penury* repressed their noble rage,
> And *froze* the genial *current* of their soul.

734. (6) **Greater conciseness of expression.**—Besides omitting unemphatic words, Poetry prefers short words to long ones, as may be seen from the list of words in (1). Hence too its tendency to use words or phrases in a pregnant sense, as:—

(*a*) (Heaven) With sparing hands will diet us to good,
Preventing surfeits *of our pampered blood* (*Dryden*)
[where *of our pampered blood* means 'arising from the pampering of our blood'].

(*b*) Sea-faring men *o'er-watched* (*Milton*)
[where *o'er-watched* means 'who have over-watched' (228), or have kept awake too long].

(*c*) Great Xerxes comes to seize the *certain* prey (*Johnson*)
[where *certain* means 'which he regarded as certain'].

(*d*) And all at once their arch'd necks, *midnight-maned*,
Jet upward (*Tennyson*)
[where *midnight-maned* means 'with manes as black as midnight'].

(*e*) '*Oblivious* pool' for 'pool causing oblivion'; '*mortal* taste' for 'taste producing death'; '*insane* root' for 'root causing insanity'; '*grateful* altars' for 'altars to show gratitude.'

735. (7) **Longer sentences.**—Poetry, owing to its possession of metre, is able to use longer sentences than would be possible in Prose. Thus the opening passage of *Paradise Lost* consists of a single sentence sixteen lines long; and the entire Prologue to Tennyson's *Tiresias* is one long-drawn-out sentence of fifty-six lines.

Turning Poetry into Prose.

736. **Rules.**—The following rules will be found useful in turning a passage of Poetry into equivalent Prose:—

(1) Before considering what particular changes are necessary, read over carefully the whole passage, so as to make sure that you thoroughly understand its meaning. Get a firm hold of its central idea, and then bring out that idea in your prose version.

(2) For all words or phrases that are archaic or uncommon substitute words or phrases such as are met with in ordinary prose (729). As will be seen in the examples given below, the number of expressions requiring thus to be altered is seldom large. It is a common mistake for the student to endeavour to find a prose equivalent for almost every word used in the piece of verse, with the result that his version altogether misrepresents the sense of the original or conveys no sense at all.

(3) Change into the ordinary prose form all uncommon grammatical constructions (730). In interrogative, imperative, and conditional sentences, use the forms of verbs with auxiliaries in preference to the simple forms.

(4) Supply any omitted words (731).

(5) Rearrange the parts of each sentence in the regular prose order (732).

(6) Change ornamental and figurative language into plain and literal statement (733). When a metaphor is expressed in detail, it should be expanded into its corresponding simile (727); as with 'footprints on the sands of time' in example (3) below. When a metaphor is confined to a single expression (as 'shipwreck' in the same example), it is sufficient to turn it into a statement. For other instances, see 'to crown' and 'pants' in example (4).

(7) Bring out the full meaning of words or phrases used in a pregnant sense (734). See 'an evening group' in example (4).

(8) Break up a long sentence (735) into several shorter ones, as has been done in examples (3) and (4).

(9) Make your prose version as short as possible, provided that everything obscure is explained and that the full meaning of the original is represented. Only such new material is to be introduced as is necessary for the clear explanation of the text. Be careful that the version when read apart from the original is an intelligible piece of English, expressed in simple and natural language.

737. Examples of Poetry turned into Prose.

(1) The bird that soars on highest wing
Builds on the ground her lowly nest,
And she that doth most sweetly sing
Sings in the shade when all things rest.
In lark and nightingale we see
What honour hath humility.[1] (*J. Montgomery.*)

[1] This passage and the following one are taken from questions set in Matriculation Examinations.

Prose Version. The bird that flies highest in the air builds her nest low on the ground, and the bird that sings sweetest, sings in the darkness, when everything is at rest. By the example of the lark and the nightingale we see how great is the honour paid to humility.

(2) No cloud obscures the summer sky;
The moon in brightness walks on high,
And set in azure every star
Shines, a pure gem of heaven afar!
Child of the earth, oh, lift thy glance
To yon bright firmament's expanse;
The glories of its realm explore,
And gaze and wonder and adore!
Doth not it speak to every sense
The marvels of Omnipotence?
See'st thou not there th' Almighty name
Inscribed in characters of flame?

Prose Version. The sky of the summer night is not darkened by a single cloud; the moon is riding overhead in all its brightness, and every star shines in the distant sky like a brilliant gem in a deep blue setting. Lift up your eyes, inhabitant of earth, to that bright expanse of sky; survey all its beauties and gaze on them with wonder and adoration. Do they not bring home to your feelings the wonderful power of Almighty God? Do you not see there signs of His greatness, as though the stars were letters of fire by which God's name is inscribed on the heavens?

(3) Lives of great men all remind us
We may make our lives sublime,
And, departing, leave behind us
Footprints on the sands of time;

Footprints which perhaps another,
Sailing o'er life's troubled main,
Some forlorn and shipwrecked brother,
Seeing may take heart again. (*Longfellow.*)

Prose Version. The lives of all great men remind us that we too may live noble lives, and, when we die, may leave behind us in the world records of our actions, like footprints left on the sand of the sea-shore by passers-by.

These records may chance to be noticed by some unfortunate fellow-man, whose life is full of trouble, and may give him encouragement and hope in the midst of his loneliness and misfortunes.

NOTE.—The emphasis which is laid on the word *our* in 'our lives' is expressed by the insertion of *too* in the Prose Version.

(4) In all my wanderings round this world of care,
In all my griefs—and God has given my share,
I still had hopes, my latest hours to crown,
Amidst these humble bowers to lay me down;
To husband out life's taper at the close,
And keep the flame from wasting by repose.
I still had hopes, for pride attends us still,
Amidst the swains to show my book-learned skill,
Around my fire an evening group to draw,
And tell of all I felt and all I saw;
And as a hare whom hounds and horns pursue
Pants to the place from whence at first she flew,
I still had hopes, my long vexations past,
Here to return—and die at home at last. (*Goldsmith.*)

Prose Version. In the midst of all my weary travels over the world, and in all my sorrows, of which Providence has given me my full share, I never ceased hoping that I should be able to retire to this humble village in order to spend the close of my life here in peace. I thought that I might lengthen out the few remaining days of my life by resting myself from toil, just as a candle, when nearly burnt out, may be kept from wasting by being sheltered from the wind. I never ceased hoping (for even in old age we take a pride in our own powers) to display my superior learning before the rustics, and to gather a company of them around my fire at evening and tell them of my experiences and the sights that I had seen. I never ceased hoping, I say, to return here, after my many troubles were over, and so at last die at home; like a hare which, pursued by huntsmen and hounds, makes the best of its way back to the place from which it first started.

(5) The lamb thy riot dooms to bleed to-day,
Had he thy reason, would he skip and play?
Pleased to the last, he crops the flow'ry food,
And licks the hand just raised to shed his blood. (*Pope.*)

Prose Version. If the lamb which is to be killed to-day in order to provide you with a feast, were possessed of your human reason, do you think he would frisk and gambol as he does now? See how, unconcerned to the last, he crops the meadow grass, and licks the hand that is about to cut his throat.

CHAPTER XII.

ESSAY-WRITING AND LETTER-WRITING.

OUTLINES OF ESSAYS.

738. Expansion of Outlines.—Before attempting to write a formal Essay, the young student should exercise himself in expanding an outline of some short narrative into a piece of composition. Five examples of simple fables or stories outlined and expanded are given below as models; and these are followed by a number of outlines for the student himself to expand into continuous narrative. Figures, when inserted in the outlines, indicate paragraphs.

1. FABLE OF THE LION AND THE MOUSE.

OUTLINE.

A mouse runs over a sleeping lion – the lion catches it—spares its life—the same lion is caught in a net – roars with distress—the mouse hears—nibbles the net—releases the lion. *Moral.*

EXPANSION.

A lion, wearied with the chase, was lying asleep in his den, when he was waked from his slumbers by a mouse that ran over him. The lion started up in a rage and set his paw upon the mouse before it could escape. At the point of being killed, the mouse in trembling accents begged for mercy, and the noble beast let it go free.

Not long after, the lion, roaming through the jungle, fell into the toils of the hunter. Struggling in vain to release himself from the strong net, he roared aloud in his distress. The mouse, hearing the cry of his benefactor, speedily ran to his aid, gnawed through the meshes of the net, and set the lion at liberty.

Moral: The least may help the greatest.

2. FABLE OF THE LION, THE BEAR, AND THE FOX.

OUTLINE.

A lion and a bear find a dead fawn—dispute possession—fight till both are exhausted—a fox, seeing their weakness, carries off the fawn—their

sorrow that they did not divide the carcass instead of fighting over it for the benefit of a rogue. *Moral.*

EXPANSION.

A lion and a bear, hunting together in the forest, came upon the carcass of a fawn. Each claimed to have spied it first, and neither would consent to a division of the booty. The dispute waxed so hot that they came to blows, and the fight was so equal and so fierce that at last they could fight no longer. Faint with loss of blood and gasping for breath, they lay on the ground, unable to move.

Just then a fox came by, who, seeing that they were too weak to prevent him, seized and carried off the prize.

"Alas!" cried the combatants, "what fools we have been! Instead of amicably dividing the prey between us, we have fought and nearly killed each other only to fatten a rogue."

Moral: Quarrelsome people often lose what they quarrel over.

3. STORY OF SIR PHILIP SIDNEY.

OUTLINE.

Sidney, wounded in the battle of Zutphen, is parched with thirst—water is brought him—sees wounded soldier wistfully eyeing the bottle—hands bottle to soldier: "Thy necessity is greater than mine"—dies sixteen days later.

EXPANSION.

In the battle of Zutphen, fought in the cause of liberty against the tyrant Philip of Spain, Sir Philip Sidney displayed the most undaunted and enterprising courage. He had two horses killed under him, and, whilst mounting a third, was wounded by a musket-shot out of the trenches, which broke the bone of his thigh. He had to walk about a mile and a half to the camp; and, being faint with loss of blood and parched with thirst, he called for drink, which was instantly brought him; but, as he was putting the vessel to his mouth, a poor wounded soldier, who happened to be carried by him at that instant, looked at it with wistful eyes. The gallant and generous Sidney took the bottle from his mouth without drinking, and, handing it to the soldier, said, "Thy necessity is yet greater than mine." Sixteen days after, the virtuous Sidney breathed his last, in the thirty-second year of his age.

4. STORY OF SELF-SACRIFICE.

OUTLINE.

1. A Russian nobleman and his wife with their servant were driving in a four-horsed carriage through a wood, when they were pursued by wolves. To gain time for escape, first one horse and then another were let loose and devoured by the pack.

2. But, the pursuit still continuing, at last the nobleman's servant cast himself to the wolves to save his master and mistress.

EXPANSION.

Once upon a time a Russian nobleman, with his wife, was going to a distant city, in a carriage drawn by four horses. The passage lay through a wood. When he had come within a few miles of the city, some fierce

wolves issued out of the wood, and pursued the carriage. The servant of the nobleman, seeing the wolves come near, begged his master to let him abandon one of the horses to the wolves. The nobleman consented, and one of the horses was let loose. They seized the horse, and soon tore it in pieces and devoured it. Thus the carriage passed some distance unmolested. But the wolves, become more savage by tasting blood, pursued the carriage and came close to it once more. Again another of the horses was let loose, and again they proceeded a great distance without hindrance.

But no sooner had they devoured it than they came rushing over the fields, fiercer than ever. The servant now cried to his master: "There is no other way of safety than for me to give myself up to these ferocious beasts. While they are thus occupied, you will get time enough to escape. All I ask is that you should act as a father to my wife and children when I am gone." The nobleman hesitated, but as there was no prospect of escape for any of the party, he was forced to consent. Thereupon the servant leaped from the carriage into the midst of the wolves. Thus while they were feasting upon him, the nobleman and his wife escaped safely from their jaws.

5. STORY OF THE JUDGE AND THE PRINCE.

OUTLINE.

1. Prince Henry, exasperated at the punishment of one of his dissolute companions, strikes Judge Gascoigne in open court, who commits him to prison.
2. Upon hearing of the matter, the king declares himself happy in having so courageous a judge and so submissive a son.
3. The prince, when king, instead of disgracing the judge as the latter had expected, praises his strict administration of justice.

EXPANSION.

Henry, Prince of Wales, son of Henry IV., was notorious for all kinds of debauchery, and even chose to be surrounded by a set of wretches, who took pride in committing the most illegal acts with the Prince at their head. The king was not a little mortified at this degeneracy in his eldest son, although he had displayed repeated proofs of his valour and generosity. Such were the excesses to which he ran, that one of his dissolute companions having been brought to trial before Sir William Gascoigne, Chief Justice of the King's Bench, for some misdemeanour, the Prince was so exasperated at the issue of the trial that he struck the judge in open court. The judge, who knew the reverence that was due to his station, behaved with the dignity that became his office, and immediately ordered the Prince to be committed to prison.

When the transaction was reported to the king, he could not help exclaiming in transport, "Happy is the king that has a magistrate endowed with courage to execute the laws upon such an offender, and still more happy in having a son willing to submit to such a chastisement!"

When the young prince succeeded to the throne, the Chief Justice expected nothing but disgrace. But he met with praises instead of reproaches, and was exhorted to persevere in the same rigorous and impartial execution of the laws.

739. Outlines for Expansion.

1. FABLE OF THE FOX AND THE CROW.

A fox sees a crow perched on a tree with a piece of cheese in her mouth—praises crow's beautiful plumage—longs to hear her sweet voice—the crow opens her beak to sing—drops the cheese, which is snapt up by the fox. *Moral.*

2. FABLE OF THE BOY AND THE WOLF.

A shepherd-boy tends his flock near a forest—cries out "Wolf!" for fun—the neighbours come—the boy laughs at them—one day a wolf really comes—the boy cries for help—no one believes him—the sheep are devoured. *Moral.*

3. FABLE OF THE SICK LION.

A lion is too old to hunt—retires to his den—gives out that he is very ill—beasts come to visit him—are devoured—the fox declines to enter, because all the footprints are towards the den and none back again. *Moral.*

4. FABLE OF THE HARE AND THE TORTOISE.

A hare jeers at a tortoise's slow pace—the tortoise challenges him to a race—the hare takes a nap by the way—oversleeps himself—the tortoise jogs steadily along—wins the race. *Moral.*

5. FABLE OF THE FROGS DESIRING A KING.

The frogs ask Jupiter for a king—he throws them a log—the frogs at first are alarmed by the splash—soon find the log is sluggish and stupid—beg Jupiter for a better king—he sends them a stork—the stork gobbles them up. *Moral.*

6. FABLE OF THE GRASSHOPPER AND THE ANTS.

Ants are busy storing grain on fine winter's morning—a grasshopper, perished with cold and hunger, begs for food—the ants ask what she did all the summer—she says that she sang—"You sang, did you?" reply the ants, "Go and dance now." *Moral.*

7. FABLE OF THE DOG IN THE MANGER.

A dog lies on the hay in a manger—an ox comes to feed—the dog snarls and refuses to stir—the ox complains, "You cannot eat the hay yourself, and will not let those eat it who can." *Moral.*

8. FABLE OF THE HORSE AND THE STAG.

A horse and a stag fight about right of pasture—the horse is defeated—takes a man on his back to help him—the stag is

driven away—the man keeps the horse in harness as his servant. *Moral.*

9. FABLE OF THE COUNTRYMAN AND THE ADDER.

A countryman finds a half-frozen adder—pities it—takes it home to the fire—the warmth revives the adder—it attacks the children—the countryman kills it. *Moral.*

10. FABLE OF THE CROW AND THE PITCHER.

A thirsty crow finds a pitcher—the water in it is beyond his reach—he drops pebbles into the water—raises it to the brim—drinks at his ease. *Moral.*

11. STORY OF THE DOG OF MONTARGIS.

1. Three days after the strange disappearance of Aubrey de Montdidier, his friend Sieur de Narsac was wakened by a half-starved dog, his friend's constant companion. The dog led him into the Forest of Bondy, where, buried in a hole, was discovered Aubrey's murdered body.

2. Soon after, the dog, accompanying de Narsac, met the Chevallier Macaire in the street and flew at him. The same thing occurred a few days later; and yet once again, when the dog singled out Macaire from among the king's courtiers.

3. The king ordered a trial combat between the man and the dog. Macaire lost his nerve, the dog pinned him by the throat, and he confessed his crime and was executed. The combat was carved on a stone mantelpiece in the Castle of Montargis.

12. STORY OF ANDROCLES AND THE LION.

1. Androcles, a Roman slave in North Africa, ran away from his master. Lost in the desert, he entered a cave and fell asleep.

2. He was waked by a lion standing at the entrance. The beast did not attack him, and he found it had a thorn in its foot. This Androcles extracted.

3. For three years he lived in the cave with the lion, which caught food for him.

4. At last Androcles was captured, taken to Rome, and condemned to be torn in pieces by wild beasts.

5. In the great Circus a lion was let loose to devour him, but, instead of attacking him, it fawned upon him and licked his hands.

6. Then the whole story was told, Androcles was released, and the lion was given him as a companion.

13. BUCEPHALUS.

1. In the days of Philip, King of Macedon, a Thessalian offered him a beautiful horse, named Bucephalus, for a large sum. The horse was tried, but would suffer no one to come near him.

2. Then the young Alexander took the horse in hand, stroked him, led him about, and finally rode him round the course, to the admiration of his father.

3. Henceforth for ten years Bucephalus carried Alexander the Great through all his battles into the heart of Asia, till at last the old horse died on the banks of the Jhelum, and received a splendid funeral.

14. BOADICEA.

1. Boadicea, wife of one of the British kings, was on his death cruelly treated by the Romans.

2. She rose in rebellion, took and laid waste a number of Roman colonies, among them London, and killed thousands of Romans.

3. But the Roman general collected his forces, and taking up a strong position, awaited the enemy's attack.

4. Led by Boadicea, the Britons fought with fury, but were utterly defeated, whereupon the queen poisoned herself.

15. THE BATTLE OF CRECY.

1. On August 26, 1346, Edward III. with a small but well-equipped army awaited the attack of the French under Philip.

2. As the French archers advanced, a thunderstorm relaxed their bowstrings, and they fled before the arrows of the English, who had kept their bows in cases.

3. The division under the Black Prince bore the brunt of the fight, but Edward refused to send him aid, saying, "Let the boy win his spurs."

4. Many of the bravest French knights were slain, and this battle showed that yeomen could fight nobles and rout them.

16. STORY OF JOAN OF ARC.

1. When the English, after conquering a great part of France, were besieging Orleans, Joan of Arc, an ignorant peasant girl, but gentle and good, felt great pity for the realm of France. She thought she heard voices in the air bidding her aid King Charles.

2. At first she was laughed at, but at length she persuaded the king to put her at the head of an army, for the relief of Orleans. The English were struck with terror, and Orleans was saved.

3. Joan remained with the army, but was taken prisoner and handed over to the English, who burnt her as a witch in the market-place of Rouen on May 30, 1431.

17. THE DEFENCE OF RORKE'S DRIFT.

1. On Jan. 22, 1879, news of the disaster at Isandula reached Rorke's Drift, and Lieutenants Chard and Bromhead with 139 men hurriedly threw up two lines of defence, an outer one of mealie bags and an inner one of biscuit boxes; powder and shot were placed within easy reach.

2. Presently 500 Zulus advanced to the attack, but were met with a volley which discomfited them, and they retired to wait for the main body of their comrades.

3. These soon arrived, and the 3000 savages poured a terrific fire upon the English from a hill, and again and again assaulted the defences only to be beaten back.

4. At length the fire from the hill became so hot that the English were obliged to retire behind their second line of defence, and the hospital had to be abandoned. But the brave soldiers saved the sick and wounded.

5. At fall of night the Zulus retired, but kept up a steady fire for some time. The next day a British force came to the rescue.

18. STORY OF GRACE DARLING.

1. Grace Darling, 22 years old, lived with her old father on Longstone, one of the Farne Islands off the coast of Northumberland.

2. At 4 a.m. on Sept. 5, 1838, the steamer Forfarshire with 63 persons on board, caught in a storm and fog, struck on a reef of this island.

3. A panic ensued. Part of the crew left the ship in a boat, part were swept away by the waves, and 9 were left on the wreck.

4. They were descried from the lighthouse. At the risk of their lives, Grace and her father rowed through a raging sea to the wreck and rescued the sufferers.

5. Praised and admired by all, Grace remained simple and modest, as if nothing had happened. She died of consumption, Oct. 20, 1842. Her monument stands in Bamborough churchyard.

6. This is true heroism—to risk one's life to save the lives of others.

THE ESSAY.

740. Three Classes of Essays.—Essays may be divided into three classes—(1) *Descriptive*, (2) *Narrative*, and (3) *Reflective* or *Expository*—according as they consist of a description of some

place or thing, a narrative of some event, or reflections upon or the exposition of some subject, which is generally of an abstract nature. Very often description and narration are combined in the same Essay, and both may be used to illustrate or support opinions that are put forward in a reflective Essay.

741. The Composition of Essays.—In setting himself to compose an essay the inexperienced writer often finds it extremely difficult to think of enough to say even when he has a fair knowledge of a subject. A good plan for him to follow is to cross-question himself about the subject set, and so draw out his ideas till he realises that he has sufficient subject-matter at his disposal. Thus, if the subject is 'Kindness to Animals,' the writer would ask himself—What animals are unkindly treated and by whom? (Bullocks, horses, and other beasts of burden, by their drivers; cats, dogs, insects, etc., by thoughtless boys; say how.) Why ought we to be kind to animals? (They cannot resent ill-treatment; they are our benefactors; point out in what ways.) How can we show kindness to animals? (Sufficient food and shelter, and no overwork. Some people make pets of animals.) Are there instances of animals appreciating kindness? (Story of Androcles and the lion, or any other example.)

By this method of cross-questioning the writer will gain confidence in his powers and be encouraged to *make a start*, which, hard as it is in most things, is hardest of all in written composition.

742. Rules.—In composing an Essay the following rules should be observed:—

(1) If more subjects than one are given, read them over and *make your choice quickly.* The subject once chosen and the Essay begun, it is generally a mistake and always a serious loss of time to make a change of subject.

(2) Note carefully the *wording* of the subject, so as to grasp its exact meaning and scope, and then keep to the point. Do not drift into extraneous topics. Thus, if the subject is 'The Advantages of Travel,' do not enlarge upon its drawbacks; if the subject is 'The Rainy Season,' do not introduce topics that belong to the Hot or the Cold Seasons. Digressions are inadmissible in a short Essay.

(3) Before commencing, think over the subject, so as to see what are the questions and considerations to which it most naturally gives rise. *Note down in brief any thoughts* (whether facts or illustrations) that occur to you. These can be placed

in their right order later. A thought is easily lost unless it is promptly recorded. Such thoughts will help you in drawing up or filling in the outline, and any that are irrelevant can be omitted.

(4) If an outline (or headings) is given for you to expand, *follow it closely*, and do not either introduce matter not included in it or deviate from the order in which its topics are arranged.

(5) If no outline is given, *make one*. It is invaluable in furnishing you with a concise notion of what you have to write. The following rules for outline-making will be found useful :—

(*a*) First put down the principal ideas or main topics, and denote them by numbers (1), (2), (3), etc. ; then collect the subordinate ideas or sub-topics, and denote them by letters (*a*), (*b*), (*c*), etc., as in the examples given below.

(*b*) Word your topics as *compactly* as possible.

(*c*) Arrange your topics in their *natural* order. See (9) below.

(*d*) See that sub-topics correspond with the ideas contained in their respective main topics.

(*e*) Keep in mind the amount of time at your disposal, and if the time is too short for much detail, select only such topics as are essential for a clear exposition of the subject.

(6) Do not waste your time over a long introduction or insert prefatory remarks (such as 'I take up my pen,' etc.), but *start at once upon your subject*. End with a definite statement, not with a postscript of something previously omitted. Anything forgotten must be inserted in its proper place. It often adds to the clearness of an Essay to begin by stating what the general subject is and what are the different heads under which you propose to consider it.

(7) Divide your Essay into *paragraphs*, which should be indented.[1] Each paragraph should deal with one and only one main theme, and should be made up of sentences that hang together because of their common relation to the main theme. Begin a new paragraph when a new topic is entered upon, and see that this new paragraph contains that which comes next in order of thought to the paragraph which it follows. A short, pithy sentence at the beginning of a paragraph is often very effective.

[1] That is, the first line of the paragraph should be begun about an inch further to the right than the rest.

(8) Endeavour to *indicate the logical sequence* of the parts by transitional sentences, that is, sentences that carry the reader along from one topic to another. Such are:—'The next thing we did was' etc.; 'After leaving the building we' etc.; 'But this was not the only thing we saw'; 'So much for the situation of the town'; 'Less noticeable perhaps, but more interesting, is' etc.; 'At the same time there are other things to be considered'; 'But this is not all'; 'Whether, then, you succeed or fail, you must not forget' etc.; 'I say this, because' etc.

(9) If the Essay is of the Descriptive class, divisions according to *place* may often be adopted. Thus the subject 'The City of Calcutta' might be described in five paragraphs treating of (*a*) the Native quarter, (*b*) the European quarter, (*c*) the Maidan and Eden Gardens, (*d*) the Fort, (*e*) the River and Port. If the Essay is of the Narrative class, *divisions* according to *time* are natural. Thus the subject 'What I do in a day' might be divided into three paragraphs relating the events of (*a*) the morning, (*b*) the afternoon, and (*c*) the evening. In the case of Reflective and Expository Essays, the divisions should be *logical* and free from confusion. Thus for the subject of 'Superstition' the paragraphs might be four: (*a*) what it is and what gives rise to it, (*b*) examples of it, (*c*) why it is harmful, (*d*) remedies against it. But do not mix up the remedies with the examples, or the causes with the results.

(10) *Observe proportion*, that is, let each part of the Essay have the prominence due to its relative importance. If the subject is 'Town and Country Life,' do not give three quarters of your space to treating of Town Life, and leave one quarter for Country Life. Points that have a direct bearing upon your subject should have the most space, to the exclusion, if time and space require it, of less relevant points.

(11) *Write simply* and in your own words, and do not feel bound to introduce profound or original ideas. Essay-writing for Matriculation students is more a test of the candidate's power of expressing himself clearly and grammatically in English than of the extent of his reading or the depth of his reflections.

(12) *Avoid the repetition* of words (except for the sake of clearness) or ideas. If your topics are well arranged, it should not be necessary to refer back to or to repeat previous statements. Do not insert 'etc.' or 'and so on,' 'and the like' in your composition. Know what you have to say, and say it.

(13) When the Essay is finished, *read it carefully through*. Amend any sentence that appears to be obscure, and correct any errors in spelling, punctuation, grammar, or syntax. See that the handwriting is legible and free from blots, and that there is a margin of at least an inch on the left-hand side of the paper.

743. (1) **Descriptive Essay.**—The subject of a Descriptive Essay may be some natural object, animate or inanimate; some place or country; or some object of interest, such as a palace, a fort, a ship, etc. The following is an example of an outline:—

Subject:—'Describe the town or village in which your school is situated.'

OUTLINE.

(1) Name of town or village: its meaning and the reason of its being given.

(2) Situation:—
- (*a*) In what Province and District.
- (*b*) Distance from Capital.
- (*c*) On the bank of what river or on what line of railway.

(3) Natural features:—
- (*a*) Soil and climate.
- (*b*) Scenery.
- (*c*) Cause of the selection of the site.

(4) Dimensions:—
- (*a*) Area.
- (*b*) Length and direction of main streets.
- (*c*) Population.

(5) Special characteristics:—
- (*a*) Buildings: temples, schools, courts, bridges, etc. Water-supply, drainage, etc.
- (*b*) Inhabitants: race, religion, caste.
- (*c*) Chief trade.

(6) History: important events that have happened in the neighbourhood.

744. The following is an example of a more extended outline, the facts and illustrations being arranged under their several heads. Having sketched such a picture in all its details, the student should not find much difficulty in writing a clear and connected account of the subject.

Subject:—'The Elephant.'

OUTLINE.

(1) Class:—
Mammal: elephant largest quadruped.

(2) Order:—
Ungulata: two existing species—African and Indian. African the taller, with larger tusks and ears.

(3) Physical qualities :—

Massive size; greatest height, 11 feet; trunk and tusks; rounded feet with five toes; tread almost noiseless; can fill trunk with water from stomach. Strongest land animal known to man; uses its weight to push down obstacles; can easily carry 7 or 8 men.

(4) Where found :—

In all parts of Central Africa; abundant in Ceylon, and in forests skirting Himalayas, Garo Hills, Burmah.

(5) Habits :—

(*a*) When wild: herds of from 30 to 100 led by tusker; feeds on bark and leaves of trees and edible roots; destroys crops.

(*b*) When tame: fed on leaves and grain; ridden by mahout, astride on neck; guided by iron goad; taken to river to bathe. Very docile, is tamed in a few weeks; fond of those who treat it well; sometimes revengeful; tale of tailor who pricked elephant's trunk.

(6) How captured :—

(*a*) By noosing.
(*b*) By pitfalls.
(*c*) By driving into *kheddahs*.

(7) Usefulness to man :—

(*a*) In ancient times: used in war by Carthaginians and Moguls; carried turrets filled with soldiers.
(*b*) In modern times: for war purposes—drags guns, carries tents, stores, etc.; in peace—useful for crossing swampy ground or forests, for shooting tigers from howdah, for stacking timber and for state processions.

745. Description and Narration combined.—This is the kind of Essay which the student is most often required to write in an Examination. Below is given an example of (A) an outline, and (B) the outline expanded into an Essay.

Subject :—'Give a brief account of any journey you have made.'

(A) OUTLINE.

(1) Date and object :—

Two years ago; to see brother ill in Calcutta.

(2) Method of travelling :—

Kishnaghur to Hanskhally and thence to Buggoolah by ticca gharry; Buggoolah to Calcutta by rail.

(3) Events by the way :—

Country seen from the high road; train not crowded; branch line to Jessore; Hoogly College seen from Nyehatty; Barrackpore Station.

(4) Arrival :—

Father at Station; crowded streets contrasted with quiet of country; home; brother better.

(B) ESSAY.

Two years ago, while staying with my father-in-law at Kishnaghur, I received one morning a letter from home, telling me to leave at once for Calcutta, as my elder brother had suddenly been taken ill. Though grieved at the sad news, I wasted no time in useless regret, but, hastily putting my things together, bade goodbye to my kind entertainers. A gharry was quickly called to the door, and within half an hour of getting the letter, I was driving rapidly through the narrow bazaar of the little town of Kishnaghur on my way to the high road leading to the railway.

The distance from Kishnaghur to the Buggoolah railway-station is about twelve miles, and the drive, when once the narrow and winding bazaar is past, is ordinarily pleasant enough. The road is kept in good order, and is so raised that a good view may be gained of the neighbouring country with its villages surrounded by trees and the wide expanse of rice-fields, stretching as far as eye can reach. At Hanskhally, about three miles from the railway, travellers have to cross a stream in a ferry boat, and a change of carriages is necessary, which is often a cause of delay. However, I luckily found a gharry disengaged, and reached the station in plenty of time to get my ticket without being hurried. In a few minutes the train steamed up to the platform, and I was glad to see that it was not crowded; I was thus able to secure a comfortable seat next the window.

There is not, at the best of times, much of interest to be seen from a railway carriage between Buggoolah and Calcutta. I remember noticing at Ranaghat that a train with its engine was drawn up on a siding ready to start for Jessore by the branch line. At Nyehatty I just caught a glimpse of the top of the Hooghly College standing on the opposite bank of the river at Chinsurah. At Barrackpore tickets were collected, as the train does not stop between that place and Calcutta.

The remaining fourteen miles were soon finished, and on reaching Sealdah I saw my father standing on the platform. He quickly relieved my anxiety by the news that my brother was much better. The crowded streets of Calcutta were a great contrast to the quiet roads of the country: tramcars, carts, carriages crossing and recrossing one another, made our progress very slow at first, but our coachman cleverly threaded his way in and out of the crush. In ten minutes we were at home, where to my joy I found my brother on a fair way towards recovery.

The journey has purposely been represented as having been uneventful, in order to show that an ordinary occurrence, devoid of striking incidents, may supply matter enough for a short Essay.

746. Outlines for Descriptive Essays.

1. THE HUMAN BODY.

(1) The trunk:—
 (*a*) Backbone, ribs, etc.
 (*b*) Vital organs; heart, lungs, etc.
(2) The head:—
 (*a*) Eyes, nose, ears, etc.
 (*b*) Tongue, brain, etc.
(3) The limbs:—
 (*a*) Legs, feet, etc.
 (*b*) Arms, hands, etc.

2. THE GAME OF CRICKET.

(1) The kind of ground required.

(2) Its implements: bat, ball, etc.

(3) How it is played; the rules of the game.

(4) Its advantages:—
 (*a*) A fine, open-air exercise.
 (*b*) A good mental discipline and relaxation.
 (*c*) Promotes good-fellowship.

(5) The Indian climate for the most part unsuited to cricket.

3. AN EVENING WALK BY MOONLIGHT.

(1) A pleasant exercise in the cool of the day.

(2) The quiet of evening refreshing to the mind after hard work.

(3) The beauty of the fading sunset and the rising moon.

(4) The effects of moonlight upon the landscape.

(5) Moonlight nights in the tropics more enjoyable out of doors than they are in cold countries.

747. (2) **Narrative Essay.**—The subject of a Narrative Essay may be some interesting experience of the writer, some legendary or historical incident, or any current event. To narrative writing belong also accounts of the rise and progress of some art, manufacture, or institution. The following general plan of such a subject may be given:—

OUTLINE.

(1) What caused or led up to the event.

(2) The incidents; with special mention of all that is distinctive or characteristic of the special event treated of.

(3) The result.

(4) Reflections; moral lessons to be learnt.

748. Under this head comes the Biographical Essay, in which an account is given of the life and character of some eminent person:—

OUTLINE.

(1) Date and place of birth; father's name and position; mention of any distinguished ancestors.

(2) Education; any signs of future greatness shown in early life.

(3) Career.

(4) Death.

(5) Estimate of character; influence on mankind; reflections.

749. Example of (A) an outline, and (B) the outline expanded into an Essay.

Subject:—'The Defence of Arcot.'[1]

(A) OUTLINE.

(1) Capture of Arcot suggested and carried out by Clive.

(2) Force under Rajah Sahib sent to recover the fort.

(3) Fort invested. Its weakness; small number of besieged.

(4) Its defence for fifty days in spite of widening breach and hunger of besieged.

(5) Fearing approach of a Mahratta force, Rajah Sahib tries to bribe Clive to surrender, and threatens to storm the fort.

(6) Assault, made with elephants and with a raft on the moat, repelled by Clive.

(7) Results. 400 of the assailants killed; Clive's loss only five or six men. Retreat of the enemy.

(B) ESSAY.

Clive was now twenty-five years old. The present emergency called forth all his powers. He represented to his superiors that it was absolutely necessary to strike some daring blow. If an attack were made on Arcot, it was not impossible that the siege of Trichinopoly would be raised. The heads of the English settlements approved of Clive's plan, and intrusted the execution of it to himself. The young captain was put at the head of two hundred English soldiers and three hundred sepoys. The weather was stormy; but Clive pushed on, through thunder, lightning, and rain, to the gates of Arcot. The garrison, in a panic, evacuated the fort, and the English entered it without a blow.

The intelligence of these events was soon carried to Chand Sahib, who immediately detached four thousand men from his camp, and sent them to Arcot. They were speedily joined by the remains of the force which Clive had lately scattered. They were further strengthened by two thousand men from Vellore and by a hundred and fifty French soldiers. The whole of this army was under the command of Rajah Sahib, son of Chand Sahib.

Rajah Sahib proceeded to invest the fort of Arcot, which seemed quite incapable of sustaining a siege. The walls were ruinous, the ditches dry, the ramparts too narrow to admit the guns, the battlements too low to protect the soldiers. The little garrison had been greatly reduced by casualties. It now consisted of a hundred and twenty Europeans and a hundred sepoys.

During fifty days the siege went on. During fifty days the young captain maintained the defence, with a firmness, vigilance, and ability which would have done honour to the oldest marshal in Europe. The breach, however, increased day by day. The garrison began to feel the pressure of hunger.

An attempt made by the government of Madras to relieve the place had failed. But there was hope from another quarter. Rajah Sahib learned that the Mahrattas were in motion. It was necessary for him to be expeditious. He first tried negotiation. He offered large bribes to Clive, which were rejected with scorn. He vowed that, if his proposals were not accepted, he would instantly storm the fort, and put every man in it to the sword.

[1] Adapted from Macaulay.

Clive had received secret intelligence of the design, had made his arrangements, and, exhausted by fatigue, had thrown himself on his bed. He was awakened by the alarm, and was instantly at his post. The enemy advanced, driving before them elephants whose foreheads were armed with iron plates. It was expected that the gates would yield to the shock of these living battering-rams. But the huge beasts no sooner felt the English musket-balls than they turned round and rushed furiously away, trampling on the multitude which had urged them forward. A raft was launched on the water which filled one part of the ditch. Clive, perceiving that his gunners at that post did not understand their business, took the management of a piece of artillery himself, and cleared the raft in a few minutes. After three desperate onsets, the besiegers retired behind the ditch.

The struggle lasted about an hour. Four hundred of the assailants fell. The garrison lost only five or six men. The besieged passed an anxious night, looking for a renewal of the attack. But when day broke, the enemy were no more to be seen. They had retired, leaving to the English several guns and a large quantity of ammunition.

750. Outlines for Narrative Essays.

1. A TIGER-HUNT.

(1) Equipment; elephants and beaters.
(2) The start; advance through the jungle; crossing nullah.
(3) Tiger seen; shots fired; tiger wounded.
(4) Tiger charges; claws elephant, which shakes off tiger and mahout together.
(5) Mahout climbs tree. Tiger killed; its dimensions.
(6) Return home.

2. A JOURNEY BY MAIL-CART.

(1) Preparations for starting; ponies refuse to stir; measures adopted.
(2) Ponies off with a rush; relays every 6 miles.
(3) Crossing river on a flat at dead of night.
(4) Incidents on the road:—
 (*a*) Wheel comes off; fall of driver and passenger down embankment.
 (*b*) Collision with unlighted bullock-cart.
(5) Arrival; passenger much fatigued; food and rest.

3. A MIDNIGHT ADVENTURE.

(1) Sleeping family wakened by strange noise.
(2) Father and eldest son rise and arm themselves with swords.
(3) Thief digging through the wall. They silently wait his appearance.
(4) Thief's hand seen through the opening. They strike, and lop off a finger.
(5) Escape of thief. Police informed.
(6) Police find a man being treated for loss of finger in a neighbouring hospital.
(7) Thief convicted and sentenced.

751. (3) **Reflective or Expository Essay.**—The subjects of this class of Essay are, as a rule, of an abstract or general character, such as 'Friendship,' 'Kindness to Animals,' 'Caste,' 'Female Education'; or proverbial truths or precepts, such as 'Knowledge is power,' 'Always make the best of things'; or literary criticisms, such as, 'The Elements of a good Style,' 'Classical and Romantic Poetry.'

In such Essays the opinions expressed by the writer must be supported by arguments and illustrations, and any objections that might be made to the view taken by the essayist should be stated and answered. The Essay should end with a summing up of the arguments on both sides, and with the conclusions and reflections that may result from the views expressed. The following is an example of an outline:—

Subject:—'The Introduction of Gymnastics into Indian Schools.'

OUTLINE.

(1) Gymnastics described:—
 (*a*) As practised by the ancient Greeks.
 (*b*) As practised by modern nations.

(2) Uses of Gymnastics:—
 (*a*) General:—Promote circulation, aid digestion, give physical strength and endurance; hence health, hardihood, self-reliance.
 (*b*) Particular:—Indian students are weakly in body, and often absent from school through illness; they have few manly games.

(3) Objections to Gymnastics:—
 (*a*) General:—Accidents occur. Waste of time and energy. Unbecoming to any but little boys.
 (*b*) Particular:—Indian climate unsuited to violent exercise, and character of Indian people averse to it. Few schools have the requisite apparatus.

(4) Objections answered.

(5) Summing-up of arguments and conclusion arrived at. Reflections.

When this scheme has been thought out and written down, which should take about ten minutes, all that remains is to put down the thoughts in connected sentences, with a few illustrations thrown in by the way, and the whole is complete.

752. Example of—(A) an outline, and (B) the outline expanded into an Essay.

Subject:—'Temperance.'[1]

(A) OUTLINE.

(1) Temperance easy to practise:—
 (*a*) By all persons.
 (*b*) At all times and places.
 (*c*) Without loss of time or money.
(2) Temperate people can dispense with medicine.
(3) Temperance natural. Simple diet of the lower animals.
(4) Rules of temperance:—
 (*a*) Simple food.
 (*b*) Days of abstinence. Socrates in the Plague of Athens.
(5) Illustration:—Cornaro, the Venetian.

(B) ESSAY.

Temperance has three particular advantages above all other means of health, that it may be practised by all ranks and conditions, at any season, or in any place. It is a kind of regimen into which every man may put himself, without interruption to business, expense of money, or loss of time.

Physic for the most part is nothing else but a substitute for temperance. Medicines are indeed absolutely necessary in acute distempers that cannot wait the slow operations of these two great instruments of health; but did men live in an habitual course of exercise and temperance, there would be little occasion for them.

Nature delights in the most plain and simple diet. Every animal but man keeps to one dish. Herbs are the food of this species, fish of that, and flesh of a third. Man falls upon everything that comes in his way: not the smallest fruit or excrescence of the earth, scarce a berry or a mushroom, can escape him.

It is impossible to lay down any determinate rule for temperance, because what is luxury in one may be temperance in another; but there are few that have lived any time in the world who are not judges of their own constitutions, so far as to know what kinds and what proportions of food best agree with them. Were I to consider my readers as my patients and to prescribe such a kind of temperance as is accommodated to all persons, I would copy the following rules of a very eminent physician. 'Make your whole repast out of one dish. If you indulge in a second, avoid drinking anything strong until you have finished your meal; at the same time abstain from all sauces, or at least such as are not the most plain and simple.' But because it is impossible for one who lives in the world to diet himself always in so philosophical a manner, I think every man should have his days of abstinence according as his constitution will permit. Abstinence well-timed often kills a sickness in embryo and destroys the first seeds of an indisposition. It is observed by two or three ancient authors that Socrates, notwithstanding that he lived in Athens during the great plague, never caught the least infection, which those writers unanimously ascribe to that uninterrupted temperance which he always observed.

The most remarkable instance of the efficacy of temperance towards the procuring of long life, is what we meet with in a little book published

[1] Adapted from Addison.

by Lewis Cornaro, the Venetian. Cornaro was of an infirm constitution until about forty, when by steadily persisting in an exact course of temperance, he recovered a perfect state of health; insomuch that at fourscore he published his book, which has been translated into English under the title of 'Sure and Certain Methods of Attaining a Long and Healthy Life.' He lived to give a third or fourth edition of it; and after having passed his hundredth year, died without pain and like one who falls asleep.

753. Outlines for Reflective or Expository Essays.

1. GOOD HUMOUR.

(1) Define. Old idea that the four bodily humours determined a person's mental disposition; cf. *melancholy*, *ill-tempered*. Mirth is transitory; good humour is lasting.

(2) Its advantages:—
 (*a*) In regard to ourselves: 'makes the least of misfortunes'; prevents worry and promotes health.
 (*b*) In regard to others: 'A soft answer turneth away wrath.'

(3) Can we acquire it, or is it innate? How we can improve in it by watchfulness. Ill-temper grows quickly into a settled habit.

(4) Liable to degenerate into over-eagerness to please; hence, weakness of character.

(5) Conclusion; general summing-up.

2. THE RAILWAY IN INDIA.

(1) First discovery of steam-power; Stephenson; improvements on early inventions.

(2) Present state: contrast between travelling nowadays by rail and forty years ago by bullock-cart or budgerow.

(3) Its advantages:—
 (*a*) To trade; prevention of famines.
 (*b*) To the social progress of the country; effects on caste.
 (*c*) To travellers; movement of troops in war.

(4) Its disadvantages:—
 (*a*) Accidents.
 (*b*) Interferes with the rights of property and with the drainage of the country.
 (*c*) Discomfort: hurry, dust, heat.

(5) Summing-up and conclusion in favour of the Railway.

3. PUNCTUALITY.

(1) Define. Formerly meant 'exactness in little points, punctiliousness'; now applied only to time.

(2) Its advantages:—
 (*a*) Marks a careful, conscientious mind.
 (*b*) Hence, inspires trust.
 (*c*) Saves time.
 (*d*) Is a mark of courtesy: 'Punctuality is the politeness of kings.'

(3) No reason why it should degenerate into *preciseness* or over-exactness about trifles.

(4) General remarks on the importance of being in good time: illustrations, reflections.

4. A FAMINE IN BENGAL.

(1) Principal food-crop is rice. Hence the failure of the rice-crop means famine.

(2) Causes of the failure of the rice-crop. Signs of approaching famine.

(3) Description of the aspect of the country during a famine. Orissa in 1866.

(4) How a famine is to be encountered:—
- (*a*) Storing grain.
- (*b*) Relief works for the able-bodied.
- (*c*) Charitable relief.
- (*d*) Government subsidies.

(5) Can famine be provided against once for all? Government irrigation works and railways.

(6) General reflections. Famines call forth kindly feeling.

5. THE ART OF PRINTING.

(1) When and where invented.

(2) Its mechanism.

(3) Its advantages:—
- (*a*) Cheapness.
- (*b*) Quickness.
- (*c*) Clearness.
- (*d*) Compactness.
- (*e*) Accuracy.
- (*f*) Permanence.

(4) Different uses of printing:—books, newspapers, magazines, circulars, tickets, etc.

(5) Effects of printing on the spread of knowledge.

754. Miscellaneous Subjects for Essays.

The following subjects for essays of various kinds may be sketched in outline according to one of the models given above, and then expanded into connected compositions:—

1. A journey by boat on an Indian river.
2. The Postal system.
3. Self-conceit.
4. The Durga Puja festival.
5. Obedience to parents.
6. An Indian jungle.
7. The seasons in India.
8. A taste for reading.
9. 'Where there is a will, there is a way.'
10. The manufacture of silk.
11. The influence of good example.
12. The effect of climate on character.
13. The reign of Akbar.
14. The games of Indian schoolboys.
15. Kindness to animals.
16. A Hindu marriage.
17. A summer night.
18. An Indian Temple *or* Church.
19. Music and singing, Indian and English.
20. Rice: its planting, growth, and preparation as a food.
21. Caste.

22. The cocoanut.
23. Theatres.
24. Charity.
25. A cyclone.
26. Travelling: its effect in enlarging the mind.
27. The different races inhabiting India.
28. Dress, European and Asiatic, contrasted.
29. Funeral rites of Christians, *or* of Hindus, *or* of Mahomedans.
30. Newspapers.
31. The tiger.
32. Indian fruits and flowers.
33. Keshub Chunder Sen; his life and work.
34. Dwelling-houses in India, Native and European.
35. The bazar of an Indian village.
36. Holidays and how to spend them.
37. Politeness.
38. An eclipse.
39. The use of Drawing and Surveying.
40. The telephone.
41. Female education in India.
42. University Examinations.
43. An earthquake.
44. International Exhibitions.
45. The Indian crow.
46. The force of example.
47. The cow.
48. Self-denial.
49. Snakes and snake-charmers.
50. Rivers and their uses.
51. The advantages of books.
52. How I spent my long vacation.
53. The importance of good handwriting.
54. Friendship.
55. The uses of rain.
56. Lord Clive.
57. True bravery.
58. Cleanliness.
59. A day in the country.
60. The city of Calcutta.
61. The story of Sakuntalá.
62. The climate of Bengal.
63. The bamboo.
64. Indian seaports.
65. Ingratitude.
66. The Mahábhárata.
67. Savings banks.
68. The East India Company.
69. The rainbow.
70. Hobbies.
71. Ram Mohan Roy.
72. The Mint.
73. The Táj-Mahál.
74. The banyan-tree.
75. The human hand.
76. The Battle of Plassey.
77. Tea plantation and manufacture.
78. Contentment.
79. Sevajee.
80. Indian Trees.

LETTER-WRITING.

755. Forms of Date and of Address (or Salutation).—In ordinary correspondence in English, the name of the place where the letter is written should be put near the top of the first page on the right-hand side. Under it should be written the date, in the form *26th May, 1889*, or *May 26th, 1889*; or the ordinal sign (*th*) may be omitted and the date written *May 26, 1889*.[1]

The words *Dated* and *the* before this form, as *Dated the 26th May*, should not be used except in strictly official correspondence; they

[1] A short form, often used in business letters, is 26/5/89, the /5/ standing for May, which is the 5th month of the year.

need seldom or never therefore be inserted before the date in letters written by students.

The formula of address should be written somewhat lower down the page and on the left-hand side.

The form of the address depends upon the amount of intimacy or the degree of relationship existing between the writer and the person written to. The usual forms in the case of persons not relatives of the writer are *Sir*, *Dear Sir*, *My dear Sir*; *Dear Mr. Jones*, *My dear Mr. Jones*. The first of these, *Sir*, is the most distant and formal mode of address; it is a comprehensive form, and may with propriety be used to the higher officials (unless titled) as well as to a shopkeeper. Thus in a letter to the Lieutenant-Governor of Bengal, to a Judge of the High Court, to the Director of Public Instruction, *Sir* is the proper form. The forms *Honoured Sir*, *Respected Sir*, though often used by Natives of India in writing to official superiors, are contrary to modern English usage. There are no special terms of honour in English corresponding to the Bengali মহাশয় or আপনি. Any marked honour or respect which it is desirable to show should be expressed by the general tone and style of the body of the letter, and not by high-sounding titles or epithets in the address.

The forms *Dear Mr. Jones* or *My dear Mr. Jones* imply a certain amount of intimacy. When the person addressed is a familiar acquaintance or friend of the writer, the *Mr.* is generally dropped, and *Dear Jones*, or *My dear Jones*, are the forms used. Hence, between friends, this latter is the usual form in 'demi-official' correspondence. *Sirs*, or *Gentlemen*, or *Dear Sirs* is the form used in addressing mercantile firms, but not *Dear Gentlemen*, or *Dear Messrs. Brown and Co.*

Letters to ladies (whether married or unmarried) should commence with *Madam* or *Dear Madam* or *My dear Madam*, according to the amount of intimacy. More intimate still are *Dear Mrs.* (or *Miss*) *Jones* and *My dear Mrs.* (or *Miss*) *Jones*.

In formal letters to *clergymen*, instead of *Sir*, *Dear Sir*, it is proper to write *Reverend Sir*, *Reverend and dear Sir*. But in informal letters *My dear Mr. Jones* is correct, even if Mr. Jones is a clergyman.

In letters to *officers* (above the rank of Lieutenant) in the army, to *Doctors* of medicine, law, etc., and to *Professors* in a University, the appropriate title should be substituted for *Mr.*: as, *Dear Colonel Smith*, *Dear Dr. Brown*, *Dear Professor Tyndall*. In more familiar letters the surname may be omitted, as *My dear Major*, *My dear Doctor*, *My dear Professor*. But in all these cases,

unless considerable familiarity exists, *Sir* or *Dear Sir* or *My dear Sir* is used.

The correct punctuation after the address is a comma, as *Sir*, *My dear Mr. Smith*, and not, as is sometimes written, a note of exclamation, as *Sir!*

The initial form of address may be repeated before the subscription; but care should be taken not to use a different form in the subscription from that used in the address; do not begin a letter with *Dear Sir*, and end it with *I remain, Sir.*

In ordinary letters when the person addressed is not on familiar terms with the writer, it is customary to write the addressee's name just below the writer's signature, but on the left-hand side of the page. In official letters the addressee's name is generally written at the top of the first page.[1]

In short and informal notes, especially such as are written to some one residing in the neighbourhood of the writer, the name of the writer's own place of residence and the date are often put at the end of the letter underneath and to the left of the signature. This is almost always done in letters which give or answer invitations; and in such letters the day of the week is often named (as *Friday*) in place of the date of the month, while the year is omitted.

756. Forms of Subscription.—The strictly official form of subscription is

I have the honour to be,
SIR,
Your most obedient servant,
RAM MOHAN ROY.

This form should be used in all business letters written to officers in their official capacity; as in letters to a Magistrate applying for an appointment, or to the Head of a College asking

[1] In official letters from the head of an office the name and designation of the sender is written at the head of the first page followed by the official designation, if any, of the addressee, or by his name if he is a non-official, as:—

(1) From
R. W. WILLIAMS, Esq.,
Magistrate and Collector,
To
The Joint Magistrate.

(2) From
A. B. SMITH, Esq.,
Secretary to the Board of Revenue,
To
Messrs. Brown, Polson & Co.

for admission. Another official subscription less formal than the above is

I am,
SIR,
Yours most obediently,
RAM MOHAN ROY.

This form may be fitly used in such letters as those from a student to his teacher, asking for leave of absence.

The forms of subscription used in ordinary correspondence are *Yours faithfully, Yours truly, Yours sincerely,* which may be varied by the insertion of the adverbs *very, most, ever,* as *Yours very faithfully, Yours most truly, Yours ever sincerely,* or by changing the order of the words, as *Very faithfully yours, Ever most sincerely yours.*

Yours faithfully is the form expressing the least amount of familiarity, and may be used to a perfect stranger; it is employed in ordinary business letters, where it is sometimes contracted into *Yrs fully.*

Yours sincerely is the form generally used between acquaintances and friends. It is also the form usual in 'demi-official' correspondence. *Yours very sincerely* implies a considerable degree of friendship. *Yours respectfully* is seldom used except by servants writing to their masters or by tradesmen writing to their customers.

It is optional whether the verb before the form of subscription (except the strictly official one) should be expressed or understood. Thus we may have *Yours truly, Yours most obediently,* or *I remain* (or *I am*) *Yours truly,* or *Believe me to be* (or *Believe me*) *Yours truly;* but the latter forms are the more ceremonious ones.

In letters between friends some expression of good will is often used to introduce gracefully the form of subscription, as *With kind regards, I am, etc., Hoping soon to hear from you, I remain, etc.*

In letters to very dear friends, the usual subscription is *Yours affectionately,* or sometimes, *Yours ever, Yours always.*

In letters to relatives, the relationship is generally expressed, as *Your loving brother, Your affectionate son.*

757. Forms of Direction.—The usual form employed in directing an envelope to Englishmen is the initial letter (or letters) of the addressee's Christian name (or names), followed by the surname with the title *Esq.* (short for *Esquire*) added: as *A. W. Smith, Esq.* The term *Esq.* is now very generally applied, being used to all except menial servants or retail traders; for the latter the proper form of direction is *Mr.*, followed by the surname, as *Mr. Smith.* For married women (unless titled) of

all classes *Mrs.* is the proper form. *Messrs.* (for French *Messieurs*) is the usual form of direction to firms, as *Messrs. Thacker, Spink & Co., Messrs. Smith and Sons.* Care should be taken to avoid the common error of writing *Messrs. Thacker Spink Company*, as if all three were proper names belonging to one person.

In letters directed to clergymen the title *Rev.* or, better, *The Rev.* (short for *Reverend*), is used before the initials of the Christian name followed by the surname: as, *The Rev. T. S. Jones.* If the initials are not known, we may write *The Rev. Mr. Jones* (or *The Rev. — Jones*), but not *The Rev. Jones.*

There are certain other professional titles, which should always be expressed in the direction:—*The Hon., The Hon'ble*, or *The Honourable*, applied to members of Council or to Judges of the High Court; *General, Colonel, Major, Captain*, to military officers; *Dr.*, to Doctors of medicine, law, etc.

The capital letters *B.A., M.A., M.D., C.S.I.*, etc., representing University Degrees[1] or titles of honour, should be placed after the name, or, if *Esq.* is used, after *Esq.*: as, *The Hon. W. Jones, C.S.I.; The Rev. F. Wilson, M.A.; C. R. White, Esq. B.A.; L. W. Robinson, Esq., M.D.* When the addressee is living at the house of a third person, the letters *c/o*, short for *care of*, may be written before the name of the host,[2] as:—

BABU HARILAL SAHA,
c/o Babu Asutosh Sarkar,
25, Circular Road.

The name of the post town should be written large and in a line by itself, near the lower right hand edge of the envelope. The word *at* should never be introduced before the name of the town in directions.

758. Common Errors in Letter-writing.

(1) The expression *and oblige* is often ungrammatically used as an ending to letters containing requests. It is not incorrect to attach it to the words expressing the request: as, 'Please grant me leave *and oblige* Your obedient pupil,' etc.; but it is a blunder in grammar to attach *oblige* in the imperative or the infinitive mood by the conjunction *and* to a verb which is not in either of these moods: as, 'I shall be thankful for any assistance *and oblige* Yours obediently,' etc.

[1] It is not the custom among Englishmen to add the letters *M.A., B.A.*, etc., representing University Degrees, unless the letter is of a formal character. The letters *M.D.* should not be used along with the title *Dr.*

[2] Or the word *at* may be prefixed to the third person's place of residence, without mentioning his name: as, 'Babu Harilal Saha, At 25, Circular Road.

(2) *Yours* is sometimes ungrammatically used for *Your* in the subscription: as, '*Yours* obedient pupil.' The mistake probably arises from a confusion of the two forms, *Yours obediently* and *Your obedient pupil*; when, therefore, the noun is expressed, *your* must be used. Observe also that the correct spelling is *yours*, without the apostrophe (**170**, *note*).

(3) Two different titles, such as *Mr.* (or *The Hon.*) along with *Esq.*, should not be used together.[1]

(4) When *Dear*, *My dear* are used, *Esq.*, *Hon.* should not be added, nor the capital letters denoting degrees, etc. Thus we write *Dear Mr. Jones*, but not *Dear Jones, Esq.*, nor *Dear Hon. Jones, C.S.I.*

(5) Care should be taken to avoid inappropriate forms of subscription, such as *Yours affectionately* in a business letter, or *Your humble servant* in a letter to a friend.

759. Polite Forms of Command and Request.—Polite forms of speech which involve a *request* should be distinguished from others that differ but slightly from them, but which really imply a *command*. Thus the phrase *I will thank you to send* (often wrongly written 'I *shall* thank you to send') is improperly used in making a request, since it really implies a command, and is sometimes employed to express anger or indignation, as in 'I will thank you to mind your own business.'

760. Polite Forms of Command.

(1) Have the goodness to send *or* Be good enough to send *or* Oblige me by sending.
(2) Please send *or* Kindly send.

The forms in (2) are less peremptory than those in (1). An authoritative command is implied in the expressions *You will be good enough to send*, *I will thank you to send*; while *I shall be obliged if you will send*, *I should be glad if you would send* give the command in a more indirect and courteous form; and when they are modified by the introduction of the adverbs *much*, *extremely*, etc. (as, *I should be much obliged*, etc.) cannot be said to involve a command at all.

761. Polite Forms of Request.

(1) Will you kindly send? *or* Will you be kind enough to send *or* Will you have the kindness to send?
(2) Would you kindly send? *or* Would you be kind enough to send? *or* Would you have the kindness to send?

[1] But we write—'*The Right Honourable Sir* R. Cross,' '*The Hon. and Rev.* B. Jones.'

The forms in (2) are less direct (since they imply a conditional clause, such as 'if I were to ask you') and therefore are more polite than those in (1).

A request may also be conveyed by the use of the phrases—*I should esteem it a great favour if you would send, You would greatly oblige me by sending,* and the like.

762. **Use of the Third Person.**—A tone of formality and ceremony is imparted to letters by avoiding the use of the first and second persons of pronouns and verbs. Thus in orders to tradesmen and in ceremonious invitations, the third person only is often used throughout: as, '*Mr. Smith will be obliged* if *Messrs. Thacker, Spink & Co.* will send *him* the books in the accompanying list. *He* would like to have them without delay'; or, '*Mr. Brown requests* the pleasure of *Mr. Jones's* company at an Evening Party,' etc. But if the writer begins by using the third person in referring to himself (instead of *I*) and in referring to the addressee (instead of *you*), the first and second persons must not subsequently be used in the letter.

NOTE.—'I *have* much pleasure in accepting your kind invitation' is correct, and not 'I *shall have* much pleasure,' the act of accepting being present, not future. Never write *invite* for *invitation.*

763. **General Remarks.**—The style of a letter should be similar to that which would be used if the writer were talking to the person addressed. Simplicity and directness of statement, easy and colloquial forms of expression, should characterise ordinary correspondence as they do ordinary conversation. Exaggerated expressions of regard and profuse compliments, which may be customary and suitable in letters written in an Oriental vernacular, are opposed to English taste and should not be used in letters written in English. In applications for appointments (which form, perhaps, the largest class of letters written in English by Natives of India) only those circumstances should be mentioned which strengthen the applicant's claim; such as the education he has received, the examinations he has passed, the appointments he has held, together with any special qualifications he may have for the post. Other personal details regarding the applicant's poverty, or the large family dependent on him, and appeals to the benevolence of the person addressed, are out of place except in begging letters, and have no weight in determining the bestowal of an appointment, especially if the post is one in the public service. The candidate's testimonials should accompany his application, and, if not sent in the original,

should be marked in each case 'True Copy.' Such a copy should not imitate the handwriting of the original.

The habit of underlining every word meant to be emphatic should be avoided; it is generally possible to construct a sentence in such a form as to indicate by the position of a word any stress that is to be laid upon it.

The frequent use of parentheses generally causes obscurity. Abbreviations or contractions, such as *Yrs* for *Yours*, imply haste or negligence, and are, therefore, inadmissible except in business letters from and to tradesmen; but in familiar letters, conversational contractions, such as *I'm, I'll, don't, can't, won't* (492) are permissible.

Postscripts seem to indicate thoughtlessness in the writer, and should be avoided in formal correspondence.

The great point in ordinary letter-writing is for the writer to understand exactly the meaning he wishes to convey, and to endeavour to express that meaning in the simplest and most natural language at his command.

764. Sample Letters.—A few sample letters follow, showing the forms of address, etc., and the kind of phraseology suitable in each instance.

1. TO A BUSINESS FIRM.

Chandra, Midnapore;
21st May, 1885.

To Messrs. Thacker, Spink & Co.

Gentlemen (*or* Sirs),

I shall be obliged if you will send me the books named in the accompanying list. I enclose a postal order which will cover the price of the books and the postage.

Yours faithfully,

Ram Sunker Sen.

Direction on the Envelope:

Messrs. Thacker, Spink & Co.,
Publishers, etc.,
Calcutta.

2. TO THE PRINCIPAL OF A COLLEGE.

(1)

136, *Wellesley Street, Calcutta;*
30th May, 1885.

SIR, I have the honour to request that you will admit me to the First Year Class from the commencement of next session.

I am
SIR,
Your obedient servant,
UMES CHANDRA GHOSE.

Direction on the Envelope:

THE PRINCIPAL,
Presidency College,
Calcutta.

(2)

SIR,

I am suffering from a severe attack of fever which renders me quite unable to attend College. I beg, therefore, that you will kindly grant me leave of absence for a week.

Yours obediently,
A. CHAUDHURY,
2nd Year Class.

April 4, 1885.

Direction on the Envelope:

A. W. SMITH, ESQ., M.A.
Principal,
The College,
Patna.

3. TO THE MAGISTRATE OF A DISTRICT.

13, *Machooa Bazar, Hooghly;*
1st June, 1885.

SIR,

Hearing that the post of Fourth Clerk in your office is vacant, I beg respectfully to offer myself as a candidate for the situation.

I was educated at the Hooghly Collegiate School and College. I passed the Matriculation Examination of the Calcutta University in the Second Division in 1882, and the First Arts Examination in the Third Division in 1884. I am 21 years of age.

I have been employed for some months as an apprentice in the office of the Road Cess Engineer at Hooghly, and have thus gained some experience in office work.

I beg to enclose copies of testimonials as to my character and attainments.

I have the honour to be,

SIR,

Your most obedient servant,

RAKHAL DAS MOOKERJEE.

Direction on the Envelope:

TO THE MAGISTRATE AND COLLECTOR,

Burdwan.

4. TO A FELLOW-STUDENT.

MY DEAR ASHUTOSH,

College closes, I hear, on Tuesday, the 4th instant. Please let me know if you intend to leave Calcutta on the first day of the vacation. If so, we might travel together, at any rate as far as Goalundo.

Yours sincerely,

10, *Beadon Square;*
Monday.

BINOD BEHARI MITRA.

Direction on the Envelope:

BABU ASHUTOSH MOOKERJEE,

113, *Ripon Street,*

Calcutta.

5. REPLY TO THE ABOVE.

MY DEAR BINOD,

Yes, I shall start for home by the 12.30 train on Wednesday, the 15th, and shall be very glad to have you as a fellow-passenger. Can you manage to call here this evening to settle matters?

Sincerely yours,

113, *Ripon Street;*
Monday evening.

ASHUTOSH MOOKERJEE.

APPENDIX.

TEST EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

[*The arrangement is purposely made promiscuous.*]

1. Classify the following nouns: *Chatterjee, river, senate, jury, copper.* What sort of noun is *witch* as distinguished from *witchcraft*?

2. Explain clearly the uses of the preposition *to* in the following—
 (*a*) Our Punic faith is infamous, and branded *to* a proverb.—*Addison.*
 (*b*) All this is nothing *to* the purpose.
 (*c*) All that they did was piety *to* this.—*Ben Jonson.*
 (*d*) Face *to* face.
 (*e*) This is good *to* eat.

3. Give any five Teutonic Suffixes, with examples. Indicate the suffixes, and give their meaning, in—*shamefaced, buxom, worship, suckling.*

4. 'Their own pedlar-principle of *turning* a penny.'—*Adams.* Explain this use of the verb *turn.* Mention any other idiomatic uses of the same verb, and endeavour to trace them up to its original signification.

5. 'A house *to let*,' 'Razors made *to sell.*' Are these expressions correct English? If so, how would you defend them? In the phrase '*drinking* water,' parse *drinking.*

6. Show, by examples, the difference in meaning between the synonyms—
 (1) *Desert, leave, relinquish, forsake, abandon.*
 (2) *Rage, vexation, anger.*
 (3) *Innocent, innocuous.*

7. Define an *Adverb*, a *Preposition*, and a *Conjunction.* Form a sentence containing each of the above, and underline them.

8. Write down—(*a*) The diminutive of *duck, stream, hill, animal, dear*; (*b*) the plural of *leaf, goose, son-in-law, radius, church, madam*; (*c*) the feminine of *beau, stag, hero, poet, emperor, actor*; (*d*) the preterite and passive participle of *sing, forget, drive, shake, swim, steal, tread, win, weave, swell.*

9. Write down the comparative and superlative of—*good, truthful, ill, bitter, gay, modest, useful, patient, frugal, red, rough, late, bad, far, nigh.*

10. Define *Accent.* How does it differ from *Emphasis*? Distinguish the different meanings of the following words according to their accent:—*record, convert, rebel, invalid, conjure, incense, supine.*

11. What are *Co-ordinative*, and what are *Subordinative* Conjunctions? Write down a sentence illustrative of each. Give all the uses of *or* and *if*, with examples.

12. Write three letters—

(1) To a friend, describing the premises, studies, and games of your school or college.
(2) To the head of a department asking for a situation.
(3) To the head-master of your school, asking for leave of absence in consequence of illness.

13. What two ways are there in English of expressing the Possessive Case? What is the distinction observed in their usage? Write down the Nom. and Poss. Cases, Sing. and Plur., of *John* and *Charles*.

14. Mention any five nouns that have two plural forms with different meanings. Give the plurals of—*Ottoman, Dutchman, Mussulman, German, Frenchman, Norman, Brahman, Mr., Mrs., man-servant, man-stealer.*

15. Explain clearly the difference between—

(*a*) A most entertaining book.
(*b*) The most entertaining book.
(*c*) Too entertaining a book.
(*d*) A very entertaining book.

May we say 'a best book'? If not, why not?

16. State the various ways of forming adverbs in English. Comment on—

(*a*) To live soberly, righteously, and *godly*.—*Bible.*
(*b*) Who have died *holily* in their beds.—*Shaks.*
(*c*) This is the *very* place for me.

17. Comment on the italicised words in—

(*a*) They all cried, 'That's *him*!'
(*b*) You are much stronger than *me*.
(*c*) Than *whom* no better judge is on the bench.
(*d*) Every one must judge of *their* own feelings.—*Byron.*

18. What is the difference between a *Transitive* and an *Intransitive* verb? Give the meaning, and the Preterite and Past Participle of each of the following, and say whether it is transitive or intransitive:—*lie* (to speak falsely), *lie* (to recline), *lay, raise, rise, sit, set, fell, fall, loose, lose, saw, say, see, sew, sow.* Explain the difference between *born* and *borne*.

19. Give three instances of an adverb as Object to a preposition. Parse the words in italics in—

(*a*) He had been there *before*.
(*b*) He went *before* sunrise.
(*c*) He went *before* the sun rose.

20. Add appropriate prepositions to the following words, in short sentences:—*trespass, differ, acquainted, inadequate, tyrannize, angry, desirous, encroach, addicted, amenable, besmeared, resort, devoted.*

21. Explain the difference between the following synonyms, forming sentences to illustrate your meaning:

(*a*) *Habit, custom.*
(*b*) *Stop, stay, dwell.*
(*c*) *Cheerfulness, mirth.*
(*d*) *Tell, say.*
(*e*) *Discover, invent.*
(*f*) *See, look, perceive.*

Give synonyms for *foretell, sympathy, supposition.*

22. State (with examples) the difference in usage between *my* and *mine*. What is the force of the italicised words in—

(*a*) Something is wrong with this head *of mine*.
(*b*) Look through *mine* eyes with *thine*.—*Tennyson*.
(*c*) 'Is this your watch?'—'No, it is *none* of *mine*.'
(*d*) This is *none of my* doing.

23. Give three instances, under each head, of nouns that have—(*a*) no singular number; (*b*) no plural number; (*c*) two meanings in the singular, and only one in the plural.

24. Comment on the correctness of the spelling, syntax, or usage of the italicised words in—

(1) Birds in our wood sang, ringing thro' the *vallies*.—*Tennyson*.
Some whom he might condemn to work in the *galleys*.—*Buckle*.

(2) Natives of India generally have black *hairs*.
The *hairs* of your head are all numbered.—*Bible*.

(3) He died without leaving any *issues*.
These events have many *issues*.

(4) His knowledge of *optics* is greater than his knowledge of logic.
He teaches *gymnastic* while his sister does *wool-works*.
He is reading the *works* of Shakspere.

25. Explain the construction of the italicised expressions in—

(*a*) *A thousand* men went.
(*b*) *Many a* man went.
(*c*) *A great many* men went.
(*d*) They have not shed *a many tears*.
Dear eyes, since first I knew them well.—*Tennyson*.

26. Give the different meanings, with examples, of *charge*, *main*, *grateful*, *hard*.

27. Correct the following, giving the true idiom:—

(*a*) He ought to turn over a new page.
(*b*) We ought always to provide amends for wrong doing.
(*c*) I am afraid I shall not reach the train: it starts at 8.30 o'clock.
(*d*) Wrong or right, I am determined to go.
(*e*) His friends, washed in tears, stood round his bed.
(*f*) I cannot sit on the bench, there is no place.
(*g*) The History is a hardest subject to learn well.

28. Classify and explain the compound words—*break-fast*, *lands-man*, *blood-shed*, *glow-worm*, *name-sake*, *god-send*, *bake-house*, *heart-sick*.

29. Show the meaning of the prefixes in giving the meaning of—*exodus*, *heterodox*, *hypercritical*, *hemisphere*, *metamorphosis*, *sympathy*, *euphony*.

30. Supply more suitable words than those in italics in the following:—

(*a*) This remedy is very *efficient*.
(*b*) England expects every man to *perform* his duty.
(*c*) The prisoner was set at *freedom*.
(*d*) A coat will *defend* you from the weather.
(*e*) He is a *noted* gambler and ruffian.
(*f*) He *refrained* from food for a whole day.
(*g*) Who *erected* this machine?

31. Turn the following sentences into an *interrogative* form, retaining the force of the original:—

(*a*) Pleasure ought not to be pursued at the expense of health.
(*b*) Surely the reward is great.
(*c*) Beauty is vain, and earthly hopes are transitory.
(*d*) Nowhere is there perfection, nowhere happiness in this world.
(*e*) Everywhere man lifts up his hand against his fellow-man.
(*f*) Satan, I know thy strength, and thou know'st mine.

32. Substitute *group-verbs* for the italicised verbs in the following:—

(*a*) You must *dismiss* these men.
(*b*) Can you *discover* the sense of these words?
(*c*) The gain will not *compensate* the trouble.
(*d*) Man cannot thus *avert* the wrath of his Creator.
(*e*) The publication is *postponed* till next year.
(*f*) People will be sure to *deride* you.
(*g*) The police *ejected* the man who made the noise.
(*h*) Some mention of this should be *inserted* here.
(*i*) He is said to have *destroyed* himself.

33. What is the *Cognate Object*? Give an example of it. How would you explain the italicised expressions in—

(*a*) I did not *sleep* a *wink* last night.
(*b*) He *elbowed* his *way* through the crowd.
(*c*) He *stole* a sidelong *glance* at me.
(*d*) The monk *was bidding* his *beads*.
(*e*) He *is playing* a double *game*.

Give the meaning of each sentence.

34. Write down the possessive singular and plural of—*monkey, wife, people, Ram, Jones, musician, brother, school, river, woman, empress.*

35. Discuss the form or usage of—*worse, lesser, rather, first, later* and *latter*. Why do we not write *it's*?

36. What is the difference in modern English between the usage of—*no, not, nay*? When should the negative precede the verb?

37. Give three sentences illustrating the different uses of the word *too*. Point out, in short sentences, the different grammatical values of *some* and *few*. How does *few* differ from *a few*? Parse *any* and *one* in—

(*a*) Have you *any* pens?—No, I have not got *any*. Is he *any* better to-day?
(*b*) *One* man's meat is another man's poison. *One* ought to act for oneself. I met *one* Mr. Jones yesterday. Give me a mango; a big *one*.

38. Enumerate and give examples of the various ways in which the words *it, should, may, there* are used.

39. Give the rule for the use of *he shall* and *he will*; and justify or correct—

(*a*) When *will* we have the pleasure of seeing you?
(*b*) *Shall* I die if I drink this?
(*c*) I *will* be much obliged, if you will drink this.
(*d*) We *will* see you to-morrow, I hope.
(*e*) The lecture *shall* end with a quotation from Bacon.
(*f*) There *shall* be a holiday to-morrow.

40. Give the main rules for the Sequence of Tenses in English, and justify or correct—

(*a*) He said he will write to you to-morrow.
(*b*) Wherever I went, I have seen nothing but misery.
(*c*) Go where I will, I saw nothing but misery.
(*d*) When do you intend to have finished your book?
(*e*) When did you intend to finish your book?

41. Give words containing the following Prefixes and Suffixes, and state which of them are Teutonic, and which are Romanic:—*for-*, *re-*, *per-*, *be-*, *dis-*, *-age*, *-ness*, *-ling*, *-ment*, *-ist*, *-ose*, *-red*.

42. Distinguish between the force of—

(*a*) { *I speak clearly.* / *I am speaking clearly.* / *I do speak clearly.* }
(*b*) { *I spoke clearly.* / *I was speaking clearly.* / *I have spoken clearly.* }

43. What are the main rules as to the Order of Words in an English sentence? In what instances is the nominative put after the verb?

44. Give the meaning of the following sentences, and parse the word *but* and the word next after it in each instance:—(*a*) I can *but go*. (*b*) I cannot *but go*. (*c*) There were none *but went*. (*d*) All went *but him*. (*e*) All *but he* went. (*f*) *But me* no buts.

45. Give sentences to exemplify the use of *still*—as a Verb, a Noun, an Adjective, and an Adverb; and of *since*—as an Adverb, a Preposition, and a Conjunction.

46. Give the primary meanings of the following verbs, and shew by examples their use with the prepositions mentioned:—(1) Take—*to*, *after*, *off*, *in*, *up*; (2) Get—*off*, *over*, *up*; (3) Give—*up*, *in*, *out*; (4) Draw—*in*, *out*, *off*, *up*.

47. Turn into Indirect Report:—The people began to rejoice, saying, "The gods are come to avenge the arrogance of the nobles; let us not give in our names, for it is better to die altogether than one by one. Why should we always be fighting? Let the nobles turn soldiers, that the perils of warfare may be felt by those that get the rewards."

48. Distinguish between a *Simile* and a *Metaphor*. Give an example of each, and change the one into the other.

49. Parse fully the italicised words in—

(*a*) *The more*, the merrier.
(*b*) He did not go, *no more* did I. (Why not 'I did?')
(*c*) This wall is six *feet* high.
(*d*) What *weight* do you ride?
(*e*) This gained *him* renown.
(*f*) To reign is worth *ambition*.
(*g*) She had the Asiatic eye, *All* love, *half* langour, and half fire.
(*h*) *Half* a loaf is better than no bread.

50. In the following sentences, change the verbs of the active voice to the passive, and of the passive to the active, without materially altering the sense:—

(*a*) The master *found fault with* the boy.
(*b*) They *refused* him admission.
(*c*) *Touch* me at your peril.

(*d*) You *are thought* to have done this.
(*e*) I *shall be obliged* to go.
(*f*) *Having been taken* prisoner frequently, he fears to leave the city.
(*g*) This race *was run* very quickly.
(*h*) I *would do* this for you willingly.

51. Give the various modes of denoting Gender in English, with examples. What is meant by the *Common* Gender? Give instances. Give the feminine of—*wizard, murderer, executor, he-goat*: and the masculine of—*widow, votaress, heroine, maid-servant.*

52. Correct the following:—
(*a*) He entered head and heart into the business.
(*b*) I had the presence of mind as to say nothing.
(*c*) There is no use of acting thus.
(*d*) His design was in order to be made king.
(*e*) He gave me opportunity for reading the letter.
(*f*) Give over of doing this.
(*g*) Each of us have separate rooms to sleep in.
(*h*) I had several students died in my school.
(*i*) He has eaten no bread nor drunk no water for two and a half days.
(*j*) Either you or I are in the wrong.
(*k*) Such expressions sound harshly.
(*l*) Let you and I go together.
(*m*) He confused up two different things.

53. Parse the words in italics in the following:—
(*a*) He, *knowing* my intention, refused.
(*b*) I recommend your *drinking* this.
(*c*) The *dawning* light.
(*d*) Thou art lovelier than the *coming* of the spring.
(*e*) These clothes want *washing.*
(*f*) A new work is *preparing* for the press.

54. Write down the Preterite and the Past Participle of the following verbs, giving both modern forms where two exist:—*bereave, clothe, dig, gird, strike, melt, help, light, kneel, gild, speed, pay, knit, quit, hew, bid, get, shear, spit, strow, stride, tear, grave.*

55. What is the difference in the usage of the past participles—*drunk, drunken; molten, melted; cloven, cleft; hung, hanged; worked, wrought; laden, loaded; gilt, gilded; bended, bent?* Illustrate by examples.

56. State the modes of forming the Plural in English. Give four instances of nouns that have a different meaning in the plural from that which they have in the singular. Give the plural of—*brother, journey, strife, seraph, virtuoso, memorandum, fish, cow, penny.*

57. Define a *Relative Pronoun.* Give the rule for the agreement of the relative with its antecedent. In what instance is it incorrect to use the relative *that* instead of *who* or *which*?

58. Discuss the correctness of—
(*a*) Neither Charles nor William were there.
(*b*) You are very aggravating.
(*c*) He is, of all others the ablest writer they have.
(*d*) Are either of those horses yours?
(*e*) There let him lay (*i.e.* recline).—*Byron.*

59. Distinguish between—*emigrant, immigrant; eminent, imminent; eruption, irruption; loath, loathe; efface, deface; principle, principal; president, precedent* (noun); *practice, practise; corpse, corps.* Exemplify by short sentences.

60. Append, in short sentences, the appropriate prepositions to—*frown, adapted, independent, acquiesce, reconcile, inculcate, inform, endowed, confide, pursuant.*

61. Define the term *Subject.* Point out the Subject in—

(*a*) It was with the deepest regret that I left him.
(*b*) To reign is worth ambition.
(*c*) There is nothing wanting now but rest and quiet.
(*d*) Whatever is, is right.

62. Define the term *Predicate.* Point out the Predicate in—

(*a*) Three times nine is twenty-seven.
(*b*) He struck the man dead.
(*c*) The wedding is to be tomorrow.

63. Define the term *Gender.* Point out and account for the Gender of the italicised words in—

(*a*) That mare is a very good *horse* for work.
(*b*) What a pretty little girl *it* is.
(*c*) *Dr.* Mary Walker is the *author* of several works.
(*d*) The *moon* hath raised *her* lamp above.
(*e*) *Winter* came: the wind was *his* whip.
(*f*) *Love* should have some rest and pleasure in *himself.*
(*g*) Love *virtue*: *she* alone is free.—*Milton.*

64. Compose sentences to show the correct use of—*older, elder; later, latter; little, a little; one another, one with another; once, at once, once for all, once in a way, once and again.*

65. Explain the force of the prefixes and suffixes in—*an*archy, good*ness*, *circum*jacent, slug*gard*, dar*ling*, glimm*er*, black*ish*, magni*fy*, boy*hood*, *with*stand, *in*fer, *in*solent, *a*shore, *a*pathy, aster*isk.*

66. Explain briefly the difference between *shall* and *will* in interrogative sentences; and justify or correct the following:—

(*a*) *Will* we see you here to-morrow?
(*b*) *Shall* you go to the auction?
(*c*) *Will* you go to the auction?
(*d*) I *will* be glad to see you.
(*e*) I *shall* give you timely notice of my success.

67. Give instances of Prepositions used as—(*a*) Adverbs, (*b*) Conjunctions.

(1) Parse *away* in—
(*a*) He went *away* in a rage.
(*b*) This is far and *away* the best.
(*c*) *Away*! I will not hear you.
(*d*) The Thugs made *away* with him.

(2) Parse the italicised words in—
(*a*) The river ran *purple* to the sea.
(*b*) This the *only* way to do it.
(*c*) I will do it *only* this *once.*
(*d*) He is a *seldom* contributor.

68. Explain and give an example of—(*a*) a Noun Clause, (*b*) an Adjective Clause, (*c*) an Adverb Clause.

69. Give the plural of—*ox, tooth, fly, roof, thief, chief, cargo, court-martial, lieutenant-governor, book-case, formula.* Mention two nouns that have (*a*) two meanings in the singular, and one in the plural; (*b*) two meanings in the plural and one in the singular.

70. 'By this the storm grew loud apace.'—*Campbell.* Explain clearly the meaning of *by* here, and trace this meaning up to its primary one. Parse *loud* and *apace.*

71. Show clearly, giving examples, the difference between (*a*) a *Simple*, a *Complex*, and a *Compound* sentence; (*b*) the *Direct* and the *Indirect* form of Reported Speech.

72. 'The gifts the father gave be ever thine!'—*Pope's Homer.* Parse *be.* Turn the line into the prose form. Say exactly what part of speech *thine* is. What are its uses? State the object of *gave.*

73. Enumerate and give examples of six suffixes forming Diminutives, distinguishing those that are Teutonic from those that are Romanic.

74. Parse and explain the italicised words in—

(*a*) You *need* not go at once. I *needs* must go at once.
(*b*) Saddle *me* the ass. I sat *me* down.
(*c*) You must *do* as you are told. He works harder than I *do.*

75. Explain the meaning of the following sentence according as the adverb *only* is placed—(1) before *travelled*, (2) after *travelled*, (3) at the beginning of the sentence, (4) at the close of the sentence:—

'He only travelled to dispel his gloomy thoughts.'

76. Correct the following, and explain the nature of the errors:—

(*a*) In his bankrupt circumstance, he prefers a pension to be substituted by a sum of ready money.
(*b*) The lecturer said that a luxurious vegetation always required an abundant supply of heat and moisture.
(*c*) This is the man whom everybody said was off his wits.

77. Explain the meaning of the Prefixes in the following:—*non-grammatical, ex-emperor, arch-deceiver, de-odorise.* Show by examples the *depreciative* force of the suffixes *-ard, -ster, -ling, -ist, -ish, -ism.*

78. What is the difference in modern English between the uses of *thou* and *you*? 'They love one another'; parse *one.*

79. How are Reflexive Pronouns formed? Give an instance. Account for the difference in form between '*my*self' and '*him*self.'

80. Classify and give the meaning of the following compounds:—*time-server, drift-wood, stumbling-block, strong-hold, purse-proud, hush-money, light-fingered, over-hear.* State what Parts of Speech the components of the compounds are.

81. 'Language may be *affected*, but not *affecting*.'—*Goldsmith.*

Explain the difference of meaning between the two words in italics. Also between—(1) *corporal* and *corporeal*; (2) *stationary* and *stationery*; (3) *verity* and *veracity.* Form sentences in illustration.

82. Explain the words in italics in the following :—

A *standard* writer ; a *dry* jest ; an *indifferent* physician ; a *handsome* subscription ; the *generous* bowl ; the *late* Keshub Chunder Sen ; in *round* numbers ; this is of the *last* importance ; gone *for good* ; the *main* thing ; a *sound* flogging ; they came to *high* words ; a *broad* hint ; a *flat* refusal ; a *hard* bargain ; a *rough* guess.

83. Turn the Metaphors in the following sentences into Similes :—

(*a*) Confidence is a plant of slow growth in an aged bosom.
(*b*) He curbs his passion.
(*c*) We must struggle against the tide of misfortune.
(*d*) He is a mine of knowledge.
(*e*) He had just stept upon the threshold of learning.

84. Write explanatory or grammatical notes on the words in italics :—

(*a*) She saw and *purred applause.*—*Gray.*
(*b*) The rest *were* long *to tell.*—*Milton.*
(*c*) Then her countenance *all* over
Pale again as death did *prove.*—*Tennyson.*
(*d*) The clouds are *lifting* ; *it* will soon be fine.
(*e*) This carriage *pulls* very easily.

85. Correct the following sentences, where any mistakes occur, giving the reason for your correction :—

(1) He is over his ears and his head in love.
(2) From last to first he never lost hope and heart.
(3) He said to accept your kind invite.
(4) This book is different to the one of my brother's.
(5) Boys act wrong when they try and deceive their parents.
(6) He encouraged me for applying after the post.

86. What is meant by the *Case Absolute* ? What case is it in modern English ? Give an instance. Explain the construction of the words in italics :—

(*a*) Nestor, his age *notwithstanding*, appeared on the field.
(*b*) *Supposing* this to be true, what follows ?
(*c*) Matters must remain as they are, *pending* inquiry.

87. What is an *Auxiliary Verb* ? Give an example. State all the uses of the verb *do* as an auxiliary, giving examples. Explain the meaning and the construction of the following :—(*a*) I am going ; (*b*) I am to go ; (*c*) I am to blame.

88. What two ways are there of expressing *Multiplicatives* in English ? Give the first three *Cardinal*, and the first three *Ordinal* adverbs. Give two instances of Cardinal numerals used as nouns.

89. Decline the Personal Pronouns *I* and *thou*. Explain the uses, with examples, of the Pronoun *that*. Form sentences illustrating the correct use of *each other* and *one another*.

90. What is the difference between the uses of the Infinitive in the following sentences : —

(1) Boys like *to play*. (2) The boy went *to fetch* the book.

Explain clearly the two constructions.

91. Explain the difference in meaning between—(1) *decry*, *descry* ; (2) *verbal*, *verbose* ; (3) *depreciate*, *deprecate* ; (4) *gentle*, *genteel* ; (5) *humane*,

human; (6) *populous, popular*; (7) *observance, observation*; (8) *variance, variation, variety*; (9) *funeral, funëreal*; (10) *compliment, complement*; (11) *proscription, prescription*; (12) *physic, physique*; (13) *juncture, junction.*

92. *Swine, kine, brethren, chicken, remains, summons*: some of these are singular, others plural; classify them.

93. Form nouns denoting *office* or jurisdiction from the following:—*protector, pope, bishop, professor, pontiff, apostle, earl, lady, Christian, sheriff.* What is the force of the suffixes in—*golden, whitish, joyless, gladsome*?

94. Alter the arrangement of the italicised parts of the following sentences, so as to place the nominative *after* the verb or the auxiliary:—

(*a*) *If he were* in town, he would be present.
(*b*) *The man replied*: 'Alas! I must submit to these conditions.'
(*c*) Then, all in a moment *the signal flew up* and *the guns went bang.*
(*d*) *He no sooner heard* this than he fled.
(*e*) *The vanity of our life is such*, that we are seldom quite contented.
(*f*) *Your book lies here* on the ground.

95. What are *Strong*, and what are *Weak* verbs? Give examples. Give the present and the preterite tenses answering to the passive participles—*clad, shod, shorn, woven, slain, clung, bidden, stuck, sought, crept.*

96. Substitute *group-verbs* for the italicised verbs in the following:—

(*a*) He is *progressing* in his studies.
(*b*) This must be *deferred* till to-morrow.
(*c*) He *proceeded* to remark that, etc.
(*d*) I have *published* a new work.
(*e*) He was much *displeased* at my conduct.
(*f*) I intend to *expose* him for acting thus.

97. Write an imaginary conversation between two Englishmen, A and B, upon the climate of India.

98. What is *Punctuation*? Mention the chief stops. Punctuate the following passage, putting capitals, quotation-marks, etc., where necessary:—

do they know nothing of her mr fenwick said she she has gone away he replied probably to london we must think no more about her mrs. smith at any rate for the present i can only say that I am very very sorry that I brought you here.

99. Correct any errors of arrangement in the following sentences:—

(*a*) The king ordered the rebels to be slain, who had never been cruel before.
(*b*) He determined unhesitatingly to go at once.
(*c*) He did not intend to hurt the man, but only to frighten him.
(*d*) This language is not only hard to write, but also to read.
(*e*) A mountain was in sight, with at its foot a small but picturesque village.

State the rule violated in each case.

100. Distinguish (giving examples) between—(1) *mendicity, mendacity*; (2) *imperious, imperial*; (3) *reverend, reverent*; (4) *continuous, continual*; (5) *signification, significance.* What two different meanings have the verbs *excuse, reflect upon*?

101. Write down briefly, in English, the substance of any English or Indian fable or story that you may remember.

102. Write down opposite to the following words their correct pronunciation in English :—*roule, suite, trait, chasm, lever, medicine, antipodes, contrary, miscellany, massacred, covetous, lady, knowledge, again, against, often, hasten, apostle, humble, herb, victuals, venison, hough, ruse, gauge.*

103. Form *Diminutives* from the words—*verse, man, eagle, goose, seed, lamb, flower, dear, tart, part, hill, sack, hump.*

104. Show clearly (giving examples) the difference in meaning between—(*a*) *sensuous, sensual, sentient, sensitive, sensible, sensational, sentimental*; (*b*) *adverse, obverse, inverse, diverse, converse, perverse, reverse.*

105. Correct any grammatical errors that occur in the following :—

(*a*) I have not seen him since the last three weeks.
(*b*) Either the parents or the son has acted imprudently.
(*c*) Both he and I has refused to go.
(*d*) Neither he nor I are in the wrong.

Give the rule in each case.

106. Form nouns denoting State, Condition, or Quality from—*pirate, pilgrim, abound, vacant, elegant, punish, weary, timid, depart, brave, pursue, young, similar, atheist, false, flatter.*

107. Parse the italicised words in the following sentences :—

(*a*) He has done little more than *make* a beginning.
(*b*) He did nothing but *laugh.*
(*c*) He *more* than *hesitated,* he refused point-blank.
(*d*) No sooner *said* than *done.*
(*e*) A soldier obeys his orders, and *no more.*
(*f*) I had rather die than *alarm* the child.

Explain the construction of 'I had rather die.'

108. Turn the sentences (*a*) 'You did it,' (*b*) 'Nobody thinks so,' so as to make *you* and *nobody* emphatic. May 'it is' be followed by a plural noun?

109. 'Little or no tail she (the mole) has, because she courses *it* not on the ground, like the cat or mouse.'

Explain this use of *it.* What other uses has *it* in English? Illustrate your meaning by examples.

110. Explain the words in italics in the following :—

Implicit confidence; *tacit* approval; *precarious* happiness; *condign* punishment; *personal* consideration; *mutual* admiration; *decisive* measures; an *apparent* contradiction; a *saving* clause; *real* property; *passive* endurance; *positive* destitution; *comparative* luxury; of *relative* importance.

111. 'My soul *turn* from them, *turn* we to survey.'—*Goldsmith.*
Parse the two words in italics. Also parse *turn* and *let* in 'let us turn.'

112. Into what two classes may Compound Words be divided? Examine and compare—(1) *work-day, day-work*; (2) *mill-hand, hand-mill*; (3) *horse-race, race-horse.*

113. Parse the words in italics in the following sentences :—

(*a*) He finished the work *as* I directed.

He is *as* good *as* he is great.
Timoleon, *as* you know, acted wisely.

(*b*) *There* was at Venice a certain merchant.
It now happened that Ram returned home.

(*c*) Was there ever *such* self-possession?

114. What is a *Principal Clause* and a *Subordinate Clause*? Analyse the following:—

(*a*) The earth must be a globe, because its shadow in every position is round.

(*b*) The shadow of the earth in every position is round, therefore the earth must be a globe.

115. Correct any errors in the use of the Prepositions in—(*a*) They accused him for neglecting his duty. (*b*) A man on whom you can confide. (*c*) He is too miserly to part from his money. (*d*) He resigned from his situation. (*e*) I cannot agree with your proposal. (*f*) He killed seven birds in one shot. (*g*) I caught hold upon him at the left arm. (*h*) I am living at Calcutta. (*i*) I cannot comply to your request. (*j*) There is no reason of going there. (*k*) All this is foreign from the subject. (*l*) My wishes are opposed in every turn.

116. Illustrate by short sentences the possessive singular of the following nouns:—*conscience, lady, son-in-law, goodness, duchess, negro, James, people, ostrich, Jewess.*

117. Reproduce the following passage in simple prose, and parse the italicised words:—

'This world is *all a fleeting* show,
For man's illusion given;
The smiles of joy, the tears of woe,
Deceitful shine, deceitful flow,—
There's nothing true *but* Heaven!'—*Moore.*

118. Give the rule for the translation of idioms from one language into another, with an example. Explain the *Particularisation* of words and phrases, giving four examples.

119. Write a brief descriptive essay on 'School Life,' introducing the synonyms—*power, force, authority, vigour, strength.*

120. Mention all the Parts of Speech. Compose simple sentences to illustrate each, underlining the words given in illustration in each sentence.

121. Give examples of nouns containing the Suffixes—*-mony, -tude, -monger, -ness, -ster, -ism, -ment, -age, -dom, -ancy.* Give the meaning of the Prefixes in *ex-editor, Sub-editor, pro-editor, vice-editor.* What is the meaning of *de-* in *deviate, decipher, default*?

122. Distinguish between—(1) *discomfort, discomfit;* (2) *council, counsel;* (3) *unison, union;* (4) *venial, venal;* (5) *collison, collusion;* (6) *tenor, tenure;* (7) *allusion, illusion;* (8) *pallet, palate;* (9) *apposite, opposite.* Illustrate your answer by short sentences.

123. Explain clearly the difference between an *Abstract* and a *Concrete* noun, giving an example of each. Parse and explain the use of the italicised nouns in the following sentences:—

(*a*) The *youth* of Bengal are fond of study.

(*b*) If you are called as a *witness*, you must not bear false *witness.*

(*c*) There was a *time* when *Time* seemed to me an *Eternity*.
(*d*) I have had the good *fortune* not to suffer from the *ficklenesses* of *Fortune*.

Distinguish between the meaning of *English* and *the English*. We can say 'an Italian'; can we also say 'an English'?

124. 'I *shall* probably come home straight, but if I go round, it *shall* delay me very little.'—Explain the force of *shall* in both instances above. Might *will* be substituted for *shall* in either? Parse *it*. Why not—'come home *straightly*'?

125. Give instances of the *Direct*, the *Indirect*, and the three *Intermediate* forms of Reported Speech. Turn the following passage into the Indirect form:—

"In the evening I have my game of whist, which I never miss; I am surprised that you do not play, with your skill, as I know, at games of that kind. You should play; learn. As it is, you have little to amuse you; and now is the time to acquaint yourself with a means of enjoyment which will be a solace to you when you are grown too old for less gentle diversions."

126. Form verbs—(*a*) from the nouns—*haste, top, critic, dew, bath, food, glass, half, advice, power;* (*b*) from the adjectives—*sweet, clean, bold, fertile;* (*c*) from the verbs—*prate, rise, start, drink.*

127. Correct the following sentences:—

(*a*) I have not seen him since a long time.
(*b*) No sooner he was gone, I found his book.
(*c*) He told me that he has been ill from two months.
(*d*) These books will not contain in the box.
(*e*) He was prevented to go, so that I was much unhappy.

128. Explain the italicised expressions in the following sentences:—

(*a*) As a student at college, he *carried all before him.* (*b*) I saw that he wanted to *pick a quarrel* with me. (*c*) I felt rather nervous, but he *set me at my ease* at once. (*d*) *I had it on the tip of my tongue* to tell him he was wrong. (*e*) He *was hard put to it* for food and drink. (*f*) Not wishing to have a quarrel, he *pocketed the insult.* (*g*) When his father died, I *broke the news to him.* (*h*) He declared he was innocent, but I *brought the charge home* to him.

129. Express in simple prose the meaning of the following:—

'While, round the bowl, of vanished years
We talk with joyous seeming,
With smiles that might as well be tears,
So faint, so sad their gleaming;
While memory brings us back again
Each early tie that twined us,
Oh sweet's the cup that circles then
To some we've left behind us!'

130. Parse the word *that* in each of the following sentences:

(*a*) Where is *that* man going?
(*b*) I could not do *that* if I tried.
(*c*) This is the book *that* I spoke of.
(*d*) *That* you have wronged me is certain.

131. Supply appropriate prepositions in the blank spaces in each of the following sentences :—

(*a*) The decorations were not—his taste.
(*b*) The government are—abolishing the appointment, but the judges object—this course.
(*c*) —aught I know, he may be a clever man.
(*d*) Greatly—my surprise, he failed—his attempt.
(*e*) It was made—the pattern supplied by me.
(*f*) He exposed himself—the risk—being made answerable—the loss.

132. Rewrite the following sentence correctly :—

'King of England sent a word that he will come at head of thirty thousands of men, for punishing and driving the rebels who denied to surrender in spite of the good advices they have received and the benefits that had been conferred them.'

133. Give the different meanings of—*moor, sack, tender, bay, flag, fast, yard, spell, swallow, till.*
Illustrate each meaning in a sentence.

134. Parse the italicised words in the following sentence :—
He *hit him* a *blow* on the head.

135. What governs syllabic division? Divide the following words into separate syllables :—*usury, dainty, laity, hasten, uncle, knowledge, unanimous, confusion, orthography, ordinarily.*

136. When does a Collective Noun take a verb in the singular, and when in the plural? Illustrate by examples.

137. State the different parts of speech which each of the following words may be, and illustrate each use in a sentence :—*sleep, long, fleet, close, below, last.*

138. Rewrite the following passage, correcting any errors of idiom :—

'I cannot call into my mind that at any other occasion such large defalcations have been brought into the light. Although warnings after warnings were made to the accused, but they could not be prevailed to keep honest. The case of the first prisoner resembles to that of the second; both seems to have thought their conduct as a good joke. I have no fondness to pronounce heavy sentences, but I must give the prisoners enough of time to reflect over their crime before they are allowed to go at liberty.'

139. What is the difference in meaning between (*a*) He ought to be here, (*b*) He ought to have been here, (*c*) I wished to go, (*d*) I wished to have gone.

140. Form sentences introducing the following expressions, and explain the meaning, in each sentence, of the expression used :—
(*a*) *Of course*; (*b*) *long since*; (*c*) *after all*; (*d*) *no sooner—than*; (*e*) *on the whole*; (*f*) *at all*; (*g*) *at least.*

141. (*a*) Show that the Articles are not separate parts of speech.
(*b*) Define *Inflexion.* What parts of speech are never inflected?
(*c*) Give examples of the use of *what, that, as,* as Relative Pronouns.
(*d*) Parse *fault* in 'He was forgiven his fault by me.'

142. Form words in common use by adding as many as possible of the suffixes *-er, -ing, -ness, -ly* to the words *stately, occupy, day, feeble, whole, true, pencil, worship, run, full; ill, die.*

143. Give one word containing the Latin prefix *in-* (=not) to express—

(*a*) Incapable of being read.
(*b*) Incapable of being heard.
(*c*) Incapable of being repaired.
(*d*) Incapable of being accomplished.
(*e*) Destitute of knowledge.
(*f*) Unfit to be chosen.

144. Expand the following compounds into equivalent phrases, using appropriate prepositions to connect the words of which the phrases are formed :—*fire-engine, fire-escape, fire-proof; heart-sick, home-sick; blood-thirsty, blood-stained; horse-dealer, star-gazer; tea-cup; weather-wise, weather-bound, home-bound; hard-hearted; guess-work : self-confidence.*

145. Express in one *simple* sentence—"If it had not been for the help that I gave him, it would have been impossible that he should succeed."
Express in one *complex* sentence—"I asked him his business."

146. Combine the following sentences so as to form a single *complex* sentence :—

'At last we heard the news. A week before it arrived, we were walking on the sea-shore. We were sad. We were thinking over the chances of the war. We saw a ship in the offing. At first it looked to us like the vessel which we had long expected. We recollected it could not be the *Orion*. That ship could not have arrived so soon.'

147. Justify or correct the following sentences, giving your reasons :—

(*a*) Were you not aware that a circle has only one centre?
(*b*) It is absurd that you should be unable to do this.

Explain the difference in meaning between the sentences—

(1) He is to be helped. (2) He has to be helped.

148. Fill up the blanks in the following sentences with appropriate prepositions :—

He set my authority—defiance. The ship's crew ran short—provisions. He longs—his father's arrival. Hard work is indispensable—success in examinations. Your conduct is subversive—all discipline. The master remonstrated—the boy—his conduct. Fortune smiled—his efforts. I stared—him, but he dared not look me—the face. It will devolve—you to see that he is qualified—the appointment. He deals—cloth, but I refused to have any dealings—him. He said he would comply—my request.

149. Correct the following sentences :—

I have been ill since two months. I had not time enough for finishing my answers. He left Calcutta before three weeks. I hope it will take my father a month at least for recovering from his fall. Hundred of students have taken admission in our school. He said that I am ill, but I would not listen his excuse. He tried *to stare me out of my countenance*, but I looked at him fully in his face. I saw his intentions, though he tried *to throw dusts at my eyes*. You have *done a good turn to me* in this business. This plan will *suit my turn* for the present. He went off and left me *at the lurch*.

Give the meaning of the italicised idiomatic expressions above, after correction.

150. Point out the difference between *Independent* adverbs and *Conjunctive* adverbs, giving examples of each in sentences.

Explain the following, with special reference to the words in italics:—(*a*) You had better take a *through* ticket to Calcutta; (*b*) He will not catch me though he run *ever so* fast; (*c*) I answered him *never* a word; (*d*) I *never* answered him a word: (*e*) I will give you as much *again* as he offers; (*f*) If he speaks to you, do not answer him *again*; (*g*) The earthquake shook the church steeple till the bells rang *again*.

I.—INDEX OF SUBJECTS.

[*The references are to the sections.*]

Absolute case, 138, 139 (*e*) *note*, 322 (3).
 infinitive, 221 (4).
Accent, defined, 478.
 variation of, 479.
 difference of, 481.
 unchanged, 480.
Adjectives, defined, 140.
 of same form as adverbs, 141.
 comparison of, 142.
 irregular comparisons of, 144.
 generalising *the* with, 154.
 used as complement of a verb, 10 (1), 320 (2).
 collocation of some, 378–381.
 used as nouns, 384–389.
 phrasal uses of, 463–465.
 errors in, 539–551.
Adjuncts, 11–14.
Adverbial objective, 139, 316 (8).
 uses of prepositions, 403, 411, 421, 425, 428, 430, 432, 434, 437, 440, 442.
Adverbs, defined, 249, 324.
 independent, 251.
 dependent, 252.
 relative, 252.
 conjunctive, 252.
 genitival, 253.
 prepositional, 254.
 compound, 255.
 pronominal, 256.
 used as adjectives, 262.
 used as nouns, 263.
 comparison of, 264.
 of same form as adjectives, 141.
 adjectives for, 730 (*b*).
Adverbs, used as conjunctions, 341.
 errors in, 640–661, 712 (7) (8).
Alphabet, 476, 477, 518, 519.
Analogy, false, 100, 399.
Analysis of sentences, 29–33.
Apostrophe, 492, 131.
Articles, 150–165.
 omission of the, 159–165.
 wrong omission of the, 552–554.
Article, definite, 151–156.
 defining, 151.
 familiar, 152.
 for possessive pronoun, 153.
 generalising, with adjectives, 154.
 generalising, with nouns, 155.
 with proper nouns, 156.
Article, indefinite, 157, 158.
 individualising, 157.
 generalising, 158.
 coalescing with noun, 102.

Bengali Idiom, 370 (4) (6), 532, 603, 605–608, 621, 626, 646–648, 651, 668, 678, 681, 694, 697, 698.

Case, defined, 128.
 nominative, 128 (1), 129, 130, 138, 315.
 objective, 128 (2), 139, 210, 212, 213, 316.
 indirect objective, 212, 213, 317.
 dative, 212, *notes*,
 possessive, 128 (3), 131–137, 318.
 vocative, 128 (4), 319.
 instrumental, 258, 367 (1).
 absolute, 138, 271.
Clause, defined, 7.

Clause, principal, 16.
subordinate, 16.
co-ordinate, 17.
noun, 21.
adjective, 22.
adverb, 25.
Cognate object, 210, 473 (*b*), 316 (5).
Coherence, rule of, 722.
Colloquialisms, 721 (3); 261, 312 (5); 544, 570, 596, 680, 691, *notes*.
Comparatives, Latin, 145.
errors in, 540, 544, 546-548.
Comparison of Adjectives, 142.
Complement, 9, 10, 209, 221 (2), 315 (3), 316 (4), 320 (2), 321 (2), 322 (2), 324 (7).
Compounds, 39, 61.
syntactical, 62-67.
juxtapositional, 68-80.
phrase, 81.
form of, 82.
hyphen in, 83.
hybrid, 84.
possessive of, 134.
Confused words, 91.
Conjunctions, defined, 273, 326.
co-ordinative, 274 (1), 275-279.
subordinative, 274 (2), 280-282.
errors in, 678-693.
Construction, errors in, 713, 714, archaic, 730.
Correlatives, 192.

Dative of interest, 212 *note* 1, 317 (3).
reflexive, 212 *note* 2, 317 (4).
Degradation of words, 92-95.
Derivatives, 39 (2).
verbal, 58.
Latin, 59.
Greek, 60.
Disguised words, 98-102.
Doublets, 90.

Elevation of words, 96, 97, 94.
Elliptical sentences, 390.
use of *it*, 473.
Emphasis, 478, 719 (1).
Essays, outlines of, 738.
three classes of, 740.
composition of, 741, 742.
descriptive, 743-746.
narrative, 747-750.
reflective or expository, 751-753.
subjects for, 754.
Examination answers, 527, 528.

Figurative language, 724-727.
in poetry, 733.
Fine writing, 721 (1).
Force, 719.
Foreign words, 721 (4).

Gender, explained, 113.
common, 114.
of inanimate objects, 115.
three ways of denoting, 116.
Greek derivatives, 60.
plurals, 121.
Group-verbs, 207, 208.

Homonyms, 88.
apparent, 89.
Hybrids, 84, 42 *foot-note* 2.
Hyphen in compounds, 82, 83.

Idioms, metaphor in, 369.
translation of, 370.
fixed character of, 371.
particularisation of, 372.
obsolete words preserved in, 373.
word-collocation in, 374-381.
double phrases in, 375-377.
Imperative, 1st and 3rd persons, 215.
suppositional use of, 216.
Infinitive, simple, 220 (1), 221, 321 (*a*).
gerundial, 220 (2), 222, 321 (*b*).
without *to*, 223.
absolute, 221 (4), 223 (5), 321 (*a*) (3), 321 (*b*) (3).
parenthetical, 222 (4), 321 (*b*) (4).
split, 585.
Interjections, 283, 284, 317 (6).
Interrogations, reported, 294, 703 (2).
shall and *will* in, 307.
subject after verb in, 129 (1), 703 (1).

Latin derivatives, 59.
plurals, 121.
comparatives, 145.
Letters, capital, 493.
superfluous, 476, *foot-note*.
appended or dropt, 102.
plural of, 124.
mispronounced, 518, 519.
Letter-writing, 755-764.
errors in, 758.

Metaphor, 726, 727.
participial forms in, 382.
Mood, defined, 214.

Mood, indicative, 214 (1), 323.
imperative, 214 (2), 215, 216, 323.
subjunctive, 214 (3), 217–219, 323.
infinitive, 214 (4), 220–223, 321.

Narration, 291, *foot-note.*
Nominative, 128–130, 315.
Nouns, defined, 103.
table of, 112.
class, 104; without art., 161.
collective, 105; without art., 160.
material, 106; without art., 160.
common, 107.
proper, 108; *the* with, 156.
concrete, 109, 110 *note.*
abstract, 110; formation of, 111; without art., 160.
generalising *the* with, 155.
descriptive, without art., 162, 163.
phrasal uses of, 467–470.
errors in, 529–538.
Number, 117–127.
Numerals, cardinal, 146.
ordinal, 147.
multiplicative, 148.
distributive, 149.

Object, 8, 11, 128 (2), 316.
adverbial, 139.
cognate, 210. 473 (*b*), 316 (5).
direct, 128 (2), 212, 213, 316.
indirect, 212, 213. 317.
retained, 213, 316 (6), 317 (2).
simple infinitive, 221 (1).
of exclamation, 316 (9).
adjuncts of, 11, 12.
Obsolete words preserved, 373.
Order of words, errors in, 703–712.
inversion of, 732.

Paraphrasing, 736, 737.
Parsing, defined, 314.
scheme of, 328–335.
form and relation in, 336.
examples of, 367.
Participle, imperfect, 224, 225, 322.
perfect, 228, 322, 381–383.
prepositional use of, 269–271.
Passive use of transitive verbs, 205.
verb with object, 213.
Perspicuity, rule of, 718; 719.
Phrase, 5, 6.
Plural, mode of forming the, 118.
of nouns in *-o*, 119.
of nouns in *-f*, 120.
Plural, of foreign nouns, 121.
forms, true, 122.
forms, apparent, 123.
of words used as nouns, 124.
of abbreviations, 124, *note.*
with numerals, 125.
of compounds, 126.
and singular meanings, 127.
wrongly for singular, 531.
Poetic diction, 728–735.
Possessive ending, 131.
inflection omitted, 132, 226 *note.*
limited to persons, etc., 135.
of proper nouns in *-s*, 133.
of compounds, 134.
adjectival, 730 (*c*), 131 *foot-note.*
cases of personal pronouns, 170, 171.
case, misused, 535.
Precision, rule of, 720.
Predicate, 1, 3.
Prefixes, sources of, 41.
Latin, 42.
Greek, 43.
Teutonic, 52.
Prepositions, defined, 266, 325.
compound, 267.
participles used as, 269–271.
detached, 272.
confused, 394.
phrasal uses of, 401–445.
used as adverbs, 338, 340.
used as conjunctions, 339, 340.
wrongly inserted or omitted, 395.
errors in, 662–677.
Pronouns, defined, 166.
classification of, 167.
personal, 168–172, 559.
reflexive, 173, 174.
demonstrative, 175–177.
interrogative, 178–183.
relative, 184–191: omitted, 272.
conjunctive, 193.
indefinite, 194–197.
distributive, 198–200.
errors in, 555–577.
Pronunciation, 518–526.
Proximity, rule of, 717.
Punctuation, 483–492.

Quotations, 721 (2).

Repetition of words, 487 (2) *note*, 719 (2), 742 (12).

Reported speech, direct, 291, 292.
indirect, 291, 293.
interrogations, 294.
commands or requests, 295.
exclamations and wishes, 296.
intermediate forms of, 298-300.
Roots, 40.
Rules for translating idioms, 370.
of spelling, 495-501.
for answering examination questions, 528.
of style, 716-723.
for paraphrasing, 736.
for essay-writing, 742.

Sentences, structure of, 1-28.
analysis of, 29-33.
simple, 15, 31.
complex, 16, 32.
compound, 17, 33.
conversion of, 34-38.
elliptical, 390.
longer in poetry, 735.
Sequence of tenses, 285-290.
Shall and Will, 301-308.
special uses of, 305.
in indirect report, 306.
in interrogations, 307, 308.
Should and Would, 309-312.
special uses of, 312.
Simile, 725-727.
Simplicity, rule of, 721.
Singular forms, true, 123.
wrongly for plural, 532.
Slang, 721 (3).
Spelling, rules of, 495-501.
notes on, 502-517.
Stems, 40.
Style, rules of, 716-723.
purity of, 721.
Subject, 1, 2, 8, 128 (1), 315.
simple infinitive, 221 (1).
after verb, 129.
adjuncts of, 11, 12.
Subjunctive, conditional use of, 217.
after *that*, *lest*, etc., 218.
optative use of, 219.
Suffixes, their sources, 41.
Latin and Greek, 45-51.
denoting persons: *-ate*, *-ee*, *-ey*, *-y*; *-ar*, *-er*, *-eer*, *-ier*, *-or*, *-ary*; *-ain*, *-an*, *-en*, *-on*; *-ist*, *-ast*; *-or*, *-our*, *-eur*, *-er*, 45.
forming abstract nouns: *-age*; *-ance*, *-ence*; *-ate*; *-cy*, *-sy*; *-ion*, *-on*, *-om*; *-ice*, *-ise*, *-ess*; *-ism*, *-asm*; *-ment*; *-mony*; *-tude*; *-ty*; *-ure*; *-y*, 46.
denoting place or instrument: *-ary*, *-ery*, *-ory*, *-ry*; *-ter*, *-tre*, *-cre*, 47.
other noun: *-al*, *-el*, *-le*; *-ade*; *-el*, *-le*; *-on*; *-oon*, *-one*, *-on*; *-or*, *-our*, *-eur*; *-ule*, *-le*, *-el*, *-il*; *-y*, 49.
diminutive: *-cule*, *-ule*, *-cle*, *-cel*, *-sel*, *-el*, *-le*, *-il*, *-l*; *-et*, *-ot*, *-l-et*, 48.
adjective: *-al*; *-an*, *-ane*, *-ain*, *-en*; *-ar*; *-ary*, *-arious*; *-ant*, *-ent*; *-ate*, *-ete*, *-ite*, *-ute*, *-t*, *-se*; *-bile*, *-ble*, *-i-ble*, *-a-ble*; *-esque*; *-ic*, *-ique*; *-id*; *-ile*, *-il*, *-eel*, *-le*, *-el*; *-ine*, *-in*; *-ive*; *-lent*; *-ory*; *-ose*, *-ous*, 50.
verb: *-ate*, *-ite*, *-t*, *-se*; *-esce*; *-fy*; *-ise*, *-ize*; *-ish*, 51.
Suffixes, Teutonic, 53-57.
denoting agent or instrument: *-ard*; *-er*, *-ar*, *-or*, *-ier*, *-yer*; *-el*, *-le*; *-ster* (*-aster*); *-ter*, *-ther*, *-der*; *-nd*; *-monger*; *-wright*, 53.
denoting state or condition: *-dom*; *-head*, *-hood*; *-ing*; *-lock*, *-ledge*; *-ness*; *-red*; *-ship*, *-scape*; *-th*, *-t*, 54.
diminutive: *-el*, *-le*; *-er-el*, *-r-el*; *-en*; *-kin*; *-l-ing*, *-ing*; *-ock*, 55.
adjective: *-ed*; *-en*, *-n*; *fast*; *-ful*; *ish*, *-sh*; *-less*; *-ly*; *-some*; *-ward*; *-y*, 56.
verb: *-en*; *-er*; *-el*, *-le*, *-l*, 57.
Suffixes, depreciative, 45, *note*.
Syllabication, 482.
Synonyms, 85-87.

Tense, defined, 229.
present imperfect momentary, 229, 230, 287.
present imperfect continuous, 229, 231.
present perfect momentary, 229, 232, 288.
past imperfect momentary, 229, 232.
present perfect continuous, 229, 233.

Underlining, 494.
Unity, rule of, 723.

Verbal noun, 224–227.
Verbs, defined, 201.
causative, 57, 58.
frequentative, 57.
finite, 4, 586.
two classes of, 202.
transitive, without object, 203.
transitive, reflexive use of, 204.
transitive, quasi-passive use of, 205.
transitive, with cognate object, 210, *note* 1.
intransitive, transitive use of, 206.
intransitive, with preposition, 207.
intransitive, with complement, 209, 316 (3).
intransitive, with cognate object, 210.
of incomplete predication, 9.
with two objects, 212, 213.
before subject, 129.
Verbs, strong and weak, 235.
conjugation of special, 236.
defective and anomalous, 237–247.
impersonal, 248, 317 (5).
phrasal uses of, 446–462.
errors in, 578–639.
Vocative, 128 (4), 319.

Words, simple, 39 (1).
derivative, 39 (2).
compound, 61–83.
confused, 91.
degradation of, 92–95.
elevation of, 94, 96, 97.
disguised, 98–102.
corruption of, 99.
contraction of, 101.
obsolete, 99, 373.
archaic, 729.
order of, 129, 294, 296, 728 (4), 732, 736 (5).
errors in, 703–712.

II.—INDEX OF WORDS AND FORMS.

[*The references are to the sections.*]

A, 150, 157–162, 165.
A-, 52, 379.
A certain, 196, *note*.
A few, a little, 158, *note*.
A year, a day, etc., 268.
Abbess, 116 (2).
Abide, 52, 236.
Able, 102.
About, 52, 196, 221 (3), 267, 338, 402, 403, 667.
Above, 52, 262, 267, 338, 404.
Abridge, abbreviate, 90.
Abroad, 52, 338, 379.
Accessary, accessory, 90.
Accursed, 52, 100.
Acknowledge *for* promise, 604.
Across, 52, 267, 338, 405.
Adamant, diamond, 90.
Adder, 102.
Addicted, 372.
Affect, effect, 91 (1).
Afford, 100.
Affright, 52, 100.
After, 218, 262, 281, 340, 406.
After all, 406 (4), 655.
Again, 52, 259.
Against, 52, 267, 407.
Aggravate, annoy, 720 (2)
Aghast, 52, 379.
Air oneself *for* take the air, 637.
Alackaday, 284.
Alike, 52, 379.
Alive, 52, 379.
All, 475.
Allude, refer, 720.
Allusion, illusion, 91 (1).
Alms, 101, 128.
Alone, 380.
Along, 267, 338, 408.
Altogether, 647, 656.
Always, 253.
Am to, have to, 290, 588.
Amend, emend, 90.
Amends, 122.
Amid, amidst, 52, 267.
Among, 52, 267, 409, 675.
Ancient, 102.
And, 130, 149 (*b*), 274, 276, 690, 691.
And which, 568.
Another, 196.
Ant, emmet, 90.
Any, 158, 167, 342, 542, 573, 576, 577.
Apron, 102.
Apt, liable, likely, 720.
Arbour, 102.
Archangel, 44, 520 (1).
Around, 52, 267, 338, 410, 411.
Artful, artifice, 93.
As (conj.), 143, 192 (5), (6), 223 (4), 357 (*a*), 661.
(rel.), 167, 191, 192 (1) (4), 357 (*c*), 565.
(adv.), 129 (7), 252 and *note*, 357 (*b*) (*d*).
As it were, 686.
As soon as, 680, 702.
Ascertain, 720.
Ashamed, 52, 379.
Asparagus, 99.
At, 401, 412, 670, 757 and *foot-note* 2.
At all, 475 (2), 656.
At best, 389 (*a*), 412 (3) *note*.
At once, 263 *note*, 412 (2), 647.
Auger, 102.

Aught, 167.
Auspices, 122.
Avocation, vocation, 720, 721 (1).
Awake, 52, 236, 379.
Awful, 56, 82 (3), 496.
Ay, 257.

Backbite, 80, *note*.
Bad, 144 (3), 550.
Bald-head, 82 (1), *note*.
Barbarism, barbarity, 91 (1).
Barefaced, 77, *note*.
Bark, 88.
Barn, 101.
Battlement, 99.
Be, 234 *note*, 237.
Be-, 52.
Beaker, pitcher, 90.
Because, 52, 688.
Before, 52, 218, 281, 340, 413, 698.
Behest, 102.
Behind, 52, 267, 338, 414, 658.
Believe *for* presume, 601.
Bellows, 122.
Below, 52, 267, 338, 415.
Beneath, 52, 144 (14), 267, 338, 416.
Beneficial, beneficent, 91 (1).
Beside(s), 52, 254, 267, 417.
Betimes, 52, 254.
Better, 144 (2). 223 (3), 265.
Between, 52, 254, 267, 338, 418.
Beyond, 52, 254, 267, 338, 419.
Bid, 223 (1).
Bide, 236, *foot-note*.
Biennial, bi-weekly, 44.
Bird's-eye (view), 64, *note*.
Blindfold, 99.
Bloodshed, 70, *note*.
Blue-jacket, blue-stocking, 82 (1), *note*.
Boor, 93.
Born, borne, 236.
Both, 276, 356.
Bound (ready to go), 102, 400.
Braggart, 102.
Breach, breech, 91 (2).
Bread-and-butter, 81, *note*.
Break *for* tear, 616.
Brethren, 118 (2), 127 (1).
Brooch, broach, 91 (1).
Browbeat, 80, *note*.
Brown-study, 63 (*a*), *note*.
Bulrush, 82 (3).
Bumptious, 94.
Bus, 101.
Busy, 96.
But, 192 (10) *note* (11), 227 (3), 223 (4), 279, 281, 474, 586.
By, 149 (*a*), 394 (3), 401, 420, 421, 698.
By and by, 421, 648.
By the by, 421, 515.

Cab, 101.
Caitiff, captive, 90, 93.
Can, 223 (1), 239.
Canter, 101.
Catch, 447, 608.
Cat-and-dog, 81, *note*.
Cat's paw, 64, *note*.
Chap, 101, 721 (3).
Child's-play, 64, *note*.
Chime, 102.
Christian, 96.
Churl, 93.
Clerical error, A, 551.
Clever, 94.
Climax, crisis, 720 (1).
Close-fisted, 77, *note*.
Clothes, 122.
Cock and-bull, 81, *note*.
Cold-blooded 77, *note*.
Colleague, 100.
Collision, collusion, 91 (2).
Come to know *for* find, 636.
Complacent, complaisant, 90.
Compliment, complement, 91 (1).
Compound, 102.
Concerning, etc., 269, 367 (13) (14).
Conduce, conduct, 51, *note*.
Confess *for* grant, 605.
Construct, construe, 51, *note*.
Contain *for* be contained, 634.
Content (adj.), 380.
Cord, chord, 91 (1).
Cormorant, 102.
Corporal, corporeal, 91 (1).
Could, 100, 239.
Council, counsel, 91 (1).
Court-martial, 126 (2), 378.
Crafty, 93.
Cunning, 93.
Current, currant, 91 (2).
Custom, costume, 90.
Cut *for* erase, 617.
Czarina, tsaritsa, 116 (2).

Daisy, 101.
Dare, 223 (1), 240.
Darling, 55.

Dastard, 53.
Date, 88.
Dead, 463.
Deaf-mute, 63 (*a*), *note*.
Death's-head, 64, *note*.
Deduce, deduct, 51, *note*.
Deny *for* refuse, 606.
Dependence, dependency, 91 (1).
Depositary, depository, 90.
Destiny, destination, 91 (1).
Die *for* be killed, 609.
Directly, 651, 680.
Do, 223 (1), 245, 246, 730 (*j*) *note*.
Dote, 96.
Double-faced, 77, *note*.
Doughty, 93.
Down, 52, 101, 262, 338.
Draughtsman, 64, *note*.
Draw, 450.
Drawing-room, 101.
Drown *for* sink, 610.
Dub, 93.
During, 271.

Each, 130 (*c*), 167, 198, 576.
Each other, 200.
Earnest, 102.
Eat, ate, 236.
Eaves, 123.
-ed, (adj. suffix), 56 *note*, 65 *foot-note*.
Either (pron.), 167, 199, 576.
(conj.), 276 *note*, 277.
Elder, 144 (6), 145, 529 and *note*.
Elicit, illicit, 91 (2).
Else, 192 (10) *note*, 364.
Elusive, illusive, 91 (1).
Embattle, 99.
Emigrant, immigrant, 91 (1).
Eminent, imminent, 91 (1).
Endue, endow, 90, 515.
Enough, 167, 195, 343, 708.
Entrails, 49 *note*, 122.
Environs, 122, 526 *foot-note*.
Ere, 281, 729 (*g*).
Esq., 757, 758 (3) (4).
Essay, assay, 90.
Ever so, 261.
Every, 130 (*c*), 167, 576, other 198.
Except, 221 (3), 223 (4), 271.
Expired, 228.
Expound, 102.

Face, 468.
Fac-simile, 101.
Fail, 212 *note* 1, 584 *note*.
Fair, 464.
Fair out, To, 638.
Fairy, 99.
Far, 144 (1).
Farther, further, 144 (1) (9).
Fast, 141, 264, 372.
Fealty, 46, 526.
Fellow, 93.
Fence, 101.
Fetch *for* bring, 612.
Feud, 100.
Few, 167, 197, 158 *note*, 345, 541.
First, 144 (9), 147.
-fold, 148 (*a*).
Folk, folks, 123.
Fond, 96.
Fool-hardy, 69, *note*.
Fool's errand, 64, *note*.
For, 281, 339, 401, 422, 665, 670, 697, 700.
For-, 52.
Foregone, 52 *foot-note* 1, 372.
Foremost, 144 (9).
Forgo, forfend, etc., 52.
Forward *for* offer, 594.
Foster-child, 63 (*c*), *note*.
Foul-mouthed, 77, *note*.
Four-foot, four-footed, 77, *note*.
Fray, 101.
Freehold, 63 (*a*), *note*.
Fret, 52.
From, 401, 423, 671.
Fun, 94.

Gain-, 52.
Gainsay, 52.
Gallows, 122.
Gamble, gambol, 91 (2).
Generous, 96.
Gentle, 90, 96, 380.
Get, got, 451, 595, 596.
Give, 452, 626, 627.
Gizzard, 102.
Go, 453, 613, 614, 615.
Goal, gaol, 91 (2).
Godsend, 68, *note*.
Good, 144 (2), 465.
Good-all-round, 81, *note*.
Goodbye, 284.
Good morning, goodnight, good evening, 537 and *note*.
Gosling, 55.
Governess, 116 (2).
Greenhouse, 68, *note*.

Grey-beard, 82 (1), *note*.
Grisly, grizzly, 91 (2).

Hack, 101.
Had rather, etc., 223 (3), 265.
Hail (interj.), 284.
Hair-brained, 77, *note*.
Half, 352.
Half-blood, 77, *note*.
Hamlet, 48.
Hand, 467.
Handful, 66 (*b*), 82 (3).
Handsel, 82 (3).
Hang, 236.
Hang-dog, 63 (*c*), *note*.
Hard, 141, 264, 651.
Hardly, 192 (9), 682, 651.
Has gone, is gone, 234.
Hatchment, achievement, 90, 102.
Have, 238, 595.
Hazard, 96, 102.
He, 167–169, 256.
Head, 469.
Headsman, 64, *note*.
Hear *for* listen to, 593.
Hearsay, 63 (*c*), *note*.
Here, 256, 263.
Hermit, 102.
Himself, etc., 167, 173, 174.
Hind, 144 (10), 414.
His, 167–169, 172, 194 *note*, 560.
Hoist, 102.
Hold, 102.
Holiday, 82 (3).
Hoodwink, 80, *note*.
Hope *for* expect, 600.
Hostage, 102.
How, 252, 256, 360.
However, 341.
Hush-money, 73, *note*.

I, 167–169, 556.
If, 129 (5), 192 (11) *note*, 216–218, 275, 294, 718 (4).
Imaginative, 91 (1), 96.
Imperious, imperial, 91 (1).
Imposture, imposition, 91 (1).
In, 144 (11), 338, 394 (1), 401, 424, 425, 666, 699.
In front *for* in the presence of, 676.
Indeed, 254, 657.
Indifferent, 93.
Industrious, industrial, 91 (1).
Infantile, etc., 56, *foot-note* 1.
Informer, informant, 91 (1).
Ingenuous, 91 (1), 96.
Innings, 122.
Intend *for* want, 603.
Interference, 376.
Interior, etc., 145.
Into, 394 (1), 426, 669.
Island, 100.
It, 102, 167, 168, 471-473, 519, 555, 556.
Its, 170.

Jeopardy, 96.
Judical, judicious, 91 (1).
Junction, juncture, 91 (1).
Just, 646, 701.

Keep, 454.
for place, 624.
for obtain, 625.
Keepsake, 66 *note*, 68 *note*.
Kickshaws, 99, 123.
Kidnap, 94.
Knave, 93.
Knock-kneed, 77, *note*.
Know *for* believe, 601.

Lack-lustre, 62, *note*.
Landed, 56, *note*.
Lass, 116 (2).
Last but one, The, 709.
Late, 144 (8).
Latter *for* last, 543.
Learned, 228.
Lend, 102.
Lengthways, lengthwise, 253 and *foot-note*.
Less, lesser, 144 (7).
Lest, 218.
Let, 215, 223 (1).
Light (verb), 236, 336 (*a*).
Light-fingered, 77, *note*.
Like (adj.), 56, 265 *note*, 317 (7), 385.
Little, 144 (7), 344, 550.
by little, 149 (*a*), 420 (4) *foot-note*, 648.
Live, 379, 526.
Livelong, 77 *note*, 380.
Livestock, 63 (*a*), *note*.
Lone, 380.
Long ago, 695.
Long-boat, 82 (1), *note*.
Long-lived, 77, *note*.
Loose, lose, 91 (2).
Lover, 114, *note*.

Luxurious, luxuriant, 91 (1).
-ly, 56, 264.

Made, 236.
Make, 223 (1), 455, 583, 597–599.
Man-of-war, 82 (1), *note*.
Many, 144 (4), 167, 197, 346, 122 *note*.
Marksman, 64, *note*.
Mathematics, 122.
May, 223 (1), 243.
Means, 122.
Measles, 122.
Menial, 93.
Mend *for* sharpen, 619.
Meseems, melists, 248.
Methinks, 248, 317 (5), 730 (*i*).
Methodist, 96.
Might (verb), 243.
Mine, 167, 168, 170.
Mis-, 52.
Mistake *for* be mistaken, 611.
Mob, 94, 101.
Mole, 101.
Momentary, momentous, 91 (1).
More, 142, 144 (4), 348.
Mother-country, father-land, p. 64, *footnote* 2.
Mould, 102, 515.
Mr., 116 (2), 121 (3), 755, 757, 758 (3).
Much, 144 (4), 167, 347.
Must, 223 (1), 247.
My, 167, 168, 170, 171, 562.
Myself, etc., 167, 173, 174.

Namesake, 68, *note*.
Naught, 167.
Nay, 257.
Near, 144 (5), 317 (7), 651.
Need (verb), 223 (1).
Needs, 253.
Neer-do-well, 81, *note*.
Neither, 167, 576, 577.
Never so, ever so, 261.
Never man, never a man, 161 *note*.
Nevertheless, 192 (11) *note*, 341.
Newfangled, 77, *note*.
News, 122.
Newt, 102.
Next, 144 (5), 317 (7), 366.
Nice, 96, 720.
Nickname, 102.
Nigh, 144 (5), 317 (7).
No, 354, 539.
No sooner, 192 (8), 704.
Nonce, 102.
None, 167, 353.
Nor, 130 (3), 278 *note*, 692.
Not, 246 (2) (*b*), 659, 660, 710.
Not only, 192 (11), 659.
Notwithstanding, 192 (11) *note*, 271 and *note*.
Now, 263, 281 *note*.
Nugget, 102.
Nuptials, 49 *note*, 122.

Obeisance, 46, 90.
Obsequies, 122.
Observance, observation, 91 (1).
O'clock, 492, 535, 538.
Odds, 122.
Of, off, 52, 253, 338, 401, 427, 428, 630, 667.
Of course, 253, 650.
Of late, etc., 253.
Of mine, etc., 137.
Of old, 253, 389 (*c*).
Official, officious, 91 (1).
Old, 144 (6).
On, 52, 268, 338, 394 (2), 401, 429, 430.
On all fours, 146.
Once, 102, 146, 351.
Once for all, 647.
One, 146, 167, 194, 350, 648.
One another, 200.
Only, 355, 712 (5).
Open *for* unfasten, 621.
Or, 130 (3), 192 (11) *note*, 276 *note*, 278, 692, 693.
Orange, 102.
Ordinance, ordnance, 91 (1).
Ortolan, 102.
Ostler, 102.
Other, 167, 192 (10), 196, 198, 200, 540, 575.
Ouch, 102.
Ought, 244, 301.
Ourself, 169.
Out, 144 (12), 432.
Out of, 431.
Outrage, 46, 98.
Outside, 262, 367 (20).
Over, 338, 433, 434.
Own, 171, 173, 174, 244 *foot-note*.

Paddle, 55, 102.
Pageant, 102.
Palate, pallet, 91 (2).
Palsy, 101.
Parboil, 99.

Parchment, 102.
Partake, 82 (3).
Passable marks, 551.
Pastime, 82 (3).
Peal, 101.
Peasant, 102.
Pending, 271.
Perhaps *for* probably, 653.
Perished, 228.
Persuade, convince, 720.
Pheasant, 102.
Physic, 91 (1), 531 *note*.
Pick, 456.
Pier, peer, 91 (2).
Pitfall, 68, *note*.
Place *for* room, 370 (4), 537.
Plain-spoken, out-spoken, 228.
Play, 457.
Please, 223 (1), 248.
Plot, 101.
Poetaster, 53, *note*.
Polite, political, 91 (1).
Poor-house, 68, *note*.
Popular, populous, 91 (1).
Premises, 122.
Pretended, 228.
Primrose, 82 (3).
Principal, principle, 91 (1).
Probably, 653, 654.
Proceed, precede, 91 (1).
Progeny, 49.
Provided, 271 *note*, 281, 587.
Proxy, 101.
Purblind, 82 (3).
Put, 458.
Pygmy, 49, 515.

Quad, 101.
Quaker, 96.

Radical, 96.
Rampart, 102.
Rapt, wrapt, 91 (2).
Rather, 265.
Reach across *for* cross, 622.
Recollect, re-collect, 83, *note*.
Recreation, re-creation, 83, *note*.
Red-coat, red tape, 82 (1), *note*.
Redoubtable, 93.
Remains, 122.
Retired, 228.
Reverend, 91 (1), 757.
Reverse, revert, 51, *note*.
Rhinoceros, 121, *note*.
Rhyme, 100.
Ribband, 102.
Riches, 122.
Rough-rider, 69, *note*.
Run, 211, 459.

Sad, 380, *note*.
Sailor, sailer, 53, and *footnote* 3.
Same, 146. 167, 177, 192 (4), 556.
Saturate *for* imbue, 623.
Save, 271.
Say, 589–591.
Scapegrace, 62, *note*.
Scissors, 122.
Score, 89.
Scrip, 102.
See *for* look at, 592.
Self, 167, 173, 174.
Sergeant, serjeant, 90, 516.
Set, 460.
Sexton, 45.
Shall, 223 (1), 241.
Shall and will, 301–308.
Sham, 94, 102.
Shambles, 122.
Shamefaced, shamefast, 56, 98.
She, 167. 168.
Shears, 122.
Shoeblack, 69, *note*.
Shoplifter, 69, *note*.
Shorthorn, 82 (1), *note*.
Shortly, 652.
Should, 241.
Should and would, 309–312.
Shrewd, 96, 373.
Sick, 551.
Sick nurse, 68, *note*.
Sideways, 253.
Signification, significance, 91 (1).
Silly, 93.
Simple, 93.
Since, 281, 365, 340, 681, 696.
Skinflint, 62, *note*.
Skull, scull, 91 (2).
Slave, 93.
Slow-coach, 82 (1), *note*.
Small-pox, 122.
Snub, 94.
So, 129 (7), 167, 177, 192 (5) (6) (7), 261, 362, 556, 649, 689, 706, 707.
So that, 192 (7), *note*.
So to speak, 222 (4), 686 *note*.
Soldier, 96.
Some, 157, 158 *note*, 167, 196, 349, 572.

Some day, 574 *note*.
Somehow, 360 (*c*) and *note*.
Sometimes, 253.
Somewhat, 183, 255, 572 *note*, 645.
Sorry, 56, 380.
Sound, 102.
Spend, 101.
Spectacles, 122.
Spider, 53.
Spinster, 53, 116 (1).
Spiritual, spirituous, 91 (1).
Spite, 101.
Sport, 101.
Squire, 102.
Squall, squeal, 90.
Staid, stayed, 90.
Stand-by, 66, *note*.
Starvation, 46, 94.
Stationary, stationery, 47, *note*.
Steersman, 64, *note*.
Stiff-necked, 77, *note*.
Stop, etc., *for* reside, 607.
Story, 101.
Stout, 380, *note*.
Straight, 141, 651 *note*.
Strait-laced, 65, 373 *note*.
Strand, 102.
Stress, 101.
Strike, 446.
Substitute *for* replace, 635.
Such, 167, 177, 192 (1) (2), 363.
Such a, 706.
Suit, 89.
Summons, 123.

Take, 448, 628, 629.
Teetotaler, 96.
Tell, 449, 589, 590.
Tenor, tenure, 91 (1).
Than, 143, 192 (8) (10), 221 (3), 223 (4), 367 (21) (22), 683.
Than whom, 143.
Thanks, 122.
That (demonst.), 167, 175, 176, 192 (3), 358 (*a*) (*b*), 564.
(rel.), 167, 190, 272, 358 (*c*).
(conj.), 192 (2) (3) (7), 218, 280, 281, 293, 358 (*d*), 678, 679.
The, 150-156, 159-165, 256, 268 *foot-note*.
instrumental, 256, 258, 367 (1).
Their, 167, 168, 170.
Theirs, 167, 168, 170.
Then, 102, 256, 262, 263.
There, 256, 367 (15), 472 *note*, 731.
These, those, 175.
They, 167, 168, 194 (*b*) *note*.
Thine, 167, 168, 170.
This, 167, 175, 176.
Thou, 167-169.
Though, 192 (11), *note*, 216, 217, 279.
Thrash, thresh, 90, 516.
Through, 262, 401, 435.
Throw *for* spill, 620.
Thy, 167, 168, 170, 173.
Tidings, 122.
Tinsel, 93.
To, 338, 401, 436, 437, 548, 672, 674.
of infinitive omitted, 223.
To be omitted, 639.
To be sure, 222, *note*.
To wit, 222, *note*.
To-day, 254.
Tomorrow, 254.
Tomorrow *for* yesterday, 694.
Too, 640, 641, 644.
Tory, 96.
Toward(s), 438,
Travelled, 228.
Treadmill, 73, *note*.
Tulip, turban, 90.
Turn, 461.
Turncoat, 62, *note*.
Turning-point, 73, *note*.
Tyrant, 102.

Umpire, 102.
Un-, 52.
Unbound, unsaid, 52, *foot-note* 2.
Under, 338, 439, 440.
Undersigned, 228.
Unless, 217, 685, 687.
Until, 281.
Up, 144 (13), 338, 441, 441, 442.
Uphill, 67, *note*.
Upon, 394 (2), 429, 631.
Use to, 633.

Valet, 90.
Van, 101.
Varlet, 90, 93.
Venal, venial, 91 (2).
Verbal, oral, 720 (3).
verbose, 91 (1).
Very, 260, 519, 640, 642, 643.
Victuals, 49 *note*, 122.
Villain, 93.
Virtuous, virtual, 91 (1).

Vixen, 116 (2).
Vizard, 102.
Vouchsafe, 62, *note*.

Wages, 122.
Waive, wave, 91 (2).
Warden, 45.
Water *for* climate, 536.
Waylay, 80, *note*.
We, 169.
Wear *for* put on, 618.
Welladay, 284.
Well-armed, long-armed, 65, *foot-note*.
Well-behaved, well-read, 228.
What (interrog.), 167, 178, 180, 359 (*a*) (*b*).
(rel.), 167, 188, 359 (*c*) (*d*).
(indef.), 183, 359 (*e*).
(conj.), 167, 193, 359 (*g*).
(interj.), 359 (*h*).
for that, 474, *foot-note*.
What for, 705.
What not, 181.
What with, 189, 359 (*f*).
When, 192 (9), 252, 256, 682.
Whence, 252, 256.
Where, 252, 256.
Whether, 129 (5), 192 (11) *note*, 218, 221 *foot-note* 1, 276 *note*, 294, 718 (4).
Which (interrog.), 167, 182.
(rel.), 167, 184, 185, 187, 567, 569.
Whig, 96.
While, 252, 282, 684.
Whither, 252, 256.
Who (interrog.), 167, 178, 179.
(rel.), 167, 184, 185, 566.
(indef.), 183.
(conj.), 167, 193.
Whole, 553 and *note*.
Whom, 184, 570.
Whose, 184, 186.
Why, 252, 256 and *note*, 361, 705.
Wig, 101.
Wild-goose, 63 (*a*), *note*.
Will, 223 (1), 242, 301–308.
Willy-nilly, 373.
Wind (verb), 236.
Windfall, 68, *note*.
With, 52, 394 (3), 401, 443, 673, 668.
With-, 52.
Within, 267, 338, 444.
Without, 267, 338, 445.
Witness, 54, 110 *note*.
Woodcut, 68, *note*.
Word for word, 677.
World, 369.
Worship, 54.
Worth (adj.), 139 (*c*), 367 (5).
(verb), 730 (*i*), *note*.
Would, 309–312, 632.
Wreck, reck, 91 (2).
Wring, ring, 91 (2).

Ye, 168, 169.
Yon, yonder, 177, 729 (*c*).
You, 168, 169, 194 *note*.
(indef.), 194, *note*.
You and I *for* you and me, 558.
Your, 167, 168, 170, 172, 562.
Your favour of granting, 711.
Yours, 167, 168, 170, 561.